

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

EducT 918.40.552

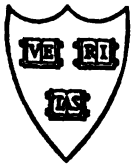
Harvard College
Library

By Exchange


3 2044 097 061 907

UCT 918.49.552

Harvard College
Library



By Exchange


3 2044 097 061 907

A

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN;

CONTAINING

GRAMMAR, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARIES,

ON THE METHOD OF

CONSTANT IMITATION AND REPETITION.

BY

JOHN M'CLINTOCK, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES,

AND

GEORGE R. CROOKS, A.M.,

ADJUNCT PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.

SEVENTH EDITION.

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,
82 CLIFF STREET, NEW YORK.

1849.

EducT 918.49.552

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
BY EXCHANGE
SEP 8 1938

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846,
By Harper & Brothers,
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New York.

39-10

PREFACE.

THIS book is designed, as the title-page states, to contain within itself Grammar, Exercises, Reading-book, and Dictionary; in short, all that the pupil will need before commencing the regular reading of Cæsar or any other easy Latin author. It has been prepared, as far as possible, on the following principles:

1. The object of studying languages is twofold: (1), the acquisition of the languages themselves; and (2), the mental discipline gained in acquiring them.

2. No language can be thoroughly acquired without the outlay of much labour and time. All schemes which promise to dispense with such outlay must be pronounced visionary and chimerical.

3. But labour without fruit does not contribute to mental cultivation. Labour and pain are not necessary companions: learning should not be "wrung from poor striplings like blood from the nose, or the plucking of untimely fruit."*

4. The grammar of a language cannot be understood until the language itself is at least partially acquired.

5. The vernacular may be learned, so far as its use is concerned, without grammar: a foreign living language may be so learned, but never so thoroughly, nor even so rapidly, as with grammatical aids. In the study of a dead language grammar is indispensable.

6. "A grammar intended for beginners should be formed altogether differently from one intended for

* Milton.

the higher classes, both in the distribution of the matter and in the mode of presenting it. Those who think that the pupil should use the same grammar from the beginning of his course to the end, are quite in error."*

7. In elementary books, or in teaching, no etymological form nor grammatical principle should be presented to the pupil without an immediate application thereof to *practice*, which should be kept up, both orally and in writing, from the very first lesson.

8. The all-important rule of practice, in the acquisition of language, is *imitation* and *repetition*. This is no new invention; all good teachers have known and used it; but yet it has been but slightly employed in elementary books heretofore.

9. Models for imitation should be simple at first, and gradually made more complicated; but they should always be selected from pure authors, say, in Latin, from Cicero and Cæsar.

10. The pupil's ear should be trained to correctness from the beginning, and the simplest rules of prosody learned and applied as soon as possible. For this purpose, the quantity of all syllables should be marked in elementary books, and attention to it should be strictly enforced by the teacher.

11. The foreign idiom, both as to the use and arrangement of words, should be made familiar to the pupil by constant practice. Nothing can be more hurtful than exercises in which foreign words are used in the idiom, and according to the arrangement of the vernacular.

How far we have been successful in carrying out these principles, the book itself must show.

* Kühner.

We have aimed to combine the advantages of constant repetition and imitation of Latin sentences from the beginning, with a more thorough drilling in etymological forms than is common. In order to effect this combination, we have necessarily deviated from the ordinary grammatical course to some extent; but we trust that experienced teachers will find, from an examination of the table of contents alone, that our arrangement is not devoid of systematic and even logical order.

While we have not gone out of our way to bring in novelties, we have yet adopted every new method which we have deemed to be an improvement. None of the class-books of any repute in England or Germany have escaped our notice in the preparation of this work; and we have made free use of them all, without slavish adherence to any. Perhaps the most marked peculiarity of the etymological part of the book will be found to be the doctrine of the genders of nouns of the third declension, which we have reduced, for the first time, to a form at once philosophical, we hope, and practical.* Some steps toward the method here presented have been taken by MADVIG, WEISSENBORN, and others in Germany; but none of these writers has brought out a clear exposition of the doctrine, adapted to the actual purposes of instruction. The arrangement, also, of the verbs,† according to the formation of the perfect-stem, founded mainly upon the classification of GROTEFEND (better set forth by ALLEN), will be found, we trust, to be an improvement upon any yet offered.

* The summary of rules, with all the exceptions, will be found to occupy two pages only, viz., p. 132, 133.

† Lessons lxii.–lxix., and p. 268–279.

The Syntax, in its details, generally follows ZUMPT; but in the arrangement, especially of Part II., we have approached nearer to the plan of BILLROTH. The admirable syntax of BECKER, adopted by KÜHNER in his Greek and Latin Grammars, we deem too difficult for beginners.

The Exercises are selected, as far as possible, from Cæsar's Gallic War. Although we have laboured hard to keep out bad Latin, we do not hope that all our sentences will escape criticism. We have found, from actual experiment in our classes, that the exercises to be rendered from English into Latin are within the capacity of any student of ordinary industry who studies the book in order; and we do not know that this can be said of any book of the kind, of equal extent, in use among us.

A few words as to the use of the book may not be out of place. Our own method has been to employ the lessons, for a considerable time at least, entirely in oral instruction, the teacher pronouncing first the Latin sentences distinctly, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding English without book; and then pronouncing the English sentences, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding Latin. As the quantities are marked (in Part I.) in all syllables except those to which the general rules apply, we require the pupil to observe quantity in his pronunciation from the very beginning, so that he learns prosody by practice before the rules are given. For the purpose of review, the summary of Etymology (Part III.), which contains, in short compass, all that is necessary to be learned by heart, will be found very convenient. After the student has passed

through Parts I. and II., he will find little difficulty in committing accurately the Rules of Syntax (Part IV.), with most of which he will be already familiar. The Reading Lessons at the end will give him easy practice in the syntax* and in word-building. For the convenience of those who may need it, we have condensed into a few pages, in Appendix I., all of Prosody that is essential for the understanding of hexameter verse.

The preparation of this book was originally suggested by our sense of the inadequacy of the ordinary modes of instruction, and especially by the advantage which we ourselves had derived from the use of OLLENDORFF'S method in the study of the German language. Finding that Rev. T. K. ARNOLD had prepared a series of books on the same principle, we used them in our own classes for some time, with a view to revising them for republication. They were found unsuited to our purpose in many respects, and we therefore formed the design of preparing an entirely new series, adapted to the use of American schools. The first of these is now presented to the public.

Dickinson College, April 7, 1846.

*** In Part I. the quantity is marked on all syllables except those to which the general rules apply. At the beginning of Part II. additional rules of quantity are given, and the marks are subsequently omitted on many syllables, in order to afford the pupil exercise upon the rules. In the Syntax and Reading Lessons they are omitted almost entirely. Great pains have been taken to ensure accuracy in the marks of quantity, but we cannot hope to have avoided error entirely.

* Our Second Book in Latin will contain a fuller development of Syntax, in a series of progressive exercises in writing Latin.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

In this edition, a number of errors in the marks of quantity, which had crept into the first, are corrected. We have also placed a series of Examination Questions at the end of the book, which will add, we hope, to its practical value.

Carlisle, November, 1846.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

Page

§ 1. Division of the Letters 1
§ 2. Syllables, Quantity, Accent 1
§ 3. Pronunciation 3
§ 4. Division of Words 4

PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

Summary of Essential Points 8
§ 5. *First Declension of Nouns.—First Conjugation of Verbs.* (I.—V.) 10
First Declension of Nouns, Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases 10
First Conjugation of Verbs, *Intransitive* 14
First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, *Transitive* 17
First Declension of Nouns, Dative and Ablative Cases . . 19
§ 6. *Second Declension of Nouns.—Second Conjugation of Verbs.* (VI.—VIII.) 22
Second Declension, *Masculine* 22
Second Declension, *Neuter.*—Second Conjugation of Verbs . 26
§ 7. *Adjectives of First Class*, Three Endings. (IX.—X.) . . . 28
Forms of Adjectives in us, a, um 28
Some forms of Esse, *to be* 30
§ 8. *Third and Fourth Conjugations of Verbs.* (XI.) . . . 33
§ 9. *Passive Verbs.* (XII.—XIII.) 36
§ 10. *Third Declension of Nouns, Partial Treatment.* (XIV.—XV.) . 40
§ 11. *Adjectives of Second Class*, Two Endings. (XVI.) . . . 44
§ 12. *Adjectives of Third Class*, One Ending. (XVII.) . . . 46
§ 13. *Fourth Declension of Nouns.* (XVIII.) 48
§ 14. *Fifth Declension of Nouns.* (XIX.) 51
§ 15. *Pronouns.* (XX.—XXXI.) 53
Pronoun, *Personal*, 1st Person. Verb, 1st Person . . . 53
Pronoun, *Personal*, 2d Person. Verb, 2d Person . . . 57
Pronoun, *Personal*, 3d Person 61
Pronouns, *Demonstrative* 63
Pronoun, *Relative* 68
Pronoun, *Interrogative* 70

Page

Pronouns, *Indefinite* 72
Pronouns, *Correlative* 74
§ 16. *Numerals.* (XXXII.—XXXIII.) 77
§ 17. *Verbs of Third Conjugation in* io. (XXXIV.) . . . 81
§ 18. *Verbs, Deponent.* (XXXV.) 83
§ 19. *Adverbs.* (XXXVI.) 85
§ 20. *Prepositions.* (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.) 88
§ 21. *Analysis of Tense-formations.* (XXXIX.—XLI.) . . . 92

PART II.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

§ 1. *Additional Rules of Quantity* 99
§ 2. *Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Partial Treatment.* (XLIII.—XLVI.) 102
Perfect Tenses of Esse 102
Perfect Tenses of 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations 104
Perfect Tenses of 3d Conjugation 106
§ 3. *Third Declension of Nouns, Fuller Treatment.* (XLVII.—LVII.) 110
Irregular Nouns 129
Summary of Rules of Gender, Third Declension 132
§ 4. *Comparison of Adjectives.* (LVIII.—LX.) 134
§ 5. *Comparison of Adverbs* 140
§ 6. *Supine.* (LXI.) 141
§ 7. *Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Active Voice. Fuller Treatment.* (LXII.—LXIX.) 144
Forms of Perfect Stem, 1st Conjugation 144
Forms of Perfect Stem, 2d Conjugation 146
Forms of Perfect Stem, 3d Conjugation 149
Forms of Perfect Stem, 4th Conjugation 159
§ 8. *Tenses for Completed Action, Passive Voice.* (LXX.) . . 162
§ 9. *Participles.* (LXXI.—LXXV.) 165
Present Participle Active 165
Future Participle Active 168
Perfect Participle Passive 170
Ablative Absolute 172
§ 10. *Infinitive.* (LXXVI.—LXXIX.) 176
Forms of Infinitive 176
Accusative with Infinitive 178
§ 11. *Gerund.* (LXXX.) 184
§ 12. *Gerundive.* (LXXXI.—LXXXII.) 187
Gerundive used for Gerund 187
Gerundive used to express Duty or Necessity 189
§ 13. *Imperative Mood.* (LXXXIII.) 192
§ 14. *Sentences* 194
§ 15. *Conjunctions.* (LXXXIV.—LXXXV.) 195

Page

§ 16. *Subjunctive Mood.* (LXXXVI.—XCIII.) 199
Subjunctive Present 199
Subjunctive Perfect 202
Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. Conditional Sentences 205
Subjunctive with ut, ne (*Purpose*) 209
Subjunctive with ut (*Consequence*). Succession of Tenses . 212
Subjunctive with quin, quo, quominus. Periphrastic Forms 214
Subjunctive with quum 217
Subjunctive in Relative Sentences 220
§ 17. *Oratio Obliqua.* (XCIV.) 223
§ 18. *Impersonal Verbs.* (XCV.—XCVI.) 226
§ 19. *Irregular Verbs.* (XCVII.—CI.) 230
Posse 230
Velle, Nolle, Malle 232
Ferre 234
Fieri, Edere 236
Ire, Quire, Nequire 238
§ 20. *Defective Verbs.* (CII.) 241

PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. *Letters, Quantity, &c.* 247
§ 2. *Noun* 248
§ 3. *Adjective* 251
§ 4. *Numerals* 254
§ 5. *Pronoun* 255
§ 6. *Verb* 258
1. Classes of Verbs 258
2. Parts of the Verb 258
3. Conjugation 259
4. The Auxiliary Esse, *to be* 260
5. Paradigms of Regular Verbs 261
6. Verbs in io of the 3d Conjugation 266
7. Deponent Verbs 266
8. Periphrastic Conjugation 266
9. Formation of Perfect Stem 267
10. Lists of Verbs, with various Perfects and Supines . . . 268
First Conjugation 268
Second Conjugation 269
Third Conjugation 271
Fourth Conjugation 276
Deponent Verbs 277
Inchoative Verbs 279
11. Irregular Verbs, Paradigms 279
12. Defective Verbs 282

Page
13. Impersonal Verbs 283
§ 7. *Adverb* 285
§ 8. *Preposition* 288
§ 9. *Conjunction* 289
§ 10. *Interjection* 290

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

PART I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. Subject and Predicate 293
II. Use of Cases 295
Nominative 295
Genitive 295
Dative 298
Accusative 300
Ablative 302
III. Use of the Indefinite Verb 306
Infinitive 306
Participle 307
Gerund 308
Gerundive 308
Supine 309

PART II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. Co-ordinate Sentences 310
II. Subordinate Sentences 310
A. *Participial Sentences* 311
B. *Accusative with Infinitive* 312
C. *Conjunctive Sentences* 313
D. *Relative Sentences* 316
E. *Interrogative Sentences* 318
Oratio Obliqua 319

APPENDIX I. Prosody 323
APPENDIX II. Greek Nouns 326
APPENDIX III. The Calendar 327
APPENDIX IV. Abbreviations 329
WORD-BUILDING 333
READING LESSONS 340
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 355
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 383

INTRODUCTION.*

§ 1. DIVISION OF THE LETTERS.

(1.) The letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*; *k* is used in but few words, and *y* and *z* only in words borrowed from the Greek.

(2.) Six are *vowels*,[1] viz., *a, e, i, o, u, y*: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.[2]

[1] Sounds formed by an *uninterrupted* emission of the air from the throat. Called *vowels* (vocales = sounding letters), because capable of being sounded by themselves.

[2] Sounds formed by *interrupting* the emission of air from the throat. Called *consonants* (con-sonare = to sound together), because incapable of being sounded by themselves.

(3.) The consonants are divided into

(*a*) Liquids,[3] *l, m, n, r*;

(*b*) Spirants,[3] *h, s, j*;

(*c*) Mutes,[3] *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, v*;

[3] The *Liquids* are formed by a *partial* interruption of the voice; the *Spirants* chiefly by the breath; and the *Mutes* by a more complete interruption of the passage of the air from the throat. *H* is regarded, indeed, simply as an aspiration, though in many words it fills the place of a consonant.

(*d*) Double consonants,[4] *x, z*.

[4] *X* is compounded of c s, g s, and *z* (occurring only in Greek words) of d s.

(4.) The union of two vowels into one syllable forms a *diphthong*. These are, in Latin, a u, e u, a e, o e (generally written *æ*, *œ*), and, in a few words, e i, o i, u i.

§ 2. SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

(5.) Every word contains as many syllables as vowels; *e. g.*, m i l e s, a soldier, is not pronounced in one syllable, as the English word *miles*, but in two, mī-les.

(6.) The quantity of syllables (that is, their *length*

* This Introduction may be omitted by *very young pupils* in their first study of the work; but the references to it in the subsequent lessons should be carefully attended to.

or *shortness*) depends upon that of the vowels which they contain. The dash (¯) placed over a vowel denotes that it is *long;* the semicircle (˘), that it is *short.* A vowel that may be used either as long or short is marked (˙), and is said to be *common.*

(7.) The following rules for the quantity of syllables must be carefully observed:

(*a*) All diphthongs are *long; e. g.*, mens-ǣ, *tables;* ā ū-rum, *gold.*

(*b*) A vowel followed by another vowel is *short; e. g.*, Dĕus, *God.*

This rule applies, even though *h* intervene between the two vowels, as *h* is not regarded as a consonant (3, *b*, n. 3); *e. g.*, trăho, vĕho.

(*c*) A vowel followed by two consonants, or a double one (3, *d*), is *long by position; e. g.*, in amānt, the *a* before nt is long by position.

☞ [*Every syllable to which none of these three rules is applicable will be marked with its proper quantity in the following pages, until other rules are given.*]

(8.) A word of but one syllable is called a *Monosyllable;* of two, a *Dissyllable;* of more than two, a *Polysyllable.* Thus, lex is a mŏnosyllable; lēgĭs, a dissyllable; incŏlās, a polysyllable.

(9.) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the second from the last, the *antepenult.* Thus, in the word incŏlās, the syllable lās is the ultimate, cŏ, the penult, and in the antepenult.

(10.) The *accent* of a syllable is a stress or elevation of the voice in pronouncing it. Observe the following rules:

(*a*) Every *dissyllable* is accented on the *penult; e. g.*, bŏ́nus, pŏ́no.

(*b*) Every *polysyllable* is accented,

1. On the *penult*, when the penult is *long; e. g.*, ămā́rĕ.

2. On the *antepenult*, when the penult is *short*; *e.g.*, ăn'ĭmŭs.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION.

(11.) [Almost every modern nation has its own way of pronouncing Latin. But as the vowels have nearly the same sounds in all the different countries of *Continental* Europe, there is something approaching to uniformity in their pronunciation; the English, however, give peculiar sounds to some of the vowels, and they pronounce Latin, therefore, unlike all the rest of the world. In this country two methods prevail, which, for convenience' sake, may be called the *Continental* and the *English*. We give them both, stating, at the same time, our decided preference for the first, both on the score of consistency and convenience. In both methods the *consonants* are pronounced nearly as in English.]

(*a*) *The Continental Method.*

Table of Vowel Sounds.

Short ă, as in hat.	Long ī, as in machine.
Long ā, as in father.	Short ŏ, as in not.
Short ĕ, as in net.	Long ō, as in no.
Long ē, as in there.	Short ŭ, as in tub.
Short ĭ, as in sit.	Long ū, as in full.

Diphthongs.

æ or œ, as e in there.
au, as ou in our.
eu, as eu in feud.
ei (rarely occurring), as i in nice.

(*b*) *The English Method.*

The vowels have the English *long* or *short* sounds.

Exc. *A* final, in words of more than one syllable, has a *broad* sound; as, fama (fame-ah).

Monosyllables.

In monosyllables, if the vowel be the *last* letter, it has the *long* sound; as mē, dō; if any *other letter*, the *short* sound; as *ĕt*, *ŏb*.

Disyllables and Polysyllables.

(1.) The vowel of an *accented penult* has the *long* sound,

(*a*) Before another vowel; as, Dé us.

(*b*) Before a single consonant; as, Jó vis.

It has the *short* sound,

(*a*) Before two consonants, or a double consonant; as, mún dus, ré xit.

(2.) The vowel of an *accented antepenult* has the *short* sound; as, ré gibus.

(3.) An *accented* vowel before a mute and liquid has usually the *long* sound; as, sá cra.

§ 4. DIVISION OF WORDS.

(12.) I. Words are divided, according to their *signification*, into *eight* classes, called Parts of Speech, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

(13.) The *Noun* is the name of an object (person, or thing); *e. g.*, *John, man, house.*

Nouns are divided into,

(*a*) Proper, denoting *individual* objects; *e. g.*, *John, Cæsar, Rome.*

(*b*) Common, denoting one or more of a *class* of objects; *e. g.*, *man, house, horses.*

(*c*) Abstract, denoting a *quality; e. g.*, *goodness, haste, virtue.*

(14.) The *Adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; *e. g.*, *good, small;* as, a *good* boy, a *small* house.

(15.) The *Pronoun* is a substitute for the noun; *e. g.*, *he, she, it,* are substitutes for *man, woman, book.*

(16.) The *Verb* declares something of a person or thing.

E. g., the boy *dances*; the boy *sleeps*; the boy *is* good. (In this last case the quality "good" is affirmed of "boy," by means of the verb *is*.)

☞ *Participles, Gerunds,* and *Supines* are words partaking in the *meaning* of the verb, and in the *form* of the noun.

(17.) The *Adverb* qualifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb; *e. g.*, the boy learns *rapidly*; the boy is *remarkably* faithful; the boy learns *very* rapidly.

(18.) *Prepositions* express the relations of objects simply; *e. g.*, *from* me; *in* the house.

(19.) *Conjunctions* connect words and sentences; *e. g.*, Thomas *and* John went to town; Thomas went, *but* John remained.

(20.) *Interjections* are merely signs of emotion; *e. g.*, *alas!*

(21.) II. Words are divided, according to their *form*, into,

(1) Four *inflected*, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.

(2) Four *uninflected*, viz., Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Rem. Inflection is the variation of a word to express different relations; *e. g.*, boy, boy*s*, the boy'*s* hat; I love, I *am* love*d*, &c. The inflection of Nouns is called *Declension*; of Verbs, *Conjugation*. The Latin language makes much more use of inflection than the English.

(22.) III. Words are divided, according to their *formation*, into,

(1) *Derivative*, *i. e.*, derived from other words.

(2) *Primitive*, *i. e.*, *not* derived from other words.

E. g., *manly*, *manhood*, are derivatives from the primitive *man*.

(3) *Compound*, *i. e.*, made up by the union of two or more words.

(4.) *Simple*, *i. e.*, not so made up.

E. g., *man-kind* is a compound, made up of the two simple words *man* and *kind*.

A. E. R

PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS,

INCLUDING

TENSES OF VERBS FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION.

SUMMARY.

[The rules and statements on this page and the following are to be thoroughly learned, as they must be applied constantly.]

(23.) Of the Letters.

(1) Six are *vowels*, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*;

(2) Four *liquids*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*;

(3) Three *c*-sounds, *c*, *g*, *q*;

(4) Two *p*-sounds, *b*, *p*;

(5) Two *t*-sounds, *d*, *t*;

(6) Two double consonants, *x*, *z*.

(7) The diphthongs are *au*, *eu*, *ae*, *oe* (and rarely *ei*, *oi*, *ui*).

(24.) General Rules of Quantity.

(1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, vĭa.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, am ā nt.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, ă gri.]

(3) All diphthongs are *long*; *e. g.*, mens ǣ, āu-rum.

[In the following pages of Part I., the quantity of all syllables is marked, except those which are covered by the above rules.]

(25.) General Rules of Gender.

[In English, gender is determined by sex alone; *e. g.*, *man* is masculine, *woman* feminine. But in Latin, gender is determined partly by the *meaning* of nouns, and partly by their *endings*. The general rules here given from the *meanings* apply to nouns of all the declensions.]

I. MASCULINES: Names of *male beings*; of most *rivers*, *winds*, *mountains*, *months*, and *nations*.

II. FEMININES: Names of *female beings*, *cities*, *countries*, *trees*, *plants*, and *islands*.

III. NEUTERS: All *indeclinable* words.

IV. COMMON: Such as have but one form for masculine and feminine; *e. g.*, e x ŭ l, *an exile* (male or female).

[These four rules are contained in the following verses.]

(25. *a.*) *Males*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *mountains* most we find
With *months* and *nations* MASCULINE declined;
But *females*, *cities*, *countries*, *trees* we name,
As FEMININE; most *islands*, too, the same.
COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

EXPLANATION OF MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The mark ⏑ indicates a *short* vowel.

" " ¯ indicates a *long* vowel.

" " = indicates that two words or phrases are *equivalent* to each other.

" " + between two words shows that they are *compounded together*.

e. g. means, *for example* (exempli gratia).

Passages in brackets [] are not meant to be committed to memory.

In the Exercises, words in parentheses () are not meant to be translated.

The References are made to *paragraphs*, not to pages. In a reference, R. means *Remark*; N. means *foot-note*.

§ 5.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (I.—V.)

LESSON I.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(26.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Shade or shadow,*	Umbră.
(*b*) *Of the shade,*	Umbræ.
(*c*) *The wood,*	Sylvă.
(*d*) *Of the wood,*	Sylvæ.

(27.) The Latin has *no article.* Umbră may be *a* shade, or *the* shade, according to its connection with other words.

(28.) The words umbră and sylvă are names of things belonging to certain *classes*, and are, therefore, *common nouns* (13, *b*).

(29.) In English, certain words (of, with, by, &c.) are generally placed before nouns, to express their relations to other words; *e. g.*, *of the* wood, &c.; but in Latin these relations are commonly indicated by different *endings* of the noun (21, (2), R.); *e. g.*, sylv-ă, the wood; sylv-æ, *of the* wood.

(30.) That part of the noun to which the *ending* is added is called the *stem; e. g.*, sylv- is the stem of sylv-ă; terr- is the stem of terr-ă, *the earth.*

(31.) There are in Latin *six* endings, which, added to the stem, form six *cases*, the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.*

(32.) And as we may speak of objects as *one* or *more*, there are two numbers, the *singular* and *plural.*

distinguished by their endings; *e. g.*, umbrā, *the shadow;* umbrǣ, *the shadows.*

(33.) In this lesson we shall use but three cases, the nominative, vocative, and genitive.

(*a*) The *nominative* answers to the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of. In the example (26, *a*), umbrā, *shade*, is in the nominative.

(*b*) The *same* form of the noun, when spoken to, is called the vocative; *e. g.*, umbrā, *shade; O shade!*

(*c*) The *genitive* expresses, in general, those relations which are expressed in English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*, and answers to the question *whose?* of *whom?* of *what?* *e. g.*, umbrā, the *shade* (of *what?*), sylvæ (of *the wood*). Here sylvæ is in the genitive.

(34.) There are *five* declensions of nouns, distinguished from each other by the endings of the *genitive singular.* In this lesson we shall use only nouns of the

FIRST DECLENSION.

Case-Endings and Paradigm.—Nominative and Genitive.

(35.) (*a*) ENDINGS.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	ā	æ
Gen.	æ	ārŭm.

(*b*) By adding these endings to the stem sylv-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	sylv-ā, *the wood; O wood!*	sylv-æ, *the woods; O woods!*
Gen.	sylv-æ, *of the wood.*	sylv-ārŭm, *of the woods.*

(36.) (*a*) Thus, nouns of the first declension have the nom. and voc. ending ă (*short*), and the gen. ending æ (*long*, 24, 3).

(*b*) The penult *a* of the gen. pl. is long. (*c*) They are of the *feminine* gender, except the names of *men* or *male* beings, or *rivers:* thus, s y l v-ă is fem.; but n a u t-ă, a *sailor*, p o ē t-ă, a *poet*, and the like, are masc.

[A few *Greek* nouns of this declension end in *e* fem., and *as, es*, masc. See Appendix.]

(37.) EXERCISE.

[In the Vocabularies, the *nom. case* is always given, with the *genitive ending* subjoined.]

I. *Vocabulary.*

Queen, rēgīnă, æ.
Crown, cŏrōnă, æ.
Wing, ālă, æ.
Dove, cōlumbă, æ.
Feather, plūmă, æ.
Daughter, fīliă, æ.
A Celt, Celtă, æ.
Farmer, ăgrĭcōlă, æ. (*m.*)
Rose, rōsă, æ.
Maid-servant, ancillă, æ.
Galba, Galbă, æ. (*m.*)
Flight, fŭgă, æ.
Province, prōvinciă, æ.
Memory, recollection, mĕmŏriă, æ.
Gaul, Galliă, æ.
Eagle, ăquīlă, æ.
A Belgian, Belgă, æ.
Injury, injūriă, æ.
Language, linguă, æ.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

Of a crown.—Of a queen.—O Galba!—Of crowns.—Of a feather.—Of eagles.—Of the Celt.—Wings.—Roses.—Of doves.—Of injuries.—Of a daughter.—O daughter!—Of the province.—Languages.—Provinces.—Belgians.—Of the provinces.—Of the maid-servant.—O maid-servant!—The farmers.—O farmer!—Of memory.—O Belgian!—Of Gaul.—The eagles.

III. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

[A few questions are subjoined in the foot-notes, merely as specimens to the first lessons.]

LESSON II.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(38.) *Examples.*

(*a*) The *queen's crown.* | Cŏrōnă rēgīnæ.

* What is the quantity of u in umbră? (24, 2.) Of æ in sylv-æ? (24, 3.) Of u in cōlumbă? (24, 2.) Of the penult (9) in fīliă? (24, 1.) Of i in linguă? Of i in ancillă? (24, 2.)

(*a*) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *unemphatic*) stands *after* the noun on which it depends; *e. g.*, rēgīnæ in (*a*) stands *after* cŏrōnă.

(*b*) The *queen's* crown (*i. e.*, *not* the *king's*). | Rēgīnæ cŏrōnă.

(*b*) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *emphatic*) stands *before* the noun on which it depends; *e. g.*, in (*b*) rēgīnæ stands *before* cŏrōnă.

[Words in the exercises considered *emphatic* are in *italics*.]

(39.) EXERCISE.

I. *Translate into English.*

Ālă cŏlumbæ.	Rŏsă ancillæ.	Fŭgă Belgārŭm.
Plūmă ăquĭlæ.	*Galbæ* fŭgă.	Plūmæ ăquĭlārŭm.
Ō rēgīnă (voc.).	Prōvinciă Galliæ.	*Injŭriārŭm* mĕmŏriă.
Fīliă ăgrĭcŏlæ.	Mĕmŏriă fŭgæ.	Linguă Celtārŭm.
Rēgīnæ fīliă.	Ō fīliă!	Fīliæ rēgīnārŭm.
Cŏlumbæ plūmă.	*Ăquĭlārŭm* fŭgă.	Linguă Belgārŭm.

II. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The queen's dove.	The wings of eagles.
The farmer's eagle.	O eagle.
The flight of doves.	Galba's daughter.
The *girl's* rose.	The shades of the woods.
The queen's rose.	The memory of *the queen*.
The flight of the Celts.	The girl's dove.
The wings of the doves.	The language of the province.
The recollection of *an injury*.	O Belgians!
O Celts!	The flight of the queen.

* 1. What is the quantity of the ultimate (9) of ancillæ? Why? (24, 3.) Of its penult? (9.) Why? (24, 2.) Of the penult of Galliæ? Why? (24, 1.)

2. What is the quantity of *a* in injuriarum? (36, *b*.) in memoria? (36, *a*.)

3. What is the stem of columba, ala, rosa? &c. (30.)

4. What is the *gender* of rosa, ala, fuga? &c. (36, *c*.) What is the gender of Galba, agricola? (25, *a*.)

5. What is the *case* of rosa, provinciæ, injuriarum, memoria? What their number?

6. How many cases have Latin nouns? (31.) What are they? (31.)

LESSON III.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative and Genitive Cases.—First Conjugation of Verbs.—Intransitives.

(40.) *Examples.*

To fly,	vŏlārĕ.
To dance,	saltārĕ.
(*a*) *The eagle flies,*	ăquĭlă vŏlăt.
(*b*) *The girl dances,*	pŭellă saltăt.

(41.) SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(*a.*) Every sentence (*e. g., the eagle flies*) consists of two parts:

1. The *subject, i. e.,* that of which something is declared (a noun, or some word used instead of a noun); *e. g., eagle.*

2. The *predicate, i. e.,* that which is declared of the subject (generally a verb); *e. g., flies.*

Rem. The predicate is frequently an adjective or participle connected with the subject by the verb *is*; *e. g.,* the rose *is sweet.*

(*b.*) The verb in the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person; *e. g., the eagle flies:* here *flies* is in the *third person singular,* to agree with *eagle.*

(42.) ACTIVE VERBS are those which express activity; *e. g.,* the eagle *flies,* the boy *dances.* Active verbs are either

(*a*) *Transitive, i. e.,* such as require an *object* to complete their meaning; *e. g.,* the boy killed (whom? or what?) the squirrel. Here *killed* is a transitive verb.

(*b*) *Intransitive, i. e.,* such as *do not* require an object; *e. g.,* the birds *fly;* the boy *dances.*

[All the verbs used in this lesson are intransitives.]

(43.) (*a*) The *infinitive* form of a verb expresses its action indefinitely, without reference to person or time; *e. g.,* to *dance,* to *plough.*

(*b*) The *indicative* mood of a verb expresses its action *definitely*, as a fact or question; *e. g.*, he *ploughs*. *Does he dance?*

[The imperative and subjunctive moods are treated of hereafter.]

(44.) TENSES.

(*a*) The *present* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time; *e. g.*, *I am ploughing, I plough.*

(*b*) The *imperfect* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time; *e. g.*, *I was ploughing, I ploughed.*

(*c*) The *future* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time; *e. g.*, *I shall be ploughing, I shall plough.*

[*Rem.* As these three forms all express *imperfect* or *incomplete action*, they should be called *Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect, Future Imperfect.* But as the present names are fixed by almost universal usage, we retain them; advising the student to fix distinctly in his mind the principle that these forms properly express action as *continuing* or *incomplete.* The tense-forms for *completed* action will be given hereafter.]

(45.) CONJUGATIONS.

(*a*) In Latin, the different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are expressed by various endings; and the affixing of these to the proper *stem* of the verb is called conjugation. (21, Rem.)

(*b*) There are *four conjugations* of verbs, distinguished by their *infinitive-endings.*

(*c*) The infinitive-ending of the *first conjugation* is ārĕ (a *long*); *e. g.*, vŏl-ārĕ, *to fly;* ăr-ārĕ, *to plough.*

(*d*) To find the *stem* of any verb, strike off the *infinitive-ending; e. g.*, vŏl-ārĕ, stem vŏl-; ăr-ārĕ, stem ăr-. To form any mood, tense, &c., of a verb, affix the proper ending to the stem thus found.

(46.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, ārĕ.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	āt.	ābăt.	ābĭt.
3d Plural.	ant.	ābant.	ābunt.

(47.) By affixing these endings to the stem v ŏ l-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, vŏl-ārĕ, *to fly*.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	vŏl-āt, *he, she, it flies.*	vŏl-ābăt, *he, she, it was flying.*	vŏl-ābĭt, *he, she, it will fly.*
3d Plur.	vŏl-ant, *they fly.*	vŏl-ābant, *they were flying.*	vŏl-ābunt, *they will fly.*

Rem. In Latin we need not use the personal pronouns *he, she, it,* or *they,* with the verb, as in English, because the person-endings *t* and *n t* indicate the person sufficiently.*

(48.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Girl, puellă, æ.
Forces, cōpiæ,† ārum (pl.).
Sailor, naută, æ (m.).
A Belgian, Belgă, æ.
To hasten, festin-ārĕ.
To watch, vĭgĭl-ārĕ.
Galba, Galbă, æ.
To fly, vŏl-ārĕ.
To dance, salt-ārĕ.
To cry out, exclām-ārĕ.
To sup, cœn-ārĕ.
To walk, ambŭl-ārĕ.

II. *Example.*

The eagle flies. | Ăquĭlă vŏlăt.

Rule of Position.—The subject nominative generally precedes the verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, ăquĭlă precedes vŏlăt.

[In the above example, which word is the subject? Why? (41, *a*, 1.) Which the predicate? Why? (41, *a*, 2.) How does vŏlăt agree with ăquĭlă? Why? (41, *b*.)]

III. *Translate into English.*

Cŏlumbæ vŏlant.—Ancillă saltăt.—Puellæ exclāmant.—Rēgīnă cœnābăt.—Puellă ambŭlābăt.—Cōpiæ festīnant.—Ăquĭlæ vŏlābant.—Galbă festīnābĭt.—Rēgīnă saltăt.—Nautæ vĭgĭlābant.—Fīliă rēgīnæ saltābĭt.—Belgæ festīnant.—Fīliă Gal-

* But when a new subject is introduced, or emphasis is required, the personal pronoun must be used in Latin.

† Cōpĭă, in the singular, means *abundance;* in the plural, *forces*

bæ exclāmăt.—Puellæ ambŭlābant.—Cōpiæ Belgārŭm festīnā-bunt.—Saltābant.—Ambŭlābant.—Cœnābunt.—Naută ambŭlā-bĭt.—Vĭgĭlābunt.—Nautæ saltant.—Agrĭcōlă cœnābĭt.

IV. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

V. *Translate into Latin.*

The dove flies.—The girl walks.—The maid-servant hastens.—The sailors dance.—The queen's maid-servant cries out.—The farmer was supping.—The queen will sup.—The sailor was watching.—The farmer's daughter will dance.—The girl's dove will fly.—The queen's maid-servant will walk.—She was hastening.—They were watching.—He (or she) was supping.—The eagles were flying.—Galba was hastening.—The forces of the Belgians will hasten.—Eagles will fly.—The sailors were crying out.—The queen was walking.

LESSON IV.

First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, Transitives.

(49.)	*To love,*	ăm-ārĕ.
	Queen,	rēgīnă.
	Daughter,	fīlĭă.
(*a*) *The queen loves her daughter.*		Rēgīnă fīlĭăm ămăt. *The queen her-daughter loves.*

Rem. The possessives, *his, her,* &c., are not expressed in Latin, except for the sake of perspicuity or emphasis.

(50.) (*a*) It has been stated (41) that every sentence consists of two parts, *subject* and *predicate*; so the English sentence (49, *a*) contains the subject, *queen*, and the predicate, *loves*. But this predicate is *limited* by

* What is the quantity of the ultimate of *Cōlumbæ?* Why? (24, 3.) Of the penult? Why? (24, 2.) Of the ultimate *a* of *puella?* (36, *a.*) Of the penult? (24, 2.) Why? Of the antepenult? Why? (24, 1.) What kind of action does *vōlant* express? (44, *a.*) In what time? What kind does *ambŭlābăt?* (44, *b.*) In what time? In what tenses may incomplete action be expressed? (Pres., past, and fut.) What is the stem of *vōlant?* Of *exclāmant?* Of *cœnābant?* [The stem may be found by striking off any tense-ending.] Why can the personal pronoun be omitted in Latin? (47, Rem.) When must it be used? (47, Rem., N.)

the word *daughter*, which is called the *direct object* of the verb. So, in the Latin sentence (49, *a*), we have,

Subject.	*Direct object.*	*Predicate.*
Rēgīnă.	fīlĭām.	ămăt.

(*b*) A verb thus taking an object is called a *Transitive* verb (42, *a*), and its direct object is said to be in the *Objective* case in English (*e. g.*, daughter), and in the *Accusative* case in Latin (*e. g.*, fīlĭām). We have thus the following:

(51.) *Rules of Syntax.*

(*a*) The Accusative is the case of the *direct object*.

(*b*) Transitive verbs govern the *accusative*.

(52.) The accusative-endings of the first declension are,
Sing. ăm; *e. g.*, fīlĭ-am, rēgīn-am, *daughter, queen.*
Plur. ās; *e. g.*, fīlĭ-ās, rēgīn-as, *daughters, queens.*

(53.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Moon, lūnă, æ.
To delight, dēlectārĕ.
Medicine, mĕdĭcīnă, æ.
To prepare, părārĕ.
Shade or *Shadow*, umbră, æ.
To obscure, obscūrārĕ.
To arm, armārĕ.
Through (prep.), pĕr (with acc.).
To take possession of; or, *to seize*, occŭpārĕ.
Island, insŭlă, æ.
To call, vŏcārĕ.
To (prep.), ad. (with accus.).
Poet, poētă, æ.
To praise, laudārĕ.
To love, ămārĕ.
Earth, terră, æ.

II. *Example.*

The poet praises the queen. | Poētă rēgīnăm laudăt.

Rule of Position.—The object accusative stands before the transitive verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, the object rēgīnăm stands before the transitive verb laudăt.

III. *Translate into English.*

Lūnă nautās dēlectăt.—Agrĭcŏlă fīlĭās ămăt.—Ancillæ mĕdĭcīnăm părant.—Umbră terræ (33, *c*) lūnăm obscūrăt.—Nautæ rēgīnăm laudant.—Galbă cōpiās armābăt.—Umbră sylvārŭm agrĭcŏlās dēlectăt.—Galbă sylvās occŭpăt.—Cōpiæ Belgārŭm sylvās occupābant.—Cŏlumbæ pĕr sylvās vŏlābant.—Rēgīnă ancillās vŏcăt.—Ancillæ rēgīnăm ămant.—Agrĭcŏlă fīlĭăm vŏcă-

bāt.—Rēgīnă poētām laudābĭt.—Rōsæ ancillās dēlectant.—Cōpiās armābunt (47, Rem.).—Sylvās occŭpābunt (47 Rem.).

IV. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

V. *Translate into Latin.*

The moon delights the farmer.—The *farmer's* daughter (38, *b*) prepares the medicine.—The eagle's feathers delight the queen.—The Belgians arm (their) forces.—The shade of the wood delights the poet.—Galba will take possession of the wood.—(They) walk through the woods.—(They) take possession of the island.—The farmer loves (his) daughter.—The farmer's daughter praises the poet.—The queen will call the maid-servants.—The queen loves (her) maid-servants.—The shadow of the earth will obscure the moon.—The poet will praise the sailors.

LESSON V.

First Declension.—Dative and Ablative Cases.

(54.) The *dative* case of nouns expresses the object *to* or *for* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, the man gives (*to*) the *boy* a book. Here *boy* is in the dative case.

Rem. The accusative case, *book*, is the *direct* object of the verb *gives*; the dative, *boy*, the *remote* object.

(55.) (*a*) The *ablative* case of nouns expresses the person or thing *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, he filled the cup *with wine*. Here, *with wine* would be expressed in Latin by one word, in the ablative.

(*b*) The ablative is also governed by prepositions expressing the relations *with*, *from*, *by*, &c.

(56.) The Dative endings are, *Sing.* æ: *Plur.* īs (*long*).

* (1.) What pronouns are not expressed in Latin? (47, R., 49, R.) For what purpose are they sometimes used? (2.) By what is the transitive verb limited? (By a direct object.) What is the case of the direct object in Latin? (51, *a*.) What is the direct object of ămăt, laudăt? &c.

The Ablative endings are, *Sing.* ā (*long*) : *Plur.* īs (*long*).

(57.) FIRST DECLENSION.

CASE-ENDINGS AND PARADIGM COMPLETE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ă.	æ.
Gen.	æ.	ārŭm.
Dat.	æ.	īs.
Acc.	ăm.	ās.
Voc.	ă.	æ.
Abl.	ā.	īs.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sylv-ă, *a wood.*	sylv-æ, *woods.*
Gen.	sylv-æ, *of a wood.*	sylv-ārŭm, *of woods.*
Dat.	sylv-æ, *to a wood.*	sylv-īs, *to woods.*
Acc.	sylv-ăm, *a wood.*	sylv-ās, *woods.*
Voc.	sylv-ă, *O wood!*	sylv-æ, *O woods!*
Abl.	sylv-ā, *with*, &c., *a wood.*	sylv-īs, *with*, &c., *woods.*

Rem. Some nouns of this declension are used only in the *plural*; viz., dīvĭtiæ, *riches*; nuptiæ, a *marriage*; insĭdiæ, an *ambush*.

(58.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Way, viă, æ.
To show, monstrārĕ.
Ambush, or *snares*, insĭdiæ, ārum (used only in the pl.).
Wild beast, fĕră, æ.
To give, dărĕ.*
To beseech, obsĕcrārĕ.
Letter, littĕræ, ārŭm.†
Friendship, ămīcĭtiă.
To establish, *To strengthen*, } confirmārĕ.
With (prep.), cŭm (governing the ablative case).
To abound, ăbundārĕ, (with abl.).
Deserter, perfŭgă, æ.
Tear, lăcrўmă, æ.
Inhabitant, incŏlă, æ (25, IV.).

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *The farmer shows the way to the girls.* — Agrĭcŏlă puellīs viăm monstrăt.

Rule of Position.—The remote object usually precedes the direct; *e. g.*, in example (*a*), *puellis* precedes *viăm*.

(*b*) *The queen walks with the maid-servants.* — Rēgīnă cŭm ancillīs ambŭlăt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition and its noun precede the verb; *e. g.*, in example (*b*), the words *cŭm ancillis* precede *ambŭlăt*.

* Dărĕ has ă *short* before rĕ.
† Littĕră, *sing.*, means a letter (as of the alphabet); littĕræ, *plur.*, a letter = an epistle.

III. *Translate into English.*

Galbă insĭdiās părăt.—Galbă Belgīs (54) insĭdiās părăt.—Belgæ ămīcĭtiăm confirmant.—Belgæ cum rēgīnā ămīcĭtiăm confirmant.—Insŭlă fĕrīs* ăbundăt.—Poētă rēgīnæ (dat., 54) rōsam dăbăt.—Cōpiæ pĕr insŭlăm festīnant.—Pērfŭgæ rēgīnăm obsĕcrābant.—Pērfŭgæ cŭm lăcrўmīs rēgīnăm obsĕcrābant.—Pērfŭga rēgīnæ (dat., 54) lĭttĕrās dăbăt.—Incŏlæ rēgīnăm obsĕcrābant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The poet praises the queen.—Galba establishes friendship.—Galba establishes friendship with the Belgians.—The Belgians will prepare snares.—The Belgians will prepare snares for the inhabitants (54).—The islands abound (in) herbs (58, III., note).—Poets give roses to queens (54).—The Belgians are beseeching Galba.—The Belgians are beseeching Galba with tears.—The queen will establish friendship.—The queen will establish friendship with the Belgians.—The deserters will beseech the queen.—The deserters will beseech the queen with tears.—The Belgians were preparing snares.—The Belgians were preparing snares for the deserters (54).

* Fĕrīs is the abl. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *abl.* case is used with all verbs and adjectives of *abounding* and *wanting*.

§ 6.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (VI.—VIII).

LESSON VI.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculine.

(59.) *Examples.*

Crassus,	Crass-ŭs.	*Of Crassus,*	Crass-ī.
Messenger,	nunti-ŭs.	*messengers,*	nunti-ī.
To hasten,	festīnārĕ.		
The messenger of Crassus hastens.		Nunti-ŭs Crass-ī festīnăt.	
The messengers hasten.		Nunti-ī festīnant.	

(60.) The *Second Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ending is ī (*long*). The nom. has two endings, ŭs for masc. gender, and ŭm for the neut.

(61.) The *case-endings* for the masculine gender are as follows:

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	ŭs.	Nom.	ī.
Gen.	ī.	Gen.	ōrŭm.
Dat.	ō.	Dat.	īs.
Acc.	ŭm.	Acc.	ōs.
Voc.	ĕ.	Voc.	ī.
Abl.	ō.	Abl.	īs.

Rem. The nouns in ŭs of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the vocative-ending differs from the nominative.

(62.) By adding these endings to the stem serv- of the noun serv-ŭs (a slave), we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	serv-ŭs, *a slave.*	serv-ī, *slaves.*
Gen.	serv-ī, *of a slave.*	serv-ōrŭm, *of slaves.*
Dat.	serv-ō, *to or for a slave.*	serv-īs, *to or for slaves.*
Acc.	serv-ŭm, *a slave.*	serv-ōs, *slaves.*
Voc.	serv-ĕ, *O slave!*	serv-ī, *O slaves!*
Abl.	serv-ō, *with, by,* &c., *a slave.*	serv-īs, *with, by,* &c., *slaves.*

[*Rem.* 1. Nearly all nouns in **ŭs** are *masc.*; but the names of *trees, plants,* &c., are *fem.* by the general rule (25, *a*). The four nouns, **alvŭs**, *belly*; **cŏlŭs**, *distaff*; **hŭmŭs**, *ground*; **vannŭs**, *fan*, are also *fem.* **Virŭs**, *juice*; **pĕlăgŭs**, *the sea*; **vulgŭs**, the *common people*, are *neuter.*

Rem. 2. **Fīliŭs**, *son*, and proper names in **ĭŭs**, take **ī** for the vocative-ending; *e. g.*, **fīlī**, *O son!* **Tullī**, *O Tully!*

Rem. 3. **Dĕŭs**, *God*, has **deŭs** for *voc. sing.*; and in the plural N. and V. **diī**, G. **deōrŭm**, D. and Abl. **diīs**, Acc. **deōs**.]

[For Greek nouns of this declension, see Appendix.]

(63.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Master (of a family or of slaves), **dŏmĭn-ŭs, ī.**
Slave, **serv-ŭs, ī.**
Village, **vīc-ŭs, ī.**
Ambassador, or *lieutenant*, **lēgāt-ŭs, ī.**
Garden, **hort-ŭs, ī.**
To, **ăd** (prep. with acc.).
In, **ĭn** (prep. with abl.).
Captive, **captīv-ŭs, ī.**
A German, **Germān-ŭs, ī.**
To call, **vŏcārĕ.**
To recall, **rĕvŏcārĕ.***
To call together, **convŏcārĕ.***
An Æduan, **Ædu-ŭs, ī.**
To flog, **vērbĕrārĕ.**
To ride (on horseback), **ĕquĭtārĕ.**

☞ He rides to the village, **ăd vīcŭm ĕquĭtăt.** When *to* implies *motion*, it must be translated by **ad** with the accusative.

II. *Translātē into English.*

Dŏmĭnŭs servŭm vŏcăt.—**Servŭs dŏmĭnō** (54) **mĕdĭcīnăm părăt.**—**Crassŭs vīcŭm occŭpăt.**—**Nuntiŭs Crassī vĭgĭlăt.**—**Servī ăd vīcŭm festīnant.**—**Nuntiŭs lēgātō** (54) **viăm monstrăt.**—**Servī dominōs laudant.**—**Ăgrĭcŏlă ăd vīcŭm ĕquĭtăt.**—**Captīvī festīnābunt.**—**Galbă copiās** (48, I.) **Germānōrŭm convŏcăt.***—**Nuntiŭs captīvōs rĕvŏcăt.**—**Servī ĭn hortō ambulābunt.**—**Æduī Crassō** (54) **insĭdiās părābant.**—**Nuntiŭs cōpiās Æduōrŭm rĕvŏcābăt.**—**Dŏmĭnŭs servōs verbĕrăt.**

III. *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect that words in parentheses () are not to be translated.]

The messengers call-together the Æduans.—The slaves prepare medicines for (their) master (dat., 54).—The Æduans take-possession-of the woods.—The master praises (his) slaves.—The slave is hastening to (ad, *with acc.*) the woods.—The ambassadors ride to the village.—Crassus will prepare an ambush for the

* The prefix *con* gives the verb the additional meaning of *together*; the prefix *re* of *back*, as in *rĕvŏcārĕ* and *convŏcārĕ.*

Æduans.—The lieutenant calls together the Germans.—The messenger will show the way to the captives (54).—The slaves are watching.—The master flogs (his) slave.—Galba will recall the lieutenant.—The Germans were preparing an ambush for Galba (54).—The slave was showing the way to the messenger (54).—The messenger was hastening to the village.—The slaves are watching in the garden.

LESSON VII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculines continued.

(64.) ALL nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in r reject the ending ŭs in the nom. and ĕ in the voc.; *e. g.*, N. and V. ăgĕr, *field*, instead of ăgĕr-ŭs, ăgĕr-ĕ. Moreover, most of those which have e in the nominative drop it in the oblique* cases; *e. g.*, N. ăgĕr, G. ăgrī instead of ăgĕr-ī.

(65.) Learn the following

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	ăgĕr, *field* (m).	puĕr (m.), *boy*.	vĭr, *man*.
Gen.	ăgr-ī, *of the field*.	puĕr-ī, *of the boy*.	vĭr-ī, *of the man*.
Dat.	ăgr-ō, *to or for field*.	puĕr-ō, *to or for*.	vĭr-ō, *to or for*.
Acc.	ăgr-ŭm, *field*.	puĕr-ŭm, *boy*.	vĭr-ŭm, *man*.
Voc.	ăgĕr, *O field!*	puĕr, *O boy!*	vĭr, *O man!*
Abl.	ăgr-ō, *with, by, &c., field*.	puĕr-ō, *with, by, &c.*	vĭr-ō, *with, by, &c.*
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	ăgr-ī, *fields*.	puĕr-ī, *boys*.	vĭr-ī, *men*.
Gen.	ăgr-ōrŭm, *of fields*.	puĕr-ōrŭm, *of boys*.	vĭr-ōrŭm, *of men*.
Dat.	ăgr-īs, *to or for fields*.	puĕr-īs, *to or for*.	vĭr-īs, *to or for*.
Acc.	ăgr-ōs, *fields*.	puĕr-ōs, *boys*.	vĭr-ōs, *men*.
Voc.	ăgr-ī, *O fields!*	puĕr-ī, *O boys!*	vĭr-ī, *O men!*
Abl.	ăgr-īs, *with fields*.	puĕr-īs, *with, by, &c.*	vĭr-īs, *with, by, &c.*

Rem. Only the following nouns keep the e in all the cases, viz., ădultĕr, *adulterer*; puĕr, *boy*; sŏcĕr, *father-in-law*; gĕnĕr, *son-in-law*; vespĕr, *evening*; lĭbĕrī (used only in plural), *children*; with the compounds of *fĕr* and *gĕr*; *e. g.*, Lūcĭfĕr, *Lucifer*; cornĭgĕr, *horned*.

* The *oblique* cases include all the cases except the nominative and vocative.

(66.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Boy, puĕr, ī.
Master (of a school), măgistĕr, trī (64).
Father-in-law, sŏcĕr, ī (65, R.).
Herb, herbă, æ.
Scholar, discīpŭl-ŭs, ī.
Son, fīli-ŭs, ī (62, R. 2).
Man, vīr, ī.
Game, lūd-ŭs, ī.
Son-in-law, gĕnĕr, ī (65, R.).
Children, lĭbĕrī, orum (rarely used in singular).
Field, ăgĕr, ăgrī (64).

II. *Example.*

(*a*) *The wood abounds in wild beasts.*

Sylvă fĕrīs ăbundăt.
The wood in-wild-beasts abounds.

(*a*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative case is used with adjectives and verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*.

III. *Translate into English.*

Puĕr măgīstrūm ămăt.—Rēgīnă sŏcĕrūm ămābĭt.—Puĕrī in ăgrō ambŭlābunt.—Ăgrī herbīs (abl., 66, II., *a*) ăbundant.—Ăgrĭcŏlă pĕr ăgrōs (58, II., *b*) ĕquĭtăt.—Ăgrĭcŏlă sŏcĕrūm vŏcăt.—Pŭellæ măgīstrūm laudant.—Vīrī in ăgrīs ambŭlābant.—Lūdī puĕrōs delectant.—Rēgīnă gĕnĕrōs ămābĭt.—Vīrī ad vīcūm festīnābant.—Ăgrĭcŏlă lĭbĕrōs ămăt.—Măgīstĕr discīpŭlōs convŏcăt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The girls walk in the fields.—The field abounds in herbs (66, II., *a*).—The sailor calls back the boys.—The queen loves (her) son-in-law.—The queen gives (her) son-in-law (dat., 54) a rose.—The scholars love (their) master.—The fields abound in herbs (66, II., *a*).—The farmers were walking through the fields.—The son of the master calls the boys.—The master walks in the garden with (his) sons.—The herbs of the field delight the poet.—Games delight girls.—The farmer shows the way to the boy.—The master will praise (his) scholars.—The master will flog (his) scholars.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Neuter.—Verbs, Second Conjugation.

(67.)		
	Slave.	servŭs (masc.).
	Cup.	pōcŭlŭm (neut.).
	To fill.	implērĕ.
The slave fills his master's cup.		Servŭs pōcŭlŭm dŏmĭnī implĕt.
		The-slave the-cup of-his-master fills.

(68.) The *case-endings* of the second declension for the *neuter* gender are,

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Acc., Voc.	ŭm.	ă.
Gen.	ī.	ōrŭm.
Dat., Abl.	ō.	īs.

Rem. The endings of the nom., acc., and voc. are *always* the same in neuter nouns. In this declension, those of dat. and abl. are alike also.

(69.) By adding these endings to the stem pōcŭl-, we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	pōcŭl-ŭm, *a cup.*	pōcŭl-ă, *cups.*
Gen.	pōcŭl-ī, *of a cup.*	pōcŭl-ōrŭm, *of cups.*
Dat.	pōcŭl-ō, *to or for a cup.*	pōcŭl-īs, *to or for cups.*
Acc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, *a cup.*	pōcŭl-ă, *cups.*
Voc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, *O cup!*	pōcŭl-ă, *O cups!*
Abl.	pōcŭl-ō, *with, by,* &c., *a cup.*	pōcŭl-īs, *with, from,* &c., *cups.*

THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

(70.) The second conjugation comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is ērĕ (e *long* before rĕ); *e. g.*, mŏn-ērĕ, *to advise;* dŏc-ērĕ, *to teach.*

(71.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE, ērĕ.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	ĕt.	ēbăt.	ēbĭt.
3d Plural.	ent.	ēbant.	ēbunt.

(72.) By affixing these endings to the stem mŏn-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, mon-ērĕ, *to advise.*			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	mŏn-ĕt, *he, she,* &c., *advises.*	mŏn-ēbăt, *he, she,* &c., *was advising.*	mŏn-ēbĭt, *he, she,* &c., *will advise.*
3d Plur.	mŏn-ĕnt, *they advise.*	mŏn-ēbant, *they were advising.*	mŏn-ēbunt, *they will advise.*

(73.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Assistance, auxĭlĭŭm, ī (68).
To ask, entreat, rōgārĕ.
Camp, castrā, ōrŭm (pl.)
To move, mŏvērĕ (70).
Cup, pōcŭlŭm, ī.
Wine, vīnŭm, ī.
To fill, implērĕ (70).
Danger, pĕrīcŭlŭm, ī.
To fear, timērĕ (70).
Forum, fōrŭm, ī.
Town, oppĭdŭm, ī.

II. *Translate into English.*

Lēgātŭs auxĭlĭŭm rōgăt.—Galbă cōpiās ăd (63, I., ☞) castrā rĕvŏcăt.—Servŭs pōcŭlŭm vīnō (55, *a*) implĕt.—Crassŭs castrā mŏvĕt.—Cōpiæ ăd oppĭdŭm festīnābant.—Ăgrĭcŏlă oppĭdŭm laudăt.—Cōpiæ Germānōrŭm ăd castrā festīnābunt.—Nuntiŭs pĕrīcŭlŭm timĕt.—Puerī pĕr fōrŭm ambŭlant.—Germānī pĕrīcŭlă nōn tĭment.—Lēgātī pĕr oppĭdŭm ambŭlābunt.—Ăgrĭcŏlă oppĭdă Æduōrŭm laudābăt.—Crassŭs oppĭdŭm occŭpābăt.—Servī pōcŭlă implēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans were asking assistance.—The Germans will move (their) camp.—The Germans were praising the town.—The ambassadors of the Æduans hasten to (63, I., ☞) the camp.—The forces of the Belgians fear the danger.—The messenger will recall the ambassadors to the camp.—Galba's messenger will recall the Germans to the town.—The ambassadors praise the towns of the Germans.—The farmers were walking through the forum.—The boy walks through the town.—The sailors will not fear the danger.—Crassus will not move (his) camp.—The Germans were-taking-possession-of the town.—The servant was filling the cup.

§ 7.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST CLASS. (IX.—X.)

LESSON IX.

Adjectives.—Class I, ŭs, ă, ŭm.

(74.) The *Adjective* (14), in Latin, agrees with the noun in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and therefore has *endings* to distinguish these; *e. g.*, *puĕr* bŏn-ŭs, *a good boy; pŭellă* bŏn-ă, a *good girl; dōnum* bŏn-ŭm, a *good gift.*

(75.) We divide adjectives into *three* classes, according to their endings. Those of the *first class* have the *fem.* ending of the first decl. of nouns, and the *masc.* and *neut.* endings of the second. Thus,

(76.)

	ENDINGS.			PARADIGM.		
	SINGULAR.					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ŭs.	ă.	ŭm.	bŏn-ŭs.	bŏn-ă.	bŏn-ŭm.
G.	ī.	æ.	ī.	bŏn-ī.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ī.
D.	ō.	æ.	ō.	bŏn-ō.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ō.
A.	ŭm.	ăm.	ŭm.	bŏn-ŭm.	bŏn-ăm.	bŏn-ŭm.
V.	ĕ.	ă.	ŭm.	bŏn-ĕ.	bŏn-ă.	bŏn-ŭm.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	bŏn-ō.	bŏn-ā.	bon-ō.
	PLURAL.					
N.	ī.	æ.	ă.	bŏn-ī.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ă.
G.	ōrum.	ārum.	ōrŭm.	bŏn-ōrum.	bŏn-ārum.	bŏn-ōrŭm.
D.	īs.	īs.	īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.
A.	ōs.	ās.	ă.	bŏn-ōs.	bŏn-ās.	bŏn-ă.
V.	ī.	æ.	ă.	bŏn-ī.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ă.
A.	īs.	īs.	īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.

(77.) Adjectives whose stem ends in ĕr do not take the endings ŭs of the nominative and ĕ of the vocative.

(*a*) Most of them drop the ĕ in inflection; *e. g.*,

pulchĕr, pulchr-ă, pulchr-ŭm, *beautiful;*
pulchr-ī, pulchr-æ, pulchr-ī, &c.

(*b*) But aspĕr, *rough;* lăcĕr, *torn;* lībĕr, *free;* mĭsĕr, *miserable;* prospĕr, *fortunate;* tĕnĕr, *tender* (and the compounds of gĕr and fĕr; *e. g.*, cornĭgĕr, flammĭfĕr), retain it; *e. g.*,

mĭsĕr, mĭsĕr-ă, mĭsĕr-ŭm,
mĭsĕr-ī, mĭsĕr-æ, mĭsĕr-ī, &c.

(78.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Good, bŏn-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Great, magn-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Many, mult-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Thick, dens-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Broad, wide, lāt-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
My, mĕ-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Thy, tŭ-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
His, hers, its (own), su-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
To see, vĭdĕrĕ.
Master (of slaves), hĕrŭs, ī.
To have, hăbērĕ.
Example, exemplŭm, ī.
River, flŭvĭŭs, ī.
To frighten, terrērĕ.

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *The slave fills the large cup.* | Servŭs pōcŭlŭm măgnŭm implĕt.

Rule of Position.—(*a*) The adjective, unless emphatic, follows the noun; *e. g.*, in the above example, magnŭm follows pōcŭlŭm.

(*b*) *The slave fills the queen's large cup.* | Servŭs magnŭm rēgīnæ pōcŭlŭm implĕt.

Rule of Position.—(*b*) When the noun governs another in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; *e. g.*, in example (*b*), magnŭm rēgīnæ pōcŭlŭm.

III. *Translate into English.*

Rēgīnă fīlĭăm suăm ămăt.—Servŭs pōcŭlŭm meŭm implĕt.—Servī pōcŭlă magnă implent.—Puĕrī măgistrŭm bŏnŭm ămant.—Belgæ vīcōs multōs hăbent.—Ăgrĭcŏlă bŏnŭs viăm monstrăt.—Măgistĕr puĕrōs bŏnōs dŏcēbĭt.—Măgistrī bŏnī exemplă bŏnă puĕrīs (54) dant.—Lēgātŭs magnăm rēgīnæ (78, II., *b*) cŏrōnăm vĭdĕt.—Perfŭgæ ăd flŭviŭm lātŭm festīnant.—Servŭs magnŭm puĕrī (78, II., *b*) pōcŭlŭm implēbăt.—Sylvæ densæ nuntiōs terrent.—Puĕrī sylvăm densăm tĭmēbunt.—Servŭs bŏnŭs hĕrŭm ămăt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans have many villages.—The queen loves (her)

good son.—The farmer shows the thick wood.—Good slaves love (their) masters.—Good masters love (their) slaves.—The Belgians have many towns.—The broad rivers frighten the deserters.—The boy sees the large town.—Crassus recalls the good lieutenant.—The son praises the great queen.—The Germans have large villages.—He praises thy slave.—He loves thy daughter.—He will praise *his own* daughter.—The deserters were hastening to the broad river.—The slave will fill the large cup of his master (78, II., *b*).—The lieutenant will see many villages of the Belgians (78, II., *b*).—The thick wood will frighten the boys.

LESSON X.

Some Forms of E s s e.—Adjectives continued.

(79.) Learn the following forms of the irregular verb *Esse*, to be:

INFINITIVE, esse, *to be.*			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	ĕst, *is.*	ĕrăt, *was.*	ĕrĭt, *he, she, it will be.*
3d Plur.	sunt, *are.*	ĕrant, *were.*	ĕrunt, *they will be.*

(80.) (*a*) *Indolence is a vice.* | Ĭnertĭă vĭtĭum est.
Indolence a vice is.

Here ĭnertĭă is the *subject* of the sentence; vĭtĭŭm is the *predicate;* both in the nominative.

Rule of Syntax.—(*a*) The *noun* in the predicate must be in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

(81.) (*b*) *The rose is beautiful.* | Rŏsă pulchră est.
The rose beautiful is.

Here rŏsă is the *subject*, and pulchră the *predicate;* both in nom. sing. fem.

Rule of Syntax.—(*b*) The *adjective* in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

[As a general rule, a sentence should not end with a *monosyllable;* but in short passages, such as the above, especially when the word before est ends in a *vowel*, or *m*, it is admissible.]

(82.) EXERCISE.

[Refer to Rules of Position (78, II.) and to Rem. on adjectives ending in *ĕr* (77).]

I. *Vocabulary.*

Happy, beātŭs, ă, ŭm.
True, vērŭs, ă, ŭm.
Friendship, ămīcĭtĭa, æ.
Everlasting, sempĭternŭs, ă, ŭm.
Labienus, Lăbiēnŭs, ī.
Foolish, stultŭs, ă, ŭm.
Tender, tĕnĕr, ă, ŭm (77, b).
Flame, flammă, æ.
Red, ruddy, rŭbĕr, ă, ŭm (77, a).
A leaf, fŏlĭŭm, ī.
Bull, taurŭs, ī.
Horned, cornĭger, ă, ŭm (77, b).
Lamb, ăgnŭs, ī.
Miserable, miser, a, um (77, b).
Europe, Eurōpă, æ.
Peninsula, pēnĭnsŭlă, æ.
Anger, īra, æ.
Illustrious, clārŭs, ă, ŭm.
Crow, corvŭs, ī.
Black, nĭgĕr, ă, ŭm (77, a).
Not, nōn (always placed before the word which it qualifies)
Always, sempĕr (adv.).
Cow, vaccă, æ.
Attica, Attĭcă, æ.
Britain, Brĭtannĭă, æ.
Ireland, Hĭbernĭă, æ.

Rem. In such phrases as *the good, the wise*, &c., the noun *(men)* is omitted in Latin, as in English; *e. g.*, *good men* = bŏnī; *fools* = stultī; *the happy* = beātī. Also, *many things* = multă (neut.); *all things* = omnĭă.

II. *Examples.*

The good are always happy. — Bŏnī sempĕr beātī sunt.
True friendships are everlasting. — Vēræ ămīcĭtiæ sempĭternæ sunt.
Labienus was a lieutenant. — Lăbiēnŭs lēgātŭs ĕrăt.
The foolish are not happy. — Stultī nōn sunt beātī.

III. *Translate into English.*

Puellă pulchră est (81, *b*).—Herbæ ăgrōrŭm tĕnĕræ sunt (81, *b*).—Ālæ ăquĭlārŭm māgnæ sunt.—Flammă rubră est.—Fŏlĭă rōsārŭm pulchră sunt.—Taurī cornĭgĕrī sunt.—Ăgnī tĕnĕrī ĭn ăgrīs sunt.—Rēgīnă pulchră ĭn hortō ambŭlābăt.—Puĕr ăgnōs pulchrōs vĭdĕt.—Vēră ămīcĭtĭa sempĭternă est.—Stultī mĭserī sunt.—Eurōpă pēnĭnsŭlă (80, *a*) est.—Attĭcă pēnĭnsŭlă est.—Īră vĭtĭŭm est magnŭm.—Crassŭs lēgātŭs ĕrăt.—Labiēnŭs lēgātŭs clārŭs ĕrăt.—Corvŭs plūmās nĭgrās hăbĕt.—Stultī nōn sunt beātī.—Bŏnŭs sempĕr beātŭs est.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The queen was beautiful.—The queen's daughter was beau-

tiful.—The beautiful daughter walks in the garden.—The fields abound in tender herbs (66, II., *a*).—The feathers of doves are beautiful.—The feathers of crows are black.—The flames were ruddy.—The leaves of roses are tender.—Cows are horned.—The queen walks in the garden with (*cŭm*) her beautiful daughters (fīliābŭs*).—The girl will see the tender lambs in the fields.—The good are not always happy.—Fools are not always miserable.—Crassus was a great lieutenant.—Britain is an island.—Ireland is an island.—Geneva is a large town.—Anger is always a vice.—Everlasting friendships are true.—Friendships are not always everlasting.

* Fīliă, *daughter*, and deă, *goddess*, have abl. pl. in ābŭs, instead of īs, to distinguish them from fīliīs, *sons*, diīs, gods.

§ 8.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

LESSON XI.

Verbs.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(83.) The *Third Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive ending is ĕrĕ (ĕ *short* before rĕ); *e. g.*, scrīb-ĕrĕ, *to write.*

(84.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, ĕre.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
Singular.	ĭt.	ēbăt.	ĕt.
Plural.	unt.	ēbant.	ent.

(85.) By affixing these endings to the stem scrīb-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, scrīb-ĕre, *to write.*			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	scrīb-ĭt, *he, she,* &c., *writes.*	scrīb-ēbat, *he, she,* &c., *was writing.*	scrīb-ĕt, *he, she,* &c., *will write.*
3d Plur.	scrīb-unt, *they write.*	scrīb-ēbant, *they were writing.*	scrīb-ent, *they will write.*

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(86.) The *Fourth Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is īrĕ (ī *long* before rĕ); *e. g.*, aud-īrĕ, *to hear.*

(87.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, īre.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	ĭt.	iēbat.	iĕt.
3d Plur.	iunt.	iēbant.	ient.

(88.) By affixing these endings to the stem aud-, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, aud-īre, *to hear.*			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, *he, she,* &c., *hears.*	aud-iēbat, *he, she,* &c., *was hearing.*	aud-iēt, *he, she,* &c., *will hear.*
3d Plur.	aud-īunt, *they hear.*	aud-iēbant, *they were hearing.*	aud-ient, *they will hear.*

(89.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

To send, mittĕrĕ (83).
In (prep.), ĭn.*
To sleep, dormīrĕ (86).
Bed-chamber, cŭbĭcŭlŭm, I.
To run, currĕrĕ (83).
To rule, rĕgĕrĕ (83).
A Gaul, Gallŭs, ī.
Tower, castellŭm, ī.
Small, parvŭs, ă, ŭm.
To come, vĕnīrĕ (86).
A Roman, Rōmānŭs, I.
To lead, dūcĕrĕ (83).
World, mundŭs, ī.
To conquer, vincĕrĕ (83).
To fortify, mūnīrĕ (86).
Divitiacus, Dīvĭtĭācŭs, I.

II. *Example.*

Crassus comes to the large town. | Crassŭs magnŭm ăd oppĭdŭm vĕnĭt.

Rule of Position.—The adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition is frequently placed *before* the preposition, *e. g.*, magnŭm in the example.

III. *Translate into English.*

Belgæ lēgātōs mittunt.—Belgæ lēgātōs ăd Crassŭm mittunt.—Puĕrī ĭn cŭbĭcŭlō dormiunt.—Puellæ parvō (89, II.) ĭn cŭbĭcŭlō dormiēbant.—Rēgīnă magnŭm ăd oppĭdŭm vĕniĕt.—Galbă cōpiās Rōmānōrŭm dūcĭt.—Dīī (62, *R.*, 3) mundŭm rĕgunt.—Deŭs mundŭm sempĕr rĕgĭt.—Rōmānī Gallōs vincēbant.—Lēgātŭs castellă mūniēbăt.—Æduī nuntĭŭm ad Labiēnŭm mittunt.—Cōpiæ Belgārŭm ăd oppĭdŭm vĕnient.—Dīvĭtĭācŭs cōpiās Æduōrŭm dūcēbăt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The horse runs.—The boy sleeps.—The boy was running.—The slave comes.—Crassus fortifies many towers.—The slave was coming to (63, I., ☞) his master.—The beautiful boy will sleep in a little bed-chamber (89, II.).—The gods always govern

* *In*, signifying *into* or *unto*, governs the *accusative*; signifying *in* governs the *ablative*.

the world.—The Romans are coming to the large town.—The farmer was sleeping in the field.—Divitiacus was leading the forces of the Æduans.—The Belgians send messengers to Crassus.—Crassus sends a messenger to the Belgians.—The girls will sleep in a little bed-chamber.—Crassus will fortify the towers.—The Romans take-possession-of the towers of Gaul.

§ 9.

PASSIVE VERBS. (XII.—XIII.)

LESSON XII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

(90.) THE endings of the third persons of verbs, in the tenses for *incomplete* or *continued* action (44), are the same in the passive as in the active voice, with the addition of the syllable ŭr. Thus, we have in the

(91.) FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Active.	Passive.
PRESENT.		
3d Sing.	ăm-*āt, he, she, it, loves.*	am-āt-*ur, he, she, it is loved.**
3d Plur.	àm-*ant, they love.*	àm-ant-*ūr, they are loved.*
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	am-*ābăt, he was loving.*	àm-ābāt-*ŭr, he was loved.*
3d Plur.	am-*ābant, they were loving.*	ăm-ābant-*ŭr, they were loved.*
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	ăm-*ābīt, he shall or will love.*	àm-ābīt-*ŭr, he shall or will be loved.*
3d Plur.	ăm-*ābunt, they shall or will love.*	ăm-ābunt-*ŭr, they shall or will be loved.*

(92.) SECOND CONJUGATION.

	Active.	Passive.
PRESENT.		
3d Sing.	mŏn-*ēt, he advises.*	mŏn-ēt-*ŭr, he is advised.*
3d Plur.	mŏn-*ent, they advise.*	mŏn-ent-*ŭr, they are advised.*
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	mŏn-*ēbăt, he was advising.*	mŏn-ēbāt-*ŭr, he was advised.*
3d Plur.	mŏn-*ēbant, they were advising.*	mŏn-ēbant-*ŭr, they were advised.*
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	mŏn-*ēbīt, he will advise.*	mŏn-ēbīt-*ŭr, he will be advised.*
3d Plur.	mŏn-*ēbunt, they will advise.*	mŏn-ēbunt-*ŭr, they will be advised.*

* The English language has no forms for incomplete action in the passive voice. *He is loved, he was loved,* &c., *the house is built,* &c., properly express action complete. An awkward periphrasis—he is *being loved,*

(93.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Game, sport, lūdŭs, ī.	*To teach,* dŏcēre.
To delight, dēlectārē.	*Seize,* occupārē.

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *Crassus calls the lieutenant.*	Crassŭs lēgātŭm vŏcăt.
(*b*) *The lieutenant is called by Crassus.*	Lēgātŭs ā Crassō vŏcātŭr.

In these examples, the same action is expressed (viz., the *calling of the lieutenant*) in (*a*) by the *active* form, in (*b*) by the *passive*. Every sentence in which a transitive verb occurs may thus be changed into the passive form. The *agent* (Crassus) is the *subject nominative* in (*a*); and in (*b*) is expressed by the *ablative (Crassō)* with the preposition *ā, by.*

Rem. If the subject be a *thing*, not a *person*, nor considered *as a person*, the preposition is omitted; *e. g.*, Pōcŭlŭm *vīnō implētŭr*, the cup is filled *with wine.* (This is the abl. of *cause* or *means.*)

III. *Translate into English.*

Auxĭlĭŭm ā lēgātō rŏgātŭr.—Auxĭlĭŭm a lēgātō rŏgābātŭr.—Auxilium ā lēgātō rogabitur.—Cōpiæ ā Galbā rĕvŏcantŭr.—Pōcŭlŭm ā servō implēbātŭr.—Oppĭdă ā Crassō occupābantŭr.—Mĕdĭcīnă ăb ancillīs părābĭtŭr.—Puĕrī bŏnī ā măgistrō laudantŭr.—Cōpiæ Germānōrŭm ā Labiēnō rĕvŏcābuntŭr.—Pōcŭlă vīnō (93, II., R.) implentŭr.—Puĕrī lūdīs (93, II., R.) delectantŭr.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The master is loved by (his) scholars.—The master will be loved by (his) good scholars.—The cups will be filled (with) wine (93, II., R.).—The Germans were called together by Crassus.—The villages were seized by the Romans.—The towns will be seized by the Æduans.—Medicines are prepared by the slaves.—Good boys will be praised by their masters.—The good boys will be advised by their masters.—The scholars are taught by their master.—The scholar was taught by his

the house is *being built*—is sometimes employed, but is not to be approved. The house is *building* is a form sanctioned by usage, but in many verbs it would be ambiguous. The pupil must remember, then, that in the exercises in the First Part, the forms *is loved, is advised, was advised,* &c., are used to express incomplete action.

master.—The girls are delighted with games (93, II., R.).—The slaves will be delighted with games.—The queen is praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen was praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen will be praised by (her) maid-servant.

LESSON XIII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(94.) THIRD CONJUGATION.

	Active.	Passive.
PRESENT.		
3d Sing.	rĕg-*ĭt, he, she, it rules.*	rĕgĭt-*ŭr, he, she, it is ruled.*
3d Plur.	rĕg-*unt, they rule.*	rĕgunt-*ŭr, they are ruled.*
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	rĕg-*ēbăt, he was ruling.*	rĕgēbāt-*ŭr, he was ruled.*
3d Plur.	rĕg-*ēbant, they were ruling.*	rĕgēbant-*ŭr, they were ruled.*
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	rĕg-*ĕt, he shall or will rule.*	rĕgēt-*ŭr, he shall or will be ruled.*
3d Plur.	rĕg-*ent, they shall or will rule.*	rĕgent-*ŭr, they shall or will be ruled.*

(95.) FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	Active.	Passive.
PRESENT.		
3d Sing.	aud-*ĭt, he hears.*	audīt-*ŭr, he is heard.*
3d Plur.	aud-*iunt, they hear.*	audiunt-*ŭr, they are heard.*
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	aud-*iēbăt, he was hearing.*	audiēbāt-*ŭr, he was heard.*
3d Plur.	aud-*iēbant, they were hearing.*	audiēbant-*ŭr, they were heard.*
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	aud-*iĕt, he shall or will hear.*	aud-*iēt-ŭr, he shall or will be heard.*
3d Plur.	aud-*ient, they shall or will hear.*	audient-*ŭr, they shall or will be heard.*

(96.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

A Roman, Rōmānŭs, ī.
To lay aside, dēpōnĕrĕ.
Garrison, præsidĭum, ī.
A Gaul, Gallŭs, ī.
To distribute, arrange, } dispōnĕrĕ.

II. *Translate into English.*

Lēgātī ā Belgīs mittuntŭr.—Mundŭs ā Dĕō rĕgĭtŭr.—Cōpiæ

Rōmānōrŭm ā Galbā dūcuntŭr.—Gallī a Rōmānīs vincuntŭr.—Irā ā rēgīnā dēpōnītŭr.—Castellŭm ā Labiēnō mūnītŭr.—Præsidĭă ā lēgātō dispōnuntŭr.—Lēgātī ăd Æduōs mittēbantŭr.—Cōpiæ Æduōrŭm ad vīcŭm dūcentŭr.—Epistŏlă ā rēgīnā scrībītŭr.—Oppĭdă Belgārŭm muniēbantŭr.—Nuntiī ăd Crassŭm mittentŭr.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

Galba is conquered by the Belgians.—The camp is fortified by Crassus.—The forces of Crassus are led to the camp.—The forces of the Ædui are sent to the village.—Anger will be laid-aside by the queen.—Galba was conquered by the Gauls.—Letters will be written by the queen.—Letters are written to (ad) Crassus.—The garrisons are not distributed by Crassus.—The towers are not fortified by the Belgians.—The world is always governed by God.—The Germans are ruled by a lieutenant.—A letter will be written by the queen.

§ 10.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—PARTIAL TREATMENT. (XIV.—XV.)

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.

(97.) THE *Third Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. sing.* ends in ĭs.

Rem. To find the stem of any noun of this declension, strike off ĭs from the gen. sing.; *e. g.*, *gen.* hŏmĭnis (*of a man*), stem hŏmĭn.

(98.) The case-endings are as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. & F.	Neut.		M. & F.	Neut.
N.	—	—	N.	ēs.	ă (ĭă).
G.	ĭs.	ĭs.	G.	ŭm (ĭŭm).	ŭm (ĭŭm).
D.	ī.	ī	D.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.
A.	ĕm (ĭm).	like N.	A.	ēs.	ă (ĭă).
V.	like N.	like N.	V.	ēs.	ă (ĭă).
A.	ĕ (ī).	ĕ (ī).	A.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

Rem. 1. The nom. ending is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. Of the changes to which the stem is subject, see hereafter (Part II.).

2. Of the endings ĭm, ī (in acc. and abl. sing.), and ĭa, ĭŭm (plur.), see hereafter (Part II.).

3. The *genders* of all nouns of this declension are marked in the vocabularies. The general rules of gender (25, *a*) of course apply to this declension: special rules are given (355). We give here only

(99.) *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Most nouns which add *s* to the stem to form the nominative are feminine.

(100.) PARADIGMS—MASCULINE AND FEMININE FORMS.

Sing.	Speech (m.).	Honour (m.).	City (f.).	Nation (race), f.	Law (f.).
N. and V.	sermŏ.	hŏnŏr.	urb-s.	gens (gents).	lex (legs).
Gen.	sermŏn-ĭs.	hŏnŏr-ĭs.	urb-ĭs.	gent-ĭs.	lĕg-ĭs.
Dat.	sermŏn-ī.	hŏnŏr-ī.	urb-ī.	gent-ī.	lĕg-ī.
Acc.	sermŏn-ĕm.	hŏnŏr-ĕm.	urb-ĕm.	gent-ĕm.	lĕg-ĕm.
Abl.	sermŏn-ĕ.	hŏnŏr-ĕ.	urb-ĕ.	gent-ĕ.	lĕg-ĕ.
Plur.	Speeches.	Honours.	Cities.	Races.	Laws.
N., A., V.	sermŏn-ēs.	hŏnŏr-ēs.	urb-ēs.	gent-ēs.	lĕg-ēs.
Gen.	sermŏn-ŭm.	hŏnŏr-ŭm.	urb-ĭŭm.	gent-ĭŭm.	lĕg-ŭm.
D. and A.	sermŏn-ĭbŭs.	hŏnŏr-ĭbŭs.	urb-ĭbŭs.	gent-ĭbŭs.	lĕg-ĭbŭs.

Rem. 1. Observe that *d* or *t* in the stem is *dropped* in the nom. before *s*; and *c* or *s* combined with *s* to form *x*; *e. g.*, laus=laud-s; arx=arc-s; lex=leg-s; gens=gent-s.

2. All the endings are *short* but ī (dat. sing.) and ēs (N., A., V. plur.).

(101.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

[In the following vocabularies, the *stem* of every noun of the third declension is placed immediately *after* the nominative form, and *before* the genitive ending.]

King, rēx, (rēg) is, m.	*Rock,* pĕtră, æ.
Law, lex, (lēg) is, f.	*Tree,* arbŏr, (arbŏr) is, f.
To abrogate, ābrŏgāre.	*To build a nest,* nīdĭfĭcārĕ.
Just, justŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Cæsar,* Cæsăr, (Cæsăr) is.
Worthy, dignŭs, ă, ŭm.	*And,* ĕt (conj.).
Part, pars, (part) is, f.	*Consul,* consŭl, (consŭl) is, m.
Common-people, plebs, (plēb) is, f.	*General,* impĕrātŏr, (impĕrātŏr) is, m.
To leave, rĕlinquĕrĕ.	*A Helvetian,* Helvētiŭs, ī.

II. *Translate into English.*

Rex lēg-ēs ābrŏgăt.—Cōpiæ ăd urb-ĕm festīnant.—Lēg-ēs justæ sunt.—Pars plēb-is urb-ĕm rĕlinquĭt.—Magnă pars plēb-is urb-ĕm rĕlinquĭt.—Āquilæ in pĕtrīs ĕt arbŏr-ibŭs nīdĭfĭcant.—Lēg-ēs ă rēg-ĕ ābrŏgantŭr.—Cōpiæ ăd urb-ĕm rĕvŏcantŭr.—Helvētiī ăd Cæsăr-ĕm lēgātōs mittunt.—Nuntiŭs sermōn-ĕm consŭl-is laudăt.—Impĕrātŏr nuntiōs rĕvŏcăt.—Rex dignīs (54, and 82, I., R.) hŏnōr-ēs dăbĭt.—Cōpiæ Belgārŭm urb-ĕm rĕlinquēbant.—Cæsăr ăd vīcōs festīnābăt.—Lēgātī ăd impĕrātŏr-ĕm mittuntŭr.—Impĕrātŏr nuntiōs ăd urb-ĕm mittĕt.—Lēgātŭs part-ĕm cōpiārŭm rĕvŏcābĭt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The king will revoke the laws.—The general will leave the village.—The consuls send ambassadors.—The consuls recall the ambassadors.—Doves build their nests in gardens and trees.—The consuls are praised.—The city is fortified.—Honours will be given.—Honours are given to the worthy (82, I., R.).—Ambassadors will be sent to the consuls.—Honours are given to Cæsar (54).—The speech of the consul is praised.—Honours are given to the general.—A great part of the common-people will leave the city.—The consuls will recall the common-people.—The ambassadors will leave the city.—The general will be sent.—Cæsar will be recalled.—The laws were unjust.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(102.) PARADIGMS.—NEUTER FORMS.

Sing.	Sea (n.).	Song (n.).	Work (n.).	Animal (n.).
N., A., V.	mār-ē.	carmĕn.	ŏpŭs.	ănīmāl.
G.	mār-īs.	carmĭn-is.	ŏpĕr-īs.	ănīmāl-is.
D.	mār-ī.	carmĭn-ī.	ŏpĕr-ī.	ănīmāl-ī.
Abl.	mār-ī.	carmĭn-ĕ.	ŏpĕr-ĕ.	ănīmāl-ī.
Plur.	Seas.	Songs.	Works.	Animals.
N., A., V.	mar-iā.	carmĭn-ă.	ŏpĕr-ă.	ănīmāl-iă.
G.	mār-ĭŭm.	carmĭn-ŭm.	ŏpĕr-ŭm.	ănīmāl-ĭŭm.
D., Abl.	mār-ībŭs.	carmĭn-ībŭs.	ŏpĕr-ībŭs.	ănīmāl-ībŭs.

Rem. 1. Neuters whose nom. ends in a l, ar, or e, take ī for abl. sing. ending; iă, nom. plur., and iŭm, gen. plur.

2. *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Nouns whose stems end in a l or a r are *neuter.*

(103.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Name, nōmĕn, (nōmĭn) is (n.).
To enrol, conscrībĕrĕ.
Treaty, fœdŭs, (fœdĕr) is (n.).
To violate, violārĕ.
Spoil or *booty*, prædă, æ.
Ally, sŏcĭŭs, ī.
Summer, æstās, (æstāt) is (f.).
Cold, frīgŭs, (frīgŏr) is (n.).
Burden, ŏnŭs, (ŏnĕr) is (n.).
To carry, portārĕ.
Wound, vulnŭs, (vulnĕr) is (n.).
To cure, heal, sānārĕ.
To mitigate, mītīgārĕ.
River, flūmĕn, (flūmĭn) is (n.).
To swim across, transnārĕ (gov. *acc.*).
Work, ŏpŭs, (ŏpĕr) is (n.).
Fish, pīscis, (pisc) is (m.).
Time, tempŭs, (tempŏr) is (n.).
To change, mūtārĕ.
Man, hŏmŏ, (hŏmĭn) is (m.).
Stormy, turbid, turbĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.

II. *Translate into English.*

Consŭl nōmĭnă conscrībĭt.—Cæsăr fœdŭs (*acc.*) viŏlābăt, ĕt prædăm sŏciīs (54) dăbăt.—Æstās frīgŭs (*acc.*) mītīgăt.—Perfŭgæ flūmĕn (*acc.*) transnābant.—Magnŭm ŏpŭs est.—Flūmĕn piscĭbŭs ăbundăt (66, I., *a*).—Tempŭs hŏmĭnēs mūtăt.—Tempŏră mūtantŭr.—Frīgŭs æstātĕ (93, II., R.) mītīgābĭtŭr.—Cōpiæ Belgārŭm flūmĭnă transnābant.—Servŭs ŏnŭs (*acc.*) magnŭm portăt.—Cæsăr nōmĭnă nōn conscrībĕt.—Ŏnŭs magnŭm est.—Mĕdĭcīnă vulnŭs sānăt.—Carmĭnă puellās dēlectant.—Nōmĭnă hŏmĭnŭm mūtābuntŭr.—Mărĭă turbĭdă sunt.—Flūmĕn magnŭm erat turbĭdŭm.—Magnă sunt ŏnĕră captīvōrŭm.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The Germans violate treaties.—The consuls will not enrol the names.—The slaves were carrying great burdens.—The messenger was-swimming-across the river.—The boy swims-across the river.—Great burdens are carried.—The burden will be carried by the slave.—The rivers abound in fish (66, II., *a*).—The wounds are healed.—The burdens are great.—The lieutenant will not violate the treaty.—The names are enrolled by the consuls (93, II.).—The treaty is violated.—The treaty is violated by Cæsar.—The treaty will be violated, and the spoil will be given to the allies (dat.).—The consul enrols the names of the deserters.—The names of the deserters will be enrolled.

The wounds of the prisoners will be healed.

§ 11.

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

LESSON XVI.

Adjectives.—Second Class.—Two Endings.

(104.) ADJECTIVES of the *Second Class* have ĭs in the nom. sing. for *masc.* and *fem.* endings, and ĕ for the *neuter*. They are declined throughout like the third declension of nouns; *e. g.*, brĕvĭs, *short.*

(105.) PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	brĕv-ĭs.	brĕv-ĭs.	brĕv-ĕ.	brĕv-ēs.	brĕv-ēs.	brĕv-ĭă.
G.	brĕv-ĭs.	brĕv-ĭs.	brĕv-ĭs.	brĕv-ĭŭm.	brĕv-ĭŭm.	brĕv-ĭŭm.
D.	brĕv-ī.	brĕv-ī.	brĕv-ī.	brĕv-ĭbŭs.	brĕv-ĭbŭs.	brĕv-ĭbŭs.
Acc.	brĕv-ĕm.	brĕv-ĕm.	brĕv-ĕ.	brĕv-ēs.	brĕv-ēs.	brĕv-ĭă.
Abl.	brĕv-ī.	brĕv-ī.	brĕv-ī.	brĕv-ĭbŭs.	brĕv-ĭbŭs.	brĕv-ĭbŭs.

Rem. 1. Twelve adjectives* of this class take ĕr for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of ĭs; *e. g.*, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ; cĕlĕbĕr, celĕbrĭs, celĕbrĕ.

Rem. 2. The abl. has ĕ instead of ī in jŭvĕnĭs, *a youth*; ædīlĭs, *ædile.* The gen. pl. has ŭm instead of ĭŭm in cĕlĕr, *swift.*

(106.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Father, pătĕr, (patr) ĭs.
Noble, nōbĭlĭs, ĕ.
Every, *All, the whole*, } omnĭs, ĕ.
Sweet, dulcĭs, ĕ.
To demand, poscĕrĕ.
Soldier, mīlĕs, (mīlīt) ĭs (m.).
Study, zeal, stŭdĭŭm, ī.
Kind, bĕnignŭs, a, um.
Dog, cănĭs, (căn) ĭs (c., 25, IV.).
To endure, tōlĕrārĕ.
Hostage, ōbsĕs, (ōbsīd) ĭs (c., 25, IV.).
Uncertain, incertŭs, ă, ŭm.
Useful, ūtĭlĭs, ĕ.
Iron, ferrŭm, ī.
Gold, aurŭm, ī.
Severe, heavy, grăvĭs, ĕ.
Life, vītă, æ (f.).
Brave, fortĭs, ĕ.
Patiently, pătientĕr (adv.).
Wolf, lŭpŭs, ī (m.).
Like, sĭmĭlĭs, ĕ.
A chief, princeps, (princĭp) ĭs (c., 25, IV.).

* Ācĕr, *sharp.*
Alăcĕr, *cheerful.*
Campestĕr, *of the plain.*
Cĕlĕbĕr, *famous.*
Cĕlĕr, *swift.*
Equestĕr, *equestrian.*
Palustĕr, *marshy.*
Pedestĕr, *pedestrian.*
Salūbĕr, *salubrious.*
Sylvestĕr, *woody.*
Terrestĕr, *terrestrial.*
Vŏlūcĕr, *swift.*

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *The father is kind to his son.*	Pătĕr fīlĭō bĕnignŭs est.
(*b*) *The dog is like* (*to*) *the wolf.*	Cānĭs lŭpō sĭmĭlĭs est.

(*c*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The dative case is used with all adjectives that are followed by the words *to* or *for* in English: hence with adjectives expressing (*a*) *advantage* or *disadvantage*, (*b*) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

[Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* also take the gen.]

III. *Translate into English.*

Mīlĭtēs omnēs pĕrīcŭlŭm tĭment.—Impĕrātŏr fortĭs mīlĭtēs omnēs convŏcăt.—Vītă brĕvĭs est.—Vītă est brĕvĭs ĕt incertă.—Vīnŭm est dulcĕ.—Princĭpēs fortēs oppĭdă omnĭă mūnĭēbant.—Cæsăr obsĭdēs nōbĭlēs poscĭt.—Tempŭs brĕvĕ est.—Nōn omnēs mīlĭtēs sunt fortēs.—Ferrŭm ūtĭlĕ est.—Aurŭm ĕt ferrŭm sunt ūtĭlĭă hŏmĭnĭbŭs (106, II., *c*).—Mīlĕs vulnŭs grăvĕ pătientĕr tŏlĕrăt.—Consŭl fortĭs pĕrīcŭlă nōn tĭmēbĭt.—Ferrŭm ūtĭlĕ hŏmĭnĭbŭs (106, II., *c*) est.—Mīlĭtēs fortēs vulnĕră grăvĭă pătientĕr tŏlĕrābunt.—Stŭdĭŭm est puĕrīs (106, II., *c*) ūtĭlĕ.—Impĕrātŏr mīlĭtŭbŭs (106, II., *c*) bĕnignŭs ĕrăt.—Cānĭs lŭpō sĭmĭlĭs est.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The noble queen comes to the city.—The brave lieutenant endures patiently (his) severe wound.—All the soldiers hasten to the camp.—The brave chiefs will fortify many towns.—The noble hostages come to Cæsar (63, I., ☞).—The time is uncertain.—Soldiers are not always useful.—Towns are useful for men (106, II., *c*).—Noble ambassadors are sent.—Many hostages are demanded by the consuls (93, II.).—All the soldiers will be called together.—Not all chiefs are noble.—Wine is sweet and iron is useful.—The dangers are not feared by the brave soldiers (93, II.).—The brave lieutenant praises the noble chief.—Dogs are like wolves (106, II.).—The study of *letters* (littĕrārŭm) is useful for all (106, II.).—The soldiers are kind to the prisoners (106, II.).—Gold is heavy.—Iron is not like gold (106, II.).

Even in these, the ending ĭs is sometimes found in nom. sing. masc.; *e. g.*, *tumultus equestris*, Liv., xxix., 35.

§ 12.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD CLASS.

LESSON XVII.

Adjectives.—Third Class.—One Ending.

(107.) Adjectives of the *Third Class* have but one ending in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, fēlīx (m., f., n.), *happy;* audāx (m., f., n.), *bold:* paupĕr (m., f., n.), *poor.*

(108.) PARADIGM.—*Fēlix, happy.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	fēlīx.	fēlix.	fēlix.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ĭā.
G.	fēlīc-ĭs.	fēlīc-ĭs.	fēlīc-ĭs.	fēlīc-ĭūm.	fēlīc-ĭūm.	fēlīc-ĭūm.
D.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ĭbūs.	fēlīc-ĭbūs.	fēlīc-ĭbūs.
Acc.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlix.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ĭā.
Abl.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ĭbūs.	fēlīc-ĭbūs.	fēlīc-ĭbūs.

[*Rem.* 1. The abl. has ē instead of ī (*a*) in paupĕr, *poor;* sĕnex, *old* (gen. sĕnĭs); princeps, *chief;* compos, *possessed of,* and most ending in ĕs; *e. g.*, hospĕs, *guest;* pubĕs, *grown up,* &c. Also in the compounds of corpŭs, cŏlŏr, and pĕs.

(*b*) Participles in ns have, as participles, ē, but as *adjectives* ī; *e. g.*, flōrentē rōsā, *the rose blooming;* flōrentī rōsā, *in a blooming rose.*

(*c*) Adjectives used as nouns take ē; *e. g.*, săpĭens, *a wise man,* abl. săpientē.

Rem. 2. The gen. pl. takes ŭm instead of ĭŭm in vĕtŭs, *old* (vĕtĕrŭm); consors, *partaking of;* dĕgĕnĕr, *degenerate;* dīvĕs, *rich;* inops, *helpless;* mĕmŏr, *mindful;* immĕmŏr, *unmindful;* supplex, *suppliant;* ūbĕr, *rich;* vĭgĭl, *watching.* Also in all which take ē in the abl.; *e. g.*, princeps, princĭpĕ, princĭpŭm.]

(109.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

War, bellŭm, ī.
Fierce, ātrōx, (ātrōc) īs (107).
To wage, carry on, gĕrĕrĕ.
Horse-soldier, ĕquĕs, (ĕquīt) ĭs (m.).
Tenacious, tĕnax, (tĕnāc) ĭs (107).
Wise, săpiens, (săpient) ĭs (107).
Death, mors, (mort) ĭs (f.).
To renew, rĕdintĕgrārĕ.
Rich, dīvĕs, (dīvīt) ĭs (107).
To terrify, terrērĕ.
Stag, cervŭs, ī.
Powerful, pŏtens, (pŏtent) ĭs (107).
Scout, explōrātŏr, ōris (m.).
To kill, occīdĕrĕ.
Battle, prælĭŭm, ī.
And, ĕt (conj.).
Swift, vēlox, (vēlōc) ĭs.
Horse, ĕquus, ī.
Citizen, cīvis, (cīv) ĭs (c., 25, IV.).

II. *Example.*

The inhabitants carry on a fierce war.

Incŏlæ bellŭm ātrox gĕrunt.
[Refer to 78, II., *a*.]

III. *Translate into English.*

Incŏlæ bellă magnă ĕt ātrōcĭă gĕrunt.—Nuntiŭs vēlox ăd castră vĕnīt.—Equĭtēs vēlōcēs ăd sylvăm festīnant.—Vīr săpiens mortĕm nōn tīmĕt.—Discīpŭlŭs mĕmŏrĭăm tenācĕm hăbĕt.—Mĕmŏrĭă ĭn puĕrīs est tĕnax.—Impĕrātŏr nuntiŭm vēlōcĕm mittĕt.—Princīpēs fortēs prælĭŭm ātrox redintegrābunt.—Cervŭs vēlox est.—Equŭs vēlox currīt.—Cănēs sunt vēlōcēs.—Săpiens (82, I., R.) nōn sempĕr dīvĕs est.—Dīvītēs nōn sempĕr beātī sunt.—Princeps pŏtens lēgātōs mittĭt.—Princīpēs pŏtentēs captīvōs occīdunt.—Impĕrātŏr princīpēs omnēs convŏcăt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The thick woods terrify the swift messenger.—The fierce battle terrifies all the inhabitants.—The noble general was praising the swift messenger.—The illustrious consul sends ambassadors to (63, I., ☞) the powerful chief.—The powerful chief will kill all the prisoners.—Rich (men) are not always wise.—The wise (man) does not fear the fierce battle.—The soldiers praise the rich citizen.—The memory in boys is always tenacious.—Dogs and horses are swift.—The consul will not renew the fierce battle.—The illustrious general will recall the swift horse-soldiers.—Rich citizens fear fierce wars.—The fierce battles were terrifying all the hostages.—The wise general calls-together all the ambassadors.—The fierce battle will be renewed.—All the prisoners will be killed by the powerful chiefs (93, II.).—The swift messengers are frightened.—Great wars are carried on.—Rich citizens are killed.

§ 13.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

(110.) The *Fourth Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ends in ūs (*long*). The nom. ending for *masculines* is ŭs, and for neuters ū; *e. g.*, fruct-ŭs, *fruit*, masc.; corn-ū, *horn*, neut.

(111.) The case-endings are as follows:

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Plur.	Masc.	Neut.
N. and V.	ŭs.	ū.	N. and V.	ūs.	ŭă.
Gen.	ūs.	ūs or ū.	Gen.	ŭŭm.	ŭŭm.
Dat.	ŭī.	ū.	Dat.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.
Acc.	ŭm.	ū.	Acc.	ūs.	ŭă.
Abl.	ū.	ū.	Abl.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

(112.) By adding these endings to the stems *fruct-* and *corn-*, we get the

PARADIGM.*

	Sing., fruit (m.).	Plur., fruit.		Sing., horn (n.).	Plur., horns.
N. and V.	fruct-ŭs.	fruct-ūs.			
Gen.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ŭŭm.	N., A., V.	corn-ū.	corn-ŭă.
Dat.	fruct-uī.	fruct-ĭbŭs.	Gen.	corn-ūs, or ŭ.	corn-ŭŭm.
Acc.	fruct-ŭm.	fruct-ūs.	Dat., Abl.	corn-ū.	corn-ĭbŭs.
Abl.	fruct-ū.	fruct-ĭbŭs.			

[*Rem.* 1. The following take ŭbŭs in dat. and abl. plur. instead of ĭbŭs, viz., ăcŭs (f.), *needle*; arcŭs (m.), *bow*; artŭs (m.), *joint*; fĭcŭs (f.), *fig-tree*; lăcŭs (m.), *lake*; partŭs (m.), *birth*; portŭs (m.), *harbor*; quercŭs (f.), *oak*; spĕcŭs (m.), *den*; trĭbŭs (f.), *tribe*; pĕcŭ (n.), *cattle*; vĕrū (n.), *a spit*.†]

2. The *feminine* nouns of this declension are, ăcŭs, *needle*; anŭs,

* The fourth declension is only a contracted form of the third: thus,

N. fruct-us.
G. fruct-uĭs, contr. fructūs.
D. fruct-uī.
Acc. fruct ŭm, contr. fructŭm, &c.

† The following verses embrace these:

Arcŭs, ăcŭs, portŭs, vĕrū,
Fĭcŭs, lăcŭs, artŭs,
Spĕcŭs, quercŭs; *also*, pĕcŭ,
Trĭbŭs *too, and* partŭs.

old woman; dŏmŭs, *house*; fĭcŭs, *fig*; mănŭs, *hand*; nŭrŭs, *daughter-in-law*; portĭcŭs, *gallery*; trĭbŭs, *tribe*; quercŭs, *oak*. Also, Īdŭs, -ŭŭm (used only in plural), *the Ides*.*

3. Dŏmŭs (f.), *house*, is thus declined:

	N., V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dŏm-ŭs.	-ūs. / -ī.	-uī.	-ŭm.	-ō.
Plur.	dŏm-ūs.	-uŭm. / -ōrum.	-ĭbŭs.	-ōs, / -ūs (rarely).	-ĭbŭs.

4. The gen. dŏmī is used only in the sense of *at home*; *e. g.*, dŏmī mĕæ, *at my home, at my house*.

(113.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

To lead over, or *across*, transdūcĕrĕ.
Approach, adventŭs, ūs (m.).
To await, expectārĕ.
Singing, cantŭs, ūs (m.).
Fruit, fructŭs, ūs (m.).
To adorn, ornārĕ.
Four, quāttuŏr (indeclin.).
To build, ædĭfĭcārĕ.
Horn, cornū, ūs (n.).
Army, exercĭtŭs, ūs (m.).
Harbour, portŭs, ūs (m.).
Enemy, hostĭs, (host) ĭs (c., 25, IV.).
Bird, ăvĭs, (ăv) ĭs (f.).
Grief, luctŭs, ūs† (m.).
To lay aside, dēpōnĕrĕ.
Sadness, mœrŏr, ōrĭs† (m.).
Tempest, prŏcellă, æ.
To raise, tollĕrĕ.
Wave, fluctŭs, ūs (m.).
Star, sīdŭs, (sīdĕr) ĕris (n.) (102).
Shore, lĭttŭs, (lĭttŏr) ŏris (n.) (102).
Wind, ventŭs, ī (m.).
Roll, volvĕrĕ.
Boundary, fīnĭs, (fīn) ĭs (m.).
The Rhine, Rhēnŭs, ī.
Ship, nāvĭs, (nāv) ĭs (f.).

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *The Helvetians lead part of their forces across the Rhine.*
Helvētiī partĕm cōpiārŭm Rhēnŭm transdūcunt.

(*b*) *Cæsar leads a great army of Germans across the Rhine.*
Cæsăr magnŭm Germānōrŭm exercĭtŭm trans Rhēnŭm transdūcĭt.

Rule of Syntax.—(*a*) Verbs compounded with the preposition *trans* are generally followed by *two accusatives*; *e. g.*, *partem* and *Rhenum* in (*a*).

(*b*) But sometimes the preposition is repeated; *e. g.*, *trans* in (*b*).

III. *Translate into English.*

Helvētiī *Cæsărĭs* (38, *b*) adventŭm expectābant.—Adventū

* Ăcŭs, mănŭs, trĭbŭs, dŏmŭs, portĭcŭs, and Īdŭs. The rest are fem. by the general rule (25, II.).

† Mœrŏr = *silent grief*; luctŭs = *mourning*.

(abl., 55, *a*) Cæsăris hostēs terrentŭr.—Ăvis puellăm cantū (55, *a*) dēlectăt.—Fructūs arbŏrēs (*acc. pl.*) ornant.—Fructūs terræ ăgrĭcŏlăm dēlectant.—Pătĕr dŏmūs (*acc. pl.*) quāttŭŏr ædĭfĭcābĭt.—Nāvēs in portū sunt.—Rēgīnă luctŭm dēpōnĭt.—Săpientēs luctŭm ĕt mœrōrĕm dēpōnunt.—Prŏcellă *magnōs* fluctūs (*acc. pl.*) tollēbăt.—Prŏcellă fluctūs (*acc. pl.*) ăd sīdĕră tollĭt.—Puĕr taurŭm cornū (abl., 55, *a*) tĕnĕt.—Cornuă cervī magnă sunt.—Fluctūs magnī ventīs (55, *a*) volvuntŭr.—Lēgātŭs exercĭtŭm dūcĭt.—Lēgātŭs ăb Æduīs (from the Æduans; *i. e.*, their country) exercĭtŭm dūcĭt.—Ăgrĭcŏlă taurŭm cornĭbŭs (55, *a*) tĕnēbăt.—Adventŭs patrĭs puellăm dēlectābĭt.—Cæsăr exercĭtŭm flūmĕn transdūcĭt (113, II., *a*).—Lēgātŭs pĕr fīnēs Helvētiōrŭm exercĭtŭm dūcĕt.—Arĭōvistŭs Germānōs trans Rhēnŭm transdūcĭt (113, II., *b*).

Rem. Home is translated by dŏmŭm, the acc. of domus; thus, *The sailor leads the boy home*—Naută puĕrŭm dŏmŭm dūcĭt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

My father will build four houses.—The tempest is rolling great waves to the shores (63, I., ☞).—Vast waves are raised to the stars by tempests.—The turbid sea is rolling vast waves to the shores.—The farmer leads the girls home from (*ab*) the city.—Cæsar will lead the army over the turbid river.—Cassius leads the army through the boundaries of the Æduans and Helvetians.—The Helvetians await the coming of Cæsar.—The boy will hold the bull by the horns (55, *a*).—The farmer is delighted by the fruits (55, *a*) of the earth.—The king lays aside his griefs and sadness.—The singing of the birds (ăvĭŭm) will delight the soldiers.—The trees are adorned by many fruits.—There are many large ships in the harbour.—The winds raise the great waves to the stars.—The lieutenant was leading the army of the Æduans across the Rhine. (Repeat *trans* (113, II., *b*)).—The horns of bulls are large.—The queen will lay aside her grief and sadness.—The master sends his slaves home

§ 14.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

(114.) The *Fifth Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. ending* is ĕī. The *nom. ending* is ēs.

(115.) There are but few nouns of this declension, and they are all *feminine* except diēs, *day*, and merīdiēs, mid-day; and even diēs is fem. in the sing. when it means a *fixed* day.

(116.) The case-endings are as follows:

	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	ĕī.	ĕī.	ĕm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērŭm.	ēbŭs.	ēs.	ēbŭs.

Rem. In the gen. and dat. the *e* in ei is *long* when a vowel stands before it; *e. g.*, di-ēī: *short* when a consonant stands before it; *e. g.*, fīd-ĕī.

(117.) By adding the endings to the stems r- and dĭ-, we get the

PARADIGMS.

Thing (f.).	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Singular.	r-ēs.	r-ĕī.	r-ĕī.	r-ĕm.	r-ē.
Plural.	r-ēs.	r-ērŭm.	r-ēbŭs.	r-ēs.	r-ēbus.
Day (*m.*).					
Singular.	dĭ-ēs.	dĭ-ēī.	dĭ-ēī.	dĭ-ĕm.	dĭ-ē.
Plural.	dĭ-ēs.	dĭ-ērŭm.	dĭ-ēbŭs.	dĭ-ēs.	dĭ-ēbŭs.

Rem. Only rēs, diēs, spĕciēs, have the plur. complete; the gen., dat., and abl. plur. are wanting in all others.

(118.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Hope, spēs, ēi.
Day, dīēs, ēī (m.).
To appoint, constĭtŭĕrĕ.
To lead out, ēdūcĕrĕ.
To lead back, rĕdūcĕrĕ.
Line of battle, ăcĭēs, ēī.
To draw up, instrŭĕrĕ.
About, circĭtĕr (*prep.* with acc.).
About mid-day, circĭtĕr merīdiĕm.
Victory, victōrĭă, æ.
Mid-day, mĕrīdiēs, ēī (m.).
Sixth, sextŭs, ă, ŭm.
Reward, præmĭŭm, i.
Sun, sōl, (sōl) ĭs (m.).
Setting, ōccāsŭs, ūs.
Seventh, septĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.
Out of, ē *or* ex (*prep.* with ablative).
Faith, promise, fīdēs, ēī.
The next, postĕrŭs, ă, ŭm.
To fight, pugnārĕ.

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *Cæsar draws up the line of battle.*	Cæsăr ăciēm instrŭĭt.
(*b*) *The next day they move the camp.*	Postĕrō dĭē castrā mŏvent.

(*c*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative; *e. g.*, in (*b*) *postero die.*—*At sun-set* = sōlĭs occāsū.

III. *Translate into English.*

Spēs victōriæ mīlĭtēs dēlectăt.—Mīlĭtēs spē (93, II., R.) victōrĭæ dēlectantŭr.—Dĭēs vĕnĭt.—Cæsăr dĭēm constĭtŭĭt.—Cæsăr dĭēm cŭm lēgātīs constĭtŭĭt.—Impĕrātŏr fortīs exercĭtŭm ēdūcĭt, ĕt ăcĭēm instrŭĭt.—Circĭtĕr mĕrĭdĭēm pugnant.—Cæsăr, circĭtĕr mĕrĭdĭēm, exercĭtŭm ĭn castrā rĕdūcĭt.—Sextō dĭē (118, II., *c*) Cæsăr exercĭtŭm ex castrīs ēdūcĭt.—Spēs præmiōrŭm pŭĕrōs dēlectăt.—Pŭĕri spē præmiōrŭm dēlectantur.—*Sōlis* occāsū Helvētĭī castrā mŏvēbant.—Septĭmō dĭē Belgæ cōpiās omnēs ex castrīs ēdūcēbant.—Sōlis occāsū Ariovistŭs ăcĭēm instrŭĭt.—Circĭtĕr mĕrĭdĭēm prœlĭŭm rēdintĕgrābunt.—Consŭl clārŭs dĭēm cŭm lēgātīs constĭtŭĭt.—Princĭpēs nōbĭlēs fĭdēm vĭŏlant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The hope of victory delights the noble chiefs.—The consul about mid-day leads out the army and renews the fierce battle.—The powerful chiefs, at the-setting of-the-sun (118, II., *c*), kill all the prisoners.—The day will come.—The consul, at the setting of the sun, will renew the great battle.—At the setting of the sun the great battle will be renewed.—On the sixth day all the forces will be led back to the camp.—The Germans appoint a day with Cæsar.—The next day the Germans move (their) camp.—Ariovistus, on the next day, draws out the line of battle.—Cæsar appoints the mid-day with the ambassadors.—About mid-day the messengers come.—About mid-day the consul will come.—Cæsar will not violate (his) promise.

§ 15.

PRONOUNS. (XX.—XXXI.)

LESSON XX.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, First Person.

(119.) The three pronouns ĕgŏ, *I;* tū, *thou;* suī, *of himself, herself, itself,* are called *Substantive,* because they are used as substantives, not as adjectives; and *Personal,* because they express the person *speaking,* the person *spoken to,* and the person *spoken of.*

(120.) The *Substantive-Personal* Pronoun of the *first* person is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ĕgŏ, *I.*	mĕī, *of me.*	mihĭ, *to me.*	mē, *me.*	mē, *by me,* &c.
Plur.	nōs, *we.*	nostrī, nostrūm, } *of us.*	nōbīs, *to us.*	nōs, *us.*	nōbīs, *by us,* &c.

(121.) Derived from the Substantive-Personal Pronouns are the *Adjective-Personal* or *Possessive* Pronouns; called *Adjective,* because they agree with nouns; and *Possessive,* because they express possession (*my, thy, his,* &c.).

(122.) The *Adjective-Personal* Pronouns of the *first* person are declined, in both sing. and plur., like adjectives of the *First Class* (76, 77, *a*). They are,

(*a*) Derived from mĕī,	N. mĕŭs,	mĕă, mĕŭm, *my, mine.*
	G. mĕī,	mĕæ, mĕī, *of my* (voc. masc. mī).
	&c.	&c. (like bŏnŭs, 76.)
(*b*) " from nostrī,	N. nostĕr,	nostră, nostrum, *our, ours.*
	G. nostrī,	nostræ, nostrī, *of our.*
	&c.	&c. (like pulchĕr, 77, *a*).

(123.) The following forms of *Verbs in the first person* must now be learned:

FIRST CONJUGATION: FIRST PERSON ENDINGS.

INFIN. ACT., *ārē.*			INFIN. PASS., *ārī.*			
	Indic. present.		Imperfect.		Future.	
	Act.	*Pass.*	*Act.*	*Pass.*	*Act.*	*Pass.*
1st Sing.	ō,	or.	ābăm.	ābăr.	ābō.	ābŏr.
1st Plur.	āmūs.	āmŭr.	ābāmūs.	ābāmŭr.	ābīmūs.	ābīmŭr.

(124.) Thus, from the stem ăm, of ăm-ārē, *to love*, we have:

INFIN. ACT., *āmārē*, to love.		INFIN. PASS., *āmārī*, to be loved.			
Indic. Pres.		Imperfect.		Future.	
Act.	*Pass.*	*Act.*	*Pass.*	*Act.*	*Pass.*
ām-ō,	ām-or,	ām-ābām,	ām-ābăr,	ām-ābŏ,	ām-ābŏr,
I love.	*I am loved.*	*I was loving.*	*I was loved.*	*I shall love.*	*I shall be loved.*
ām-āmūs,	ām-āmŭr,	ām-ābāmūs,	ām-ābāmŭr,	ām-ābīmūs,	ām-ābīmŭr,
we love.	*we are loved.*	*we were loving.*	*we were loved.*	*we shall love.*	*we shall be loved.*

[*Rem.* The student will learn the *passive* endings readily by observing that *r* is the passive characteristic, which is added to the active; the consonant ending of the active, where it has one, being dropped.]

(125.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Book, lĭbĕr, brī (m.), (64).
Friend, ămīcŭs, ī (m.).
Brother, frātĕr, (fratr) ĭs (m.).
Cicero, Cĭcĕrō, (Cĭcĕrōn) ĭs (m.).
Sister, sŏrŏr, (sŏrōr) ĭs (f.).
With (i. e., *at one's house*), ăpŭd (prep. acc.).
Fault, culpă, æ.
Yesterday, hĕrī (adv.).
All my (*possessions*), omnĭă mĕă (neut. pl.).
Five, quinquĕ.
Sharply, ăcrĭtĕr.
To-morrow, crās (adv.).
Very much, greatly, valdē (adv.).
To blame, vĭtŭpĕrārē.
To sing, cantārē.
Three, trēs, trĭă (adj. of Class II.).

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) *I have a book.* — Est mĭhĭ lĭbĕr (*i. e., there is a book to me*).

Rule of Syntax.—The dative case is used with est or sunt, to denote the person who *has* or *possesses* something.* The thing possessed is nom. to est or sunt.

(*b*) *The boy was walking with me in the garden yesterday.* — Puĕr mēcŭm ĭn hortō hĕrī ambŭlābăt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition *cŭm* is *suffixed* to the personal pronouns; *e. g.*, mēcŭm, *with me;* nōbīscŭm, *with us*, instead of cŭm mē, cŭm nōbīs.

[Recollect that the personal and possessive pronouns are not expressed in Latin, unless emphasis or perspicuity demands it.]

* This is called the *Dative of Possession*, and should always be referred to as such by the pupil.

III. *Translate into English.*

Ĕgŏ cantŏ, *ămīcŭs* audĭt.—Ĕgŏ ĕt frātĕr ambŭlāmŭs.*—Ĕgŏ ĕt fīliŭs meŭs festīnāmŭs.—Sunt mĭhĭ trēs lĭbrī (125, II., *a*).—Sunt mĭhĭ quattuŏr ĕquī ĕt quinquĕ cănēs.—Ĭn hortō ambŭlābăm.—Ā bŏnīs (82, I., R.) ămābŏr.—Cĭcĕrŏ ā mē laudātŭr.—Hostēs nōbīscŭm (125, II., *b*) ăcrĭtĕr pugnant.—Hĕrī ĭn ăgrīs ambŭlābāmŭs.—Pătĕr ăd nōs nuntĭum mittĕt.—Culpā nostrā est.—Crās ĭn hortō cænābĭmŭs.—Dēlectābāmŭr.—Puĕrī ĭn hortō nōbīscŭm ambŭlābunt.—Littĕrārŭm studĭum† (38, *b*) mĭhĭ (106, II.) ūtĭlĕ ĕrĭt.—Ā măgistrō laudābăr.—Omniă meă mēcŭm portō.—Ĕgŏ ā frātrĕ valdĕ ămŏr.—Nōs laudāmŭr, puellæ vitŭpĕrantŭr.—Nōs ā măgistrō verbĕrābĭmŭr.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

We praise the beautiful girl.—We have (125, II., *a*) four large cups.—I have (= there are to me) four sons and three daughters (125, II., *a*).—We shall praise Cæsar's brave soldiers.—I walk, my friend rides.—I and my sister will ride.*—I and my brother will walk* in the king's garden.‡—I and my father will sup* in the garden to-morrow.—We shall always praise the wise and good.—The works of Cicero will be praised by *us* (93, II., *b*), the works of Cæsar by the soldiers.—The fault is mine.—We have many large cups (125, II., *a*).—I have three beautiful sisters.—I have four brothers.—My father will walk with me in Cæsar's garden (*Cæsărĭs ĭn hortō*).‡—The study of literature is useful to us (106, II.).—To-day we shall sup with (apud) Crassus.

LESSON XXI.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, First Person, continued.

(126.) The following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in verbs of the

* If a predicate have two or more nominatives, connected by a conjunction, it takes generally the plural number; and if the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

† Littĕrārŭm stŭdĭŭm = *the pursuit* (or study) *of literature* (letters).

‡ In all such cases, put the prep. *between* the genitive and the noun governed by the prep.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	mŏn-	eō.	eŏr.	ēmŭs.	ēmŭr.
Imperfect.	mŏn-	ēbăm.	ēbăr.	ēbāmŭs.	ēbāmŭr.
Future.	mŏn-	ēbō.	ēbŏr.	ēbīmŭs.	ēbīmŭr.

[*Rem.* The student will learn these forms readily by observing that they differ chiefly from those of the *first* conjugation in having *ē* before the last syllable instead of *ā*. By adding the endings, as above given, to the stem mon-, which stands at the left hand, he will form the paradigm of mōnĕrĕ, *to advise.*]

(127.) The following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in the third and fourth conjugations.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	rĕg-	ō.	ŏr.	ĭmŭs.	ĭmŭr.
Imperfect.	rĕg-	ēbăm.	ēbăr.	ēbāmŭs.	ēbāmŭr.
Future.	rĕg-	ăm.	ăr.	ēmŭs.	ēmŭr.

[*Rem.* Compare these with the endings of the 2d conj., and observe that,

1. In the *pres.* *e* is dropped in the sing., and ĭ assumed in the plur.
2. The imperfect is precisely the same.
3. But the *future* is a new form.
4. By adding the endings to the stem placed at the left, you form the paradigm of rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*]

(128.) FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	aud-	iō.	iŏr.	īmŭs.	īmŭr.
Imperfect.	aud-	iēbăm.	iēbăr.	iēbāmŭs.	iēbāmŭr.
Future.	aud-	iăm.	iăr.	iēmŭs.	iēmŭr.

[*Rem.* Observe that the endings of the 4th conj. differ from those of the 3d simply by prefixing the letter ĭ. In the 1st plur. the ĭ prefixed combines with that of the endings ĭmŭs, ĭmŭr, and forms īmŭs īmŭr.]

(129.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Fierce, fĕrōx, (fĕrōc) ĭs (107).
Nothing, nĭhĭl (neut. indecl.).
To be well, vălērĕ.
To arrange, dispōnĕrĕ.
Wicked, improbŭs, ă, ŭm.
Garrison, præsĭdĭŭm, ĭ.
Latin, Lătīnŭs, ă, ŭm.
Antony, Antōnĭŭs, ī.

II. *Example.*

I have nothing to do with Antony (125, II., *a*).

Nĭhĭl est mĭhĭ cŭm Antōnĭō (*i. e., there is nothing to me with Antony*).

III. *Translate into English.*

2*d Conjugation.*—Ĕgŏ ĕt frātĕr vălēmŭs (125, III.*).—Ā măgistrō dŏcēbĭmŭr.—Linguăm Lătīnăm dŏceŏ.—Ā pătrĕ mŏneŏr.—Ā măgistrō bŏnō dŏcēmŭr.—Ăb hostĕ tīmēbăr.—Hostĭŭm adventŭm nōn tīmēbŏ. 3*d Conjugation.*—Rĕgēbāmŭr.—Præsĭdĭă dispōnēbāmŭs.—Ā Deō rĕgĭmŭr.—Ĕgŏ exercĭtŭm dūcăm.—Ā fīlĭō meō rĕlinquăr.—Lŭpōs fĕrōcēs occīdĭmŭs. 4*th Conjugation.*—Castellă mūnĭēmŭs.—Ăvĭŭm cantŭm audīmŭs.—Crās ăd urbĕm vĕnĭăm.—Nĭhĭl est mĭhĭ cŭm imprŏbīs.—Nĭhĭl est nōbīs cŭm hostĭbŭs.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

2*d Conjugation.*—I and my son are well (125, III.*).—We shall see the brave soldiers.—I am taught by good masters.—We were fearing the approach of the enemy.—I was teaching the Latin language.—We shall be feared by the enemy.—We shall be advised by our father. 3*d Conjugation.*—We were led by a brave general.—I was killing three wolves.—We are ruled by a good king.—We shall arrange the garrisons.—I shall bring (dūcĕrĕ) my daughter from (ab) the city.—We shall lead the forces of the Germans. 4*th Conjugation.*—We were heard by the master.—We shall sleep in the little town (89, II.).—We shall come to the town to-morrow.—I shall be heard by the girls.—We were fortifying the towns.—We have nothing to do with the foolish (129, II.).—I have nothing to do with Cæsar.

LESSON XXII.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, Second Person.

(130.) The Substantive-Personal Pronoun of the *second* person is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	tū, *thou.*	tuī, *of thee.*	tĭbĭ, *to thee.*	tē, *thee.*	tū, *thou.*	tē, *by.*
Plur.	vōs, *you.*	vestrī, vestrŭm, } *of you.*	vōbīs, *to you.*	vōs, *you.*	vōs, *you.*	vōbīs, *by.*

(131.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person of verbs of the

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	am-	ās.	ārĭs.	ātĭs.	āmĭnī.
Imp.	am-	ābās.	ābārĭs.	ābātĭs.	ābāmĭnī.
Fut.	am-	ābĭs.	ābĕrĭs.	ābĭtĭs.	ābĭmĭnī.

(132.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Yesterday, hĕrī. (adv.).
To-day, hŏdiē (adv.).
To wound, vulnĕrārĕ.
To fight, pugnārĕ.

II. *Translate into English.*

Crās mēcŭm cœnābĭs.—Tū mē āmās, ĕgŏ tē āmŏ.—Vōs vōbiscŭm pugnātĭs.—Tū cantās, nōs audīmŭs.—In hortō ambŭlābātĭs.—Tū ā pātrĕ valdē āmārĭs.—Vōs vĭtŭpĕrāmĭnī, nōs laudāmŭr.—Nĭhĭl est tĭbĭ cŭm Cæsārĕ.—Crās vōbīscŭm cœnābŏ.—Nōs laudābĭmŭr, vōs vĭtŭpĕrābĭmĭnī.—Nĭhĭl vōbīs est cŭm bōnīs.—Hĕrī ambŭlābātĭs.—Hŏdiē pugnābĭtĭs.—Laudābāmĭnī.—Vulnĕrābĭmĭnī.—Vŏcātĭs.—Vŏcāmĭnī.—Āmātĭs.—Āmāmĭnī.—Cantābātĭs.—Vŏcābāmĭnī.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

To-day ye were supping with us (125, II., *b*).—Ye love us, we love you.—Ye were singing, we were hearing.—Ye have nothing to do with the king (129, II.).—Thou wast greatly loved by Cæsar.—Ye shall be praised by our master.—Ye shall be blamed by the good (82, I., R.).—Ye are called by the messenger.—Thou fightest with thyself* (125, II., *b*).—Ye shall sup with us to-morrow.—Thou wilt fight to-morrow.—Thou wast loving.—Thou wast loved.—Thou wilt blame.—Thou wilt be blamed.—Ye are praising.—Ye are praised.—Thou woundest.—Thou art wounded.

LESSON XXIII.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, Second Person, Second Conjugation.

(133.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *second* person, in verbs of the

* Tēcŭm.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	mŏn-	ēs.	ĕrĭs.	ētĭs.	ēmĭnĭ.
Imp.	mŏn-	ēbās.	ēbārĭs.	ēbātĭs.	ēbāmĭnĭ.
Fut.	mŏn-	ēbĭs.	ēbĕrĭs.	ēbĭtĭs.	ēbĭmĭnĭ.

(134.) The *Adjective-Personal* (or *Possessive*) Pronouns of the Second Person are, tŭŭs, ă, ŭm, *thy;* and vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm, *your.*

(*a*) Derived from tuī, | N. tuŭs, ă, ŭm, *thy, thine.*
G. tuī, æ, ī, *of thy,* &c.

(*b*) Derived from vestrī, | N. vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm, *your.*
G. vestrī, vestræ, vestrī, *of your.*

(135.) EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Thou art, ĕs (2d person sing. ind. pres. of esse).
Ye are, estĭs (2d person pl. of do.).
I was, ĕrăm (1st imperf. do.).
Cause, } causă.
For the sake of, } causă (abl.).
To learn, discĕrĕ.
Of, concerning, dē (prep. abl.).
To laugh, rīdērĕ.
To rejoice, gaudērĕ.
Safety, sălūs, (sălūt) ĭs (f.).
Leader, guide, dux, (dūc) ĭs (m.).
Why, cūr (adv.).
Because, that, quŏd (conj.).

II. *Examples.*

(*a*) Nĕ is an interrogative particle used in asking questions. It is annexed to the word to which it especially refers; *e. g.*,

(1) Do *you* teach the boy? | Tūnĕ puĕrŭm dŏcēs?
(2) Do you *teach* the boy? | Dŏcēsnĕ puĕrŭm?
(3) Do you teach the *boy?* | Puĕrumnĕ dŏcēs?

In (1) tū has the emphasis; in (2) dŏcēs; and in (3) puĕrŭm.

(*b*) Ye are warned, *for the sake of your (own) safety.* | Vestræ sălūtĭs causă mŏnēmĭnĭ.

Rule of Position.—Causă, *for the sake of* (the abl. of causă, *a cause*), is always placed after the genitive which depends on it.

(*c*) *I was your leader.* | Dux ĕgŏ vestĕr ĕrăm.

III. *Translate into English.*

Vĭdēsnĕ servŭm meŭm? (135, II., 2).—Tuæ sălūtĭs causă (135, II., *b*) mŏnĕrĭs.—Cūr rīdētĭs?—Vestræ sălūtĭs causă mŏnēmĭnĭ.—Gaudeŏ quŏd tū ĕt pătĕr tuŭs vălētĭs (125, III., *).

—Vĭdēbāsnĕ mīlĭtēs?—Dē culpā tuā mŏnēbārĭs.—Cūr rīdēbātĭs.—Hostĭŭm adventŭm nōn tĭmēbĭs.—Tuæ sălūtĭs causā mŏnēbĕrĭs.—Nōs discēmŭs, vōs dŏcēbĭmĭnī.—Tĭmētisnĕ Cæsărĭs adventŭm?—Esnĕ tū beātŭs?—Culpă tuă est (*the fault is thine*).—Puĕrī ĭn hortō vōbīscŭm ambŭlābant.—Măgistĕr ĕgŏ vestĕr ĕram (135, II., *c*).

IV. *Translate into Latin.**

[The *emphatic* words are in italics.]

Did you *see* your master?—Do you *fear* the approach of Cæsar?—Are *you* happy?—You were warned (advised) for the sake of your own safety.—Are you and your father *well?* (125, III., *).—The fault was yours.—You shall see the enemy, but (sĕd) shall not fear (them).—I am your friend.—I was your friend.—You teach, but we learn.—You shall teach, but we shall learn.—Why do you not (nōn) fear the master?—You were warned of (d e) your fault.—Do you *see* your slaves?—Are *you* Cæsar?—Why do you fear the master?—You shall see great cities and many men.—We shall sup with you to-morrow.—You shall be warned, for the sake of your own safety.—We rejoice that you and your daughter are well (125, III., *).

LESSON XXIV.

Verbs, Second Person, Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(136.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	reg-	ĭs.	ĭtĭs.	ĕrĭs.	ĭmĭnī.
Imper.	reg-	ēbās.	ēbātĭs.	ēbārĭs.	ēbāmĭnī.
Fut.	reg-	ēs.	ētĭs.	ērĭs.	ēmĭnī.

(137.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	aud-	īs.	ītĭs.	īrĭs.	ĭmĭnī.
Imp.	aud-	iēbās.	iēbātĭs.	iēbārĭs.	iēbāmĭnī.
Fut.	aud-	iēs.	iētĭs.	iērĭs.	iēmĭnī.

* When *you, your,* occur, translate them both in sing. and plur., for the sake of practice.

(138.) *Observe,*

(*a*) That the present endings of the 3d and 4th conjugations are nearly alike, the vowel (i) of the *fourth* being long (ī).

(*b*) That the imperfect and future endings of the *fourth* conjugation differ from those of the third by prefixing the letter i.

EXERCISE.

(139.) *Vocabulary.*

Plant, plantă, æ.	*Whence,* undĕ (adv.).
To sow, to plant, sĕrĕrĕ.	*Long,* longē (adv.).
To find, invĕnīrĕ.	*Badly,* mălē.
Orator, ōrātŏr, (ōrātōr) ĭs (m.).	*To punish,* pūnīrĕ.
Voice, vox, (vōc) ĭs (f.).	*So,* tăm (adv.).
To read, lĕgĕrĕ.	*Bird,* ăvis, (ăv) ĭs (f.)

(140.) *Translate into English.*

3*d Conjugation.*—Cūr nōn scrībis.—Arbŏrēs ĕt plantās sĕrēbātis.—Hŏdiē ăd Cæsărĕm mittĕris.—Cūr tăm mălĕ scrībis?—Ăd castră rĕdūcēmĭnī.—Lĕgis-nĕ Cicĕrōnis ŏpĕră?—Scrībisnĕ ŏpistŏlăm ăd Cæsărĕm? 4*th Conjugation.*—Undĕ vĕnīs?—Cūr tăm longē dormīs?—Măgistrūm bŏnum invĕniēs.—Audīs-nĕ măgistrī vōcĕm?—Cūr nōn vĕniētis?—Ā Cæsărĕ audīris.—Ā măgistrō pūniēmĭnī.—Ōrātōrĕm audiētis.—Ĭn hortō dormiēbātis.—Cantŭm ăvĭum audītis.

(141.) *Translate into Latin.* [Refer to 135, II.]

3*d Conjugation.*—Are *you* writing a letter?—Thou wast planting a tree to-day.—*Were* (you) *reading* the works of Cicero?—Why do you read so badly?—Are you writing *a letter* to the messenger?—Thou wilt read Cæsar to-day.—Thou art sent to the camp.—Thou wilt be led by the ambassadors. 4*th Conjugation.*—Why do you not come?—Ye shall hear the voice of Cæsar.—Thou wilt sleep in the camp.—Ye shall be heard by the master.—Thou shalt be punished.—Ye are heard.—Thou shalt hear the singing of the birds.

LESSON XXV.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal, Third Person.

(142.) The *Substantive Pronoun* of the *third* person is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	sŭī, *of himself, herself, itself.*	sĭbĭ, *to himself,* &c.	sē, *himself,* &c.	sē, *by himself,* &c.
Plur.	—	sŭī, *of themselves.*	sĭbĭ, *to themselves.*	sē, *themselves.*	sē, *by themselves,* &c.

(143.) The *Adjective Pronoun* of the *third* person is declined like an adjective of the first class: thus,

Derived from **sŭī**, | N. **sŭŭs, ă, ŭm,** *his, hers, its, his own.*
G. **sŭī, æ, ī,** *of his, hers, its,* &c.

Rem. Observe that **sŭī** is not a regular pronoun of the third person, like the English *he, she, it,* but reflexive; *e. g.,* **puĕr sē laudăt,** *the boy praises himself.* It therefore has no *nom.* case. [The nom. pronouns *he, she, it,* are not often expressed in Latin; but when they *must* be, a *demonstrative* pronoun, generally **hic, is,** or **ille,** is employed.]

EXERCISE.

(144.) *Vocabulary.*

Hand, **mănŭs,** ūs (f.) (112, 2).
To love (*with esteem*), **dĭlĭg-ĕrĕ.**
To live, **vīv-ĕrĕ.**
To contend, **contend-ĕrĕ.**
To defend, **defend-ĕrĕ.**
To burn, **incend-ĕrĕ.**
Townsman, **oppĭdānŭs,** ī.
A Sequanian, **Sēquānus,** ī.
Among, **intĕr** (prep.).
Corn, **frūmentŭm,** ī.
From (prep.) **ā** *or* **ăb.**†
A legion, **lēgĭō, (lēgiōn) is** (f.).
To rule, command, **impĕr-ārĕ** (with dat. of person).
To send away, dismiss, **dīmittĕrĕ.**

(145.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Cæsar calls Divitiacus to himself.* — **Cæsăr Dīvĭtiācŭm ăd sē vŏcăt.**

(*b*) *The girl writes the letter with her own hand.* — **Puellă ĕpistŏlăm mănū suă scrībĭt.**

[*Rem.* **Sē** is often doubled, for the sake of emphasis.]

(*c*) *Men always love themselves.* — **Hŏmĭnēs sempĕr sēsē dīlĭgunt.**

(*d*) *The good live not for themselves, but for all.* — **Bŏnī nōn sĭbĭ, sĕd omnĭbŭs vīvunt.**

(146.) *Translate into English.*

Hostēs intĕr sē contendunt.—Oppĭdānī sē suăquĕ ăb hostĭbŭs dēfendēbant.—Helvētiī oppĭdă suă omniă incendunt.—Cæsăr trēs lēgiōnēs sēcŭm hăbĕt.—Consŭl lēgātōs ăb sē dīmittĕt.—Săpiens omniă suă* sēcŭm portăt.—Helvētiī ĕt Sēquānī ob-

* **Omniă suă** = *all his* (*property*); the noun being understood.
† **A** is used before consonants only; **ăb** before either vowels or consonants.

sĭdēs intŏr sēsē dăbant.—Bŏnī sēsē nōn dīlĭgunt.—Helvētiī frūmentŭm omnĕ* sĕcŭm portābant.—Impŕŏbī sĭbĭ sempĕr vīvunt.—Săpiens sĭbĭ sempĕr impĕrăt (147).

(147.) *Rule of Syntax.*—The *Dative* is used with some verbs signifying *to command, to rule, to obey.*

(148.) *Translate into Latin.*

Good men do not praise themselves.—The townsmen were fighting with each other (inter se).—The wise man always carries *all* his (property) with him.—Bad men always love themselves.—The general has three legions with him.—The townsmen will carry all their corn with them.—Bad men do not rule themselves (147).—The Æduans will defend themselves and their (property) from the soldiers.—Cæsar was dismissing the messenger from himself.—The Germans will burn their villages.

LESSON XXVI.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

(149.) The *Demonstrative* Pronouns are so called because they are used to *point out* an object; *e. g.*, *this, that, these, those.*

(150.) Ĭs, *that* (often used for *he, she, it* (143, R.), is thus declined; also īdĕm, *the very same*, compounded of īs and dem.

	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ĭs, ĕă, ĭd.	ĭī, ĕæ, ĕă.	īdĕm, eădĕm, ĭdĕm.	iīdĕm, eædĕm, eădĕm.
G.	ējŭs.	eōrŭm, eārum, eōrūm.	ējūsdĕm.	eōrundĕm, eārundĕm, eōrundĕm.
D.	ĕī.	iīs, or eīs.	eīdĕm.	iīsdĕm.
Acc.	ĕŭm, ĕăm, ĭd.	eōs, eās, eă.	ĕundĕm, eandĕm, ĭdĕm.	eōsdĕm, eāsdĕm, eădĕm.
Abl.	eō, eā, eō.	iīs, or eīs.	eōdĕm, eādĕm, eōdĕm.	iīsdem.

(151.) The following forms of the verb esse, *to be*, must now be learned.

* Frūmentŭm omnĕ = *all their corn.*

TENSES.	SINGULAR.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sŭm, *I am.*	ĕs, *thou art.*	est, *he, she,* &c., *is.*
Imperfect.	ĕrām, *was.*	ĕrās.	ĕrăt.
Future.	ĕrŏ, *shall or will be.*	ĕrīs.	ĕrĭt.
	PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sŭmŭs, *we are.*	estĭs, *ye are.*	sunt, *they are.*
Imperfect.	ĕrāmŭs, *were.*	ĕrātĭs.	ĕrant.
Future.	ĕrīmŭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.	ĕrunt.

EXERCISE.

(152.) *Vocabulary.*

To keep off, To prevent, } prŏhĭbĕrĕ.
To refrain, tempĕrārĕ.
Merchant, mercātŏr, (mercātōr) ĭs (m.).
Colour, cŏlŏr, (cŏlōr) ĭs (m.).
And, atquĕ (conj.).
Plato, Plăto, (Plătōn) ĭs.
Elegant, ēlĕgans, (elegant) ĭs.
Gladly, willingly, lĭbentĕr (adv.).
Way, journey, ĭtĕr, (ĭtĭnĕr) ĭs (n.).
Kingdom, regnŭm, ī.
Flower, flōs, (flōr) ĭs (m.).
Writer, scriptŏr, (scriptōr) ĭs (m.)
Never, nunquăm (adv.).

(153.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *The Helvetians contend with the Germans, and keep* them *off from* their *boundaries.*
Helvētiī cŭm Germānīs contendunt, eōs quĕ suīs fīnĭbŭs prŏhĭbent.*

(*b*) *The father calls* his (*own*) *son to* him(*self*).
Pătĕr fīliŭm suŭm ăd sē vŏcăt.

(*c*) *The father calls* his *daughter and* her *son to* him(*self*).
Pătĕr fīliăm suăm ĕt fīliŭm ējŭs ăd sē vŏcăt.

☞ Observe carefully, that if *his, hers, its,* refers to the principal subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the *possessive* (suŭs, ă, ŭm); but if not, by the genitive (ējŭs) of the demonstrative (ĭs, eă, ĭd).

(154.) *Translate into English.*

(1) Ĭs, eă, ĭd, used for *he, she, it* (*personal*).

Iī ăb injūriā tempĕrant.—Ĭs est ĭn prōvinciā tuā.—Mercātōrēs ăd eōs sæpĕ vĕniunt.—Ăb iīs multā (82, I., R.) poscĭmŭs.—Belgæ cŭm Æduīs contendunt, eōsquĕ suīs fīnĭbŭs (153, *a*) prŏhĭbent.

(2) Is, used as *demonstrative, this, that;* also, idem, as *the same*

* *Suis finibus* is in the ablative. All verbs of *separating, depriving,* &c. may take a noun in the ablative, with the direct object in the accusative.

In eō ītĭnĕrĕ Cæsăr Crassŭm vĭdĕt.—Dumnŏrix, *eō* tempŏrĕ (118, II., *c*) regnŭm tĕnēbăt.—Nōn sempĕr *ĭdĕm* flōrĭbŭs (125, II., *a*) est cŏlŏr.—In eā prōvinciā sunt quāttuŏr lĕgiōnēs.

(3) Distinction between ējŭs and suŭs, ă, ŭm.

Cicĕrŏ est scriptŏr clārŭs; *ējŭs* lĭbrōs lĭbentĕr lĕgĭmŭs.—Cæsăr ăd sē Dumnŏrĭgĕm atquĕ fīliŭm *ējŭs* vŏcābĭt.—Plātŏ est scriptŏr ēlĕgans; *ējŭs* ŏpĕrā lĭbentĕr lĕgŏ.

Dux ĕgŏ vestĕr ĕrăm.—Ĕs-nĕ tū Sōcrātēs?—Estisnĕ beātī? —Cæsăr dux vestĕr ĕrăt.

(155.) *Translate into Latin.*

They were walking in the garden yesterday.—The king will give them (dat., 54) rewards.—They are in Gaul.—Merchants never come to them.—We were demanding rewards of (ab) them.—In that province Cæsar finds many deserters.—In that province there are three legions.—At that time (abl., 118, II., *c*) Cæsar was leading the army.—Horses (125, II., *a*) have not always the *same* colour.—Cæsar calls Divitiacus and his brothers to him (self).—Cæsar is an elegant writer; we read his works with pleasure.—I am your leader.—You shall be our leader.—Cæsar was our leader.—The Æduans contend with the Helvetians, and keep them off their boundaries.

LESSON XXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

(156.) The Demonstrative hīc, hæc, hōc, *this*, points out an object which is present *to the speaker*, and is called demonstrative of the *first* person; *e. g.*, *this book* (*of mine*), hīc lĭbĕr.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hīc, hæc, hōc.	hūjŭs.	huīc.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hāc, hōc.
Plur.	hī, hæ, hæc.	hōrŭm, hārŭm, hōrŭm.	hīs.	hōs, hās, hæc.	hīs.

Rem. Hīc is used also (as was stated 143, R.) for *he, she, it*; *e. g.*, hīc dicĭt, *he* (this man) *speaks.*

(157.) Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *this, that*, points out an

object which is present to the *person spoken to*, and is called the demonstrative of the *second* person; *e. g.*, *that book* (*of yours*), istĕ liber.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istĕ, istă, istŭd.	istīŭs.	istī.	istūm, istām, istŭd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	istī, istæ, istă.	istorūm, ārŭm, orūm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istă.	istīs.

Rem. Istĕ is often used to denote contempt; *e. g.*, istĕ-ne dicit? Does *that fellow* speak?

(158.) Illĕ, illă, illŭd, points out an object *remote from* the speaker (*that*, the *former*, opposed to hīc), and is called the demonstrative of the *third* person. It is used often for the personal pronoun *he*, *she*, *it* (143, R.).

☞ It is declined throughout like istĕ, istă, istŭd.

Rem. In the genitives, istīus, illīus, ipsīus, the penult ī is long, contrary to the general rule (24, 1) that a vowel before another is short.

(159.) Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm, is properly an *adjunctive* pronoun, as it is *added* to other pronouns; *e. g.*,

I (and not another) *praise myself.*	Ĕgŏ mē ipsĕ laudō.
I praise myself (and not another).	Ĕgŏ mē ipsŭm laudō.

EXERCISE.

(160.) *Vocabulary.*

Opinion, sententiă, æ.	*Animal*, ănīmăl, (ănīmālĭ) is (neut.).
To please, plăcērĕ.	*Pleasing*, *agreeable*, grātŭs, ă, ŭm.
To displease, displĭcērĕ.	*Base*, turpis, ĕ (104).
Soul, ănīmŭs, ī.	*Friend*, amīcŭs, ī.
Proverb, prōverbĭŭm, ī.	*To boast*, prædĭcārĕ.
Lazy, ignāvŭs, ă, ŭm.	*To obey*, pārērĕ (with dat., 147).
Excellent, *Celebrated*, præclārŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Old*, vĕtus, (vĕtĕr) is (108, R., 2).
Reason, rătĭō, (rătiōn) is (f.).	*Song*, carmĕn, (carmĭn) is (n.).
	Precept, præceptŭm, ī.

(161.) *Examples.*

(*a*) This *opinion pleases me*, that *displeases* (*me*).	Hæc sententiă mihĭ plăcĕt illă displĭcĕt.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *pleasing, obeying, persuading, commanding, favouring, and the reverse,* take the *Dative* case.

(*b*) That *friend* of yours *is an illustrious man.*	Istĕ tuŭs ămīcŭs vĭr clārŭs est.
(*c*) *The soul* itself *moves* itself.	Ănĭmŭs ipsĕ sē mŏvĕt.
(*d*) *It is base to boast of one's self.*	Turpĕ est dē seipsō prædĭcārĕ.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used as the subject of a verb, and is then regarded as a noun in the neuter gender; *e. g.*, prædĭcārĕ (to boast), in (*d*), is nom. to est, and turpĕ (*base*) agrees with it in the neuter.

(162.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) Hī puĕrī măgistrō pārent.—Hæ littĕræ valdē mē dēlectant.—Cĭcĕrōnis lĭbrī valdē mĭhĭ plăcent: eōs lĭbentĕr lĕgō.—Hōc bellŭm grăvĕ est.—Hīc puĕr bŏnus est, illĕ ĭgnāvŭs.

(*b*) Istă tuă fīlĭă pulchră est.—Istūd tuŭm carmĕn mĭhĭ (106, II., *c*) grātŭm est.—Præclāră sunt istă tuă præceptă.—Vĕtŭs illŭd prōverbĭŭm mĭhĭ plăcĕt.

(*c*) *Omnĕ* ănĭmăl seipsŭm dĭlĭgĭt.—Impĕrātŏr ipsĕ mīlĭtĭbŭs (147) impĕrăt.—Ĕgŏ mē ipsĕ nōn laudābăm.—Tū teipsŭm laudābĭs.—Săpĭens sĭbĭ ipsī impĕrăt.

(*d*) Jūcundŭm est ămārĕ.

(163.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) That illustrious precept was-pleasing-to (placēbăt) Cato.—That brave general will command the soldiers.—The soldiers willingly obey this brave general.—This precept pleases me, that displeases (me).—The works of Cæsar please me very much; I read them gladly (libentĕr).

(*b*) That horse of yours is a beautiful animal.—I keep in memory (mĕmŏrĭă tenĕō) that excellent precept of yours.—Those songs of yours are pleasing (grātă) to me.—That letter of yours was delighting me very much.

(*c*) The soul rules itself (161, *c*) by reason (rātiōnĕ, 55, *a*).—The poet himself praises himself (159).—Cæsar himself will command the legions (161, *c*).—The soldiers willingly (lĭbentĕr)

obey Cæsar himself.—Do *you* (135, II., 1) praise yourself?—Wise men themselves always rule themselves (147).

(*d*) It is pleasant to love (one's) friends.—It is base to boast of (one's) friends.—It is agreeable to please (one's) father.

LESSON XXVIII.

(164.) The *Relative Pronoun* (*who, which*), quī, quæ, quŏd, is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quī, quæ, quŏd.	cūjŭs.	cuī.	quĕm, quăm, quŏd.	quō, quā, quō.
Plur.	quī, quæ, quæ.	quōrŭm, quārŭm, quōrum.	quĭbŭs.	quōs, quās, quæ.	quĭbŭs.

Rem. Quĭcunquĕ, quæcunquĕ, quodcunquĕ (*whosoever, whichsoever, whatsoever*) is declined like quī, quæ, quŏd: cunquĕ being simply annexed to the different cases.

(165.) The *Relative* commonly refers to some preceding word, which is therefore called the *antecedent*; *e. g.*, The *man*, *who* lives well, is happy. Here *man* is the antecedent; *who*, the relative. The sentence in which the *relative* occurs is called the *relative* sentence; the other the *principal* or *antecedent* sentence; *e. g.* (above), *the man is happy*, is the principal sentence: *who lives well*, the relative sentence.

EXERCISE.

(166.) *Vocabulary.*

Poor, ĕgens, (ĕgent) ĭs (108).
Enough, sătĭs (adv.).
Nearest to, neighbours to, proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.
To dwell, incŏlĕrĕ (*intrans.*).
To inhabit, incŏlĕrĕ (*trans.*).
Blood, sanguĭs, (sanguĭn) ĭs (m.).
Also, ĕtĭăm (conj.).
Heart, cŏr, (cord) ĭs (n.).
To despise, contemnĕrĕ.
Magnanimous, magnănĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.
Honest, honourable, hŏnestŭs, ă, ŭm.
Fountain, fons, (font) ĭs (m.).
Water, ăquă, æ.
Winter-quarters, hībernă, ōrŭm (pl.).
To winter, hĭēmārĕ.
Arethusa, Arĕthūsă, æ.
To return, restore, redděrĕ.
Virtue, virtūs, (virtūt) ĭs (f.).
To repel, prōpulsārĕ.
To vaunt, ostentārĕ.
Fame, fămă, æ.
To do, to make, făcĕrĕ.
One, ūnŭs, ă, ŭm.

(167.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *The* boy, who *reads*, *learns*. | Puĕr, quī lĕgĭt, discĭt.

The girl, who *reads, learns.*	Puellă, quæ lĕgĭt, discĭt.
(*b*) *The* boy, whom *we see, is handsome.*	Puĕr, quĕm vĭdēmŭs, est pulchĕr.
The girl, whom *we see, is handsome.*	Puellă, quăm vidēmŭs, est pulchră.

Rule of Syntax.—The Relative Pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number* (as in (*a*)), but its *case* is fixed by the construction of the relative sentence (*e. g.*, in (*a*) quī is nomin. to legĭt: in (*b*) quĕm is acc., governed by vĭdēmŭs).

(*c*) *I* who *write.*	Egŏ, quī scrībŏ.
We who *write.*	Nōs, quī scrībĭmŭs.

Rule of Syntax.—The *verb* in the relative sentence agrees with the relative in *number*, but takes the *person* of the antecedent.

(*d*) *He is poor who has not enough.*

(1) Ĕgens est Is, quī nōn sătĭs hăbĕt.
(2) Is ĕgens est, quī nōn sătĭs hăbĕt.
(3) Quī nōn sătĭs hăbĕt, Is ĕgens est.
(4) Quī nōn sătĭs hăbĕt, ĕgens est.

Rule of Position.—The relative generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, and (1) as near to its antecedent as possible. (2) Is and quī are made emphatic when Is begins the principal sentence and quī the relative sentence; (3) and still more emphatic when the relative sentence stands first. (4) The antecedent is often omitted entirely.

(168.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) Proxĭmī sunt Germānīs, quī trans Rhēnŭm incŏlunt.—Omnĕ ănĭmăl, quŏd sanguĭnĕm hăbĕt, hăbĕt ētiăm cŏr.—Cæsăr, trēs lĕgiōnēs, quæ in prōvinciă hĭēmābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcĭt.—Omniă (82, I., R.) quæ pulchră sunt, honestă sunt.

(*b*) Fēlix est rex, quĕm omnēs cīvēs ămant.—In hăc insŭlă est fons ăquæ dulcis, cuī nōmĕn est Arĕthūsă (125, II., *a*).

—Ariŏvistŭs obsĭdēs reddĭt, quōs hăbĕt ăb Æduīs.—Gallĭæ sunt partēs trēs, quārŭm ūnăm Belgæ incŏlunt.

(*d*) (1) Beātī sunt iī, quōrŭm vītă virtūtĕ (abl., 55, *a*) rĕgĭtŭr.—(2) Ĭs fortĭs est, quī injūriăm prōpulsăt.—(3) Quī se ostentăt, ĭs stultŭs dīcĭtŭr (*is called a fool*).—(4) Quī famăm bŏnăm contemnĭt, virtūtĕm contemnĭt.—Fortĭs et magnănĭmŭs est, nōn quī făcĭt, sĕd quī propulsăt injūrĭăm.

(169.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) The songs which we hear are pleasant (grata) to us (106, II., *c*).—The king who rules wisely is happy.—All animals which have blood have also hearts.—Cæsar leads across the Rhine the five legions which were wintering in the province.

(*b*) Happy is the teacher whom all (his) scholars love.—In that (eă) island (there) is a city whose name is (*to which the name is**, 125, II., *a*) Syracuse (Syrăcūsæ).—In this (hāc) city there is a fountain whose name is Arethusa.—Of Britain (there) are three parts, of which (gen.) the English inhabit one.

(*d*) (1) Happy is he whose life is ruled by the precepts of virtue.—He is wise who diligently serves (cŏlĭt) the gods.—(2) They are brave who repel an injury.—(3) They who vaunt themselves are called fools.—(4) Who repels an injury, is brave and magnanimous.

LESSON XXIX.

Interrogative Pronoun.

(170.) The *Interrogative Pronoun* is precisely like the *Relative* in form, excepting that for the nom., sing., and *masc.*, it has quīs, and for the nom. and acc., *neut.*, quĭd; thus, quīs, quæ, quĭd.

(171.) Quisnăm, quænăm, quidnăm, express a more emphatic interrogation than the simple quis, quæ, quid, the syllable nam answering to our English "pray;" *e. g.*,

Pray, what are you doing? | Quidnăm ăgĭs?

* Sunt, plural, because Syracūsæ is plural.

(172.) In asking questions, the different cases of quis can be used as substantives or as adjectives, excepting that

(1) In the nom. sing. masc., quis is used as a substantive.
In the nom. sing. masc., qui is used as an adjective.

(2) In the nom. and accus., neut., quid is used as a substantive.
In the nom. and accus., neut., quod is used as an adjective.

(1) *Who comes?*	Quĭs vĕnĭt?
What man comes?	Qui hŏmŏ vĕnĭt?
Who is the man?	Quis homo est?
(2) *What do you fear?*	Quĭd tĭmēs?
What danger do you fear?	Quŏd pĕrīcŭlŭm tĭmēs?

(173.) The answer *yes* is given by repeating the verb which asks the question; *no*, by repeating the verb with nōn. Vĕrŏ (*certainly*), added to the verb in an affirmative answer, gives it more emphasis; *e. g.*,

Are you writing?	Scrībĭs-nĕ?
I am writing.	Scrībŏ.
Are you reading?	Lĕgis-nĕ?
I am not reading.	Nōn lĕgŏ.
Will you do what I ask?	Făciēs-nĕ quæ* rŏgŏ?
I will certainly do (it).	Făciăm vĕrŏ.

EXERCISE.

(174.) *Vocabulary.*

New, nŏvŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Between, among*, intĕr (prep., acc.).
News, nŏvī (neut. gen. of nŏvŭs, used with a neut. adj. or pronoun).	*Beast, brute*, bestiă, æ.
Num, interrogative particle, used when *no* is expected as the answer.	*An evil*, mălŭm, ī.
To do, ăgĕrĕ.	*Without*, sĭnĕ (prep., abl.).
To be among, intĕresse (inter + essĕ); but *quĭd interest?* = *what is the difference?*	*Figure*, fĭgūră, æ.
	Mortal, mortălĭs, ĕ.
	Certainly, vĕrŏ (affirmative particle).
	To carry, vĕhĕrĕ.
	Immortal, immortălĭs,† ĕ.

* Hæc, quæ, plural, should be translated *this, what*, singular.

† Observe the force of in prefixed to adjectives. Mortalis = *mortal*; in + mortalis = immortalis, *immortal*.

(175.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *What is the news?*	Quĭd est nŏvī? (=What is there *of new?*)
(*b*) *Is there anything new?* (There is not, is there?)	Nŭm est quidnăm nŏvī? (Num expects the answer *no.*)
(*c*) *Why do you laugh?*	Quĭd rīdēs?

(176.) *Translate into English.*

Quĭs nōs vŏcăt?—Cūjŭs hīc lĭbĕr est?—Quĕm vĭdēs?—Quĭd ăgĭs.—Quĭd intĕrest intĕr hŏmĭnĕm ĕt bestiăm?—Quăm dŏmŭm invĕnĭēs sīnĕ măllŭs?—Quĭd lĕgĭs?—Ēpistŏlăm.—Quæ ămīcĭtiă est intĕr improbōs?—Nŭm Cæsărĕm tĭmēs?—Nōn tĭmeŏ.—Quă ĭn urbĕ (125, IV., N., ‡) sŭmŭs?—Quĭs hŏmŏ est?—Ĕgŏ sŭm Cæsăr.—Nŭm ănĭmŭs fĭgūrăm hăbĕt?—Sunt nĕ hŏmĭnēs mortālēs?—Sunt vĕrŏ.—Quĭd tĭmēs? Cæsărĕm vĕlĭs.

(177.) *Translate into Latin.*

Who calls me?—Whose are those books?—What men do you see?—What are you writing?—A letter.—What book are you reading?—What is the difference between the good and the wicked?—Who is the soldier?—What is the difference between wolves and dogs?—Do you not fear the enemy?—I do not fear (them.)—What man will you find without a fault (culpă)?—In what town are we?—Whose house is this?—What city will you find without evils?—What is the difference between men and beasts?—What do you fear? You are carrying the king.—Are men immortal (nŭm)?—They are not.

LESSON XXX.

Indefinite Pronouns.

(178.) The *Indefinite* Pronouns denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual; *e. g.*, *any one, some one,* &c. They are,

1. Quĭdăm, *a certain one, &c., plural, some.*
2. Quīvīs, Quīlĭbĕt, } *any you please.*

3. Quisquăm, *any, any one (e. g.*, when it is denied that there are any). [Neut. quicquăm (*subst.*); quodquăm (*adj.*). This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]
4. Quispiăm, *somebody, some* (neut.).
5. Ălĭquĭs, *some one, something* (neut.); *any* (adj.).
6. Quisquĕ, *each*, ūnusquisquĕ, *each one* (stronger than quisquĕ).
7. Ecquĭs? used interrogatively, (does) *any one? anything?*

☞ Observe carefully that each of the above takes quĭd in neuter nom., and acc., when used *substantively;* and quŏd when used *adjectively.*

EXERCISE.

(179.) *Vocabulary.*

The tenth, dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Art*, ars, (art) ĭs (f.).
A javelin, trāgŭlă, æ.	*Form*, fōrmă, æ.
To see, to notice, conspĭcĕrĕ.	*To discover*, invĕnīrĕ.
Judgment, discretion, consĭlĭŭm, ī.	*For*, ētĕnĭm, conj. (always stands first in its clause).
Eternity, æternĭtās, (æternĭtāt) ĭs (f.).	*Cultivation, humanity*, hūmānĭtās, ātĭs (f.).
Maker, artificer, făbĕr, făbrī (m.).	*Common*, commūnĭs, ĭs, ĕ.
Fifth, quintŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Bond*, vinclŭm, ī.
Youth, jŭventūs, (jŭventūt) ĭs (f.).	*Dignity*, dignĭtas, (dignĭtāt) ĭs (f.).
Fortune, fortūnă, æ.	*Body*, corpŭs, (corpŏr) ĭs (n.).
Forever, ĭn æternŭm.	
Belong, pertĭnērĕ.	

(180.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Something new.*	Ălĭquĭd nŏvī.
Each one of us.	Unusquisquĕ nostrūm.
A certain thing new.	Quiddăm nŏvī.
Some dignity.	Ălĭquĭd dignĭtātĭs.

Rule of Syntax.—The indefinite pronouns may be used *partitively*, and then govern the genitive.

(*b*) *A certain one of the soldiers.*	Quīdăm (*sing.*) ex mīlĭtĭbŭs.
Some of the soldiers.	Quīdăm (*plur.*) ex mīlĭtĭbŭs.

Rem. The ablat. with ex is used instead of the genitive, especially with quīdăm.

(181.) *Translate into English.*

Quīdam ex mīlĭtĭbŭs dĕcĭmæ lĕgiōnĭs vĕnĭēbăt.—Quintō diē (118, II., *c*) trāgŭlă ā quōdăm mīlĭtĕ conspĭcĭtŭr.—Vĭrī, in quĭbŭs ălĭquĭd consĭlĭī (180, *a*) est, magnănĭmī sunt.—Tempŭs

est pars quædăm æternĭtātĭs.—Cuīvĭs (125, II., *a*) ănĭmālĭ corpŭs est.—Quīlĭbĕt est făbĕr fortūnæ suæ.—Ūnĭcuīquĕ* (125, II., *a*) nostrŭm (180, 120) est ănĭmŭs immortālĭs.—Quisquĕ nostrŭm (180) in æternŭm vīvĕt.—Ănĭmŭs nōn hăbĕt formăm ălĭquăm, nĕc fĭgūrăm.—Ălĭquĭd nŏvī invĕnĭēs.—Ētĕnĭm omnēs artēs, quæ ad hūmānĭtātĕm pertĭnent, hăbent quoddăm commūnĕ vincŭlŭm.

(182.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The pronouns of the lesson are italicized in the exercise.]

Some of the soldiers of the fifth legion are wounded (pres.).—On the fifth day (118, II., *c*) the enemy is noticed by a *certain* soldier of the tenth legion.—Men, in whom there is *some* dignity (180), are magnanimous.—To *each* man (= of men) there is a soul and a body.—I will give the book to *any-one-you-please* of the scholars. *Each one* of us shall live forever.—You will discover a *certain thing new*.—*Some* of the soldiers are in the city.—For all the arts which belong to cultivation have a *certain* common bond.—Youth is a *certain* part of life.—Is not (estne) *any man-you-please* the maker of his own fortune?—Has the soul (*use* num) *any* form or figure?

LESSON XXXI.

Correlative Pronouns.

(183.) Correlative Pronouns are such as *answer* to each other; *e. g.*, *how great? so great. How many? so many*, &c.

[This correlation is often expressed in English by adverbs or conjunctions: *such* a man *as*: *as* is the general, *so* are the troops, &c.]

(184.) The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.
tālĭs, *such.*	qualĭs; *as, of what kind.*	qualiscunquĕ, *of whatever kind.*
tantŭs, *so great, so much.*	quantŭs, *as great.*	quantuscunquĕ, *however great.*
		ălĭquantŭs, *somewhat great.*
*tŏt, *so many.*	*quŏt, *as many.*	*ălĭquŏt, *some.*
*tŏtĭdĕm, *just so many.*		*quotquŏt, *however many.*

* Ūnus and quisquĕ are both declined in ūnusquisquĕ. Ūnŭs has *gen.* ūnĭŭs, *dat.* ūnī.

Rem. 1. Quālĭs? *of what kind?* quantŭs? *how great?* quŏt? *how many?* are also used interrogatively.

2. Those marked thus (*) are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.

EXERCISE.

(185.) *Vocabulary.*

Where, ŭbĭ (adv.).	*Fear,* tĭmŏr, (tĭmōr) ĭs (m.).
Toil, ŏpĕră, æ.	*Or,* vĕl (conj.).
Pleasure, vŏluptās, (vŏluptāt) ĭs (f.).	*Advantages,* bonă (neut. adj.).
Reward, præmĭŭm, ī.	*To afford,* præbĕrĕ.
Gold, aurŭm, ī.	*To covet,* expĕtĕrĕ. [ĭs (f.).
Money, pĕcūnĭă, æ.	*Liberality,* lĭbĕrālĭtās, (lĭbĕrālĭtāt)

(186.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *So much toil* (= *of toil*).	Tantŭm ŏpĕræ.
How much pleasure? (= *of pleasure?*)	Quantŭm vŏluptātĭs?
No reward (= *nothing of reward*).	Nĭhĭl præmiī.
Much gold (= *of gold*).	Multŭm aurī. (But, *much money* = magnă pecūnĭă, *not* multŭm pecūnĭæ.)
A pretty large piece of ground.	Alĭquantŭm ăgrī.

Rule of Syntax.—The neuters, tantŭm, quantŭm, ălĭquantŭm; also, multŭm, nĭhĭl, quĭd, ălĭquĭd, and others, are used as *neuter nouns*, and followed by the genitive (Synt., 695, *b*., R.).

Obs. Tantŭm, quantŭm in neut., with genitive = *so much, so many, how much, how many;* but in masc. and fem., agreeing with the noun, *so great, how great; e. g., how many books?* quantŭm lĭbrōrŭm; *so great fear,* tantŭs tĭmŏr.

(*b*) *As is the master, so are the scholars.*	Quālĭs est măgistĕr, tālēs sunt discĭpŭlī; or (with *est* and *sunt* omitted), quālĭs măgistĕr, tālēs discĭpŭlī.

(187.) *Translate into English.*

Quālēs sunt dŭcēs, tālēs sunt mīlĭtēs.—Fortūnæ bŏnă (82, II.), quantăcunquĕ sunt, incertă sunt.—Tantŭs tĭmŏr omnĕm exercĭtŭm occupābăt.—Ŭbĭ tantăm virtūtĕm invĕnĭēs?—Quantŭm vŏluptātĭs virtūs præbĕt!—Fratrī est (125, II., *a*) ălĭquan-

tŭm pĕcūniæ.—Virtūs nĭhĭl præmĭī vĕl pecūniæ expĕtĭt.—Pătĕr mĭhĭ magnăm pĕcūniăm dăbĭt.—Quantŭm (186, *Obs.*) lĭbrōrŭm hăbēs?—Quŏt homĭnēs, tŏt sententĭæ.

(188.) *Translate into Latin.*

As are the generals, so are the soldiers.—As is the king, so are the leaders.—As are the masters (herī), so are the slaves.—As are the fathers, so are the children.—So great an army is coming.—The advantages of the body, however great they may be (sunt), are uncertain.—Where will you find so great liberality?—How many (186, *Obs.*) rewards does virtue afford?—Good (men) covet no (186, *a*) reward.—Will your father *give* (135, II.) you much money?—Has your brother much gold?—As are the chiefs, so are the citizens.—My father has (125, II., *a*) a pretty large piece of ground.

§ 16.

NUMERALS. (XXXII.—XXXIII.)

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.—Partial Table.

(189.) NUMERALS are divided into the four classes following, of which the first three are *adjectives*, the fourth, *adverbs*.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
	One, two, &c.	First, second, &c.	One a piece, one by one, one at a time, &c.	Once, twice, &c.
I.	ūnŭs, ă, ŭm.	prīmŭs, ă, ŭm.	singŭlī, æ, ă.	sĕmĕl.
II.	duŏ, æ, ŏ.	sĕcundŭs, ă, ŭm.	bīnī, æ, ă.	bĭs.
III.	trēs, ēs, trĭă.	tertĭŭs, ă, ŭm.	ternī, æ, ă.	tĕr.
IV.	quattuŏr.	quartŭs, ă, ŭm.	quăternī, æ, ă.	quatĕr.
V.	quinquĕ.	quintŭs, ă, ŭm.	quīnī, æ, ă.	quinquiĕs.
VI.	sĕx.	sextŭs, ă, ŭm.	sēnī, æ, ă.	sexiĕs.
VII.	sĕptĕm.	septĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.	septēnī, æ, ă.	septiĕs.
VIII.	ŏctŏ.	octāvŭs, ă, ŭm.	octōnī, æ, ă.	octiēs.
IX.	nŏvĕm.	nōnŭs, ă, ŭm.	nŏvēnī, æ, ă.	nŏviēs.
X.	dĕcĕm.	dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.	dēnī, æ, ă.	dĕciēs.
XI.	undĕcim.	undĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.	undēnī, æ, ă.	undĕciēs.
XII.	duŏdĕcim.	duŏdĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.	duŏdēnī, æ, ă.	duŏdeciēs.

Rem. For the declension of *ūnŭs* and *duŏ*, see 194. *Trēs* is declined like a plural adjective of *second* class, 194. The remaining cardinals are undeclined. The ordinals and distributives are declined like adjectives of the first class.

EXERCISE.

(190.) *Vocabulary.*

In all, altogether, omnīnŏ.
Multitude, multĭtūdŏ, (multĭtūdĭn) ĭs (f.).
Hour, hōrā, æ.
To be distant, distārĕ.
Mile, millĭă,* (mill) iŭm (pl. n.).
Year, annŭs, ī.
Month, mensĭs, (mens) ĭs (m.).
Another, altĕr, ă, ŭm (194, R. 1.).
Thirty-six, sex et trigintă.
To levy, conscrībĕrĕ.
Night-watch, vigĭlĭa, æ.
From, after, dē (with abl.).
To strive, to hasten, contendĕrĕ.
Italy, Itălĭă, æ.

* Millĕ, *plur.* millĭă = 1000. Millĭă (passuŭm, *of paces* understood) = *a mile.*

(191.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *They fight four hours.*	Hōrās quattuŏr pugnant.
(*b*) *The city is distant five miles.*	Urbs distăt quinquĕ milliă.
(*c*) *A ditch eleven feet wide.*	Fossă undĕcim pĕdēs lātă.

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative answers to the questions *how long?* (whether of *time* or *space*), *how broad? how high?* &c.; *e. g.*, in (*a*) hōrās; in (*b*) milliă; in (*c*) pĕdēs.

(*d*) *How long?* may also be expressed by a noun in the genitive, depending on another noun; *e. g.*, *a ditch of ten feet*, fossă dĕcĕm pĕdŭm.

(192.) *Translate into English.*

Ĕrant omnīnŏ ĭtĭnĕră duŏ.—Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quārum unăm incŏlunt Belgæ, altĕrăm Ăquitānī.—Ūnŭs ē multĭtūdĭnĕ vulnĕrātŭr.—Hōrās sēx pugnābant.—Urbs distăt dĕcĕm milliă.—Ĭn annō duŏdĕcĭm mensēs sunt.—Cæsăr dŭās lĕgĭōnēs conscrībĭt.—Cæsăr trēs lĕgĭōnēs quæ ĭn Galliă hiĕmābant ēdūcĭt.—Cæsăr trēs lĕgĭōnēs ex hībernīs ēdūcĭt.—Sunt omnīnŏ ĭtĭnĕră quattuŏr.—Cæsăr dē quārtă vĭgĭliă lĕgĭōnēs ēdūcĭt.—Consŭl lĕgĭōnĕm dĕcĭmăm ĭn castră rĕdūcĭt.—Cæsăr cŭm quinquĕ lĕgĭōnĭbŭs ĭn Ītălĭăm contendĭt.—Ĕrăt omnīnŏ ĭn Galliă lĕgĭŏ ūnă.

(193.) *Translate into Latin.*

There are in all three ways.—There are of Gaul three parts, of which the Sequanians inhabit one.—There are of the city five parts.—Four of (= out of) the multitude are wounded.—The soldiers fight seven hours.—In three years are thirty-six months.—The villages are distant nine miles.—The wood is distant four miles.—The consuls will levy six legions.—Cæsar will lead out five legions from Italy.—The general was levying two legions in Gaul.—Cæsar will lead out the soldiers in the second watch.—The consul, in the third watch leads back the soldiers into the camp.—The tenth legion fights (pugnat).—There are altogether in Gaul two legions.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion after the second watch.

LESSON XXXIII.

Numerals, continued.

(194.) Declension of ūnŭs, duŏ, and trēs.

	One, Sing.		Two, Plur.	Three, Plur.
N.	ūnŭs, ă, ŭm.	N. V.	duŏ, duæ, duŏ.	trēs, trēs, trĭă.
G.	ūnĭŭs, ĭŭs, ĭŭs.	Gen.	duōrŭm, duārŭm, duōrŭm.	trĭŭm, trĭŭm, trĭŭm.
D.	ūnī, ī, ī.	D. Ab.	duōbus, duābŭs, duōbus.	trĭbŭs, trĭbŭs, trĭbŭs.
	the rest regular.	Acc.	duōs and duŏ, duās, duŏ.	trēs, trēs, trĭă.

Rem. (1.) Like *ūnŭs* are declined

Ălĭŭs, ă, ŭd, *another.**
Altĕr, ă, ŭm, *the one, the other* (of two).
Neutĕr, tră, trŭm, *neither of the two.*
Nullŭs, ă, um, *no one.*
Sōlus, ă, ŭm, *alone.*
Tōtŭs, ă, ŭm, *the whole.*
Ullŭs, a, ŭm, *any one.*
Ŭtĕr, tră, trŭm, *which of the two.*
Ŭterquĕ, traquĕ, trumque, *each of the two, both*; and other compounds of *ŭtĕr.*

(2.) Like *duŏ* is declined ambŏ, æ, ŏ, *both.*

EXERCISE.

(195.) *Vocabulary.*

What one, quŏtŭs, ă, ŭm.
Most, plērusquĕ, ăquĕ, ŭmquĕ; *e. g.*, *most men*, hŏmĭnēs plērīquĕ; *most insects*, insectă plērăquĕ.
Virgil, Virgĭlĭŭs, ī.
More, măgĭs (adv.).
A beam, trabs, (trăb) is (f.).
Insect, insectŭm, ī.
Horace, Hŏrātĭŭs, ī.
To migrate, mĭgrārĕ.
Writer, scriptŏr, (scriptōr) is (m.).
Mother, matĕr, (matr) is (f.).

[Refer to the column of distributives (189).]

(196.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *My father will give us* two *books* apiece. — Pătĕr nōbīs bīnōs lĭbrōs dăbĭt.

(*b*) What *hour is it? The* third. — Quŏtă hōră est? Tertiă.

(*c*) *He will come for* my *sake* alone. — Meă unīŭs causă (*abl.*) vĕniĕt.

(*d*) *Which pleases you? Neither.* — Ŭtĕr tĭbĭ plăcĕt? Neutĕr.

(*e*) *The beams are* three *feet distant* (*apart*) *from* each other. — Trabēs intĕr sē distant ternōs pĕdēs (191, *c*).

* When ălĭŭs is repeated, it means *some, others.*

(197.) *Translate into English.*

Mātĕr nōbīs quăternōs lĭbrōs dăbĭt.—Nōbīs sunt (125, II., *a*) ternī ŏquī.—Bīnæ omnĭbŭs ăvĭbŭs ălæ sunt.—Insectă plērăquĕ sēnōs, ălĭă octōnōs, pĕdēs hăbent.—Quŏtă hōră est? Nōnă.—Mīlĭtēs utrīusquĕ exercĭtūs sunt fortēs.—Tuă ūnīŭs causă vĕnient.—Virgĭlĭŭs atquĕ Horātĭŭs poētæ sunt præclārī; ŭtĕr tĭbĭ măgĭs plăcĕt? (161, *a*.) Virgĭlĭŭs.—Bīs ĭn annō mīlĭtēs vĕniunt.—Septembĕr est nōnŭs annī mensĭs.—Trăbēs intĕr sē distant bīnōs pĕdēs (191, *c*).

(198.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Some of the words will be found in 194, R. 1.]

We have (125, II., *a*) four dogs apiece (196, *a*).—The master gives us five books at a time.—All men have (125, II., *a*) two eyes apiece.—Most insects have six (*senos*) feet; some (194*) nine, others (194*) ten, others (194*) twelve.—What o'clock (hour) is it?—The fifth.—The eighth.—The eleventh.—The twelfth.—The generals of each army are brave.—Why do you come? For your sake alone (196, *c*).—Cicero and Cæsar are excellent writers; which pleases you? Neither.—Which pleases you more? Cæsar.—The birds migrate twice in the year.—The soldiers will come eight times a year.—October is the tenth month of the year; November the eleventh; December the twelfth.—The beams are four feet distant from each other.—The beams are seven feet apart from each other.

§ 17.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN ĭō.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation in ĭō.

(199.) Some verbs of the third conjugation, instead of taking the simple verb-stem for the tense-stem in the tenses for incomplete action, add *i* to the verb-stem in these tenses. They form the infinitive, however, in ĕre, like other verbs of the third.

(200.) Infin. Active, căp-ĕrĕ, *to take.*

	SINGULAR.		
Present.	căp-ĭ-ō.	căp-ĭs,	căp-ĭt.
Imperfect.	căp-ĭ-ēbăm.	căp-ĭ-ēbās.	căp-ĭ-ēbāt.
Future.	căp-ĭ-ăm.	căp-ĭ-ēs.	căp-ĭ-ĕt.
	PLURAL.		
Present.	căp-ĭ-mŭs.	căp-ĭ-tĭs.	căp-ĭ-unt.
Imperfect.	căp-ĭ-ēbāmŭs.	căp-ĭ-ēbātĭs.	căp-ĭ-ēbant.
Future.	căp-ĭ-ēmŭs.	căp-ĭ-ētĭs.	căp-ĭ-ēnt.

Infin. Passive, căp-ī, *to be taken.*

	SINGULAR.		
Present.	căp-ĭ-ŏr.	căp-ĕ-rĭs.	căp-ĭ-tŭr.
Imperfect.	căp-ĭ-ēbăr.	căp-ĭ-ēbārĭs.	căp-ĭ-ēbātŭr.
Future.	căp-ĭ-ăr.	căp-ĭ-ērĭs.	căp-ĭ-ētŭr.
	PLURAL.		
Present.	căp-ĭ-mŭr.	căp-ĭ-mĭnĭ.	căp-ĭ-untŭr.
Imperfect.	căp-ĭ-ēbāmŭr.	căp-ĭ-ēbāmĭnĭ.	căp-ĭ-ēbantŭr.
Future.	căp-ĭ-ēmŭr.	căp-ĭ-ēmĭnĭ.	căp-ĭ-entŭr.

EXERCISE.

(201.) *Vocabulary.*

[In all cases, verbs of the class described above will be indicated in the vocabularies by the ending iŏ, after the infinitive form; *e. g.*, *to make*, făcĕrĕ (iŏ).]

Pardon, favour, vĕnĭă, æ.
Excuse, excūsātĭō, (excūsātiōn) ĭs (f.):
To receive, accept, accĭpĭŏ (ĭ).
Way, road, ĭtĕr, (ĭtĭnĕr) ĭs (neut.).
To undertake, suscĭpĭŏ (ĭ).
To make, făcĭŏ (ĭ).
And, quĕ.*
Ship, nāvĭs, (nāv) ĭs (f.).
To repair, to renew, to rebuild, rĕfĭcĭŏ (ĭ).
Long, longŭs, ă, ŭm.
Wall, mūrŭs, ī.
Harbour, portŭs, ūs (m.).

(202.) *Example.*

Willingly Cæsar gives pardon and receives the excuse. | Lĭbentĕr Cæsăr dăt vĕniăm, excūsātiōnemquĕ* accĭpĭt.

(203.) *Translate into English.*

Labiēnŭs multă Germānōrŭm (78, II., *b*) oppida căpiēbăt.—Helvētiī pĕr prōvinciăm nostrăm ĭtĕr făciunt.—Vulnĕră grăviă ă mīlĭtĭbŭs accĭpĭuntŭr.—Æduī bellŭm magnŭm suscĭpiēbant.—Lĭbentĕr Cæsăr nuntĭōs accipĭt, iīsque (201, N.) vĕniăm dăt.—Impĕrātŏr obsĭdēs cīvĭtātĭs lĭbentĕr accĭpiĕt.—Nuntiŭm ă patrĕ crās accĭpiēs.—Crassŭs nāvēs longās, quæ ĭn portū sunt, rĕfĭcĭt.—Consŭl mūrōs urbĭs rĕfĭcĭt.

(204.) *Translate into Latin.*

The enemy were making (their) way through our province.—The Romans were rapidly (cĕlĕrĭtĕr) making their way through Gaul.—We shall receive a messenger from the city to-day.—The Helvetians were undertaking a severe and great war.—The soldiers receive many and severe wounds.—We shall make (our) way through Britain.—Cæsar will willingly receive the excuse of the Æduans, and grant them (iīsque) favour.—The gifts of a father are gladly (lĭbentĕr) received.—The long ships are repaired by Cæsar.—The general was rebuilding the old (vĕtĕrēs) ships which were in the harbour.—We shall rebuild the old walls.

(205.) Observe the formation of the following words:

Accĭpĭŏ (*to receive*), = ăd (*to*)+căpĭŏ (*to take*).
Suscĭpĭŏ (*to undertake*), = sub (*under*)+căpĭŏ.
Rĕfĭcĭŏ (*to rebuild*), = rĕ+făcĭŏ (*to make again*).

☞ In the composition of verbs with prepositions, ă frequently passes into ĭ, as in these examples.

* Ĕt joins words or sentences which are considered *independent* and of equal importance with each other; quĕ joins a word or sentence *closely* to another, as an *appendage* to it.

§ 18.

DEPONENT VERBS.

LESSON XXXV.

Deponent Verbs.

(206.) DEPONENT verbs are such as have the *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; *e. g.*, hortŏr, *I exhort* (not *I am exhorted*).

(207.) The forms of deponents in the tenses for incomplete action of the indicative mood are precisely the same as those of passive verbs (Lessons XII., XIII.); we therefore need only give the *first* persons.

(208.) DEPONENT FORMS.

INDICATIVE.			
1st conj.	hortŏr, *I exhort.*	hortābār, *I was exhorting.*	hortābŏr, *I will exhort.*
2d conj.	fāteŏr, *I confess.*	fātēbār, *I was confessing.*	fātēbŏr, *I will confess.*
3d conj.	sĕquŏr, *I follow.*	sĕquēbār, *I was following.*	sĕquār, *I will follow.*
4th conj.	mētiŏr, *I measure.*	mētiēbār, *I was measuring.*	mētiār, *I will measure.*

INFINITIVE.				
	1. hort-ārī, *to exhort.*	2. fāt-ērī, *to confess.*	3. sĕqu-ī, *to follow.*	4. mēt-īrī, *to measure.*

[☞ In the vocabularies deponent verbs are always given by the *infinitive* forms. Observe that the ending -ārī shows that the verb is of the 1st conj.; -ērī, the 2d; -ī, the 3d; -īrī, the 4th.]

EXERCISE.

(209.) *Vocabulary.*

[Transitive deponents govern the accusative, unless it is otherwise mentioned in the vocabularies.]

To embrace, amplect-ī.
To gain, to possess one's self of, pŏt-īrī (with gen. or abl.; generally gen. in Cæs.).
To endeavour, cōn-ārī.
To follow, sĕqu-ī.
As, as if, tanquam (adv.).
To strive after, pursue, persĕqu-ī (pĕr + sĕquī, *to follow through*).
Glory, glōriă, æ.
All, tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (194, R., 1).
Bravery, virtue, virtūs, (virtūt) ūs (f.).
Long, diū (adv.).
Sin, fault, peccātŭm, ī.

(210.) *Example.*

The Helvetians endeavour to pass (= to make way) *through our province.*	Helvētiī pĕr prōvinciăm nostrām ĭtĕr făcĕrĕ cōnantŭr.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used in Latin (as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain verbs; *e. g.*, *I wish*, *I can*, *I hasten*, *I endeavour*, &c., as făcĕrĕ in the above example.*

(211.) *Translate into English.*

Pătĕr filiŭm et filiăm amplectĭtŭr.—Impĕrātŏr mīlĭtēs diū hortābātŭr.—Dumnŏrix tōtiŭs (194, R. 1) Galliæ pōtĭtŭr.—Peccātă meă fătēbŏr.—Princĭpēs totiŭs Galliæ pōtīrī cōnābantŭr.—Rōmānī per Brĭtanniam ĭtĕr făcĕrĕ cōnantŭr.—Glōriă vĭrtūtēm tanquăm umbră sĕquĭtŭr.—*Magnōs* hŏmĭnēs virtūtĕ (55) mētĭmŭr, nōn fortūnă.—Mīlĭtēs sempĕr glōriăm persĕquuntŭr.—Mīlĭtēs dūcĕm lĭbentĕr sĕquēbantŭr.

(212.) *Translate into Latin.*

The father will embrace (his) sons and daughters.—The chiefs possess themselves of all the province.—Do you *confess* (135, II.) your fault?—The Helvetians were endeavouring to pass through Gaul.—Glory will follow bravery as a shadow.—We were exhorting the soldiers yesterday.—We shall gladly follow Cæsar.—They are rapidly making their way through our province.—You measure men by (their) fortune, not by (their) bravery.—The chiefs will endeavour to lead the army across the Rhine (113, II., *a*).—Generals always strive after glory.—Are you *exhorting* (135, II.) your son?—The Romans always followed glory.

* Observe carefully that *a purpose* is *never* expressed by the simple infinitive in Latin. It would not be Latin to say dīscĕrĕ vĕnĭt, *he comes to learn.*

§ 19.

ADVERBS.

LESSON XXXVI.

Adverbs.

[THIS section need not be learned by heart in the first course, but the distinction of *primitive* and *derivative* should be acquired; and the section should be afterward referred to whenever examples occur.]

(213.) *Adverbs* (17) are either *Primitive* or *Derivative.*

[We give but a few here; a fuller list will be given hereafter.—*See Summary of Etymology*, 680.]

(214.) *Primitive Adverbs:*

1. *Negative.*—Nōn, *not*; haud, *not*; ne (interrog. or imper.), *not*; ne quīdĕm (always separated by some word), *not even.*
2. Of *Place.*—Ŭbĭ, *where*; ĭbĭ, *there*; quŏ? *whither?* hūc, *hither*, illūc, *thither*; undĕ, *whence*; indĕ, *thence*, &c.
3. Of *Time.*—Nunc, *now*; tum or tunc, *then*; nūpĕr, *lately*; crās, *to-morrow*; hŏdiē, *to-day*; hĕrī, *yesterday*, &c.
4. Of *Quality*, &c.—Admŏdŭm, *very*; ăn, *whether*; cūr, *why* (interrog.); ĕtiăm, *also*; fĕrē, *almost*, &c.

(215.) *Derivative Adverbs* are nearly all formed from adjectives or participles by adding ē or ĭtĕr to their stems.

1. Add ē to the stem of adjectives of the *first class*; *e. g.*,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Alt-ŭs, *high.*	Alt-ē, *high.*
Lĭbĕr, *free.*	Lĭbĕr-ē, *freely.*
Clār-ŭs *illustrious.*	Clār-ē, *illustriously.*
&c.	&c.

Rem. Bŏnŭs makes bēnē, *well*, and mălŭs (*bad*), mălē, *badly.* All others end in ē (*long*).

2. (*a*) Add ĭtĕr to the stem of adjectives of the *second* and *third classes*; *e. g.*,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Cĕlĕr, *swift.*	Celer-ĭtĕr, *swiftly.*
Brĕv-ĭs, *brief.*	Brev-ĭtĕr, *briefly.*

(*b*) But those which end in ns do not take the connecting vowel ĭ; *e. g.*,

Prūdens, *prudent.*	Prūden-tĕr, *prudently.*
Săpiens, *wise.*	Săpien-tĕr, *wisely.*

Rem. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tĕr, *boldly*.

3. Some are derived from *nouns* by adding tŭs or tim to the stem by means of a connecting vowel, *e. g.*, cœl-ĭtŭs, *from heaven*; fund-ĭtŭs, *from the ground, totally*; grĕg-ā-tim, *by flocks*, &c.

(216.) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter* gender, are often used as adverbs; *e. g.*, dulcĕ, *sweetly*; prīmŭm, *first*; falsō, *falsely*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(217.) *Vocabulary.*

Well, bĕnĕ, derived irregularly from bŏnŭs, *good.*	*Almost*, fĕrē.
Bravely, fortĭtĕr, derived regularly (215, 2, *a*) from fortĭs, *brave.*	*Rightly*, rectē, derived regularly from rectŭs, *right.*
Sharply, spiritedly, acrĭtĕr, derived regularly from ăcĕr (acr-ĭs), *sharp.*	*Impiously*, impiē, derived regularly from impiŭs, *impious.*
Swiftly, cĕlĕrĭtĕr, derived regularly from cĕlĕr, *swift.*	*In flocks*, grĕgātim.
Happily, beātē, derived regularly (215, 1) from beātŭs, *happy.*	*To labour*, lăbōrārē.
Honestly, hŏnestē, derived regularly from hŏnestŭs, *honest.*	*To blame, to accuse, find fault with*, incūsārē.
	Socrates, Sōcrătēs, (Sōcrăt) is.
	Not even, nĕquĭdem (always separated by one or more words).

(218.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *To live honestly and rightly is to live well and happily.*	Hŏnestē et rectē vīvĕrĕ est bĕnĕ et beātē vīvĕrĕ.

Rule of Position.—The adverb is generally placed *before* the word which it qualifies.

(*b*) *Almost all men love themselves.*	Omnēs fĕrē hŏmĭnēs sēsē dĭlĭgunt.

Fĕrē is generally placed *between* the adjective and noun.

(*c*) *He does* not *praise* even *Socrates.*	Nĕ Sōcrătēm quĭdĕm laudăt.

(219.) *Translate into English.*

Hostēs nōbiscŭm (125, II., *b*) acrĭtĕr pugnābant.—Ĕquī ĭn ăgrīs cĕlerĭtĕr currēbant.—Bĕnĕ vīvĕrĕ est beātē vīvĕrĕ.—Cervī grĕgātim sempĕr currunt.—Sempĕr săpiens rectē vīvĭt.—Diū

et acrĭtĕr mīlĭtēs pugnābant.—Omnēs fĕrē hŏmĭnēs impiē vīvunt.—Omnēs fĕrē ăvēs bĭs ĭn annō mĭgrant.—Nē Cicĕrōnĕm quĭdĕm laudābĭt.—Nē hōc quĭdĕm (not even with this) dēlectābĭtŭr.

(220.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans were fighting long and bravely.—Cæsar sharply accuses the Helvetians.—Horses and stags run swiftly.—The farmers were labouring long in the fields.—Almost all men love their (own) children.—Cæsar led almost all the Germans across the Rhine (113, II., *a*).—I waited for you long.—The bad do not live happily.—To live happily is to live rightly.—You will not be delighted even with this.—Not even this will delight (my) father.—Not even Cæsar will be praised.—Almost all birds fly in flocks.—They do not praise even Virgil.—Almost all wise (men) live happily.—Almost all men strive-after glory.—To live prudently is to live happily.—The commander will blame the lieutenant sharply.

§ 20.

PREPOSITIONS. (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)

LESSON XXXVII.

Prepositions.

[THIS section (221) need not be learned by heart in the first course, but should be constantly referred to whenever examples occur.]

(221.) The following prepositions govern the *accusative* case:

Ăd, *to.*
Ăpŭd, *at.*
Antĕ, *before* (of time and place).
Adversŭs, adversŭm, *against.*
Cis, citrā, *on this side.*
Circā and circŭm, *around, about.*
Circĭtĕr, *about, towards* (indefinitely of time or number).
Contrā, *against.*
Ergā, *towards.*
Extrā, *beyond, without.*
Infrā, *beneath, below* (the contrary of sŭprā).
Intĕr, *between, among.*
Intrā, *within* (the contrary of extrā).
Juxtā, *near to, beside.*
Ŏb, *on account of.*
Pĕnĕs, *in the power of.*
Pĕr, *through.*
Pōnĕ, *behind.*
Post, *after* (both of time and space).
Prætĕr, *beside.*
Prŏpĕ, *near.*
Proptĕr, *near, on account of.*
Sĕcundŭm, *after, in accordance with.*
Sŭprā, *above.*
Trans, *on the other side.*
Versŭs (is put after its noun), *towards* a place.
Ultrā, *beyond.*

(222.) The following govern the *ablative* case:

Ā, ăb, *from, by.*
Clām, *without the knowledge of.*
Cōrām, *in the presence of.*
Cŭm, *with.*
Dĕ, *down from, concerning.*
Ē, ex (ē before consonants only, ex before *both* consonants and vowels), *out of, from.*
Præ, *before, owing to.*
Prō, *before, for.*
Sĭnĕ, *without.*
Tĕnŭs (is put after its noun), *as far as, up to.*

The following lines contain the prepositions governing the ablative, and can be readily learned by heart:

Absquĕ, ā, ăb, abs, *and* dĕ,
Cōrām, clām, cŭm, ex, *and* ē,
Tĕnŭs, sĭnĕ, prō, *and* præ.

(223.) The following govern the *accusative* or *ablative:*

1. Ĭn, (*a*) *with the accus.*, (1) into, on, to (to the question *whither?*) (2) *against.* (*b*) *With the ablative*, in, on (to the question *where?*)

2. Sŭb, (*a*) *with the accus.*, (1) under (to the question *whither?*) (2) about

or towards (indefinitely of time). (*b*) *With the ablative*, under (to the question *where?*)

3. Sŭpĕr, (*a*) *with the accus.*, above, over. (*b*) *With the ablative*, upon, concerning.

4. Subtĕr, under, beneath (but little used).

EXERCISE.

(224.) *Vocabulary.*

The Garonne (river), Gărumnă, æ.	*History*, hĭstŏrĭă, æ.
An Aquitanian, Ăquītānŭs, ī.	*Fable*, fābŭlă, æ.
Aquitania, Aquītānĭă, æ.	*To bound* (limit), contĭnĕrĕ (con-+-tĕnĕrĕ).
The Leman, or *Geneva* (lake), Lĕmannŭs, ī.	*Part* or *side*, pars, (part) is (f.).
Jura (mountain), Jūrā, æ (m. 25, *a*).	*On one side*, unā ex partĕ.
To extend or *carry*, perdūcĕrĕ (pĕr-+-dūcĕrĕ).	*The Rhone* (river), Rhŏdănŭs, ī.
State, cīvĭtās, (cīvĭtāt) is (f.).	*To divide*, dīvīdĕrĕ.
Royal power (kingdom), regnŭm, ī.	*Lake*, lăcŭs, ūs (m.), (112, R. 1).
	To remain, mănĕrĕ.

(225.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *The river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.*	Gallōs ăb Ăquītānīs Gărumnă flūmĕn dīvĭdĭt.

Rule of Syntax.—Two nouns expressing the same person or thing take the same case, and are said to be in *apposition* with each other; *e. g.*, in the above example, Gărumnă flūmĕn.

(*b*) *Cæsar hastens* into *Gaul.*	Cæsăr ĭn Galliăm contendĭt.
(*c*) *There was altogether* in *Gaul one legion.*	Ērăt omnīnŏ ĭn Galliā lĕgĭŏ ūnă.

(226.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsăr ā lăcū ăd montĕm, mūrŭm perdūcĭt.—Ăpŭd* Hĕrŏdŏtŭm, pătrĕm hĭstŏrĭæ, sunt multæ fābŭlæ.—Cæsăr ā lăcū Lĕmannō ăd montĕm Jūrăm, mūrŭm perdūcĭt.—Mĕrcātŏr ĭn urbĕ mănĕt.—Puĕrī ĭn dŏmō sunt.—Princeps regnŭm ĭn cīvĭtātĕ occŭpăt.—Consŭl exercĭtŭm ĭn fīnēs Sēquānōrŭm dūcĭt.—Helvētiī contĭnentŭr ūnā ex partĕ (125, IV., N.‡) flūmĭnĕ Rhēnō; altĕrā ex partĕ montĕ Jūrā, tertiā ex partĕ lăcū Lĕmannō ĕt flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdănō.

* *Apud* is used with the names of authors (instead of *in*, with the name of their works); *e. g.*, ăpŭd Cĭcĕrōnĕm lĕgĭmŭs, *we read in Cicero.*

(227.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar was extending walls and ditches (fossasque) from the river to the camp.—The soldiers remain in the camp.—Cæsar will seize the royal power in the state.—The river Rhine separates the Gauls from the Germans.—Cæsar hastens into Italy and levies (conscrībŏrĕ) five legions.—The deserters remain in the town.—The general will lead the soldiers into Italy.—Aquitania is bounded on one side by the river Garumna; on another side by mountains; on the third side by the river Rhone.—You will find (invenies) many fine (præclārā) precepts in (apud) Cicero.—You will find many fables in Herodotus, the father of history.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Prepositions in Composition.

(228.) Most of the prepositions given in Lesson XXXVII. are used *as prefixes* in composition with verbs, and modify their signification; *e. g.*, pōnĕrĕ, *to place;* post-pōnĕrĕ, *to place after.*

(229.) The following prepositions are never used alone, but always as *prefixes* in composition:

1. Amb, *round, about* (from ambo, *both*); ambīrĕ (from amb+īrĕ, *to go round*), *to walk round, to canvass for votes.*
2. Con, *together* (a variation of cum, *with*); con-jungĕrĕ (con+jungĕrĕ), *to join together, to unite.*
3. Di or dis, *asunder* (a variation of dē, *from*); dis-cēdĕrĕ (dĭs+cēdĕrĕ, *to give place asunder*), *to depart.*

 In, with adjectives, means *not;* in-doctŭs, *unlearned;* with verbs, means *in, into; e. g.*, ir-rumpĕrĕ (ĭn+rumpĕrĕ), *to burst* into.
4. Re, *back, again;* rĕ-fĭcĕrĕ (rĕ+făcĕrĕ, *to make again*), *to refit.*
5. Sē, *aside,* sē-dūcĕrĕ (sē+dūcĕrĕ, *to lead astray*), *to seduce.*

EXERCISE.

(230.) *Vocabulary.*

Again (adv.), rursŭs.
To join together, conjungĕrĕ.
To burst into, irrumpĕrĕ.
To burst into the camp, ĭn castrā irrumpĕrĕ.
Mediterranean, Mĕditerrāneŭs, ā, ŭm.
To separate, sēpărārĕ (sē+părārĕ).
Cohort, cōhors, (cōhort) ĭs (f.)
To station, collŏcārĕ (con+lŏcārĕ).
To distribute, distrĭbuĕrĕ (dis+trĭbuĕrĕ).
Africa, Afrĭcă, æ.
Europe, Eurōpă, æ.
Horseman, ĕquĕs, (ĕquĭt) ĭs (m.).

(231.) *Translate into English.*

Consŭl rursŭs lĕgiōnēs ĭn hībernă rĕdūcĭt.—Lēgātŭs quinquĕ cōhortēs cŭm exercĭtū conjungĭt.—Mīlĭtēs omnēs ĭn oppidŭm irrumpunt.—Mărĕ Mĕditerrāneŭm Afrĭcăm ăb Eurōpā sēpărăt.—Belgæ sē cŭm Germānīs conjungēbant.—Impĕrātŏr exercĭtŭm ĭn hībernīs collŏcăt.—Germānī ĕquĭtēs ĭn castrā (223, 1, *a*) irrumpĕrĕ cōnantŭr.—Galbă exercĭtŭm ĭn hībernīs collŏcăt, lĕgiōnēsquĕ ĭn cīvĭtātēs distrĭbuĭt.

(232.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar will lead the cohorts back again into winter-quarters.—All the Germans were bursting into the camp.—The Belgians will unite themselves with Cæsar.—The brave soldiers were trying to burst into the town.—The illustrious general was stationing the soldiers in winter-quarters.—The legions are distributed among (ĭn, *with accus.*) the states.—The legions are led back into winter-quarters.—The Mediterranean Sea separates Spain (Hispānĭă) from Africa.—Cæsar will join all the horsemen with the army.

§ 21.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATIONS. (XXXIX —XLI.)

LESSON XXXIX.

Active Voice.

(233.) (*a*) The student must have observed that in *all* the tenses for incomplete action in the active voice the *person-endings* are as follows:

Sing.	1st person, *o* or *m*.	2d person, *s*.	3d person, *t*.
Plur.	1st person, *mŭs*.	2d person, *tis*.	3d person, *nt*.

(*b*) He must have observed, also, that these endings are added to the proper *tense-stem* in each tense. We take up the tenses in order.

(234.) PRESENT TENSE.

(*a*) *Person-endings*, o, s, t, mŭs, tĭs, nt.

(*b*) The *Tense-stem* is the simple verb-stem.

(*c*) To connect the person-endings with the tense-stems, certain *connecting vowels* are used. In the present tense these are, for

(1.) First conjugation, *a*; *e. g.*, ăm-*a-t*.
(2.) Second " *e*; *e. g.*, mŏn-*e-t*.
(3.) Third " *i*; *e. g.*, rĕg-*i-t*.
(4.) Fourth " *i*; *e. g.*, aud-*i-t*.*

Rem. 1. Observe that in the 1st person of the 1st and 3d conjugations the connecting vowel does not appear; a m - o, r e g - o (not am-a-o, reg-i-o).

Rem. 2. In the 3d person plural, the third conjugation uses *u instead of i*; *e. g.*, r e g - u - n t; the fourth *inserts u*; *e. g.*, a u d - i - u n t.

* Ama, mone, audi, are the proper *crude forms* of these verbs respectively. They are classed together, in a philosophical treatment of the language, as *one* conjugation of *pure* verbs; while those of the *third* conjugation form the conjugation of *consonant* verbs.

(235.) TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connect. Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ăm-	a.	o.	ămo (ama-o).	mŏnē-o.	rĕg-o.	audī-o.
			s.	ămā-s.	monē-s.	rĕg-ĭs.	audī-s.
2.	mŏn-	e.	t.	ămă-t.	monē-t.	rĕg-ĭ-t.	audī-t.
3.	reg-	ĭ.	mus.	ămā-mus.	mŏnē-mŭs.	rĕg-ĭ-mŭs.	audī-mŭs.
			tis.	ămā-tis.	mŏnē-tis.	rĕg-ĭ-tis.	audī-tis.
4.	aud-	ĭ (u).	nt.	ămă-nt.	mŏnĕ-nt.	rĕg-u-nt.	audī-u-nt.

Rem. Observe that the *vowels* are long before the person-endings in 1st, 2d, and 4th conjugations, except where they come before *o* or *t*. In those before *o*, the general rule (24, 1) prevails; and it is also an *invariable* rule, in Latin, that *no vowel in a final syllable can be long before t.*

(236.) EXERCISE.

[The pupil should hereafter analyze the tense-forms, as they occur, somewhat as follows:]

Ămās: *verb-stem*, am-; *pres. tense-stem*, ăm-; *connecting vowel*, a; *2d pers. ending*, s.

Mŏnēmŭs: *verb-stem*, mon-; *pres. tense-stem*, mŏn-; *connecting vowel*, e; *1st plur. ending*, mŭs.

Rĕgĭtĭs: *verb-stem*, rĕg-; *pres. tense-stem*, rĕg-; *connecting vowel*, i; *2d plur. ending*, tĭs.

Audĭunt: *verb-stem*, aud-; *pres. tense-stem*, aud-; *connecting vowels*, i and u; *3d plur. ending*, nt.

In like manner, analyze

Festīnās,	hăbĕt,	vĭdētĭs,	convŏcŏ,	festīnātĭs,
Vĭgĭlāmŭs,	prŏhĭbent,	lĕgĭt,	hăbētĭs,	pugnăt,
Vŏcātĭs,	poscĭmŭs,	dormīmŭs,	mūniunt,	laudant,
Rĕvŏcānt,	vĕnĭunt,	audītĭs,	ambŭlāmŭs,	vulnĕrāmŭs.

LESSON XL.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

Active.

(237.) IMPERFECT TENSE.

(*a*) *Person-endings*, m, s, t, mŭs, tĭs, nt.

(*b*) The *tense-stem*,

(1.) In 1st conj. adds ăb to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, ăm-ăb.

(2.) In 2d conj. " ēb " *e. g.*, mŏn-ēb.

(3.) In 3d conj. " ēb " *e. g.*, rĕg-ēb.

(4.) In 4th conj. " ĭēb " *e. g.*, aud-ĭēb.

(*c*) The *connecting vowel* a is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; *e. g.*, ămāb-ă-m.

	Tense-Stem.	Con. Vow.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
			m.	āmābā-m.	mŏnēbā-m.	rĕgēbā-m.	audīēbā-m.
1.	ām-āb-		s.	āmābā-s.	mŏnēbā-s.	rĕgēbā-s.	audīēbā-s.
2.	mŏn-ēb-	a.	t.	āmābā-t.	mŏnēbā-t.	rĕgēbā-t.	audīēbā-t.
3.	rĕg-ēb.		mus.	āmābā-mŭs.	mŏnēbā-mŭs.	rĕgēbā-mŭs.	audīēbā-mŭs.
4.	aud-iēb-		tis.	āmābā-tĭs.	mŏnēbā-tĭs.	rĕgēbā-tĭs.	audīēbā-tĭs.
			nt.	āmābā-nt.	mŏnēbā-nt.	rĕgēbā-nt.	audīēbā-nt.

FUTURE TENSE.

(238.) I. We treat the 1st and 2d conjugations first. In these,

(*a*) The *person-endings* are, o, s, t, mŭs, tĭs, nt.

(*b*) The *tense-stems*, precisely like the *imperf.* in the same conjugations,

(1.) In 1st conj., add āb to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, ām-āb.

(2.) In 2d conj., " ēb " *e. g.*, mŏn-ēb.

(*c*) The *connecting vowel* i is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; *e. g.*, ămāb-ĭ-t; monēb-ĭ-t. But in the third person plural, u is used instead of ĭ; *e. g.*, ămāb-u-nt.

Rem. In the 1st person the connecting vowel is dropped (as in 234, *c*, R. 1); thus, ămab-o (not ămāb-ĭ-o).

(239.) TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connecting Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
				1.	2.
			o.	ămāb-o.	mŏnēb-o.
1.	ăm-āb-		s.	ămābĭ-s.	mŏnēbĭ-s.
		i.	t.	ămābĭ-t.	mŏnēbĭ-t.
2.	mŏn-ēb-		mus.	ămābĭ-mŭs.	mŏnēbĭ-mŭs.
			tis.	ămābĭ-tĭs.	mŏnēbĭ-tĭs.
		u.	nt.	ămābŭ-nt.	mŏnēbŭ-nt.

(240.) II. The 3d and 4th conjugations present some irregularity in the future.

(*a*) The *person-endings* are, m, s, t, mŭs, tĭs, nt.

(*b*) The *tense-stem*,

(1) In the 3d conj., is the simple verb-stem; *e. g.*, rĕg.

(2) In the 4th conj., it adds ĭ to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, aud-ĭ.

(*c*) The connecting vowel *e* is used to join the tense-stem and person-endings; rĕg-ē-mŭs, aud-ī-ē-mŭs. But in the *first* person *a* is substituted for *e* in both conjugations; *e. g.*, rĕg-ă-m, aud-ī-ă-m, not reg-ĕ-m, audī-ĕ-m.

(241.) TABLE.

Tense-Stem.	Con'g. Vowel.	Pers. Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
			3.	4.
rĕg-	a.	m.	rĕgă-m.	audīă-m.
		s.	rĕgē-s.	audīē-s.
		t.	rĕgĕ-t.	audīĕ-t.
audī-	e.	mŭs.	rĕgē-mŭs.	audīē-mŭs.
		tĭs.	rĕgē-tĭs.	audīē-tis.
		nt.	rĕgē-nt.	audīē-nt.

(242.) (*a*) EXAMPLES.

Ămābātĭs: *verb-stem*, ăm-; *tense-stem*, ămāb-; *imperf. con vowel*, a; 2d *plur. ending*, -tĭs.

Ămābĭtĭs: *verb-stem*, ăm-; *tense-stem*, ămāb-; *fut. con. vowel*, ĭ; 2d *plur. ending*, -tĭs.

Audīēmŭs: *verb-stem*, aud-; *fut. tense-stem*, audī-; *connecting vowel*, e; 1st *plur. ending*, -mŭs.

[☞ The pupil should keep up the habit of finding any tense-form which he may need to use, by putting together its proper parts; *e. g.*, stem, ending, &c., rather than by recurring to the paradigms.]

(*b*) Analyze the following:

Laudābām,	laudābŏ,	laudābĭtĭs,
Dŏcēbāmŭs,	munĭēbāmŭs,	lĕgăm,
Occīdēbant,	dormĭēbātĭs,	scrībēmŭs,
Dormĭăm,	audīĕt,	dŏcēbunt,
&c.	&c.	&c.

LESSON XLI.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

PASSIVE VOICE.

(243.) THE passive-endings are,

Sing. 1st person, r; 2d person, rĭs or rĕ; 3d person, tŭr.
Plur. 1st person, mŭr; 2d person, mĭnī; 3d person, ntŭr.

(244.) These endings are affixed to the tense-stems, formed as in the active voice, and with the same con-

necting vowels. Only the following apparent irregularities are to be noticed.

(*a*) In the 1st pers. pres. indic. the ending *r* is added to the full present active form; *e. g.*, ămo, ămo-r; dŏceo, dŏceo-r, &c.

(*b*) In the 3d conj., 2d pers. sing., pres., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, rĕg-ĕ-rĭs, rĕg-ĕ-rĕ, instead of rĕg-ĭ-rĭs, &c.

(*c*) In the 1st and 2d conj., future, 2d pers. sing., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, mŏneb-ĕ-rĭs, ămăb-ĕ-rĭs, instead of ămăb-ĭ-rĭs, mŏnĕb-ĭ-rĭs.

(245). EXERCISE.

Examples.—Dŏcentŭr: *verb-stem*, dŏc-; *pres. tense-stem*, dŏc-; *connecting vowel*, e; 3d *plur. pass. ending*, -ntŭr.

Ămābāmŭr: *verb-stem*, am-; *imperf. tense-stem*, ămāb-; *imperf. conn. vowel*, a; 1st *plur. pass. ending*, -mŭr.

Audientŭr: *verb-stem*, aud-; *fut. tense-stem*, audi-; *fut. conn. vowel*, e; 3d *plur. pass. ending*, -ntŭr.

Rĕgŏr: *verb-stem*, rĕg-; *pres. act.* 1st *pers.*, rego-; 1st *pers. pass. ending*, -r.

(246.) Analyze

Rĕgēbāmŭr,	occĭdēmŭr,	laudantŭr,
Dŏcēbĭmŭr,	audiēmĭnī,	vĭdēbĭmŭr,
Tĭmēbārĭs,	dŏcēbĕrĭs,	dŏcēbuntŭr,
Dŏcēbāmĭnī,	ămātŭr,	rĕgĭtŭr,
&c.	&c.	&c.

PART II.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS

§ 1.

ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

LESSON XLII.

[THE student should now learn thoroughly the following rules of quantity, most of which he has seen illustrated frequently already.]

GENERAL RULES.

(246.) (1) **A vowel before another is short**; *e. g.*, vĭ-a.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, bēllum.

Rem. A *mute* followed by a *liquid* in the same syllable renders the preceding *short* vowel common in verse; *e. g.*, volŭ-cris. (In *prose*, the short vowel remains short.)

(3) **All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long**; *e. g.*, a͡ū-rŭm, cō-go (for co+ago).

SPECIAL RULES.

(1.) *Final Syllables.*

1. *Monosyllables.*

(247.) (*a*) Most monosyllables ending in a *vowel* are *long*; but the particles quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, ptĕ, &c., attached to other words, are *short*.

(*b*) Most monosyllables ending in a *consonant* are *long*; but the nouns cŏr, fĕl, mĕl, vĭr, ŏs (ossis); the pronouns quĭs, quĭd, quŏt; and the particles nĕc, ĭn, ăn, ăd, sĕd, with all ending in *t*, are *short*; also ĕs, 2d person of sŭm.

2. *Dissyllables and Polysyllables.*

(A) *Final Vowels.*

(248.) *a* final is *short* in nouns, except the abl. of the 1st declension; *long* in verbs, and in indeclinable words, except ĭtă, quiă, ējă.

(249.) *e* final is *short* in nouns (except 5th declension) and verbs (except imperatives); *long* in adverbs derived from adjectives of the first class, with fermē, ferē, ohē.

(250.) *i* final is *long*; but mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ūbĭ, are *common*; nisĭ, quasĭ, *short*.

(251.) *o* final is *common*; but *long* in dat. and abl. cases of nouns and adjs. used as adverbs (*e. g.*, falsō, &c.); egŏ, duŏ, ōctŏ, are *short*.

(252.) *u* final is always *long*; *e. g.*, diū.

(B) *Final Consonants.*

(253.) All final syllables ending in a consonant (except *s*) are *short*.

Rules for s final.

(254.) Final ās, ēs, ōs, are generally *long*; *e. g.*, amās, docēs, equōs.

Rem. 1. ēs is *short* (1) in nouns which have short penult in the gen.; *e. g.*, mīlēs (mīlĭt-ĭs).

2. ŏs is *short* in compŏs, impŏs.

(255.) Final ĭs and ŭs are generally *short*; *e. g.*, reg-ĭs, domin-ŭs.

Rem. 1. ĭs is *long* (1) in dat. and abl. plural of nouns; (2) in 2d person sing. of verbs of 4th conjugation; (3) compounds of vīs; *e. g.*, mavīs, quamvīs, &c.

2. ūs is *long* (1) in nouns of 3d decl. which have ū long in the penult of gen.; *e. g.*, virtūs (ūtĭs), palūs (ūdĭs); (2) in gen. sing., and N., A., V. plur. of 4th declension.

(2.) *Derivation and Composition.*

(256.) Derivative and compound words generally retain the quantity of the primitive and simple words; *e. g.*, ămo, ămicus; pōno, impōno.

(3.) *Increase.*

[A noun is said to *increase* when it has more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. (*e. g.*, mīl-ēs, mīl-ĭt-ĭs; here ĭt is the increase); a *verb*, when it has more syllables than the 2d pers. sing. indic. (*e. g.*, ăm-as, ăm-āt-ĭs; here āt is the increase.]

(257.) In the increase of *nouns*, *a* and *o* are generally *long*; *e*, *i*, *u*, *y*, *short*.

(258.) In the increase of *verbs*, *a*, *e*, and *o* are generally *long*; *i*, *u*, *short*.

(4.) *Penults.*

(259.) Every perfect tense of two syllables has the first *long* (as vīdī), except bĭbi, fĭdi, tŭli, dĕdi, stĕti, and scĭdi.

(260.) Penults of adjectives, (1) ĭdus, icus, *short*; (2)

Ī nus, *doubtful* (often *long*); (3) **ilis** and **bilis**, derived from *verbs*, *short*; from *nouns*, *long*.

[All exceptions to the above rules that are not stated will be marked in the vocabularies.]

(261.) EXERCISE ON QUANTITIES.

[Give the quantity of the *unmarked* syllables of the following words, with the rule for each.]

1. *Final Vowels.*

Ipse, agmĭne, die, rĕgĕre, rĕge, dŏcēbĕre, re, mŏve, mŏvēre, bĕne (adv., from bŏnŭs), Cæsăre, optīme (adv., from optĭmŭs), me, dŏmĭni, vĭgĭlia, audi, adventu, ire, hi, consĭlio, consŭle, de, tertia, vĭgĭliæ, contra, rŏga, mŏneo, ĭta, fructu, ămo.

2. *Final Consonants.*

Obsĭdes, bĕnas, vigĭlias, ămat, mīles (mīlĭtis), mīlĭtes, rŏgāvĕras, has, bŏnum, lampas (lampădis), pedes (pĕditis), pĕdĭtes, illas, adventus (gen.), rĕgis, sĭmul, audis, linter, auditis, vigĭliis, căput, virtus (virtūtis), dŏmĭnis, mānus, rĕgĭtur, rĕgĭtis, mānis, mūnīvĕras.

3. *Increase.*

Ămatis, militis, audiris, obsidem, mŏnemus, monebatis, ĭtineris, rŏgabas, mŏnebamur, audimus, mŏnebimini, vŏluptatis, sermonis, murmure, pĕdites, clāmorem, mīlites, vulturem, ămatis, mŏnebatis, mŏnetote, audite, lĕgimus, pedem, sĕgetis (from sĕges).

4. *Penults.*

Mălĕdicus, mīrĭficus, bĕnĕficus, făcilis (from făcio), puĕrilis (from puer), ămabilis (from ămo), servilis (from servus).

§ 2.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PARTIAL STATEMENT. (XLIII.—XLVI.)

LESSON XLIII.

Tense Forms for Completed Action.—Indicative.

(262.) In Part I. we made use only of those tenses of the verb which express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*, viz., the present, imperfect, and future. There are three tenses also for *completed* action, viz., perfect (*I have written*), pluperfect (*I had written*), future perfect (*I shall have written*). The stem for all these is the same.

(263.) The endings for these three tenses are,

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Perfect.	ī.	istī.	it.	imŭs.	istīs.	ērunt, *or* ērē.
Pluperf.	ĕrăm.	ĕrās.	ĕrăt.	ĕrāmŭs.	ĕrātĭs.	ĕrant.
Fut. Perf.	ĕrŏ.	ĕrĭs.	ĕrĭt.	ĕrĭmŭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.	ĕrint.

(264.) By adding these endings to the perfect-stem *fu-* of the verb *essĕ*, to be, we obtain the forms perfect (*I have been*), pluperfect (*I had been*), future perfect (*I shall have been*).

Tense-Stem.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
Fu-	ī.	ĕrăm.	ĕrŏ.
	istī.	ĕrās.	ĕrĭs.
	it.	ĕrăt.	ĕrĭt.
	imŭs.	ĕrāmŭs.	ĕrĭmŭs.
	istīs.	ĕrātĭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.
	ērunt, *or* ērē.	ĕrant.	ĕrint.

(265.) *Double use of the Perfect.*—It must be carefully observed that the Latin perfect has two uses, one answering to the English perfect, and the other to the English imperfect.

Thus, *fuī* means not only *I have been*, but *I was*. We call the former the perfect *present*; the latter the perfect *aorist*,* which expresses *momentary* action in past *time*; *e. g.*, *Crassus was chief of the embassy*—Crassŭs princeps lēgātiōnis fuit.

EXERCISE.

(266.) *Vocabulary.*

To be over, to preside over, to command, præsessĕ (præ+esse, *to be before*).
To be wanting, de-essĕ (dē+essĕ, *to be from*).
To be in, to be present at, interessĕ (inter+essĕ, *to be among*).
Sick, æger, gra, grum (77, *a*).
Praise, laus, (laud) is (f.).
After, post (prep. *acc.*).
Before, ante (prep. *acc.*).
Because, quiă (conj., 248).
How long? quamdiū (adv.).
Afterward, postea.
Virtuous, prōbŭs, ă, um.

(267.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *If we shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also we shall be happy.*
Sī in vītā semper prōbī fuĕrīmŭs, ētiăm post mortĕm beatī ĕrīmŭs.

(*b*) *The Roman soldiers were present at many battles.*
Mīlĭtēs Rōmānī prælĭīs multĭs interfuērunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of essĕ with the prepositions præ, inter, ob, pro, de, take the *dative* case.

(268.) *Translate into English.*

Thĕmistŏclēs vir magnŭs ĕt clārŭs fuĭt.—Cūr hĕrī in schŏlā nōn fuistī?—Quiă cŭm patre in hortō fuī.—Quamdiū in urbĕ fuistis?—Sex diēs (191, *c*).—Antĕ bellŭm in urbĕ fuerāmŭs.—Crassŭs lēgātŭs (225, *a*) cōpiis Romānōrŭm præfuĕrăt.—Nunquăm deĕrit tĭbĭ laus hominŭm, si sempĕr prōbŭs fueris.—Ægernĕ (135, II., *a*) fuistī hĕrī?—Antĕ Cicerōnis ætātĕm oratōrēs multī ĕt clārī fuerant, nĕc posteă dēfuērunt.—Cæsăr prælĭīs multis interfuĭt.

(269). *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect the double use of the perfect (*present* and *aorist*, 265).]

Divitiacus commanded (præfuit) the forces of the Æduans.

* The *aorist* use of the perfect is more common in Latin than the *present*.

—If you shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also you shall be happy.—If we are always virtuous, the praise of men shall never be wanting to us.—We were not in school yesterday, because we had been in the garden with (our) father.—*Had* you *been* (135, II., *a*) in our garden?—Have you been sick?—How long have you been in the city? Four days (191, *c*).—The lieutenant had been in the city before the war.—Before the age of Cæsar there had been many and great generals; nor were they wanting afterward.—Cæsar and the Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

LESSON XLIV.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, continued.

(270.) THE tense-stem of the perfect tense is formed in most verbs as follows:

(1) In 1st conj. by adding ăv to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, ăm-ăv.
(2) In 2d conj. " ŭ " *e. g.*, mŏn-ŭ.
(4) In 4th conj. " īv " *e. g.*, aud-īv

[The *third* conjugation is treated in the next lesson.]

(271.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the tense-stems formed (as in 270), we obtain the following perfect-tense forms of ămārĕ, *to love;* mŏnērĕ, *to advise;* audīrĕ, *to hear.**

	PRF.-STEMS.	ENDINGS.						
		I,	*thou,*	*he, we,*	*ye,*	*they,*		
1st conj.	ămāv-	ī,	istī,	ĭt,	ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt, *or* ērĕ,	*have loved.*
2d conj.	mŏnŭ-							*have advised.*
4th conj.	audīv-							*have heard.*

* In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, it is obvious that the perfect is made up of the crude-form of the verb and *fŭī;* *e. g.*, ama-fŭi = ămāvī; monē-fŭi = monui; audi-fŭi = audīvī.

EXERCISE.

(272.) *Vocabulary.*

Preceptor, præceptŏr, (præceptŏr) Is (m.).	*Pleasant*, jūcundus, ă, ŭm.
Tribune, trĭbūnŭs, ī (m.).	*All night*, pĕr tōtăm noctĕm.
Sister, sŏrŏr, (sŏrŏr) ĭs (f.).	*Diligently*, dilĭgentĕr (215, 2, *b*).
Disgrace, ignōmĭnĭă, æ (f.).	*From every side*, undĭquĕ (adv.).
	To excite, excĭtārĕ.

(273.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *I loved the boy.*	Puĕrŭm ămāvī.
(*b*) *From my boyhood I have loved my mother.*	Ā puerō (*i. e., from a boy*) matrĕm ămāvī.

[*Obs.* In (*a*) the *perfect aorist* is used; in (*b*) the *perfect present*.]

(274.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsăr omnēs undĭquĕ mercātōrēs ăd sē (145, *a*) convŏcāvĭt.—Ā puĕrō frātrĕm et sŏrōrĕm ămāvī.—Cūr per tōtăm noctem vĭgĭlāvistī?—Quiă pătĕr ægĕr fuĭt.—Mīlĭtēs diū et ăcrĭtĕr pugnāvĕrunt.—Hōs puerōs* magistĕr diligentĕr docuĭt linguăm Latīnăm.*—Tuă ipsīus (159) causă (135, II., *b*) tē sæpĕ monuī.—Tĭmŏr īgnōmĭnĭæ Germānōs ad virtutem excitāvĭt.—Jūcundŭm ăvĭŭm (78, II., *b*) cantŭm audīvĭmŭs.—Dormīvistīnĕ?—Nōn dormīvī.—Cæsărĭs adventŭs oppĭdānos terruĭt.

[Inflect all the verbs in this lesson through the perfect tense, and form the perfect according to (270).]

(275.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar called together all the lieutenants from every side to himself (145, *a*).—From my boyhood I have loved my preceptors.—The good preceptor taught me* the Greek language.—Cæsar called-together all the lieutenants and tribunes (trĭbunōsquĕ, 202, N.) of the soldiers to himself.—The slaves have watched all night.—(Your) father has often advised you for your own sake (135, II., *b*).—The Gauls took-possession-of Romĕ.—The love of glory has always excited the Romans to bravery.—We have diligently taught the boys.—Why did you not sleep? Because my mother was sick.—They have heard the pleasant singing of the birds.—We have fortified all the

* Verbs of *teaching* take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

towers of Gaul.—The coming of Cæsar terrified the Æduans and Helvetians.—I have often walked in Cæsar's garden, on-the-other-side-of the Tiber (trans Tiběrĭm).

LESSON XLV.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued.—Perfect Tense, Third Conjugation.

(276.) The perfect tense-stem of most verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *s* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*,

		Perfect-stem.		
rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*to rule,*	rĕg-s	=	rex-
scrīb-ĕrĕ,	*to write,*	scrīb-s	=	scrips-
lūd-ĕrĕ,	*to play,*	lūd-s	=	lus-

(277.) *Rules of Euphony.*

(1) A c-sound before s forms x; dūc-s = dūx; rĕg-s = rex.

Rem. c, g, h, gu, qu, are classed among k-sounds. v also (generally) before s forms x; vīv-s = vix.

(2) b before s is changed into p; *e. g.*, scrīb-s = scrīps; nūb-s = nups.

(3) A t-sound is (generally) dropped before s; lūd-s = lūs; claud-s = claus.

Rem. t and d are the t-sounds.

(278.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the stems of rĕg-ĕrĕ, scrīb-ĕrĕ, lūd-ĕrĕ, we obtain the perfect tense-forms (*have ruled, have written, have played*).

PERFECT-STEMS.	ENDINGS. *I, thou, he, we, ye, they,*	
(rĕg-s =) rex- (scrīb-s =) scrips- (lūd-s =) lus-	ī, istī, it, imŭs, istĭs, ērunt, *or* ērĕ.	*have ruled.* *have written.* *have played.*

EXERCISE.

(279.) *Vocabulary.*

Suddenly, sŭbĭtō.
To say, dicĕrĕ.
To draw (as a sword), stringĕrĕ.
Sword, glădĭŭs, ĭ.
Trial, jūdĭcĭŭm, ĭ.
To lead together, condūcĕrĕ.
To divide, dividĕrĕ.
Household, fămĭlĭă, æ.
Orgetorix, Orgĕtŏrix, (Orgĕtŏrĭg) ĭs.
A dependent, cliens, (client) ĭs (c.).
Nature, nātūră, æ.
Stoic, stoĭcus, ĭ.

(280.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Did* not *Cæsar say these things?* — Nonnĕ Cæsăr hæc dixĭt?
(Nonnĕ is used in asking questions when the answer *yes* is expected.)

(*b*) Did *Cæsar say this* (*i.e., is it possible that he did*)? — Num Cæsăr hæc dixĭt?
(Num is used when the answer *no* is expected.)

(281.) *Translate into English.*

[Recollect *double use of perfect* (265).]

Cæsăr duās legiōnēs conscripsĭt; trēs ex hībernis ēduxĭt.—Princĭpēs Germānōrŭm omnēs suās cōpiās Rhenum (113, II., *a*) transduxērunt.—Consŭl glădiŭm strinxĭt.—Nonnĕ (280, *a*) glădiōs strinxistĭs?—Nŭm impĕrātŏr glădiŭm strinxit?—Orgĕtŏrix ăd jūdĭcĭŭm omnĕm suăm fămĭlĭăm et omnēs clientēs conduxĭt.—Cæsăr exercĭtŭm in duās partēs divīsĭt.—Nonnĕ epistŏlăm ăd patrĕm scripsistī?—Stoicī dīvīsērunt nātūrăm hominĭs ĭn ănĭmŭm ĕt corpŭs.—Multās littĕrās hŏdiĕ scripsĭmŭs.

[What is the force of *ē* in eduxit? of *con* in conduxit? of *trans* in transduxit? Describe the formation of the perfect, and the euphonic changes, in all the verbs of this lesson.]

(282.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers *suddenly* drew their swords.—Cæsar levied five legions in Italy.—Cæsar levied six legions in Italy, and led out four from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Æduans endeavour to *lead* (113, II., *a*) all their forces *across* the Rhine.—The general divided the army into five parts.—Did Cæsar say these (things) yesterday (280, *b*)?—*Did* you *not* write a letter to your brother?—*Have* you written a letter to the *king* (280, *b*)?—Orgetorix led-together all his household to the trial.

—Orgetorix led-together to the trial all his household and all (his) dependents.—Why have you drawn (your) sword?—Why have you not written to (your) father?—The Æduans levied many soldiers.—We have divided the nature of man into soul and body.

LESSON XLVI.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued.—Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.

(283.) (*a*) The *pluperfect* tense simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *imperfect* of esse (*to be*); viz., ĕrăm, ĕrās, &c.

(*b*) The *future perfect* simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *future* of esse; viz., ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c.; but in 3d plural it changes u into i; viz., ĕrint, instead of ĕrunt.

(284.) Thus, from ăm-āre, mŏn-ērĕ, rĕg-ĕrĕ aud-īrĕ, we have,

PRF.-STEM.	PLUPERFECT-ENDING.	
	I, thou, he, we, ye, they,	
1. ămāv- 2. mŏnŭ- 3. rex- 4. audīv-	ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt, ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant,	*had loved.* *had advised.* *had ruled.* *had heard.*
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. ămāv- 2. mŏnŭ- 3. rex- 4. audīv-	ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt, ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrint,	*shall have loved.* *shall have advised.* *shall have ruled.* *shall have heard.*

EXERCISE.

(285.) *Vocabulary.*

Defiles, angustiæ, arum (pl.).
To err, errārĕ.
To draw, dūcĕrĕ.
A principle, princĭpium, I.
To attack, oppugnārĕ.
Near, juxtā (prep. acc.).
Already, jām (adv.).
To take by storm, expugnārĕ.

(286.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) *Pluperfect.*—Milĭtēs diū et acrĭtĕr pugnāvĕrant.—Pătĕr fīlĭum sæpē mŏnŭĕrăt.—Duās lēgiōnēs in Italiā conscripserāmŭs.—Helvētĭi jām pĕr angustiās cōpiās suās transduxĕrant.—

Cæsăr castellă Galliæ munīvĕrăt ĕt trēs lēgiōnēs ex hībernīs ēduxĕrăt.

(*b*) *Future Perfect.*

Rem. The *future perfect* is sometimes used in Latin, when in English we should use the simple perfect or *future*; *e. g.*,

When I (shall) have written the letter, I shall come to you. | Quum ĕpistōlām scripsĕrō, ăd tē vĕniām.

Quum ămīcŭm in hortŭm duxĕrō, ăd tē vĕniām.—Haud errāvĕrō, sī ā Platōnĕ princĭpiŭm duxĕrō.—Quum hostēs castellă expugnāvĕrint, urbĕm ipsām (159) oppugnābunt.—Haud errāvĕrīs, sī ā Cicĕrōne princĭpiă duxĕris.

(287.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) *Pluperfect.*—The general had drawn his sword.—Near the city the soldiers had fought long and spiritedly.—Cæsar had levied one legion in Italy, and led-out seven from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Helvetians had already led their forces across the Rhine (113, II., *a*), through the boundaries of the Sequanians.—I had often advised you for your own sake (135, II., *b*).

(*b*) *Future Perfect* (R., 286, *b*).—When we have written the letters, we shall come to the city.—We shall not have erred, if we shall have drawn (ducĕrĕ) our principles from Plato.—When Cæsar shall have taken-by-storm the city, he will attack the tower itself (159).

§ 3.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION.—FULLER TREATMENT. (XLVII.—LVII.)

[THE third declension contains more nouns than all the others together. It also involves greater difficulties; and we therefore give it a full treatment in the following section, which should be carefully studied.]

LESSON XLVII.

(288.) THE *genitive-ending* of the third declension IS Ĭ S.

Rem. To find the *stem* of any noun of this declension, strike off is from the gen.; *e. g.*, G., nōmĭnis (*of a name*), stem, nōmĭn.

(289.) ENDINGS FOR ALL THE CASES.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	—	—	N.	ēs.	ă (ĭă).
G.	ĭs.	ĭs.	G.	ŭm (ĭŭm).	ŭm (ĭŭm).
D.	ĭ.	ĭ.	D.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.
A.	ĕm (im).	like Nom.	A.	ēs.	ă (ĭă).
V.	like Nom.	like Nom.	V.	ēs.	ă (ĭă).
A.	ĕ (ĭ).	ĕ (ĭ).	A.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

(290.) The nom.-ending is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. The most common *nom.-ending* is s; but the stem itself is often employed as the nom.; and is often, again, changed. We make *six* classes, which must be carefully distinguished, viz.:

(291.) CLASSES.

I. Nouns which add s to the stem in the nominative without any vowel change. (*Feminines.*)

II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (e or i) before adding s. (*Feminines.*)

III. Nouns which change the stem-vowel (i into e) before adding s. (*Masculines.*)

IV. Nouns which add ĕ to the stem. (*Neuters.*)

V. Nouns which present the *unchanged* stem in the nominative without adding s. (*Masculines*, except -al, -ar, -ur, which are *Neuter*.)

VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative without adding s. (*Masculines*, *Feminines*, *and Neuters*.)

(292.) [Before entering upon the paradigms, the student should learn thoroughly the following *rules of euphony*, which prevail generally in Latin nouns and verbs.]

(1) c or g before s unites with it to form x; *e. g.*, leg-s is written lex; arc-s = arx; voc-s = vox, &c.

(2) d or t before s is dropped; *e. g.*, laud-s = laus; quiet-s = quies; parent-s = parens.

(293.) CLASS I.—*The Nominative adds* s *to the Stem, without any Vowel change.* (*Feminines.*)

Sing.	City (f.).	Citadel (f.).	Praise (f.).	Race (nation), f.	Quiet (f.).
N. and V.	urb-s.	arx (arc-s).	laus (laud-s).	gens(gent-s).	quiēs.
Gen.	urb-ĭs.	arc-ĭs.	laud-ĭs.	gent-ĭs.	quiēt-ĭs.
Dat.	urb-ī.	arc-ī.	laud-ī.	gent-ī.	quiēt-ī.
Acc.	urb-ĕm.	arc-ĕm.	laud-ĕm.	gent-ĕm.	quiēt-ĕm.
Abl.	urb-ĕ.	arc-ĕ.	laud-ĕ.	gent-ĕ.	quiēt-ĕ.
Plur.	Cities.	Citadels.	Praises.	Races (nations).	
N., A., V.	urb-ēs.	arc-ēs.	laud-ēs.	gent-ēs.	quiēt-ēs.
Gen.	urb-ĭum.	arc-ĭum.	laud-ŭm.	gent-ĭum.	quiēt-ŭm.
D. and A.	urb-ĭbŭs.	arc-ĭbŭs.	laud-ĭbŭs.	gent-ĭbŭs.	quiēt-ĭbŭs.

On this class, observe carefully that,

(294.) As to the *case-endings*, ĭ ŭ m is the gen. plur. ending of those nouns whose stems end in *two* consonants; *e. g.*, urb-s, urb-ĭs, urb-ium; nox, noct-ĭs, noct-iŭm; cŏhors, cohort-ĭs, cŏhort-ĭ ŭ m.

(295.) As to *gender*, they are mostly feminine. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add s to the stem, without changing the stem-vowel, to form the nom., are *feminine*.

[*Rem.* Exceptions. The following are *masculines*:

1. dens (dent-ĭs), *tooth.*	*bīdens (bĭdent-ĭs), *hoe.*
mons (mont-ĭs), *mountain.*	*torrens (torrent-ĭs), *torrent.*
fons (font-ĭs), *fountain.*	*trīdens (trĭdent-ĭs), *trident.*
pons (pont-ĭs), *bridge.*	*ŏriens (ŏrient-ĭs), *east.*
rūdens (rudent-ĭs), *rope.*	*occĭdens (occĭdent-ĭs), *west.*

* These nouns in ens are properly adjectives, with a masc. noun understood; *e. g.*, oriens sol, torrens amnis, &c.

2. Grex, (grĕg) ĭs, *a flock*; also a few nouns in ix and ex.
3. Pāriēs, (pāriet) ĭs, *wall*; pēs (pĕd-ĭs), *foot*; lāpĭs, (lāpĭd) ĭs, *stone*, vās (vād-ĭs), *surety*.]

[☞ The *rules* of gender should be learned by heart; the lists of exceptions need not be, unless they are very short. All exceptions are marked in the vocabularies; and the lists should be referred to whenever cases occur.]

To Class I. belong the nouns of the following endings, of which the pupil has had frequent examples:

Lībertās, lībertāt-ĭs, *liberty*; dignĭtās, dignĭtāt-ĭs, *dignity*; and, in short, all nouns in ās, ātĭs.

Vīrtūs, vīrtūt-ĭs, *virtue*; and all others in ūs, ūtĭs.

Pălūs, palūd-ĭs, *swamp*; and others in ūs, ūdĭs.

In the following exercise several of the *exceptions* will be found.

EXERCISE.

(296.) *Vocabulary.*

Highest (the top), summus, ă, ŭm.	*Romulus*, Rōmŭlus, ĭ.
Middle, mĕdĭus, ă, ŭm.	*Hercynian*, Hercynius, ă, um.
To leave, rĕlinquĕrĕ (perf.-stem, rĕlīqu-).	*Senate*, sĕnātŭs, ūs (m.).
To secede, sēcēdĕrĕ (perf.-stem, sēcess-).	*Agrippa*, Agrippă, æ (m.).
To take care of, cūrāre.	*Where*, ubīnăm?
To touch upon, to reach, attingĕrĕ.	*The common people*, plebs, (plēb) ĭs.
To seek, to aim at, pĕtĕrĕ.	*Patricians (of Rome)*, patrēs, (patr) ŭm (pl.).
To cut down, rescindĕrĕ.	*An interreign*, interregnŭm, ĭ.
	Speedy, cītŭs, ă, ŭm.

[The nouns which occur in the preceding lesson are not named in the vocabulary: the learner will find them, and observe their *gender*.]

(297.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *On the top of the mountain.*	Ĭn summō montĕ.
(*b*) *On the tops of the trees.*	Ĭn summīs ārbŏrĭbŭs.
(*c*) *In the middle of the city.*	Ĭn mediā urbĕ.
(*d*) *Where in the world?*	Ubĭnăm gentĭŭm?

(298.) *Translate into English.*

Magnă pars plēbĭs urbĕm rēlīquīt, ĕt ĭn montĕm (295, R. 1) sēcessīt.—Tŭm patrēs Agrippăm ăd plēbĕm mīsērunt (401, 3, *b*). —Hercynĭă sylvă fīnēs multārŭm gentĭŭm attingĭt.—Cassiŭs, lēgātus (225, *a*), trēs cohortēs ĭn arcĕm oppĭdī duxīt.—Ubĭnăm gentĭŭm sŭmŭs?—Deŭs cūrăt gentēs.—Āquĭlæ ĭn sum-

mīs montĭbŭs nīdĭfĭcant.—Magnŭs (78, II., *b*) ăvĭŭm grex (295, R., 2) summām arcĕm pĕtunt.—Mīlites pontĕm (295, R., 1) rescindunt.—Lēgēs Rōmānōrum justæ fuērunt.—Summŭs mons (295, R., 1) ab hostibus tĕnētŭr.—Cæsăr ad utramquĕ (194, R. 1) partĕm pontīs præsĭdĭum rēlīquĭt.—Post Rōmŭlī mortĕm unīŭs (194) annī interregnŭm fuĭt.—Săpientēs mortem nōn tĭment.—Mors cĭtă vĕnĭĕt.

[All the nouns should be declined, the rule of gender given, and the exceptions referred to if necessary. The formations of the verbs should be carefully analyzed.]

(299.) *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The fountain was beautiful.—The Hercynian forest touches the boundaries of five nations.—The common-people left the city, and seceded to the mountain.—The doves built-their-nest in the top of the citadel (297, *a*).—A large flock of birds flew over the city.—The soldiers fought long on the middle of the bridge (297, *c*).—Then the senate sent an ambassador to the common-people.—God takes care of cities and nations.—The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another.—Where in the world (297, *d*) are we? in what city do we live?—Cæsar fortified each part of the bridge.

LESSON XLVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(300.) CLASS II.—*The Nominative inserts a Connecting-vowel* (ē *or* ī) *before adding* s *to the Stem.* (*Feminines.*)

	e *inserted.*	i *inserted.*
Singular.	Cloud (f.).	Ship (f.).
N. and V.	nūb-ē-s.	nāv-ī-s.
Gen.	nūb-ĭs.	nāv-ĭs.
Dat.	nūb-ī.	nāv-ī.
Acc.	nūb-ĕm.	nāv-ĕm *or* ĭm.
Abl.	nūb-ē.	nāv-ē *or* ī.
Plural.	Clouds.	Ships.
N. A. V.	nūb-ēs.	nāv-ēs.
Gen.	nūb-ĭŭm.	nāv-ĭŭm.
D. and Abl.	nūb-ĭbŭs.	nāv-ĭbŭs.

On this class, observe carefully,

(301.) As to the *case-endings:* [(1) The acc.-ending ĭm instead of ĕm is used: 1. *sometimes* (but rarely) in the words clavĭs, *key;* messĭs, *harvest;* nāvĭs, *ship:* 2. *commonly* in febrĭs, *fever;* pelvĭs, *basin;* puppĭs, *stern;* restĭs, *rope;* sĕcūrĭs, *axe;* turrĭs, *tower:* 3. *always* in amussĭs, *a rule;* sĭtĭs, *thirst;* tussĭs, *cough;* vĭs, *force.*]

[(2) The abl.-ending ī instead of ĕ is used (not, however, to the exclusion of e) in all those words which take ĭm in the acc.; *e. g.*, turrĭs, turrim, turrī: vis, vim, vī (always). Also in ignĭs, *fire;* cīvĭs, *citizen.*]

(3) The gen. plur. ending iŭm instead of ŭm is used in most nouns which insert e or i before adding s to the stem. [Prolēs, canĭs, panĭs, vatēs, juvĕnĭs have ŭm.]

(302.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or i) before adding s in the nominative are *feminines.*

[*Rem.* Exceptions:

Amnĭs (m.), *river.*	fascĭs (m.), *bundle.*	pānĭs (m.), *bread.*
Axĭs (m.), *axle.*	follĭs (m.), *bellows.*	piscĭs (m.), *fish.*
Callĭs (m.), *path.*	fūnĭs (m.), *rope.*	postĭs (m.), *post.*
Cānālĭs (m.), *canal.*	fustĭs (m.), *club.*	sentĭs (m.), *bramble.*
Collĭs (m.), *hill.*	ignĭs (m.), *fire.*	unguĭs (m.), *finger nail.*
Crīnĭs (m.), *hair.*	mensĭs (m.), *month.*	vectĭs (m.), *lever.*
Ensĭs (m.), *sword.*	orbĭs (m.), *circle.*	vermĭs (m.), *worm.*]

EXERCISE.

[In the vocabularies, the Roman numerals I., II., &c., placed after nouns, refer to the *class* to which they belong.]

(303.) *Vocabulary.*

To dread, formīdārĕ.
Pilot, gŭbernātŏr, ōris (m.).
To bring, ăgĕrĕ (perf.-stem, ēg-).
To procure, compārare.
A Carthaginian, Carthāgĭniensĭs, is.
To raise, to kindle, excĭtārĕ.
Power, pŏtestās, (pŏtestāt) ātis (f., I.).
Barbarian, barbărŭs, I.
Vehemently, greatly, vĕhĕmentĕr (215, 2, *b*).
To build, ædĭfĭcāre.
A fleet, classis, is (f., II.).
And, ac.
Twenty, vīgīntī (indecl.).
Lofty, altŭs, ă, ŭm.
Thirteen, trĕdĕcim (indecl.).
The Druids, Druĭdes, um (m., pl.).
Thirst, sĭtis, (sĭt) is (f., II.).
To relieve, lĕvārĕ.
To dispute, dispūtarĕ.
To terrify, terrērĕ (perfect-stem, terrŭ-).

(304.) *Translate into English.*

Nūbēs sæpĕ lūnam obscūrant.—Cīvēs classēm hostĭum for-

năĭdant.—Cæsăr nāvēs longas ædĭfĭcāvĭt, ĕt nautās gŭbernātōrēsque (202, N.) compărāvĭt.—Crassŭs ăd oppidŭm turrēs altās ēgĭt.—Vĕtĕrēs Romānī vim Carthāgĭnĭensium non formīdāvĕrunt.—Cæsăr turrēs trĕdĕcĭm excĭtāvĭt.—Mīlĭtēs ignēs magnōs in summō montĕ (297, *a*) excĭtāvērūnt.—Druides dē deōrŭm immortalĭŭm vī ăc potestātĕ dispūtant.—Classis adventŭs cīvēs terruĭt.—Ăquă sĭtĭm (301, 1) lĕvăt.—Nŏvă nāvĭŭm figūră vĕhĕmentĕr (215, 2, *b*) barbărōs terruit.

(305.) *Translate into Latin.*

Lofty towers are raised by Cæsar.—The general prepared twenty long ships.—The lieutenant brought the towers to the wall of the city.—The power of the Romans terrified the Gauls.—Wine does not relieve thirst.—The sun is often obscured by the clouds.—The approach of the fleet and the soldiers terrified the citizens.—A great fire is kindled on the top of the mountain by the Æduans.—The general stationed the ships near the wall of the city.—The clouds are black.—The coming of our fleet and the strange (nŏva) figure of the ships terrified all the barbarians.

LESSON XLIX.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(306.) CLASS III.—*The Nominative changes the Stem-vowel* (ĭ *into* ĕ) *before adding* s *to the Stem.*

Vowel i *changed into* e.		
Singular.	Soldier (m.).	Book (m.).
N. and V.	mīlĕ-s (milet-s).	cōdĕx (codecs).
Gen.	mīlĭt-ĭs.	cōdĭc-ĭs.
Dat.	mīlĭt-ī.	cōdĭc-ī.
Acc.	mīlĭt-ĕm.	cōdĭc-ĕm.
Abl.	mīlĭt-ĕ.	cōdĭc-ĕ.
Plural.	Soldiers.	Books.
N. A. V.	mīlĭt-ēs.	cōdĭc-ēs.
Gen.	mīlĭt-ŭm.	cōdĭc-ŭm.
D. and A.	mīlĭt-ĭbŭs.	cōdĭc-ĭbŭs.

On this class, observe that,

(307.) As to the *case-endings*, they are all regular.

(308.) As to *gender*, they are *masculine*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel ĭ into ĕ before adding s in the nominative are *masculine.*

Exc. Mergĕs (f.), (mergĭtis), *a sheaf.*

EXERCISE.

(309.) *Vocabulary.*

To double, dŭplĭcārĕ.
Brutus, Brūtŭs, ī.
Sharp, spirited, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ (105, R. 1).
Defender, vindex, (vindĭc) ĭs (m., III.).
Liberty, lĭbertās, (libertāt) ĭs (f., I.).
Foot-soldier, footman, pĕdĕs, (pĕdĭt) ĭs (m., III.).
Embark upon, conscendĕrĕ, con+scandere (perf.-stem, conscend), (for *upon,* in with the accusative).
To depart, discēdĕrĕ.
I began, cœpī. Perfect, *defective.*
To sustain, sustĭnērĕ (sub and tĕnērĕ), perf.-stem, sustinu.
At his own expense, sumptū suō (abl.).
Expense, sumptŭs, ūs.
To support, ălĕrĕ (perf.-stem, alu).
Greatness, magnĭtūdŏ, (magnĭtūdĭn) ĭs (f.).
A Briton, Brĭtannŭs, ī.
Guest, hospĕs, (hospĭt) ĭs (m. and f., 25, *a*).
To injure, to maltreat, vĭŏlārĕ.
Companion, cŏmĕs, (cŏmĭt) ĭs (m. and f., 25, *a*).
Narrow, angustŭs, ă, ŭm.
Place, lŏcŭs, ī (nom. pl., lŏcī and lŏcă).
Conspiracy, conjūrātĭo (nĭs) (f.).

(310.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsăr nūmĕrŭm obsĭdŭm dūplĭcābĭt.—Brūtŭs ĕrăt ācĕr lĭbertātĭs vindex.—Equĭtēs ĕt pĕdĭtēs in nāvēs conscendĕrunt.—Dumnŏrix cŭm ĕquĭtĭbŭs discēdĕrĕ cœpĭt.—Dumnorix magnŭm nūmĕrŭm equĭtŭm suō sumptū ălŭit.—Mīlĭtēs omnēs magnĭtūdĭnĕm sylvārŭm tĭmuērunt.—Brĭtannī antīquī hospĭtēs nunquăm vĭŏlāvērunt.—Cŏmĭtēs princĭpĭs angustō in lŏcō ĕquĭtŭm nostrōrŭm vīm dĭū sustĭnuērunt.

(311.) *Translate into Latin.*

The chiefs began to go away with all the horsemen.—The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers did not sustain the attack (vim) of the enemy.—The general supported the soldiers at his own expense.—The companions of Dumnorix sustained bravely the attack of our footmen.—The Germans maltreated the ambassadors.—The companions of the lieutenant are embarking-upon the ships.—The greatness of the woods terrifies the horsemen and the footmen.—Dumnorix always maltreats (his) guests.—The messenger began to depart with all the guests.—Brutus,

the defender of liberty, made (fēcĭt) a conspiracy.—The townsmen for a long time supported a large number of footmen at their own expense.—The chiefs doubled the number of horsemen.

LESSON L.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(312.) Class IV.—*The Nominative adds ĕ to the Stem.*

	Sea (n.).	Seas.	Net (n.).	Nets.
N., A., V.	măr-ĕ.	măr-īă.	rēt-ĕ.	rēt-īă.
Gen.	măr-īs.	măr-iŭm.	rēt-īs,	rēt-iŭm.
Dat., Abl.	măr-ī.	măr-ĭbŭs.	rēt-ī.	rēt-ĭbus.

On this class, observe that,

(313.) As to the *case-endings*, the abl. is always ī, the nom. plur. ĭă, and the gen. plur. ĭŭm.

(314.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add e to the stem (instead of s) in the nom. are *neuter*.

EXERCISE.

(315.) *Vocabulary.*

By sea and land, terrā mărīque, *abl.* (*not* mărī et terrā).
To wash, alluĕre (ad+luĕre).
To use, ūtī (dep. —— governs *abl.*).
To be accustomed, consuescĕre (*perfect-stem*, consuēv).
Navigation, navĭgātĭō, (navigatiōn) ĭs (f.).
Vast, vastŭs, ă, ŭm.
Open, ăpertŭs, ă, ŭm.
Ocean, ōceănus, ī.
The Venetians, Vĕnētī, ōrum (pl.).
Broad, lātus, ă, ŭm.
But, autĕm (not so strongly adversative as *sĕd*, and always placed after one or more words of the sentence).
Other, different, ălius (194, R. 1).
Bed, cubīlĕ, (cūbīl) ĭs (IV.).
Splendid, splendĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
A dock-yard, nāvālĕ, (nāvāl) ĭs (IV.).
To commit, to join (as *battle*), committĕrĕ (perf.-stem, commīs).
In the mean time, intĕrīm (adv.).
Huntsman, vēnātor (ōs), m.
Far, longē (adv.).

(316.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *For Marseilles is washed on three sides by the sea.*	Massĭlĭa ēnĭm trĭbus ex partĭbus mărī (abl., 93, II., *b*, R.) allŭĭtŭr.
(*b*) *In our sea* (*i. e., the Mediterranean*) *we were accustomed to use long ships.*	Nostrō mărī (55) longīs nāvĭbus utī consuēvĭmŭs.

Rule of Syntax.—The deponent verb ūtī, *to use*, governs the *ablative*; *e. g.*, navibus, in (*b*).

(317.) *Translate into English.*

Longē ălĭă nāvĭgātĭŏ est ĭn angustō mărī atquĕ ĭn vastō atquĕ ăpertō ōceănō.—Longæ fuērunt navēs quibus (abl., 316, *b*) nostro marī (55) utī (infin.) consuēvĭmus.—Venētī autem lātīs navĭbus ūtī consuevērunt.—Mĭhĭ (125, II., *a*) cubīlĕ est terrā.—Rōmānōrŭm cubīlĭă magnă fuerunt et splendĭdă.—Imperātŏr quinquĕ nāves ex navālī ēdūxĭt et prælium commīsĭt.—Turrĭs ērăt proxĭmă portuī (106, II., *c*) nāvālĭbŭsque.—Cæsăr, intĕrĭm, omnēs nāvēs quæ erant in navālĭbŭs incendĭt.—Venātŏr rētĕ diligentĕr părābăt.—Vēnātōres rētĭă cervīs (54) părābant.

(318.) *Translate into Latin.*

The farmers were preparing nets for the (54) doves.—Corinth is washed on two sides by the sea.—The ships which (316, *b*) the Venetians were accustomed to use in our sea were long.—In the vast and open ocean we use broad ships.—Navigation is far different (longē ălĭă) in a narrow river and in the open sea.—I had (125, II., *a*) a high tree (for my) bed.—Cæsar was pursuing Pompey by sea and land.—The tower was very near to the dockyard.—The general, in the mean time, was rebuilding all the old ships in the port and dockyards.

LESSON LI.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(319.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

Singular.	Honour (m.).	Consul (m.).	Goose (m.).	Brother (m.).
N. and V.	hŏnŏr.	consŭl.	anser.	frater.
Gen.	hŏnŏr-is.	consŭl-is.	anser-is.	frātr-is.
Dat.	hŏnŏr-ī.	consŭl-ī.	anser-ī.	frātr-ī.
Acc.	hŏnŏr-em.	consŭl-em.	anser-em.	frātr-em.
Abl.	hŏnŏr-e.	consŭl-e.	anser-e.	frātr-e.
Plural.	**Honours.**	**Consuls.**	**Geese.**	**Brothers.**
N., A., V.	hŏnŏr-ēs.	consŭl-ēs.	anser-ēs.	frātr-ēs.
Gen.	hŏnŏr-um.	consŭl-um.	anser-um.	frātr-um.
D. and Abl.	hŏnŏr-ĭbŭs.	consŭl-ĭbŭs.	anser-ĭbŭs.	frātr-ĭbŭs.

On these, observe,

(320.) As to *case-endings*, they nearly all take the *regular* endings throughout; but those whose stem ends in ter or ber drop the e in all cases but the nom.; *e. g.*, frātĕr, frātrĭs; imbĕr (*a shower*) imbrĭs.

Rem. Imber, linter, ventĕr, take ĭŭm for gen. pl. ending.

(321.) As to *gender*,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nom. (except those whose stems end in al, ar, ur, ŏr) are *masculine*.

[Exception (1.) In *or:* arbŏr, ŏrĭs (*tree*), is *feminine;* and ădŏr, ŏrĭs, (*pure wheat*), æquŏr, ŏrĭs (*sea*), marmŏr, ŏrĭs (*marble*), are neut. (Obs., masculines have ŏ (long) in the stem; neuters ŏ (short)). The ending *ul* generally belongs to names of male beings (*e. g.*, consul): if applied to females, it may be feminine also (*e. g.*, exul, a female exile).

Exception (2.) *ăr:* linter (*boat*) is masc. or *fem.:* the following are *neuter:* cădāver (*corpse*), über (*teat*), ver (*the spring*), verber (*lash*) also, all names of *plants* in er: *e. g.*, piper (*pepper*), zingĭber (*ginger*), &c.]

EXERCISE.

(322.) *Vocabulary.*

Noise, clāmŏr (ōrĭs, V., 1).
Cassius, Cassius, ī.
Yoke, jŭgum, ī.
Archer, sāgittārĭŭs, ī.
Slinger, funditor (ōrĭs, V., 1).
Succour, subsĭdĭum, ī.
Rain, imbĕr (ĭs, 320).
Continuance, contĭnŭātĭō, (contĭnŭātiōn) ĭs (f.).
Skin, tent made of skins, pellĭs, (pell) is (f. II.).
Desert, dēsertum, ī.
Shepherd, pastŏr (ōrĭs, V., 1).
Hunter, vēnātŏr (ōrĭs, V., 1).

(323.) *Translate into English.*

Impĕrātor ad se mercātōres undĭque convŏcavit.—Mīlĭtēs omnes māgno cum clāmōre in oppĭdum irrupērunt.—Helvētii Cassium consŭlem occīdunt, exercĭtumque ējus (153, *c*) sub jŭgum* mittunt.—Cæsăr sagittāriōs et fundĭtores subsidiō† (dat.) oppĭdānis† (dat.) mīsit.—Mīlĭtēs contĭnuātĭone imbrium (320, R.) sub pellĭbus contĭnentur.—Incŏlæ desĕrtōrum sunt pastōres, venatōres, et mercātōres.—Divitiæ mercātōrum sunt incertæ.—Cæsăr omnem ĕquitātum fundĭtores săgittāriosque pontem (113, II., *a*) transduxit et ad hostes contendit.

(324.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Britons slew the general, and sent all the soldiers under the yoke.—The archers and slingers killed the chief.—By the continuance of the rains, the merchants are kept in the town.—The townsmen burst into the tents (pelles) with a great noise.—The archers and the slingers hasten to the town.—The consul Cassius led all the slingers over the bridge.—The Britons killed the scouts (exploratores), and sent the archers and slingers under the yoke.—The scouts hasten to the consul.—The general sent twenty soldiers for a succour† (dat.) to the merchants.†—The inhabitants of the town are merchants.—The riches of merchants, however great (184) they are, are uncertain.—The soldiers slew all the inhabitants of the desert.—The illustrious consuls led all the footmen over the bridge (113, II., *a*).

* A conquered army was made to march under a sort of yoke or gallows as a mark of disgrace.

† *Rule of Syntax.—Double Dative.* Two datives, one of the person, the other of the thing, may be used with esse, and with verbs of *giving, coming, sending*, &c.

LESSON LII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(325.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

2. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	Animal (n.).	Spur (n.).	Lightning (n.).	Marble (n.).
N., A., V.	ănīmăl.	calcăr.	fulgŭr.	marmŏr.
Gen.	ănīmāl-ĭs.	calcār-ĭs.	fulgŭr-ĭs.	marmŏr-ĭs.
Dat.	ănīmāl-ī.	calcār-ī.	fulgŭr-ī.	marmŏr-ī.
Abl.	ănīmāl-ī.	calcār-ī.	fulgŭr-ĕ.	marmŏr-ĕ.
Plural.	Animals.	Spurs.	Lightnings.	Marbles.
N., A., V.	ănīmāl-ĭă.	calcār-ĭă.	fulgŭr-ă.	marmŏr-ă.
Gen.	ănīmāl-ĭŭm.	calcār-ĭŭm.	fulgŭr-um.	marmŏr-ŭm.
D. and Abl.	ănīmāl-ĭbŭs.	calcār-ĭbŭs.	fulgŭr-ĭbŭs.	marmŏr-ĭbŭs.

On these, observe,

(326.) (*a*) As to *case-endings*, those in **al, ar**, make abl. **ī**, nom. plur. **ĭă**, gen. plur. **ĭŭm**.

(*b*) As to *gender*, they are *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present in the nom. the unchanged stem in **al, ar, ŭr**, and **ŏr** (short), are *neuter*.

Exceptions in **ăl**: **Săl** (*salt*) is *masc.* and *neut.* in the sing., and *masc.*, **sălēs**, in plur. **Lar, lărĭs** (*household god*), masc.

Exceptions in **ur**: **Fūr** (*thief*), **furfŭr** (*bran*), **turtur** (*turtle-dove*), **vultur** (*vulture*), are masc.

Exceptions in **ŏr**. (Recollect that **ŏr, ōrĭs** (with **o** *long*), is a *masc.* ending (321); and that **ărbŏr, ŏrĭs** (*tree*), is *fem.*)

Rem. **Ŏs, ŏssĭs** (*bone*), is neut.

EXERCISE.

(327.) *Vocabulary.*

Level, plain, **plānŭs, ă, ŭm.**
A plain, the sea, **æquŏr, ĭs** (V., 2); (derived from **æquŭs**, *plain:* see below, 328).
Revenue, tax, **vectīgăl, (vectīgăl) ĭs** (V., 2).
To create, **creārĕ.**
Hatred, odium, **ŏdĭŭm, ĭ.**
Many, very many, **complūrēs, ă** or **ĭă** (gen. **ŭm** or **ĭŭm**), used only in plural.
Class, **gĕnŭs, (gĕnĕr) ĕrĭs, neut.**
Temple, **templum, ĭ.**
To place, **pōnĕrĕ.**
Abode, **dŏmĭcĭlĭŭm, ĭ.**
To goad, **concĭtārĕ.**
Frugality, **parsĭmōnĭă, æ.**
Indeed, **quīdĕm** (adv.).
Placid, **plăcĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.**
A marble temple, a temple of marble, **templŭm de marmŏrĕ.**
Sharp, **ăcūtŭs, ă, ŭm.**
Glare, **splendŏr, (splendōr) ĭs** (V., 1)
To farm, **rēdīmĕre** (**rēdēm-**).

(328.) *Example.*

The sea is level, from which also the poets call it æquor (*the sea*).	Mărĕ plānŭm est; ex quō ĕtiăm æquor illŭd poētæ vŏcant.

☞ Here the antecedent of quo is the sentence mărĕ plānŭm est.

(329.) *Translate into English.*

Magnŭm hŏc fuit vectīgăl, sĕd magnŭm creāvit ŏdiŭm.—Dumnŏrix, complūrēs annōs (191, *a*, Rule) omniă Æduōrum vectīgăliă rĕdēmĕrăt.—Complūră (*or* complūriă) sunt gĕnĕră anĭmălĭŭm.—Templŭm de marmŏrĕ ĭn fŏrō pōnăm. Crassŭs dŏmŭm magnăm de marmŏrĕ splendĭdō ædĭfĭcāvĭt.—Fulgŭră mīlĭtēs vĕhĕmentĕr terruērunt.—Terră est dŏmĭciliŭm hŏmĭnŭm ĕt ănĭmălĭŭm.—Mīlĭtēs subĭtō ĕquōs calcărĭbŭs (abl., 55, *a*) concĭtārĕ cœpērunt.—Calcăria ăcūtă sunt.

(330.) *Translate into Latin.*

Glory is a great spur to brave men.—The horses fear the sharp spurs.—The glare of the lightnings terrified the horses.—Almost (fere, 218, *b*) all animals are useful to men.—These were great revenues indeed, but they created great hatreds.—The seas were level and placid.—Frugality is a great revenue.—We shall place a temple of splendid marble in the midst (in mediō fŏrō, 297, *c*) of the forum.—The poets call (mărĕ) the sea æquor, because (quiă) it is level.—The woods are the abode of many animals.—Pompey for many years had farmed the revenues of Asia.—The cavalry (ĕquĭtēs) began to put spurs to their horses (= to goad the horses with spurs).

LESSON LIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(331.) Class VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

	(a) n *of the Stem dropped.*	(b) r *of the Stem changed to* s.		(c) *Verbals in* io (*all fem.*)
Singular.	Speech (m.).	Dust (m.).	Flower (m.)	Reason (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	pulvis.	flōs.	rātiō.
Gen.	sermōn-is.	pulvĕr-is.	flōr-is.	rātiōn-is.
Dat.	sermōn-ī.	pulvĕr-ī.	flōr-ī.	rātiōn-ī.
Acc.	sermōn-ĕm.	pulvĕr-ĕm.	flōr-ĕm.	rātiōn-ĕm.
Abl.	sermōn-ĕ.	pulvĕr-ĕ.	flōr-ĕ.	rātiōn-ĕ.
Plural.	Speeches.		Flowers.	Reasons.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	pulvĕr-ēs.	flōr-ēs.	rātiōn-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-um.	pulvĕr-um.	flōr-um.	rātiōn-um.
D. & Abl.	sermōn-ĭbŭs.	pulvĕr-ĭbŭs.	flōr-ĭbŭs.	rātiōn-ĭbŭs.

On this class, observe,

(332.) As to *case-endings:* 1. Final n of the stem is *generally* dropped in Latin nouns in the nominative. (In sanguis, sanguĭn-is (*blood*), it is changed into s.)

2. Final r of the stem is *often* changed into s, as in pulvis, flōs, mōs, &c.

(333.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which simply drop n of the stem in the nom. are *masculine* (except *abstract* nouns in io).

Special Rem.—Abstract nouns in io (ōnis) are feminine; *e. g.*, rat-io, *reason;* ultio, *revenge.* (They are a very large class, formed by adding io to the supine-stem of verbs.)

(334.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which change ĕr of the stem into is, ōr into ōs, are *masculine; e. g.*, pulvis (pulvĕr), flōs (flōr).

EXERCISE.

(335.) *Vocabulary.*

Manner, custom, mōs, (mōr) is (VI., 1, *b*).
Robber, latrō, (latrōn) is (VI., 1, *a*).
Pirate, prædō, (prædōn) is (VI., 1, *a*).
Centurion, centŭriō, (centuriōn) is (VI., 1, *a*).
Lion, leō, (leōn) is (VI., 1, *a*).
Speech, language, sermō, (sermōn) is (VI., 1, *a*).
Surrender, dēdĭtiō, (deditiōn) is (VI., 1, *c*).
Rebellion, rĕbelliō, (rĕbelliōn) is (VI., 1, *c*).
The Sacred Way, Via Sacra.

Speech (in the abstract), or *an oration*, ōrātiŏ, (orātiōn) is (VI., 1, *c*).
Dust, pulvis, (pulvĕr) is (VI., 1, *b*).
Egyptian, Ægyptiŭs, i.
Sweet, pleasant, suāvis, is, ĕ.
To wander, errārĕ.
To employ, ūtī (with abl., 316, *b*).
To finish, confĭcĕrĕ (io).
The rest, the remaining, rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm.
To slay, trŭcĭdārĕ.
Nurse, nūtrix, (nutrīc) is (I.).
Devoid of, expers, (expert) is (107).
To draw, trăhĕrĕ (trax-; 277, 1).
Eloquent, dĭsertŭs, ă, ŭm.
Adorned, ornātŭs, ă, ŭm.
To go, īrĕ.
By chance, fortĕ (adv.).
As, sĭcŭt.
Kind, blandŭs, ă, ŭm.

(336.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *After the manner of robbers.*	Mōrĕ latrōnŭm.
(*b*) *After his (her or their) own manner.*	Mōrĕ suō.
(*c*) *Devoid of reason.*	Rătiōnis expers.

Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives signifying *abounding*, *want*, *privation*, &c., govern the genitive (sometimes abl.).

(*d*) We say, *a cloud of dust*; the Latin says, *a power of dust*—vīs pulvĕrĭs.

(337.) *Translate into English.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI.*, 1, n *dropped.*)—Centuriōnēs mīlĭtŭm Labiēnŭm lĭbentĕr sĕquēbantŭr.—Lēgātŭs sermōnem longŭm confĭcĭt.—Multī Æduī Cæsărĭs sermonī (dat., 267, *b*) interfuērunt.—Impĕrātŏr rĕlĭquōs latrōnēs prædōnēsque trŭcīdāvĭt.—Africă nutrix est leōnŭm fĕrōcĭŭm.

2. (*Verbal Nouns in* ion, *all Feminine.*)—Helvētiī lēgātōs dē (*concerning*) dēdĭtiōne ad Cæsărĕm mīsērunt.—Barbărī rĕbelliōnĕm turpĕm fēcērunt.—Legātŭs, ōrātiōnĕ acrī (abl., 55, *a*), barbărōs ad dēdĭtiōnĕm traxĭt.—Orātiŏ dĭsertă ĕt ornātă omnĭbŭs (161, *a*) plăcĕt.—Fĕræ sunt rătiōnis et ōrātiōnis expertes.

3. (*Nouns changing* ĕr *of the Stem into* is, ōr *into* ōs; *all Masculines.*)—Pulvis et umbră sŭmŭs.—Mīlĭtes, eōdĕm tempŏrĕ (118, II., *c*) magnăm vīm pulvĕrĭs vĭdēbant.—Ībăm fortĕ vĭă sacrā (abl., 55, *a*) sīcŭt meŭs est mōs.—Ægyptiī, mōrĕ prædōnŭm (336, *a*), nāvēs incendĕre (infin., 210) consuēvērunt.—Suāvēs tui mōrēs mĭhĭ (161, *a*) valdĕ plăcent.—Prædōnēs, mōrĕ suō, oppidă incendĕrĕ cœpērunt.

(338.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI.*, 1, n *dropped.*)—Cæsar employs kind language* (abl., 316, *b*), and draws the barbarians to a surrender.—Many of the Helvetians heard the severe speech (78, II., *b*) of Cæsar.—The bands of robbers and pirates wander by sea and land.—The general slew all the wicked pirates.—Is (135, II., *a*) Africa the nurse of lions?—Is Europe (num, 280, *b*) the nurse of fierce lions?

2. (*Verbals in* io, *all Feminine.*)—Cæsar drew-out from (their) winter-quarters the four legions which he had levied (conscripsĕrăt) in Italy.—The eloquent oration pleased all.—The barbarians made a base rebellion after (their) surrender.—Lions are devoid of reason and speech.

3. (*Nouns changing* ĕr *of the Stem into* ĭs, ōr *into* ōs; *Masculines.*)—The flowers are beautiful.—The customs of the Germans were good.—Death turns (vertĭt) all things into dust.—At the same time (118, II., *b*), a great cloud of dust (336, *d*) was seen by the soldiers.—I was sleeping in the garden, as is my custom.—The Æduans, after the manner of pirates, slew the ambassadors.

LESSON LIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(339.) Class VI.—*The Nominative présents the Stem changed.*

2. *Feminine Forms.*

n *of the Stem dropped, and* i *changed into* ō.		
Singular.	Image (f.).	Hail (f.).
N. and V.	ĭmāgō.	grandō.
Gen.	ĭmāgĭn-ĭs.	grandĭn-ĭs.
Dat.	ĭmāgĭn-ī.	grandĭn-ī.
Acc.	ĭmāgĭn-ĕm.	grandĭn-ĕm.
Abl.	ĭmāgĭn-ĕ.	grandĭn-ĕ.
Plural.	Images.	Hail.
N., A., V.	ĭmāgĭn-ēs.	grandĭn-ēs.
Gen.	ĭmāgĭn-ŭm.	grandĭn-ŭm.
D. and Abl.	ĭmāgĭn-ĭbŭs.	grandĭn-ĭbŭs.

* Sermo.

On these, observe,

(340.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which drop n, and change i into o in the nom., are *feminine*.

Exceptions. Ordŏ (*order*), cardŏ (*hinge*), turbŏ (*whirlwind*), are *masculine*. Nēmŏ (*nobody*), margŏ (*margin*), are *common*. (Homo, *man*, is masc. by the general rule, 25, *a*.)

Rem. Cārŏ (*flesh*) makes gen. carnĭs, dat. carnī, &c., contracted from carĭnĭs, carĭnī, &c.

EXERCISE.

(341.) *Vocabulary.*

Sleep, somnŭs, ī.
Same, idēm, eădēm, ĭdēm (150).
Multitude, multĭtūdŏ, (multĭtūdĭn) ĭs (VI., 2).
To set forth, expōnĕrĕ.
Swallow, hĭrundŏ, (hĭrundĭn) ĭs (VI., 2).
Harbinger, prænuntiă, æ.
Spring, vēr, ĕris (321, exc. 2).
Resemblance, sĭmĭlĭtūdŏ, (sĭmĭlĭtūdĭn) ĭs (VI., 2).*
To preserve, keep, servārĕ.
To call (*name*), appellārĕ.
Council, concĭlĭum, ī.
Lily, lĭlĭŭm, ī.
Virgin, virgŏ, (virgĭn) ĭs (VI., 2).
Prayer, prex, *nom. not used*, (prĕc) ĭs (I.).
To celebrate, to extol, cēlebrārĕ.
Origin, orīgŏ, (orīgĭn) ĭs (VI., 2).
To collect, cōgĕrĕ, cŏn-+-ăgĕrĕ (perf.-stem, coēg).
Order, rank, ordŏ, (ordĭn) ĭs (VI., 2) (m.).
Whirlwind, turbŏ, (turbĭn) ĭs (VI., 2, 340, exc.).
Safe, salvŭs, ă, ŭm.

(342.) *Translate into English.*

1. Somnŭs ĭmāgŏ mortĭs est.—Lēgātī eădēm quæ Cæsăr dixĕrăt multĭtūdĭnī expōnunt.—Hĭrundĭnēs prænuntiæ vērĭs sunt.—Gallī oppĭdŭm ex sĭmĭlĭtūdĭnĕ flōrĭs Lĭlĭŭm appellābant.—Consŭl mātrŭm virgĭnum-que prĕcĭbŭs excĭtātur.—Poētæ cēlebrant Rōmŭlŭm, ŏrīgĭnĕm gentĭs.

2. Princĭpes Æduōrŭm magnăm multĭtūdĭnĕm hŏmĭnŭm ex agrīs coēgērunt.—Mīlĭtēs ordĭnēs nōn servant.—Cæsăr centŭrĭōnēs prīmōrŭm ordĭnŭm ăd concĭlĭum convŏcat.—Cĭcĕrō ĭn magnīs turbĭnĭbŭs nāvēm reīpublĭcæ (351, 3) gŭbernāvĭt, ĕt salvăm ĭn portŭ collŏcāvĭt.

(343.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. Speech (sermŏ) is the image of the mind.—Sleep is often the harbinger of death.—The soldiers feared the force of the

* Sĭmĭlĭtūdŏ flōrĭs = *resemblance to a flower*.

hail.—The centurions were setting-forth the same (things) which the general had commanded.—The brave soldiers are moved by the prayers of the mothers and the virgins.

2. The consuls collect a great multitude of men from the towns.—Cæsar dismisses from (ab) the council the centurions of the first ranks.—The archers and the slingers did not keep their ranks.—Cæsar calls (vŏcārĕ) to the council the centurions of all the ranks.—The brave consul in the great whirlwinds will govern the ship of state (351, 3).—Cæsar will place the ship of state safe in the port.

LESSON LV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(344.) Class VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

3. *Neuter Forms.*

	(a) *Vowel changed.*		(b) *Vowel and Cons. changed.*		(c) *Cons. changed.*
Singular.	Song (n.).	Strength (n.).	Work (n.).	Body (n.).	Law (n.).
N., A., V.	carmen.	rōbŭr.	ŏpŭs.	corpŭs.	jūs.
Gen.	carmĭn-ĭs.	rōbŏr-ĭs.	ŏpĕr-ĭs.	corpŏr-ĭs.	jūr-ĭs.
Dat.	carmĭn-ī.	rōbŏr-ī.	ŏpĕr-ī.	corpŏr-ī.	jūr-ī.
Abl.	carmĭn-ĕ.	rōbŏr-ĕ.	ŏpĕr-ĕ.	corpŏr-ĕ.	jūr-ĕ.
Plural.	Songs.		Works.	Bodies.	Laws.
N., A., V.	carmĭn-ă.	rōbŏr-ă.	ŏpĕr-ă.	corpŏr-ă.	jūr-ă.
Gen.	carmĭn-ŭm.	rōbŏr-ŭm.	ŏpĕr-ŭm.	corpŏr-ŭm.	jūr-ŭm.
D., Abl.	carmĭn-ĭbŭs.	rōbŏr-ĭbŭs.	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs.	corpŏr-ĭbŭs.	jur-ĭbŭs.

On this class, observe,

(345.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which, in the nominative, change the stems ĭn into ĕn, ŏr into ŭr, and ĕr, ŏr, or ūr into us, are *neuter*.

Exceptions. (1.) In ĕn: only pectĕn, pectĭnĭs (masc.), *a comb*.

(2.) ŏr into ŭr: none.

(3.) ĕr into ŭs: none.

(4.) ŏr into ŭs: only lĕpŭs, lĕpŏrĭs (masc.), *a hare*.

(5.) ŭr into us: mūs, murĭs (masc.), *mouse*; tellus, ūrĭs (fem.), *earth*.

(346.) Under this head may be classed the following nouns of rare endings:

1. Poēmă, ătĭs (*neuter*), *a poem.* Nouns of this form are derived from the Greek, and are all neuters. They prefer the ending īs to ĭbŭs in the dat. and abl. plur.

2. Hālēc (*neuter*), hālēcĭs, *brine*, and lāc (*neuter*), lactĭs, *milk*, are the only Latin nouns ending in c in the nom.

3. Căpŭt, capĭtĭs, *head*, is the only Latin noun ending in t in the nom. It is neuter.

EXERCISE.

(347.) *Vocabulary.*

Arrogance, arrōgantiă, æ.	*To delay*, tardārĕ.
Crime, crīmĕn, (crīmĭn) ĭs (VI., 3, *a*).	*Gift*, mūnŭs, (munĕr) ĭs (VI., 3, *b*).
To want (lack), *to be free from*, cārērĕ (with abl.).	*Quickly*, cītō (adv.).
Folly, stultĭtiă.	*Hare*, lĕpŭs, (lepŏr) ĭs (m., 345, 4).
Wonderful, mirĭfĭcŭs, ă, ŭm (mirus + facio).	*Milk*, lāc, (lact) ĭs (n., 346, 2).
Naked, nūdŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Flesh*, cărŏ, (carn) ĭs (f., 340, R.).
Strong, vălĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Young man*, jŭvĕnĭs, is (m.): gen. pl., ŭm.
The whole affair, omnĭs rēs.	*Danube*, Dānŭbĭŭs, ĭ (m.).
	Jugurtha, Jugurthă, æ.
	If, sĭ (conj.).

(348.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *To condemn to death.* | Căpĭtĭs (*or* căpĭtĕ) condemnārĕ (= *to condemn of the head*).

Rule of Syntax.—With verbs of condemning, the punishment (if *capital*) is put in the gen. or abl.

(*b*) *To be free from a crime.* | Crīmĭnĕ cārērĕ (= to *want* crime).

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative case is used with verbs (and adjectives) of *abounding* and *wanting*.

(349.) *Translate into English.*

Sōcrātēs arrōgantiæ ĕt stultĭtiæ crīmĭnĕ cārēbăt.—Rhēnŭs et Rhōdănŭs magnă sunt flumĭnă.—Magnă et mīrĭfică sunt omniă Deī ŏpĕră.—Gallī sempĕr nūdō corpŏrĕ (synt., 716, 2) pugnābant.—Corpŏră Germānōrŭm vălĭdă et mīrĭfĭcă fuērunt.—Magnĭtūdō ŏpĕrŭm omnĕm rĕm tardābat.—Sī mūnĕră

tardās, nĭhĭl das ; bĭs dăt, quī cĭtŏ dat.—Vēnātŏr lĕpŏrēs tĭmĭdos ĭn sylvis persĕquĭtŭr.—Athēniensēs Socratĕm căpĭtĕ condemnārunt.*—Cūr tālĕm vĭrŭm căpĭtis condemnāstis?—Brĭtannī lactĕ et carnĕ vīvunt.

(350.) *Translate into Latin.*

The bodies of the young men were strong.—The man (vir) was free from the crime of folly.—The Danube and the Rhine are great rivers.—Do the Gauls (num, 280, *b*) fight with naked body?—The works of Cicero are excellent: I read them (eos) with pleasure (lĭbentĕr).—The Romans condemned Jugurtha to death (348, *a*).—Did the Athenians (280, *b*) condemn Socrates to death?—The captives were condemned (imperf. pass.) to death.—The timid hare was wandering in the woods and fields.—Is-it-possible-that (280, *b*) the Britons live (on) (abl.) milk and flesh?—Your pleasant songs (161, *b*) delighted (delectāre) me.

LESSON LVI.

Irregular Nouns.

(351.) We give here the declension of a *few* irregular nouns.

1. Jūpĭtĕr.

Nom.	Jūpĭtĕr.
Gen.	Jŏvĭs.
Dat.	Jŏvī.
Acc.	Jŏvĕm.
Abl.	Jŏvĕ.

* The *perf.* and *plup.* tenses are often thus contracted: *amārāt* for *āmāvĕrat*; *vigilastĭs* for *vigilavistĭs*.

2. Bōs, *an ox* or *cow.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Bōs.	Bŏvēs.
Gen.	Bŏvĭs.	Boŭm.
Dat.	Bŏvī.	Bōbŭs *or* Būbŭs.
Acc.	Bŏvĕm.	Bŏvēs.
Voc.	Bōs.	Bŏvēs.
Abl.	Bŏvĕ.	Bōbŭs *or* būbŭs.

[In *double nouns, each* noun is inflected; *e. g.*,]

3. Rēspublĭcă (rēs+publĭcă), *a republic, state.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Rēspublĭcă.	Respublĭcæ.
Gen.	Reīpublĭcæ.	Rērumpublĭcārŭm.
Dat.	Reīpublĭcæ.	Rēbuspublĭcīs.
Acc.	Rempublĭcăm.	Respublĭcās.
Voc.	Respublĭcă.	Respublĭcæ.
Abl.	Rēpublĭcā.	Rēbuspublĭcīs.

4. Jusjūrandŭm (jūs+jūrandŭm), *an oath.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Jusjūrandŭm.	Jūrajūrandă.
Gen.	Jūrisjūrandī.	———
Dat.	Jūrījūrandō.	———
Acc.	Jusjūrandŭm.	Jūrajūrandă.
Abl.	Jūrējūrandō.	———

Rem. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are not used.

EXERCISE.

(352.) *Vocabulary.*

Faith, promise, fĭdēs, ēī.
To bind, obstringĕrĕ, (ŏb+stringĕrĕ) (perf.-stem, obstrinx).
To take care of, cūrārĕ.
Folly, stultĭtĭă, æ.
To lose, āmittĕrĕ, (ă+mittĕrĕ) (perf.-stem, āmīs).
To intrust, committĕrĕ, (con+mittĕrĕ) commīs (with dat.).
Especially, maximĕ (adv.).
To worship, cōlĕrĕ (perf.-stem, cŏlŭ-).
Apis, Āpĭs, ĭs (m.).
Sacred, sanctŭs, ă, ŭm.
Formerly, ōlīm.
Guardian, custōs, (custōd) ĭs (m. and f.).
Juno, Jūnŏ, (Jūnōn) ĭs (f.).
Husband or *wife,* conjux, (conjŭg) ĭs (m. and f.).
Nation, nātĭō, (nātiōn) ĭs (f.).
An Ægyptian, Ægyptiŭs, ĭ.
But especially, maximĕ autĕm.
Minerva, Mĭnervă, æ.

(353.) *Translate into English.*

Princĭpēs intĕr sē fĭdĕm et jusjūrandŭm dăbant.—Ariovistŭs civĭtātĕm jūrejūrandō (55) ĕt obsĭdĭbŭs obstrinxit.—Ăpŭd Rōmānōs, consŭlēs rempublĭcăm cūrāvērunt.—Multæ nātiōnēs pĕr stultĭtiăm respublĭcās suās āmīsērunt.—Vĕtĕrēs maxĭmĕ Jŏvĕm cŏluērunt.—Ægyptii Āpĭm, sanctŭm bŏvĕm (225, *a*), ōlim cŏluērunt.—Jūpĭtĕr est hūjŭs urbis custōs.—Jūnō ĕrăt Jŏvis conjux.—Cīvēs īrăm Jŏvis tĭment.—Cornuă boŭm sunt magnă.

(354.) *Translate into Latin.*

The robbers will give an oath among themselves.—Cæsar binds all the Germans by a promise and an oath.—Cæsar bound the chiefs of the state by an oath and by hostages.—The senate intrusts (committit) the whole republic to Cicero.—The consuls will take care of our republic.—The ancients worshipped many gods, but especially Jupiter.—We have lost the republic by (per) our own folly.—Jupiter is the guardian of our house.—Apis, the sacred ox, is the guardian of this city.—Minerva was the daughter of Jupiter.—Good men do not fear the anger of Jupiter.

(355.) LESSON LVII.

*Summary of Rules of Gender from the Nominative Formation.**

I. MASCULINES either

1. Add s, and change the stem-vowel before it; *e. g.*, gurgĕs, gurgĭt-ĭs, *whirlpool*; mīlĕs, mīlĭt-ĭs, *soldier*; cōdex, cōdĭc-ĭs, *book*.

2. Present the stem er, ul, or, without adding s; *e. g.*, ansĕr, ansĕr-ĭs, *goose*; consul, consŭl-ĭs, *consul*; hŏnŏr, honōr-ĭs, *honour*.

3. Drop n without adding s; *e. g.*, sermo, sermōn-ĭs, *speech*; carbo, carbōn-ĭs, *coal*.

4. Change ĕr of the stem into ĭs, ōr into ōs; *e. g.*, cĭnis, cinĕr-ĭs, *ashes*; pulvĭs, pulvĕr-ĭs, *dust*; flōs, flōr-ĭs, *flower*.

II. FEMININES either

1. Add s without changing the stem-vowel; *e. g.*, urb-s, urb-ĭs, *city*; nox (noct-s), noct-ĭs, *night*; vox (vōc-s), vŏc-ĭs, *voice*; quies, quiēt-ĭs, *quiet*.

2. Insert a vowel (e or i) before adding s; *e. g.*, nūb-e-s, nub-ĭs, *cloud*; nāv-ĭ-s, nav-ĭs, *ship*.

3. Drop n, and change ĭ into o; *e. g.*, ĭmāgo, ĭmāgĭn-ĭs, *image*; grando, grandĭn-ĭs, *hail*.

III. NEUTERS either

1. Add e to the stem; *e. g.*, măre, măr-ĭs, *the sea*.
2. Present the unchanged stem al, ar, ur, ŏr; *e. g.*, ănĭmăl, animāl-ĭs, *animal*; calcăr, calcār-ĭs, *spur*; fulgŭr, fulgŭr-ĭs, *lightning*; æquŏr, æquŏr-ĭs, *sea*.
3. Change ĭn of the stem into ĕn, ŏr into ŭr, and ĕr, ŏr, *or* ŭr into us; *e. g.*, carmĕn, carmĭn-ĭs, *song*; ĕbŭr, ĕbŏr-ĭs, *ivory*; ŏpŭs, ŏpĕr-ĭs, *work*; corpŭs, corpŏr-ĭs, *body*; crūs, crūr-ĭs, *leg*.

* Abundant illustrations of these rules have been given. The student should now learn them thoroughly by heart, and apply them in the subsequent lessons.

Exceptions.

I. 1. Only mergĕs, mergĭtĭs (f.), *sheaf.*

I. 2.
- er, *feminine:* lintĕr, *boat.*
- er, *neuter:* cădāvĕr, ūbĕr, vērbĕr, vēr, tūbĕr, spinthēr, with all the names of plants in ĕr.
- ŏr, *feminine:* arbŏr, *tree.*
- ŏr, *neuter:* eŏr, ădŏr, æquŏr, marmŏr.

Rem. The *neuters* have ŏ (*short*) in the stem; the *masculines*, ō (*long*).

I. 3. The *abstract* nouns in ĭo are all *feminine; e. g.*, rătio (f.), ratiōnĭs, *reason.*

I. 4. None.

II. 1.
- *Masculines.* Viz., fons, mons, pons, dens and its compounds, torrens, occĭdens, ŏrĭens.
- Grex, Greek nouns in ax, and a few in ix; lăpĭs, văs, păriēs, pēs.*

II. 2.
- *Masculines.* Latin nouns ending in nĭs; *e. g.*, ignĭs (m.), *fire;* with
- Piscĭs, orbĭs, callĭs, *and* canālĭs;
- Unguĭs, caulĭs, axĭs, *and* annālĭs;
- Fascĭs, sentĭs, fustĭs, canĭs, ensĭs;
- Vectĭs, vermĭs, postĭs; *also* mensĭs.

II. 3.
- *Masculines.* Ordo, cardo, homo, turbo.
- *Common.* Nēmo, margo.

III. 1. None.

III. 2.
- Sāl, *masculine* and *neuter* in singular; *masculine* in plural. Lār, lărĭs, *masculine.*
- Fūr, furfŭr, turtŭr, vultŭr, *masculine.*

III. 3.
- *Masculine:* changing ĭn into ĕn, only pectĕn, *comb;* changing ŏr into ŭs, only lĕpŭs, *hare;* changing ūr into us, only mūs, *mouse.* *Feminine:* tellūs, *earth.*

* There are also a few *Greek* words that are masculine. As, assĭs, *coin*, is masculine; vās, vāsĭs, *vase*, is neuter.

§ 4.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. (LVIII.—LX.)

(356.) ADJECTIVES are inflected both in English and Latin to express *degrees* of quality; *e. g.*,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Brave,	*braver,*	*bravest.*
Fort-ĭs,	fort-iŏr,	fort-issĭmŭs.

LESSON LVIII.

The Comparative Degree.

(357.) The *comparative* has the ending iŏr for the *masculine*, and iŭs for *neuter*. These endings are added directly to the *stem* of the adjective; *e. g.*,

	Masculine.	
Brave, fort-is;	*braver,* fort-ior;	fort-ius.
Hard, dūr-us;	*harder,* dūr-ior;	dūr-ius.
Beautiful, pulch-er (*stem,* pulchr-);	*more beautiful,* pulchr-ior;	pulchr-ius.

Rem. If the stem ends in a *vowel*, the comparative is formed by the use of măgis, *more*, instead of the ending; *e. g.*,

pious, pi-us; *more pious,* măgis pĭus.
fit, idōne-us; *more fit,* măgis idōneus.

(358.) DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. and V.	dūr-iŏr.	dūr-iŭs.	dūr-iōrēs.	dūr-iōră.
Gen.	dūr-iōrĭs.	dūr-iōrĭs.	dūr-iōrŭm.	dūr-iōrŭm.
Dat.	dūr-iōri.	dūr-iōrī.	dūr-iōrĭbŭs.	dūr-iōrĭbŭs.
Acc.	dūr-iōrĕm.	dūr-iŭs.	dūr-iōrēs.	dūr-iōră.
Abl.	dūr-iōrĕ.	dūr-iōrĕ.	dūr-iōrĭbŭs.	dūr-iōrĭbŭs.

Rem. In the later writers, I is used for abl. sing. ending frequently instead of ĕ.

EXERCISE.

(359.) *Vocabulary.*

Like, similar to, sĭmĭlis (takes *dat.*, sometimes *gen.*, 106, II., *c*).
Amiable, ămābĭlis, is, ĕ.
Eloquent, ēlŏquens.
Excellent, præstans.
Ignorance, ĭgnōrātio, (ignoration) ĭs.
Knowledge, scientia, æ.
Silver, argentum, i.
Vile, paltry, vilis, is, ĕ.
Justice, justĭtiă, æ.
Dear, precious, cārŭs, ă, ŭm.
Few, paucī, æ, ă (used only in pl.).
Indeed, quĭdem (adv.; always stands next *after* the word to which it refers).
Swift, cĕlĕr (105, R. 1).
Than, quăm (conj.).
To seek, quærĕrĕ.
Antonine, Antōnīnus, i.
Future, fūtūrŭs, ă, ŭm.

(360.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *A pirate is more like a wild beast than a man.* — Prædo fĕræ (106, II., *b*) est sĭmĭlior quam hŏmĭni (dat.).

(*b*) *Nothing is more amiable than virtue.* — Nĭhĭl est ămābĭlius quam virtūs, *or*

(*c*) Nĭhĭl est virtūtĕ ămābĭlius.

(*c*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The conjunction quam (*than*) is frequently omitted, and then the noun with the comparative must be put in the *ablative* case.

Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar. — Cĭcero fuit Cæsăre ēlŏquentior.

(361.) *Translate into English.*

Nĭhil est virtūte præstantius.—Virtus est præstantior quam rōbur (344).—Īgnōrātio mălōrum ūtĭlior est quam scientiă.—Aurŭm grăvius est argentō.—Argentŭm vilius est aurō, virtūtĭbus aurum.—Lŭpī fĕrōciōres sunt quam cănes.—Tullus Hostĭlius fĕrōcior erat Rōmŭlō.—Justĭtiam quærĭmus; rem (app., with justĭtiam, 225, *a*) aurō cariōrem.—Paucīs (dat. gov. by cārior, 106, II., *b*) cārior fides est, quam pecunia.—Mihi (dat.) ămīcŭs fuĭt mē ipsō cārĭōr.—Omnēs suōs (*i. e., his friends*) cārōs hăbet (*he holds*); mē (acc.) quĭdem sē ipsō cārĭōrĕm.—Nēmo Romanōrum (*partitive gen.*) ēlŏquentior fuit Cĭcerōne.

(362.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. *With* quam.—The horse is swifter than the dog.—Igno-

rance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).—Lions are fiercer than wolves.—Antonine was more pious (357, R.) than Cæsar.—The son was more amiable than the father.—A robber is more like a wolf (dat., 106, II., *b*) than a man.

2. *Without* quam (with *ablative*).—Justice is a thing more precious than gold.—Gold is more paltry than virtue.—Nothing is more amiable than virtue.—To Crassus his friends were dearer than himself.—He (*had*) held all his own (*friends*) dear, but Cicero even dearer than himself.—What (170) is heavier than water? Gold.—What is more excellent than strength? Virtue.

LESSON LIX.

Superlative Degree.

(363.) The *superlative* ending is issĭmŭs, which is added to the stem of the adjective.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dear, cār-us;	*dearer*, cār-ior;	*dearest*, cār-issĭmŭs.
Brave, fort-is;	*braver*, fort-ior;	*bravest*, fort-issĭmŭs.
Happy, fēlix (fēlīc-s);	*more happy*, fēlīc-ior;	*most happy*, fēlīc-issĭmŭs.

(364.) But adjectives whose stems end in er add the ending rĭmus.

Unhappy, mĭser;	*most unhappy*, mĭser-rĭmŭs.
Swift, cĕlĕr;	*swiftest*, cĕler-rĭmŭs.
Beautiful, pulcher;	*most beautiful*, pulcher-rĭmŭs.

(365.) Several adjectives whose stems end in l add lĭmŭs.

Easy, făcĭl-is;	*easiest*, făcil-lĭmŭs.

EXERCISE.

(366.) *Vocabulary.*

Cyrus, Cȳrus, ī.
Hannibal, Hannibăl, (Hannĭbăl) is.
Difficult, diffĭcĭlis (dĭ+făcĭlis).
Moderation, mŏdŭs, ī.
Darius, Dārius, ī.
To preserve moderation, mŏdŭm hăbĕrĕ (= *to have moderation*).
Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgĭn) is.
Metal, mĕtallum, ī.
To stain, măcŭlārĕ.

(367.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Socrates was very wise.* | Sŏcrates săpientissimus fuit.

A *high* degree of quality (*very* good, *very* wise, &c.) is expressed in Latin by the *superlative.*

(*b*) *Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest.* | Hōrum omnium fortissĭmī sunt Belgæ.

Rule of Syntax.—The genitive plural is used with the superlative degree: the *most learned* of the *Romans;* doctissĭmŭs Romanōrum (partitive gen., synt., 697).

(*c*) *Among the Helvetians the noblest was Orgetorix.* | Ăpud Helvĕtios nōbĭlissĭmus fuit Orgĕtŏrix.

(368.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs Syrācusæ (app., 225, *a*) Græcārum urbium est pulcherrĭmă.—Præstantissĭmī Persārum rēges fuērunt Cyrus et Darīus.—Pompeius magnam bellī glōriam mortĕ (55, *a*) turpissĭmā măcŭlāvit.—Hannĭbal fortissĭmŭs erat omnium Carthāgĭniensium.—Gallōrum omnium fortissĭmī sunt Belgæ.—Cicĕro ēlŏquentissĭmus fuit Romānōrum.—Difficillimum est mŏdum hăbērĕ (161, *d*).—Ăpud Æduos nōbĭlissĭmus et fortissĭmus fuit Dīvĭtiācus.

(369.) *Translate into Latin.*

Plato was very wise (367, *a*).—Plato was the wisest of all the Greeks (367, *b*).—The city Rome was the most beautiful of all the Roman cities.—Of all these, the Britons are the bravest.—The most excellent leaders of the Romans were Cæsar and Pompey.—Carthage was a very beautiful city.—Of all things, the most difficult is to preserve moderation.—Of all (men), the most happy (beatus) is the wise (man).—The hardest of all metals is iron.—Among the Greeks Themistocles was the noblest.—Cæsar led the bravest soldiers across the very broad river.

LESSON LX.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

(370.) SEVERAL adjectives are quite *irregular* in their comparison. The following are the most important.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
good, bŏnŭs.	*better*, mĕlĭor.	*best*, optĭmŭs.
bad, mălŭs.	*worse*, pējor.	*worst*, pessĭmŭs.
great, māgnŭs.	*greater*, mājŏr.	*greatest*, maxĭmŭs.
much, multŭs.	*more*, plūs (n. sing.). plūrēs, ă (pl.).	*most*, *very many*, plūrĭmŭs.
small, parvŭs.	*less*, mĭnŏr.	*least*, mĭnĭmŭs.
old, sĕnex.	*older*, sĕnĭor.	*wanting.*
young, jŭvenĭs.	*younger*, jūnĭor.	*wanting.*
outward, extĕrus.	*more outward*, extĕrior.	*outermost*, extrēmŭs.
below, infĕrus.	*lower*, infĕrior.	*lowest*, infĭmŭs, *or* īmŭs.
above, sŭpĕrŭs.	*higher*, sŭpĕrĭor.	*highest*, sŭprēmŭs, *or* summŭs.
hind, postĕrŭs.	*hinder*, postĕrĭor.	*hindmost*, postrēmŭs.

(371.) Several adjectives have no positive, but form the *comparative* and *superlative* from a preposition, adverb, or obsolete word.

	Comparative.	Superlative.
(*on this side*, cĭtra.)	*nearer*, cĭtĕrĭor.	*nearest*, cĭtĭmus.
(*within*, intra.)	*inner*, intĕrĭor.	*inmost*, intĭmus.
(*beyond*, ultra.)	*farther*, ultĕrĭor.	*farthest*, *last*, ultĭmŭs.
(*near*, prŏpe.)	*nearer*, prŏpĭor.	*nearest*, *next*, proxĭmŭs.
(*bad*, deter.)	*worse*, dĕtĕrĭor.	*worst*, dĕterrĭmŭs.
	former, prĭor.	*first*, prīmŭs.

Rem. 1. Dīvĕs, *rich*; *richer*, dĭtior, dīvĭtior; *richest*, dĭtissĭmus, dīvĭtissĭmus. (Cicero uses the longer form, Cæsar the shorter.)

2. Compound adjectives in dĭcus, fĭcus, vŏlus, add *entior* for the comp., and *entissimus* for the superl.; *e.g.*, bĕnĕ-vŏlus (*benevolent*), bĕnĕvŏl-entior, bĕnĕvŏl-entissĭmŭs.

EXERCISE.

(372.) *Vocabulary.*

Disgraceful, unworthy, indignŭs, ă, ŭm (in-|-dignus).
Infamy, disgraceful crime, flāgitĭum, ī.
Wisdom, sāpientĭa, æ.
The Suevians, Suēvī, ōrum.
Warlike, bellicōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Condition, condĭtio, (condĭtiōn) is.
America, Amĕrĭca, æ.
Emperor, impĕrātŏr, ōrĭs (355, I., 2).

(373.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *It is disgraceful to be conquered by a superior; more disgraceful (to be conquered) by one inferior and lower.*	Indignum est ā **sŭpĕrĭōre** vincī; indignius ab **infĕrĭōre** atque **hŭmĭlĭōre**.

[Here the infin. pass. **vincī** is used as a neut. noun, nom. to **est**, and **indignum** agrees with it in the predicate.]

(*b*) *What is better for man than wisdom?*	Quĭd est **hŏmĭnī mĕlĭŭs sāpientiā** (360, *c*)?

[Here **hŏmĭnī** is in the dat. (advantage or disadvantage, 106, II., *b*).]

(374.) *Translate into English.*

Nĭhil est **mĕlius** quam (360, *b*) **săpientiă**.—**Hĭbernĭă mĭnor** est quam **Brĭtannĭă**.—**Nĭhil** est **pējŭs flāgĭtĭō**.—**Hostēs cĕlerĭtĕr lŏcă** (309) **sŭpĕrĭōra** occŭpābant.—**Maxĭmă** pars Aquĭtaniæ obsĭdēs ad Cæsărem **mīsĭt**.—Suevōrum gens est longē **maxĭmă** et bellicosissĭmă Germānōrum omnium (367, *b*).—**Arĭovistus** agrum **Sēquānum**, quī **optĭmus ĕrat** tōtĭus Galliæ occŭpāvit.—**Infĭmă** est **condĭtio** et fortūnă servōrum.—**Prīmus** et **maxĭmus** rēgum Romanōrum fuit **Rōmŭlus**.

(375.) *Translate into Latin.*

It is disgraceful to be conquered by a junior, more disgraceful by a senior.—What is better than virtue? what worse than vice?—What is better for man than honour? Wisdom.—Europe is less than Asia; Asia than America.—The bravest of the Belgians were seizing the higher grounds (**lŏcă**).—The greatest part of Gaul made (**fecit**) a surrender.—The first and greatest of the Roman emperors was Cæsar.—The poor are often more benevolent (371, R. 2) than (**quam**) the rich.—The worst (men) are often more-happy than (**quam**) the best.—Among the Helvetians (by) far the richest and noblest was Orgetorix.

§ 5.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(376.) Adverbs *derived from adjectives* admit of comparison. The *comp.* is the *neuter* form of the comparative of the adjective: the *superlative* substitutes ē for us.

Learnedly, doct-ē;	*more learnedly*, doct-iŭs;	*most learnedly*, doct-issĭmē.
Joyfully, læt-ē;	*more joyfully*, læt-iŭs;	*most joyfully*, læt-issĭmē.
Happily, fēlīc-ĭtĕr;	*more happily*, fēlīc-iŭs;	*most happily*, fēlīc-issĭme.
Well, bĕnĕ;	*better*, mĕliŭs;	*best*, optĭmē.

[No separate exercise upon these is necessary.]

§ 6.

SUPINE.

(377.) The *Supine* presents the action of the verb under the form of a noun in two cases, the *accusative* and *ablative*. The *former supine* ends in ŭm, the *latter* in ū; which endings are added to the *supine-stem* of the verb.

LESSON LXI.

Supines.

(378.) The Supine-stem is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

(1) In 1st conj., ... ăt; *e. g.*, ăm-ăt-.
(2) In 2d conj., ... ĭt; *e. g.*, mŏn-ĭt-.
(3) In 3d conj., ... t; *e. g.*, reg-t = rect-
(4) In 4th conj., ... īt; *e. g.*, aud-īt-.

[*Rem.* Many supines, however, use different connecting vowels, or take s (and not t) before u m and u. For this reason, therefore, all supine-stems will be given in the following vocabularies. Where no supine-stem is given, it is to be understood that the verb has no supine.]

(379.) The supine in ŭm is a verbal noun of the accusative case, and is put after verbs of motion to express the *design* of that motion; *e. g.*,

(*a*) *Ambassadors come to Cæsar to ask assistance.*	Lēgātī ăd Cæsărĕm vĕniunt rŏgātŭm* auxĭlĭum.
(*b*) *To go to sleep (to sleeping).*	Īrĕ dormītŭm.

(380.) The supine in ū is a verbal noun of the ablative case, and is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, &c.

* Rŏgātŭm = accus. answering to the question *whither*

(*a*) *It is* (*a thing*) *easy to do* (or, *to be done*).	Est făcĭlĕ factū.*
(*b*) *It is* (*a thing*) *wonderful to tell* (or, *to be told*).	Est mīrābĭlĕ dictū.

(381.) The following are nearly all the supines in u which are in use: dictū, audītū, cognĭtū, factū, inventū, mĕmŏrātū.

EXERCISE.

(382.) *Vocabulary.*

To ask, demand, postŭlārĕ (postŭlāt).	*To besiege*, oppugnārĕ (oppugnāt).
To congratulate, grātŭlārī (grātŭlāt), *dep.*	*Hand, band of men*, mănŭs, ūs.
To come together, convĕnīrĕ (con+vĕnīrĕ, convĕn-, convent-).	*Wonderful*, mīrābĭlis, ĕ (104).
To complain, quĕrŏr (quest).	*Very easy*, perfăcĭlis, ĕ (104).
Custom, consuētūdŏ, (consuētūdĭn) ĭs (f., 355, II., 3).	*To do*, făcĕrĕ (fact).
To collect corn, frūmentārī (frūmentāt).	*To say, tell*, dicĕrĕ (dict).
A Trevirian, Trēvīr ī (65).	*Best*, optĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (370).
	To find, invĕnīrĕ (in+vĕnīrĕ), invent.
	To happen, accĭdĕrĕ.
	To endure, tŏlĕrārĕ (tŏlĕrāt).
	Senate, sĕnātŭs, ūs.

(383.) *Example.*

Divitiacus came to Rome to ask assistance.	Divitiācŭs Rōmām vēnĭt auxĭlĭŭm postŭlatūm.

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative is used with the names of towns and small islands, to answer to the question *whither*; *e. g.*, in (a) Rōmām.

(384.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Supine in* ŭm.—Princĭpēs cīvĭtātis ăd Cæsărem grātŭlātūm convēnērunt.—Trēvīrī magnā mānū (55, *a*) castrā oppugnātūm vēnērunt.—Lēgātī ăb Æduīs vēnērunt, questūm.—Cæsăr ex consuētūdĭnĕ ūnām lēgiōnĕm mīsit frūmentātūm.—Lēgātī Rōmām ăd sĕnātūm vēnērunt auxĭlĭum postŭlātūm.

2. *Supine in* ū.—Est perfăcĭlĕ factū.—Est jūcundūm audītū.—Quædām (178, 1) sunt turpiă dictū.—Quŏd optĭmūm est factū, făciām.—Virtūs difficĭlĭs est inventū.—Multă accĭdunt dūră tŏlĕrātū.

* Factū = ablative of *respect, wherein.*

(385.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Words in Italic to be rendered by supines.]

1. *Supine in* um.—The consuls, according to (ex) custom, sent a large band *to collect corn*.—All the chiefs of the Æduans were coming to Rome *to ask* assistance.—All the ambassadors, according to custom,* came-together to Cæsar *to congratulate* (him).—The soldiers of the tenth legion came to the general *to complain*.—The Germans came (in) a large band *to attack* the town.

2. *Supine in* u.—It is (a thing) wonderful *to be heard*.—What (quod) is base *to be said*, I will not say.—What is difficult *to be done*, I will do.—A true (verus) friend is difficult *to be found*.—Some-things are very easy *to be done*.

* *According to custom* = ex consuetudine.

§ 7.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.—FULLER STATEMENT. (LXII.—LXIX.)

(386.) It has been stated (262) that the *tense*-stem of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses is the same. In Lessons XLIV., XLV. we gave *one* mode of forming this tense-stem for each conjugation. There are several other modes, which we now proceed to state, taking up the conjugations separately. To make the tables complete, we shall repeat the *first* method at the head of each.

LESSON LXII.

Forms of Perfect-stem.—First Conjugation.

(387.) There are *four* ways of forming the perfect-stem in the *first conjugation.*

I.	*By adding* ăv *to the verb-stem;*	ăm-ārĕ,	ăm-āv
II.	" ŭ "	sŏn-ārĕ,	sŏn-ŭ
III.	*reduplicating* the first consonant with* ĕ;	d-ārĕ,	dĕd-
IV.	*lengthening the stem-vowel;*	jŭv-ārĕ,	jūv

On this table, observe that *Class*

I. contains *most* of the verbs of the first conjugation.

II. contains *eleven* simple verbs (of which a list may be found, 664).

III. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., dārĕ, *to give,* and stārĕ, *to stand.*

IV. contains but *two* simple verbs. viz., jŭvārĕ, *to assist,* and lăvārĕ, *to wash.*

(388.) To form the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, or *future perfect* of a

* To *reduplicate* a consonant is to *prefix* it to a stem with some connecting-vowel; thus, mord-, reduplicate with o, momord; st-āre, reduplicate with e, stest-, but the *second* s is dropped, stĕt-.

verb of any of the above classes, simply add the endings of those tenses respectively to the perfect-stem; thus:

Infinitive.	Perfect-stem.	Perfect tense.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
		ī.	ĕrăm.	ĕrō.
To forbid,	vĕt-ārē,	istī.	ĕrās.	ĕrīs.
To give,	d-ārē,	ĭt.	ĕrāt.	ĕrīt.
To help,	jūv-ārē,	ĭmŭs.	ĕrāmŭs.	ĕrīmŭs.
		istĭs.	ĕrātĭs.	ĕrītis.
		ērunt, *or* ēre.	ĕrant.	ĕrint.

EXERCISE.

(389.) [☞ Hereafter, in all the vocabularies, the perfect and supine stems of verbs will be given in parentheses, immediately after the *infinitive.* When no perfect or supine stem is given, it will be understood that those forms of the verb are wanting; and where *two* are given, that the verb uses both. Thus: *to help,* jūvārē (jūv-, jūt-); *to glitter,* mīcārē (mĭcŭ-); *to fold,* plĭcārē (plĭcāv-, plĭcŭ-, plĭcāt-, plĭcĭt-). In these examples mīcārē has no supine; plĭcārē has *two* perfect and *two* supine forms.]

(390.) *Vocabulary.*

To demand (*command*), impĕrāre (āv-, āt-).
To give, dăre (dĕd-, dăt-, 387, III.).
Hunger, fāmēs (ĭs), (500).
To tame, dŏmāre (dŏmŭ-, dŏmĭt-, 387, II.).
To shine, or flash forth, ēmĭcāre (ēmĭcŭ-, ē+mĭcāre, 387, II.).
To surround, circumstāre (stĭt- and stĕt-).
The sand, dry ground, ārĭdum, ī (*neut. of* ārĭdus, *dry*).
An attack, impĕtŭs, ūs (110).
To assist, adjūvārē (jūv-, jūt-, ad+juvāre).
Door, fŏrĭs, (fŏr) ĭs (300).
To creak, crĕpārē (crepŭ-, crepĭt-).
To chide, reprove, increpare (in+crepārē, crĕpŭ-, crĕpit-).
A little while, paullispĕr (adv.).
To withstand, rĕsistĕrē (restĭt-, rĕ+stāre).
To halt, constārē (constĭt-, con+stāre).
As soon as, sĭmŭlatque (adv.).
To slay, kill, interfĭcĕre (interfĕc-, interfect-).
To make, făcĕre, iŏ (fĕc-, fact-, 199).

(391.) *Examples.*

(1) Stāre = *to stand;* con-stāre, *to stand together, to halt;* circum-stāre, *to stand-around, to surround.* (The compounds of stāre, with prepositions of *one* syllable, have stĭt- for perfect-stem; those with *two,* stĕt-.)

(2) *To resist or withstand any one.* | Ălicui rĕsistĕre.

Partial Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs compounded with prepositions govern the dative.

(3) *To put any one to flight.*	Ălĭquem in fŭgam dăre (= *to give unto flight*).
(4) *To make an attack.*	Impĕtum făcĕre.

[The Latin words in the following exercises which illustrate the *lessons* are spaced.]

(392.) *Translate into English.*

Oppĭdāni, obsĭdes quos Cæsăr impĕrāv-ērăt, dĕd-ērunt.—Vēnātōres fămē (abl., 55, *a*) lŭpos dŏmu-ērunt.—Ex monte subĭtō (adv.) flammæ ēmĭcu-ērunt.—Impĕrātor oppĭdānos frumentō (55) adjūv-it.—Num crĕpu-ērunt fŏrēs?—Cæsăr vĕhĕmenter (215, 2, *b*) mīlĭtēs incrĕpu-it.—Hostes nostrīs paullisper restĭt-ērunt.—Hostes mīlĭtibus (391, 2) circumstĕt-ērunt, multosque interfēc-ērunt.—Nostrī in hostes impĕtum fēc-ērunt, atque eōs (391, 3) in fŭgam dĕd-ērunt.—Nostrī sīmŭlatque in ārĭdō constĭt-ērunt, in hostes impĕtum fēc-ērunt atque eōs in fŭgam dĕd-ērunt.

(393.) *Translate into Latin.*

The flame shone-forth.—From (ex) the-top-of the mountain (297, *a*) the flame suddenly shone-forth.—The huntsman had tamed the wolf.—The townsmen had given the hostages.—The Belgians gave all the hostages that (*rel. pron.*) Cæsar had demanded.—The general had reproved the lieutenant and (que) the soldiers.—Our (men) were-withstanding the enemy (dat.)—Our (men) bravely withstood the enemy, and (que) killed many.—The Belgians surrounded our (*men*) (dat., 391, 2), and killed many.—The Romans often put the Belgians to flight.—Our men halted upon (*in*) the dry-ground.—As-soon-as our men halted upon dry-ground, they bravely withstood the enemy (391, 2).—Our men put-to-flight the enemy whom (dat., 391, 2) they had bravely withstood.

LESSON LXIII.

Perfect-stem.—Second Conjugation.

(394.) The perfect-stem in *second conjugation* is formed in *five* ways.

I. *By adding* ŭ *to the verb-stem*; mŏn-ērĕ, mŏn-ŭ-.
II. " ēv " dēl-ērĕ, dēl-ēv-.
III. " s " măn-ērĕ, man-s-.
IV. *reduplicating the first consonant and vowel*; mord-ērĕ, mŏ-mord-.
V. *lengthening the stem-vowel*; vĭd-ērĕ, vīd-.

(395.) On this table, observe that *Class*

I. contains *most* of the verbs of the second conjugation.*

II. contains only flērĕ, *to weep*; nērĕ, *to spin*; dēlērĕ, *to destroy*, with the compounds of the obsolete words plērĕ, *to fill*; ŏlērĕ,† *to grow*; suēre,† *to be accustomed*. [For a list, see 665, II.]

III. contains *many* verbs, of which a list may be found (665, III.). The rules of euphony must be applied here.

(*a*) b before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To command,	jub-ēre,	jub-sī = jussī,	jussŭm (jub-sum).

(*b*) t-sound before s dropped.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To laugh,	rīd-ēre,	rīd-sī = rīsī,	rīsŭm (rīd-sum).

(*c*) c-sound + s = x. Any c-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To increase,	aug-ēre,	aug-sī = aux-ī,	auctŭm (aug-tum).

(*d*) c-sound after l or r dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To glitter,	fulg-ēre,	ful-si (ful(g)s-ī),	ful-sum (ful(g)sum).

IV. contains *four* simple verbs. See list (665, IV.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To bite, champ,	mord-ēre,	mŏ-mord-ī,	morsŭm (mord-sum).
To vow, promise,	spond-ēre,	spŏ-pond-ī,	sponsŭm (spond-sum).

[The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication; *e.g.*,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To answer,	rēspondēre,	rēspond-ī,	rēsponsum (respond-sum).]

V. contains *eight* simple verbs, for which see list (665, V.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To favour,	fāv-ērĕ,	fāv-ī,	fautum.
To move,	mōv-ērĕ,	mōv-ī,	mōtum.

EXERCISE.

[Refer to 386 and 389.]

(396.) *Vocabulary.*

Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgĭn) ĭs (339).
To destroy, dēlērĕ (dēlēv-, dēlēt-, 395, II.).
To fill up, complēre (complēv-, complēt-, 395, II.) [con+plēre].
Good will, vŏluntās, (voluntāt) ĭs (293).

* Many examples of this class have already occurred.
† Some of these have sco in present indicative: adolesco, consuesco

To remain, mănĕrĕ (mans-, mans-, 394, III.).
To come, vĕnīrĕ (vĕn-, vent-).
A slayer, interfector, ōris (319).
To see, vīdēre (vīd-, vīs-, 395, V.).
To open, ăpĕrīrĕ (apĕrŭ-, apert-).
Gate, portă, æ.
To flee, fŭgĕre (io), (fŭg-, fugĭt-).
Bit, bridle, frænum, ī (plur. ī and ă).
Saguntum, Săguntum, ī.
Hill, collis, is (m., 302, R.).

Scipio (surnamed) } Scīpio, nis.
Africanus, } Africānŭs, ī.
Numantia, Nūmantia, æ.
A defence, fortification, mūnītio (nis), (f., 333, R.).
Even up to, as far as, usquĕ (adv.).
Great, ingens, (ingent) is (107).
Standard, signŭm, ī.
Tooth, dens, (dent) is, (m., 295, R.).

(397.) *Example.*

On the very day of his arrival. | Eōdem quo vēnĕrat diē (= *the very day on which day he had come*).

(398.) *Translate into English.*

Hannĭbal Săguntum dēlēvit, Scīpio Carthāgĭnem.—Scīpio Africānus urbes duas pŏtentissĭmas, Carthāgĭnem ĕt Nŭmantiam dēlevit.—Cæsăr hās mūnītiones dilĭgentĕr auxit.—Gallī partem collis, usquĕ ăd mūrum oppĭdī, castrīs (55, *a*) complēvĕrant.—Adventŭs lēgātī summā spē et vŏluntātĕ urbĕm complēvit.—Diū barbărī in fĭdē mansĕrant.—Ĭtă complūres diēs (191, *a*) mansĕrant castră.—Cæsăr eōdĕm diē (118, II., *c*) in Æduōs castră mōvit.—Imperātor, eōdem quō vēnĕrat diē (397) castră mōvit.—Brūtus et Cassius, interfectōres (225, *a*) Cæsăris, bellum ingens mōvērunt.*—Lēgiōnes, sĭmŭlatquĕ nostră signă vīderunt, portās ăpĕruērunt.—Equus frænōs mŏmordĭt.—Spŏpondistīnĕ prō amīcō? Spŏpondī.

(399.) *Translate into Latin.*

Scipio destroyed Carthage, a most powerful city.—God has filled the world with all blessings (bona, *neut.*).—Socrates never laughed.—The forces of the Gauls had filled the whole (omnem) place, even-up to the wall of the town.—The Gauls had filled-up the higher (sŭpĕrior) part of the hill with (their) very-crowded (densissimus) camp.—The coming of Cæsar filled the army with the highest hope and good-will. For many years the barbarians had remained in friendship and

* In the sense of *excited, stirred up.*

fidelity (fidequ e).—Cæsar moved (his) camp into the (territory of the) Æduans on the very day of his arrival.—The enemy saw our soldiers, and fled.—The horses were champing the bits.—The wolf bit the dog with his teeth (55, *a*).

LESSON LXIV.

Perfect-stems.—Third Conjugation.

(400.) The perfect-stem in the *third conjugation* is formed in *six* ways.

I.	*By adding* s *to the verb-stem;*	scrīb-ĕrĕ, scrip-s-.
II.	" ŭ "	cŏl-ĕrĕ, cŏl-ŭ-.
III.	" v, *or* īv "	pĕt-ĕrĕ, pet-īv-.
IV.	*reduplication;*	curr-ĕrĕ, cŭcurr-.
V.	*lengthening the stem-vowel;*	fŭg-ĕrĕ, fūg-.
VI.	*taking the simple verb-stem;*	volv-ĕrĕ, volv-.

We shall take up these separately, treating in this lesson only the first.

(401.) Class I.—*Perfect-stem formed by adding* s *to the Verb-stem.*

Most verbs of the third conjugation come under this class. It has already been illustrated, but we here give a fuller account of the rules of euphony, in connexion with the various stem-endings.

1. b before s or t passes into p.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To write,	scrīb-ĕrĕ,	scrips-ī (scrib-s-ī),	scriptum (scrīb-tum).
To marry,	nūb-ĕrĕ,	nups-ī (nub-s-ī),	nuptum (nub-tum).

2. A c-sound +s = x (c, g, h, v, gu, qu are classed with c-sounds. If a stem ends in ct, the t is dropped, and the c unites with s to form x). Any c-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To lead,	dūc-ĕrĕ,	dux-ī (duc-s-ī),	duc-tum.
To cover,	tĕg-ĕrĕ,	tex-ī (teg-s-ī),	tec-tum (teg-tum).
To draw,	trăh-ĕrĕ,	trax-ī (trah-s-ī),	trac-tum (trah-tum).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To live,	vīv-ĕrĕ,	vix-ī (viv-s-ī),	vic-tum (viv-tum).
To quench,	extingu-ĕrĕ,	extinx-ī (extingu-s-ī),	extinc-tum (extingu-tum).
To boil,	cŏqu-ĕrĕ,	cox-ī (coqu-s-ī),	coc-tum (coqu-tum).

We class here also,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To flow,	flu-ĕrĕ (fluv-),	flux-ī (fluv-s-ī),	flux-um (fluv-sum).
To build,	stru-ĕrĕ (struc-),	strux-ī (struc-s-ī),	struc-tum.

3. d or t before s either (*a*) is dropped, or (*b*) passes into s.

		Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
(*a*)	*To divide,*	divīd-ĕrĕ,	dīvīs-ī (divid-s-ī),	dīvī-sum (divid-sum).
(*b*)	*To yield, go,*	cēd-ĕrĕ,	cess-ī (ced-s-ī),	ces-sum (ced-sum).
	To send,	mitt-ĕrĕ,	mīs-ī (mit-s-ī),	mis-sum (mit-sum).

4. (*a.*) m or r before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To press,	prĕm-ĕrĕ,	press-ī (prem-s-ī),	pres-sum (prem-sum).
To bear,	gĕr-ĕrĕ,	gess-ī (ger-s-ī),	ges-tum (ger-tum).

(*b.*) But if m be retained, it assumes p before it.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To take,	sŭm-ĕrĕ,	sum-ps-ī (sum-s-ī),	sump-tum (sum-tum).

5. If the stem ends in rg, the g is dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To scatter, sow,	sparg-ĕrĕ,	spars-ī (sparg-s-ī),	spar-sum.

EXERCISE.

(402.) *Vocabulary.*

To bind, surround, cingĕre (cinx-, cinct-, 401, 2).
To draw up, instrŭere (instrux-, instruct-, 401, 2).
To shut, claudĕre (claus-, claus-, 401, 3, *a*).
To retreat, rĕcēdĕre (re+cēdĕre, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, *b*).
To approach, accēdĕre (ad+cēdere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, *b*).
To grant, concēdĕre (con+cēdĕre, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, *b*).
To bear, carry on, gĕrĕre (401, 4, *a*).
To spend, consūmere (con+sūmĕre, sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, *b*).

Rampart, vallŭm, ī.
Triple, triplex, (triplĭc) ĭs (107).
Janus, Jānus, ī.
Numa, Numă, æ.
Veteran, vĕtĕrānus, ă, ŭm.
In three divisions, trīpartītō (adv.).
Suddenly, rēpentĕ (adv.).
By-night, noctū (adv.).
There, ĭbĭ (adv.).
Dragon, drăco, (drăcōn) ĭs (333).
Arms, armă, ōrum (*used only in* plural).
Neighbouring, fīnītĭmus, ă, ŭm.
State, cīvĭtas, (cīvĭtāt) ĭs (293).

(403.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *In all directions.* — In omnes partes.
(*b*) *Upon an expedition.* — In expĕdītiōnem.

(404.) *Translate into English.*

In tuā ĕpistŏlā nĭhil mĭhi scripsistī de tuīs rēbus.—Barbări vallō et fossā (55, *a*) hībernă cinxērunt.—Cæsăr trĭplĭcem ăciem instruxit lēgiōnum vĕtĕrānārum.—Rōmāni templum Jānī bis post Numæ regnum clausērunt.—Impĕrātor exercĭtum in duas partes dīvīsit.—Cæsăr trĭpartītō mīlĭtes ĕquĭtesque in expĕdĭtiōnem mīsit.—Princĭpes rĕpentĕ ex oppidō cum cōpiis rĕcessērunt.—Mīlĭtes noctū usquĕ ad castră accessērunt.—Cæsăr obsĭdibus (54) lĭbertātem concessit.—Germāni cum Helvĕtiis bellum gesserunt.—Māgnum et grăvĕ ōnŭs armōrum mīlĭtēs pressit.—Explorātor ad castră hostium accessit, atque ĭbĭ māgnam partem diēi consumpsit.—Cadmus dentēs drăcōnis sparsit.

(405.) *Translate into Latin.*

The ambassador wrote nothing concerning his own affairs.—The scout approached even-up to the walls of the town.—The lieutenant sent-away messengers in all directions.—Cæsar sent-away the horsemen in three divisions into the neighbouring states.—Cadmus slew (interfēcit) the dragon and sowed his (ejus) teeth.—Cæsar drew up the veteran legions in (abl.) a triple line.—The soldiers spent a great part of the day in the camp.—The enemy approached the town by-night.—The townsmen shut the gates.—The Helvetians retreated by night with all (their) forces.—Cæsar sent-away the scouts in three divisions upon an expedition.—The general sent-away the messengers by night in all directions.—The soldiers approached even-up-to the rampart, and there spent a great part of the day.

LESSON LXV.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(406.) Class II.—*Perfect-stem adds* ŭ *to the Verb-stem.*

(*a*) *Without* change of the verb-stem (see list, 666, II., *a*); *e. g.*,

To nourish, maintain,	al-ĕrĕ,	ăl-ŭ-ī,	al-tum.
To honour, cultivate,	cŏl-ĕrĕ,	cŏl-ŭ-ī,	cul-tum.

(*b*) *With* change of verb-stem (666, II., *b*).

To place,	pōn-ĕrĕ,	pŏs-ū-ī,*	pŏs-ĭ tum.
To beget,	gign-ĕrĕ,	gĕn-ŭ-ī,	gĕn-ĭ-tum.

Class III.—*Perfect-stem adds* v *or* iv *to the Verb-stem.*

(*a*) Adds v (and lengthens stem-vowel, if short). (List, 666, III., *a*.)

[These generally drop n, r, or sc,† or change the order of the letters. They must be carefully observed, as they occur in the vocabularies.]

To despise,	spern-ĕrĕ,	sprĕv-ī,	sprĕ-tum (spern-tum).
To be accustomed,	suesc-ĕrĕ,	suēv-ī,	suē-tum.

(*b*) Adds iv (list, 666, III., *b*).

To seek, strive after,	pĕt-ĕrĕ,	pĕt-īv-ī,	pĕt-ī-tum.

EXERCISE.

(407.) *Vocabulary.*

Spaniard, Hispānŭs, ī.
Command, jussŭs, ūs.
Against, contrā (prep., acc.).
People, pŏpŭlŭs, ī.
Immediately, stātim.
Avienus, Āviēnŭs, ī.
To instigate, stir up, instĭgāre (āv-, āt-).
To place in, to put into, impōnĕrĕ (in+pōnĕrĕ, 406, *b*).
To remove, rĕmōvĕrĕ (rĕmōv-, rĕmōt-, re+mŏvĕre).
To arrange, distribute, dispōnĕrĕ (dis+pōnĕrĕ, 406, *b*).
To relate, commĕmŏrārĕ (āv-, āt-, con+mĕmŏrārĕ).
Property, fămĭlĭa, æ.
To cross over, transīrĕ (trans+īrĕ, īv-, ĭt-).
To decree, determine, dĕcernĕrĕ (dĕcrēv-, decrēt-, de+cernĕrĕ).
To discourse, dissĕrĕrĕ (disseru-, dissert-, dis+sĕrĕrĕ).
To plunder, dirĭpĕrĕ (ripu-, rept-di+răpĕre).‡
A beast of burden, jūmentum, ī.
Sacred rites, sacrā, orum (n., pl.).
Instead of, prō (prep., abl.).
Advice, counsel, consĭlĭum, ī.
On account of, ŏb (prep., acc.).
To despise, spernĕre (406, III., *a*).
Winter, hiems, (hiĕm) is (293).

(408.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *By the command of Cæsar.* | Jussū (abl., 55, *a*) Cæsăris.

* Pōnŏ = pŏsĭno; pŏsuī = pos-īv-ī.

† In these verbs the n or sc does not properly belong to the root, but is employed simply to *strengthen* the present indicative and infinitive; *to know,* nō-ere, strengthened nosc-ere, &c.

‡ Observe that the compounds of răpĕrĕ, făcĕrĕ, căpĕrĕ, with *prepositions,* change a into i in the infinitive; dirĭpĕrĕ, confĭcĕrĕ, accĭpĕrĕ.

(*b*) *To place on shipboard.*	In nāvēs impōnĕrĕ (*put into ships*).
(*c*) *With* (*near*) *the army.*	Ăd exercĭtum.
On the borders of the Æduans.	Ad fīnes Æduōrum.

Ăd is often used by Cæsar in the sense of *near* or *with* (i. e., *along* with).

(409.) *Translate into English.*

Hispānī, jussū Cæsărĭs, eos exercĭtūs quōs (165) contrā pŏpŭlum Rōmānum multos jam annos (191, *a*) ăluĕrant, stătim dīmīsērunt.—Aviēnĕ (voc.), quŏd (*because*) in Itălĭă mīlites pŏpŭli Rōmāni contrā rempūblĭcam instīgâstī (349, N.); et, prō mīlĭtibus, tuam fămĭlĭam in nāves impŏsuistī; ŏb eas res, ăb exercĭtū meō te rĕmŏveo.—Cæsăr lēgiones quas in Itălĭă, hībernōrum causā (135, II., *b*), disposŭĕrat, ad se rĕvŏcāvit.—Cūr consĭlium meum sprēvisti?—Cæsăr, his de causīs quas commĕmŏrāvī, Rhēnum transīre dēcrēvĕrat.—Multī sălūtem sĭbĭ (dat.) in fugā pĕtīvērunt (*or* petiērunt, 349, N.).—Cæsăr tōtam hiĕmem (191, *a*) ipse ad exercitum (408, *c*) mănēre decrēvit.—Cæsăr duās lēgiones ad fīnes Æduōrum pŏsuit.

(410.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Spaniards had maintained an army (for) many years (191, *a*).—Orgetorix maintained, at-his-own-expense (sumptū suō), a large number of soldiers.—Cæsar placed the camp on-the-borders-of (408, *c*) the Sequanians.—Socrates discoursed concerning (de) the immortality of the soul.—The pirates plundered many towns.—Cæsar distributed three legions in Italy, for-the-sake-of winter-quarters.—Thou-hast-despised my counsels; thou-hast-instigated the soldiers against the republic; thou hast put beasts-of-burden instead of soldiers into the ships: on-account-of these things, I remove thee from my army.—The Romans honoured most-religiously (maximā religione) the sacred-rites of Jupiter.—Cæsar, for (de) these reasons, had determined to cross the Rhine.—Many soldiers sought safety for themselves (by) flight.—The inhabitants sought peace from (a) the Romans.

LESSON LXVI.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(411.) Class IV.—*Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

[Some of these present *vowel-changes*, which must be carefully observed. (*a*) When the first vowel is i or u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel, (*b*) in other verbs, with ĕ. (*c*) The compounds of dărĕ, *to give*, with ĭ.]

(*a*) First vowel i, o, or u.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To learn,	disc-ĕrĕ,	dĭ-dĭc-ī (*s dropped*),	(no supine).
To demand,	posc-ere,	pŏ-posc-ī,	(no supine).
To beat,	tund-ĕrĕ,	tŭ-tŭd-ī,	tū-sum (tud-sum).

(*b*) Other verbs reduplicate with e (note vowel-changes in stems).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To fall,	căd-ĕre,	cĕ-cĭd-ī (ĭ *short*),	cā-sum (cad-sum).
To drive, repel,	pell-ĕrĕ,	pĕ-pŭl-ī,	pul-sum.
To fell, kill,	cæd-ĕrĕ,	cĕ-cīd-ī (ī *long*),	cæs-um.

(*c*) Compounds of dărĕ.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To add,	ad-dĕrĕ,	ăd-dĭd-ī,	ad-dĭ-tum.
To lose,	per-dĕrĕ,	per-dĭd-ī,	per-dĭ-tum.

EXERCISE.

(412.) *Vocabulary.*

The whole, ŭnĭversus, ă, ŭm.
Duty, service, mūnus, (mūnĕr) ĕris (345).
Walls, mœnĭă, ĭum (pl., neut.).
Coming together, conflict, congressŭs, ūs.
Seventy, septŭagintā (indecl.).
To touch, tangĕrĕ (tĕtĭg-, tact-, 411, *b*).
To spare, parcĕrĕ (pĕperc-, parcĭt-, pars-; governs *dative*).
To surround, cingĕre (401, 2).
Nobody, nēmo, (nemĭn) ĭnis (m. and f., 25, *a*).
Woman, mŭlier, ĕris (f., 23, *a*).
Child, infant, infans, (infant) ĭs (c., 23, *a*).
Thirty, trīgintā.
Eighty, octōgintā.
Immense, immensus, ă, ŭm.
Sum-of-money, pĕcūnia, æ.
To add, addĕre (411, *c*).

(413.) *Examples.*

(1) *To demand peace of* Cæsar.

(*a*) Cæsărĕm pācĕm poscĕrĕ; *or* (*b*) pācĕm ā Cæsărĕ poscĕrĕ.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *demanding* (*a*) govern two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; but (*b*) the *person* may be put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ăb.

(2) *About twenty.*	Circĭter vīgintī.
(3) *To give one's self* wholly up.	Tōtum sē dărĕ (=*to give one's self* whole *up*).
(4) *The leader spared women.*	Dux mŭlierĭbus pĕpercĭt.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *sparing* govern the dative.

☞ Observe, the perfect of cădĕrĕ, *to fall*, is cĕcĭdī; of cædĕrĕ, *to fell or kill*, cĕcidī.

(414.) *Translate into English.*

Lēgāti ad Cæsarem vēnērunt, eumque păcem (413, 1, *a*) pŏposcērunt.—Hōc ā mē (413, 1, *b*) mūnus ūnĭversă prōvinciă pŏposcit.—Puĕrī linguam Latīnam dĭdĭcĕrant.—Ā Græcīs Galli urbes mænĭbus cingĕrĕ dĭdĭcērunt.—Nostrī, in primō congressū, circĭter septuaginta cĕcĭdērunt; in hīs Quintus Fulgĭnius.—Arbŏr vĕtus cĕcĭdit, quam (165) ferrō (55, *a*) nēmo cecīdit.—Lēgātus, sīmŭlac prōvinciam tĕtĭgit, iuertiæ (dat.) tōtum se dĕdit.—Postquam Cæsăr vēnit, obsĭdes, ărmă, servos pŏposcit.—Mīlites nōn mulierĭbus, nōn infantĭbus, pĕpercerunt.—Cæsăr lēgiōnibus cohortēs circĭter trīginta addĭdit.—Mors nullī (194, R. 1) hŏmĭnum (*partit. gen.*) pĕpercit (413, 4).

(415.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans demanded peace of Cæsar (413, 1, *b*).—The whole province demanded peace of the Romans (413, 1, *a*).—Of-our-men (nostrī, nom., pl.) about eighty fell; among them, Labienus.—Have *you* (135, II., *a*) learned the Latin language?—The farmer felled very-many (plurĭmas) trees in the wood.—As soon as the lieutenant touched the province, he plundered many towns.—The general demanded seventy hostages, and an immense sum of money.—The old trees fell.—This service the general demanded of me.—The leader spared all the temples of the gods; but the soldiers spared not (non) women nor (non) children.—Cæsar added to the foot-soldiers about twenty cohorts.—Cæsar added to the foot-soldiers thirty horse-soldiers.

LESSON LXVII.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(416.) Class V.—*Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.*

(*a*) *Without* vowel-change.

To read, gather,	lĕg-ĕrĕ,	lēg-ī,	lec-tum.
To conquer,	vinc-ĕrĕ,	vīc-ī,	vic-tum.

(*b*) *With* vowel-change.

To drive,	ag-ĕrĕ,	ēg-ī,	ac-tum.
To break,	frang-ĕrĕ,	frēg-ī,	frac-tum.

(*c*) io verbs (199).

To fly,	fŭg-iō,	fūg-ĕrĕ,	fūg-ī,	fŭg-ĭ-tum.
To take,	căp-iō,	căp-ĕrĕ,	cēp-ī,	cap-tum.
To cast,	jăc-iō,	jăc-ĕrĕ,	jēc-ī,	jac-tum.
To dig,	fŏd-iō,	fŏd-ĕrĕ,	fōd-ī,	fos-sum.
To make, do,	făc-iō,	făc-ĕrĕ,	fēc-ī,	fac-tum.

EXERCISE.

(417.) *Vocabulary.*

Remains, remnant, rĕlĭquiæ, ārum (pl.) (57, R.).
To collect, collĭgĕrĕ (lēg-, lect-, con+lĕgĕrĕ).
To receive, take back, rĕcĭpĕrĕ (cēp-, cept-, rĕ+căpĕrĕ).
Headlong, præceps, (præcĭpĭt) is (adj., 107).
To receive, accĭpĕre (cēp-, cept-, ad+căpĕre).
To bring-together, to compel, cōgĕrĕ (coēg-, coact-, con+ăgĕrĕ).
To break through, perfringĕrĕ (frēg-, fract-, per+frangĕrĕ).
Dart, javelin, tēlum, ī.
To hurl, conjĭcĕrĕ (jēc-, ject-, con+jăcĕrĕ).
To undertake, suscĭpĕrĕ (cēp-, cept-, sub+căpĕrĕ).
To finish, confĭcĕrĕ (fēc-, fect-, con+facĕrĕ).
To begin, incĭpĕrĕ (incēp-, incept-, in+căpĕrĕ).
Safe, tūtus, ă, ŭm.
Cappadocia, Cappădŏcia, æ.
A district, pāgus, ī.
Ægypt, Ægyptus, i (f.).
Easily, făcĭlĕ (adv.).
Trial, jūdĭcium, ī.
Family of slaves, fămĭlia, æ.

(418.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *To betake one's self back.* Sē rĕcĭpĕrĕ.
He went back to his house. Sē dŏmŭm rĕcēpĭt.
(*b*) *Within the memory of our fathers.* Patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏriā (abl., 55, *a*).

(*c*) *Lucius Cassius, the consul.*	L. Cassius, consul.

The (*prænomen*) first name is rarely written out. L. stands for Lucius, T. for Titus, &c. *Consul* is in apposition (225, *a*) with *L. Cassius.*

(*d*) *In mid-summer.*	Mĕdiā æstātĕ (118, II., *c*).

(419.) *Translate into English.*

Servus meus ōrātiōnes et historias et carmĭna lēgit.—Lēgātus rĕliquias exercĭtūs collēgit, ĭtĭnĕribusque tūtis per Cappădŏciam sē in Asiam rĕcēpit.—Nostrī acrĭtĕr impĕtum fēcērunt atque præcĭpites hostes ēgērunt.—Labiēnus, cum hīs cōpiīs quas ā Cæsăre accēpĕrat, ăd fīnes Æduōrum contendit.—Pompeius magnăm ex Asiā et Ægyptō classem coēgerat.—Mīlites facilĕ (adv.) hostium ăciem perfrēgērunt atquĕ in eōs impĕtum fēcērunt.—Hīc pāgus ūnus, patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏriā, L. Cassium consŭlem (418, *c*) interfēcĕrat, et ējus exercĭtum sub jŭgum (323, N.) mīsĕrat.—Hostes subĭtō tēla in nostros conjēcērunt.—Pompeius bellum vērĕ (*in the spring*, 118, II., *c*) suscēpit, mĕdiā æstātĕ confēcit.

(420.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general had collected (cōgĕre) great forces.—Pompey brought-together a great army from Asia and Egypt.—Have you read the books of Cicero?—The general collected the remnant of his army, and betook himself into Gaul.—Our (men) drove the enemy headlong, and slew many.—Labienus had received four legions from Cæsar.—Labienus, with the legions which he had received from Cæsar, hastened to the confines of the Æduans.—Orgetorix brought-together to the trial all his family-of-slaves from every side.—The enemy brought-together all (their) ships into one place.—The Romans easily broke through the line-of-battle of the Æduans.—Cæsar finished the great war in-mid-summer (418, *d*) which he had begun in-the-spring (118, II., *c*).

O.

LESSON LXVIII.

Perfect-stem. — Third Conjugation, concluded.

(421.) CLASS VI.—*Perfect-stem = simple Verb-stem.*

(*a*) Stems ending in u or v (list, 666, VI., *a*).

To sharpen,	ăcū-ĕrĕ,	ăcū-ī,	acū-tum.
To roll,	volv-ĕrĕ,	volv-ī,	volū-tum.

(*b*) *Consonant*-stems (list, 666, VI., *b*).

To turn,	vert-ĕrĕ,	vert-ī,	ver-sum.

(*c*) Compounds of c a n d o and f e n d o (*obs.*) belong here; *e. g.*,

To burn,	incend-ĕrĕ,	incend-ī,	incen-sum.
To defend, ward off,	dēfend-ĕrĕ,	dēfend-ī,	dēfen-sum.

EXERCISE.

(422.) *Vocabulary.*

The back, tergum, ī.
To flow together, confluĕre (conflux-, conflux-, con+fluĕrĕ, 401, 2).
Discipline, disciplīnă, æ.
Austerity, severity, sĕvērĭtas, (severitāt) ĭs (293).
To dissolve, dissolvĕrĕ (solv-, sŏlūt-, dis+solvĕrĕ).
To return, rĕvertĕrĕ (rĕvert-, revers-, rĕ+vertĕrĕ).
To appoint, to station, to determine, constĭtuĕrĕ (stĭtū-, stitūt-, con+stătuĕrĕ).
To divide, to distribute, distrĭbuĕrĕ (bū-, būt-, dis+trĭbuĕrĕ).
Desirous, covetous, cupīdus, ă, ŭm (governs *genitive*).
To know, learn, cognoscĕrĕ (cognōv-, cognĭt-, con+noscĕrĕ).
To turn, vertĕrĕ (421, *b*).

(423.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *The general appointed a day for the council.*	Impĕrātor diem c o n c ĭ l ĭ ō (dat.) c o n s t ĭ t u i t.
(*b*) *What (number of) long ships he had.*	Quidquid n ā v i u m (180) l o n g ā r u m hăbēbat.
(*c*) *To divide or distribute among.*	D i s t r ĭ b u ĕ r e (with acc. of *thing*, and dat. of *person*).

(424.) *Translate into English.*

Hostes tergă v e r t ĕ r u n t.—Dīvĭtiæ (57, R.) quæ ad Rōmam c o n f l u x ē r u n t, mōrum dĭscĭplīnam sĕvērĭtātemque d i s s o l v ē r u n t.—Cæsar diem cum lēgātis c o n s t ĭ t u i t.—Dies, quam Cæsar c o n s t ĭ t u e r a t cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum

(150) rĕvertērunt.—Mīlĭtes sēse (145, *c*) fortĭtĕr (215, 2) dēfendērunt.—Hostes cōpĭas suas in tres partes distrĭbuerant.—Cæsar, quidquid nāvĭum longārum hăbēbat, lēgātis præfectīsque (423, *c*) distrĭbuit.—Prŏcellæ fluctūs vastos ad littŏrā volvĕrant.—Cæsar exercĭtum flūmen (113, II., *a*) transdūcĕre constĭtuit.—Cæsar Dumnŏrīgem Æduum sēcum (125, II., *b*) dūcĕre constĭtuit, quod (conj.) eum cupĭdum impĕrii (synt., 698, *b*, 1) cognōvĕrat.—Æduī ex ītinĕre dŏmum (113, III., R.) revertĕrunt.

(425.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers defended the city very bravely (376).—The general stationed the foot-soldiers near (ad, 408, *c*) the wall of the town.—On-the-next-day (118, II., *c*) Cæsar stationed all the horse-soldiers in-front-of (prō) the camp.—The chiefs of the states returned to Cæsar.—The day which Cæsar had appointed for the council came, and the chiefs of the states returned to him.—Our (men) turned their backs.—The riches of the Romans had dissolved (their) discipline and austerity of manners.—What money (423, *b*) he had he distributed among (423, *c*) the lieutenants and soldiers.—The Æduans divided their forces into two parts.—The tempests rolled vast waves to the stars.—The general determined to take (ducere) the lieutenant with him.—The seas were rolling great waves to the shores.

LESSON LXIX.

Perfect-stem.—Fourth Conjugation.

(426.) The perfect-stem in the *fourth conjugation* is formed in *five* ways.

I.	*By adding* īv *to verb-stem;*	aud-īrĕ,	aud-īv-.
II.	" ŭ "	ăpĕr-īrĕ,	ăpĕr-ŭ-.
III.	" s "	sēp-īrĕ,	sep-s-.
IV.	*lengthening stem-vowel;*	vĕn-īrĕ,	vēn-.
V.	*taking simple verb-stem;*	compĕr-īrĕ,	compĕr-.

(427.) On this table, observe that *Class*

I. contains *most* of the verbs of the fourth conjugation.

[Numerous examples have already occurred. Any peculiar supines are given in the vocabularies.]

II. contains *four* simple verbs (see list, 667, II.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine
To open, uncover,	ăpĕr-īrĕ,	ăpĕr-ŭ-ī,	ăper-tum.
To leap,	săl-īrĕ,	săl-ŭ-ī,	sal-tum.

III. contains *nine* simple verbs (see list, 667, III.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To bind,	vinc-īrĕ,	vinx-ī (vinc-s-ī),	vinc-tum.
To think,	sent-īrĕ,	sens-ī (sent-s-ī),	sen-sum (sent-sum).

IV. contains but *one* verb.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To come,	vĕn-īre,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum.

V. contains *two* verbs.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To ascertain, find,	compĕr-īrĕ,	compĕr-ī,	comper-tum.
To discover,	rĕpĕr-īre,	rĕpĕr-ī,	rĕper-tum.

EXERCISE.

(428.) *Vocabulary.*

To leap down, dēsĭlīre (dēsĭlŭ- and dēsĭli-, dēsult-, dē+sălīre).

To come near, to approach, appropinquāre (ăd+propinquāre, ap-, at-), with *dat.*

To agree, consentīre (con+sentīre, 427, III.).

To disagree, dissentīre (dĭs+sentīre, 427, III.).

To come to, reach, arrive at, pervĕnire (pĕr+vĕnīre, 427, IV.).

To come together, assemble, convenīre (cŏn+veнīre, 427, IV.).

To find, invēnīre (ĭn+vēnīre, 427, IV.).

Thither, to that place, eō (*adv.*).

To open, ăperīre (427, II.).

When, quum.

Youth, jŭventūs, (jŭventūt) is (f.).

To lay waste, pŏpŭlārī, *dep.* (pŏpŭlāt-).

After that, postquam (*adv.*).

Example.

(*a*) *In a battle of cavalry.* | Equestrī prælĭō.

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used to express the *manner* of an action, especially with an adjective.

(429.) *Translate into English.*

Milites ex nāvibus dēsĭlĭērunt et hostibus (391. 2) appropinquārunt (349, N.).—Oppĭdāni portas ăpĕruērunt, et se atque oppĭdum Cæsări dedĕrunt.—Hostes inter se dissensērunt.—Omnes cīves ūnā mentĕ (abl., 428, *a*) consensā-

runt.—Helvētii jam per angustias cōpias suas transduxĕrant, et in Æduorum fīnes pervēnĕrant, eōrumque agros pōpŭlabantur.—Cæsar cum Lăbiēno Numantiam (713) pervēnit, ibique consŭles invēnit.—Quum milites eō convēnĕrunt, nāves unum in locum coegērunt.—Eō postquam Cæsăr pervēnit, obsides et arma pōposcit.

(430.) *Translate into Latin.*

After-that the townsmen saw the standards, they opened the gates, and gave themselves (up) to Cæsar.—The Germans, in the cavalry battle (428, *a*), leaped-down from (their) horses.—The general led the army through the straits, and on the seventh day arrived at the boundaries of the Germans.—The townsmen leaped-down from the wall.—All the soldiers agreed (with) one mind and voice (v o x).—When Cæsar arrived-at the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—When the general reached Numantia, he called together the citizens.—When the horsemen reached the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—The lieutenant led-back the soldiers to the town, and there found the general.

§ 8.

FORMS OF TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION, PASSIVE.

LESSON LXX.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action.—Indicative Passive.

(431.) The tenses for completed action, passive (*perfect, pluperfect, future perfect*), are compounded of the perfect participle passive and of the tenses of the verb esse, *to be:* thus, āmātŭs sum, *I have been loved;* āmātŭs es, *thou hast been loved,* &c.

(432.) (*a*) The perfect participle of any verb is the form of which the *supine* is the accusative, and is inflected (like an adjective of three terminations) with the endings ŭs, ă, ŭm; thus:

Supines.	Perf. Part.	
Ămāt-ŭm,	ămāt-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	*loved.*
Mŏnĭt-ŭm,	mŏnĭt-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	*advised.*
Rect-ŭm.	rect-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	*ruled.*
Audīt-ŭm,	audīt-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	*heard.*

(*b*) The perfect participle, then, of any verb, is formed by adding the inflection-endings ŭs, ă, ŭm to the supine-stem.

(433.) PARADIGM.

PERFECT PASSIVE.		
	Singular.	
ămātŭs, ă, ŭm,	sŭm, *I have been loved.*	
	ĕs, *thou hast been loved.*	
	est, *he, she, it, has been loved.*	
	Plural.	
ămātī, æ, ă,	sŭmŭs, *we have been loved.*	
	estĭs, *ye or you have been loved.*	
	sunt, *they have been loved.*	
PLUPERFECT.		
	Singular.	
ămātŭs, ă, ŭm,	ĕrăm, *I had been loved.*	
	ĕrās, *thou hadst been loved.*	
	ĕrāt, *he, she, it, had been loved.*	
	Plural.	
ămatī, æ, ă,	ĕrāmŭs, *we had been loved.*	
	ĕrātĭs, *ye or you had been loved.*	
	ĕrant, *they had been loved.*	
FUTURE PERFECT.		
	Singular.	
ămātŭs, ă, ŭm,	ĕro, *I shall have been loved.*	
	ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been loved.*	
	ĕrĭt, *he, she, it, will have been loved.*	
	Plural.	
ămātī, æ, ă,	ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been loved.*	
	ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been loved.*	
	erunt, *they will have been loved.*	

(434.) *Vocabulary.*

To rout, to defeat, pellĕre (pĕpŭl-, puls-, 411, *b*).
To divulge, ēnuntiāre (ē+nuntiāre, āv-, āt-).
Sure, certain, certus, a, um.
To drive back, rĕpellĕre (rĕpŭl-, repuls-, rĕ+pellĕre).
Private information, indĭcium, ĭ.
Beginning, initium, ĭ.
Castle, castĭcus, ĭ.
Conference, collŏquium, ĭ.
To hold, obtĭnĕrĕ (obtĭnu-, obtent-, ob+tĕnĕre).
Departure, discessŭs, ūs.
Nobility, nōbĭlĭtās, (nōbĭlĭtāt) ĭs (f., 293).

(435.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *To inform any one.* — Ălĭquĕm certiōrĕm făcĕre (= *to make any one more certain*).

(*b*) *Cæsar was informed.* — Cæsăr certiŏr factus est (= *Cæsar was made more certain*).

(*c*) *All Gaul is divided into three parts.* — Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs.

The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with est as an adjective, and is then to be rendered as a *present tense*; *e. g.*, in (*c*), est dīvīsa = *is divided.*

(436.) *Translate into English.*

Mīles vulnĕrātus est.—Bella gesta ĕrant.—Exercĭtus Cassii ăb Helvētiis pulsus ĕrat, et sub jŭgum missus ĕrat.—Ea res Helvētiis (54) per indĭcium ēnuntiāta est.—Helvētii de Cæsăris adventu certiores facti sunt.—Ubi de Cæsăris adventu Helvētii certiores facti sunt, lēgātos ad eum mīsērunt.—Barbări tēlis (93, II., *b*, R.) et mūnitione rĕpulsi sunt.—Īnĭtium fŭgæ a Dumnŏrige et ējus ĕquitibus factum est.—Lēgāti a Dīvĭtiăco, Æduo (225, *a*) ad Cæsarem missi erant.—Păter Castĭci regnum in Sēquānis multos annos (191, *Rule*) obtĭnuĕrat et a sĕnātu pŏpuli Rōmāni āmīcus (80, *a*) appellātus ĕrat.—Dies colloquĭo (54) constĭtūtus est, ex eō diē quintus.

(437.) *Translate into Latin.*

The centurions of the first ranks were wounded on the same day (118, II., *c*).—Cæsar was informed (435, *a*) of (de) the approach of the enemy.—The general had been informed of the departure (discessus) of the Germans.—The beginning of the flight had been made by the soldiers of the tenth legion.—The tenth legion had been defeated by the Germans, and had been sent under the yoke.—The conspiracy of the nobility was divulged to the Helvetians through private-information.—The war had been carried-on (for) many years (191, *Rule*).—The enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—Ambassadors were sent by Cassius the consul (225, *a*) to the chiefs.—The Æduans were called friends (80, *a*) by the senate of the Roman people.—The townsmen were wounded by the darts of the soldiers.—The horsemen of the enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—A day had been appointed for the conference.

§ 9.

PARTICIPLES. (LXXI.—LXXV.)

(438.) The *Participle* presents the idea of the verb under the form of an adjective : (*a*) the *rising* sun ; (*b*) I saw the boy *writing* a letter. Sometimes, as in (*a*), its use is wholly adjective ; again, as in (*b*), it governs the case of its verb. There are two *active* participles in Latin, the participle of the *present* and the participle of the *future ;* two *passive*, the *perfect* and the *verbal* in dus.

LESSON LXXI.

Present Participle Active.

(439.) (*a*) The endings of the present participle active for the four conjugations are,

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ans,	-ens,	ens,	-iens.

(*b*) By adding these endings to the stems respectively of the verbs ăm-āre, mŏn-ēre, rĕg-ĕrĕ, aud-īrĕ, we obtain the present participle active :

Loving,	*advising*,	*ruling*,	*hearing*.
Ăm-ans,	mŏn-ens,	rĕg-ens,	aud-ĭens.

(440.) The present participle is declined like an adjective of the third class (108).

Singular.		Plural.	
N. V.	Ămans.	N. V.	Ămantēs, ămantiă.
Gen.	Ămantĭs.	Gen.	Ămantĭum.
Dat.	Ămantī, &c.	Dat.	Ămantĭbŭs, &c.

Rem. The abl. sing. ending is ī when the part. is used strictly as an adj. ; *e. g.*, in florentī rosā, *in a blooming rose.*

(*a*) Observe carefully that the Latin present participle active expresses *incomplete* or *continued* action; the language has no *active* participle to express *complete* action. We cannot translate the English *having loved* by any Latin active participle.

(*b*) But *deponent* verbs (206) have both participles, the *present* and the *perfect*; *exhorting*, hort-ans; *having exhorted*, hort-ātŭs.

EXERCISE.

(441.) *Vocabulary.*

To rise, ŏrīrī (*dep.*, ort-).
To desire, cŭpĕrĕ (ĭŏ-, ĭv-, ĭt-, 406, III., *b*).
Labour, toil, lăbŏr, (lăbōr) ĭs (m., 319).
Watching, watchfulness, vĭgĭlantĭă, æ.
Especially, præsertĭm (adv.).
To depart, discēdĕrĕ (dis+cēdere, 401, 3, *b*).
To weep, flĕrĕ (flĕv-, flĕt-, 395, II.).
To look upon or *at*, intuērī (dep.).
All, the whole, cunctus, ă, ŭm.
To worship, adore, ădōrāre.
Eye, ŏcŭlus, ī.
A Persian, Persă, æ.
To doubt, dūbĭtārĕ (dv-, ăt-).
To set out, prŏfĭcīscī (dep., prŏfect-).
To sit, sĕdērĕ (sĕd-, ĕss-, 394, V.).
Firmament, heaven, cœlum.
To shine, mĭcāre (389, 1).
The sun, sōl, (sōl) ĭs (m., 319).
Full, plēnŭs, ă, ŭm (with *gen.*).
To be wanting, de-essĕ (with *dat.*).
Star, stellă, æ.
To set (*e. g.*, as the heavenly bodies), occĭdĕrĕ (occĭd-, occās-, ob+cădĕrĕ).
To throw before, prōjĭcĕrĕ (jĕc-, ject-, pro+jăcĕre).

(442.) (*a*) Recollect that, to form pres. part. act., you add to the stem ans in 1st conj.; *e. g.*, am-ans: ens in 2d and 3d conjs.; *e. g.*, mŏn-ens, dĭc-ens: ĭens in 4th conj.; *e. g.*, aud-ĭens. Also, add ĭens in the ĭŏ verbs (199) of 3d conj.; *e. g.*, cūp-ĭo, cūp-ĭens; făc-ĭo, fac-ĭens.

(*b*) In *deponent verbs*, the same rules apply: hort-ārī, hort-ans: ŏr-īrī, ŏr-ĭens; intu-ērī, intu-ens, &c. The perf. act. part. in deponents adds ŭs, ă, ŭm to the supine-stem: hort-ārī, hortāt-ŭs, &c.

(*c*) The participle is used to *abridge* discourse.

(1) He heard me *when I said* that= *He heard me* saying *that.* Mē ĭd dĭcentēm audīvīt.

(2) God, *who governs* all things= God, *governing* all things. Deŭs, omnĭă gŭbernāns.

(3) To *him that desires*= (The man) *desiring.* Cŭpĭentī.

(*d*) He threw himself at Cæsar's feet, { *He threw himself before Cæsar, at his feet.* / Sē Cæsarī ăd pĕdēs prōjĕcīt.

(*e*) Can enim, vero, or autem stand first in a clause or sentence? (No.)

(443.) *Translate into English.*

Mē ĭd dĭcentĕm audīvistīne?—Persæ sōlem ŏrientem (442, *c*) ădōrant.—Lăbiēnus, suos (*his men*) hortātus, cŭpientibus signum dat.—Nōn ĕnim lăbor aŭt vĭgĭlantia, cŭpienti præsertim ălĭquid (178, 5), Cassio deĕrat (267, *b*).—Cæsar ab hībernis in Itălĭam dĭscēdens, lēgātos convŏcat.—Mŭlieres flentes sēse Cæsarī (442, *d*) ad pĕdes prōjēcērunt.—Nēmo, cunctam intŭens terram, dē dīvīnā prōvidentiā dŭbĭtābit.—Cæsar, in Italiam prŏfĭciscens, lēgātos omnes ad sē rĕvŏcāvit.—Dīvĭtiācus, flens, ā Cæsarĕ hæc (*these things*) pĕtēbat.—Cĭcĕro Cătōnem vīdit in hortō sĕdentem.—Quantă (184, R. 1) est săpientia Deī, omniă gŭbernantīs?

(444.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The words which illustrate the lesson are in *Italic*.]

The firmament is full of *shining* (438, *a*) stars.—No one, *when he looks at* (=looking, 442, *c*, 1) the firmament and stars, will doubt respecting (de) the wisdom of God.—Did they hear me (135, II., *a*) *when I said* (=saying) that (id)?—The barbarians were-worshipping the *setting* sun.—Labienus, *having exhorted* (440, *b*) his men, made an attack upon the enemy (in hostes).—Cæsar willingly gave the signal to the soldiers *when they desired it* (=desiring).—To *him that desires* (=desiring) anything, no labour will-be-wanting (267, *b*).—Cæsar, *departing* from winter-quarters, gives rewards to the soldiers.—The eye, not *seeing* itself (sē, *acc.*), sees ŏther-things (ălĭă).—The Æduans, *weeping*, threw themselves at the feet of Cæsar (442, *d*).—I saw my brother *sitting* in the garden yesterday.—How-great is the power of God, *who governs* (=governing) the world?

LESSON LXXII.

Participle Future Active.

(445.) THE ending of the future participle active is ūrŭs, which, added to the *supine-stem*, forms the participle; *e. g.*,

About to love, or *one who will love*, ămāt-ūrŭs.
About to advise, or *one who will advise*, mŏnĭt-ūrŭs.

(446.) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The different tenses of esse (*to be*), joined with the participle future active, form what is called the *periphrastic conjugation*.

Pres. { ămātūrŭs sŭm, *I will love, am about to love, intend to love.*
ămātūrŭs ĕs, *thou*, &c., &c.
So through all the persons.

Past. { ămātūrŭs ĕrăm, *I was about to love, intended to love*, &c.
ămātūrŭs ĕrās, *thou*, &c., &c.
So through all the persons.

Fut. { ămātūrŭs ĕro, *I shall be about to love, shall be on the point of loving*, &c.
ămātūrŭs ĕrĭs, *thou*, &c., &c.
So through all the persons.

EXERCISE.

(447.) *Vocabulary.*

To call upon, invŏcāre (in+vŏcāre, āv-, āt-).
To collect into a flock, congrĕgāre (āv-, āt-).
Foreign, ălĭēnus, ă, ŭm.
To procure, compārāre (āv-, āt-, con+pārāre).
To last, dūrāre (dūrāv, dūrāt).*
To implore, implōrare (in+plōrāre, āv-, āt-).
Alone, sōlus, ă, ŭm (194, 1).
To cross over, trājĭcere (trājĕc-, trāject-, trans+jăcere).†
Ammon, a surname of Jupiter, Hammōn, Is.
To behold, spectāre (āv-, āt).
To proceed, pergĕre (perrex-, perrect-).
To consult, consŭlĕre (consŭlu-, consult-).

(448.) *Example.*

The Athenians sent ambassadors to consult the oracle. Athēniensēs lēgātos mīsērunt, ōrācŭlum consultūrōs.

* Dūrāre, transitive, = *to harden*; intrans., = *to become hard, i. e.*, to last.
† Transjĭcere, transit., = *to convey over*; intrans., = *to cross over.*

Rule of Syntax.—The future active participle is used after a verb of motion to express the *design* of that motion.

(449.) *Translate into English.*

1. Ăvēs, in ăliēnas terras migrātūræ, congregantur.—Cæsar, in Galliam prŏfectūrus, centŭriōnes convŏcat.—Germānī, bellum gestūrī, Deōs invŏcāvērunt.—Sapiens bŏnă (*neut. pl.*) compărat semper dūrātūră.

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—Cæsar dē quartā vĭgĭliā castrā mōtūrus est.—Scripturus sum.—Dumnŏrix impĕrium suæ cīvitātis obtentūrus erat.—Impĕrātor, cum sōlā dĕcimā lēgiōne prŏfectūrus erat.—Æduī auxĭlium ā pŏpŭlo Rōmano implōrātūri sunt.—Germānī bellum gestūrī erant.

3. *Future Participle used to express a purpose* (448).—Scīpiō in Africam trājēcit, Carthāginem dēlētūrus.—Ingens hŏmĭnum multitūdo in urbem congrĕgātur, lūdos spectātūră.—Alexander in Asiam contendit, regnum Persārum occŭpātūrus.—Alexander ad Jŏvem Hammōnem pergit, consultūrus dē ōrīgine suā.

(450.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. The soldiers, *when-about-to-set-out* for (in) Spain, called-upon the gods.—Many (men) have procured possessions (bŏnă) *which-will-not-last* (= not about-to-last).—The general, *when-about-to-cross* the river, sends-away the horse-soldiers.—Cæsar, *intending-to-send* a messenger, calls together the centurions.

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—Dumnorix was *about-to-seize-upon* the royal-power.—The general is *about-to-set-out* from the camp with five legions.—The Æduans are *about-to-carry-on* a fierce war.—The hostages were *intending-to-implore* aid from the general.

3. *Future Participle to express a purpose.*—The Æduans sent ambassadors *to-implore* help from Cæsar.—The enemy crossed the river *in-order-to-besiege* the town.—The men flock (congregor) from-every-side to the town, *to-behold* the games.

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Participle Passive.

(451.) (*a*) THE perfect passive participle is formed (as stated 432, *b*) by adding the adjective-endings ŭs, ă, ŭm to the supine-stem; *e. g.*,

Inf.	Supine-stem.	Perf. Part.	
ămārĕ,	amāt-,	ămāt-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	*loved*, or *having been loved.*
vincĕrĕ,	vict-,	vict-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	*conquered*, or *having been conquered.*

(*b*) It is declined throughout like an adjective of the *first class* (76), and must agree with the substantive in *gender, number, and case*; *e. g.*, puer laudātŭs, puellă laudātă.

(*c*) The deponent verbs use the perfect participle form *actively*; *e. g.*, hortātus, *having exhorted.*

EXERCISE.

(452.) *Vocabulary.*

Sudden, rĕpentīnŭs, ă, ŭm.
To alarm, perturbārĕ (ăv-, ăt-).
To seize, snatch up, arrīpĕrĕ (arrīpio, arrīpŭ-, arrept-, ad+răpĕrĕ).
Auxiliaries, auxĭlĭă, ōrum.*
To put-to-flight, discomfit, fŭgārĕ.
To drive-on or *together*, compellĕrĕ (compŭl-, compuls-, con+pellĕrĕ).
To induce, addūcĕre (dux-, duct-, ad+dūcĕrĕ).
Influence, auctorĭtas, (auctorĭtāt) Is.
To prevail upon, permōvērĕ (mōv-, mōt-, per+mōvērĕ, *i. e.*, to move *thoroughly*).
A wagon, carrŭs, I.
To buy up, cŏēmĕrĕ (ĕm-, empt-, con+ĕmĕrĕ).
Aristides, Aristīdes (Aristīd) Is.
Pharsalus, Pharsălus, ī (f., 25, *a*).
To depart-out-of, excēdĕrĕ (excess-, excess-, ex+cēdĕrĕ).
Rhetoric, rhētorĭcă, æ.
To expel, expellĕre (expŭl-, expuls-).
To stimulate, indūcĕrĕ (dux-, duct-).
Strong-desire, cŭpĭditas, (tāt) Is (293).

(453.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *At Corinth.*	Corinthī.
At Rome.	Rōmæ.
At Carthage.	Carthāgĭnĕ.
At Athens.	Athēnīs.

Rule of Syntax.—The place *where* is put in the *ablative*,

* Auxilium in sing. = *aid, assistance*: in *plur.* = *auxiliary troops.*

if the name be of the *third* declension or plural number; otherwise in the *genitive*.

(*b*) *From Rome.*	Romā.
From Carthage.	Carthāgĭnĕ.

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whence* is put in the *ablative*.

(*c*) *To Rome.*	Rōmām.
To Athens.	Athēnās.

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whither* is put in the accusative if it be a town or small island.

Rem. With the names of countries or large islands, the prep. in or ad is employed: *to Italy*, in Ităliam; *to Egypt*, ad Ægyptum.

(*d*) *The soldiers, having been defeated, took to flight.* (Lat. The soldiers, *defeated, threw themselves into* flight.)	Mīlĭtēs, pulsī, in fŭgam sē conjēcērunt.
(*e*) The chief, *when he was expelled* from his country, fled to Rome.	Princeps, patriā expulsŭs, Rōmam fūgĭt.
(*f*) *As large a number as possible.*	Quam maxĭmus nŭmĕrus.
(*g*) *A sudden occurrence.*	Rĕpentīnā rēs.

(454.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī (*our men*), rĕpentīnā rē (55, *a*) perturbātī, armā arripĭunt.—Auxiliā perturbātā, in fŭgam sē conjēcērunt.—Mīlĭtes hostes fŭgātos in flūmen compŭlērunt.—Helvētii, hīs rēbus adductī, lēgātos ad Cæsărem dē dēdĭtiōne mittunt.—Gallī, hīs rēbus adductī, et auctōrĭtātĕ Orgetorĭgis permōtī, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maxĭmum numĕrum coēmērunt.—Princĭpēs, adventū Romanōrum permōtī, lēgātos ad Cæsărem dē dēdĭtionĕ mittunt.—Ăristīdes, patriā expulsŭs, Lăcĕdæmŏnęm fūgĭt.—Dĭōnўsius, Sўracūsīs expulsŭs, Cŏrinthī pŭeros dŏcēbat.—Princĭpes, oppĭdō expulsī, Rōmam (453, *c*) vēnērunt.—Lēgātus, rĕpentīna rē perturbātus, centŭrĭōnes convŏcat.

(455.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Helvetians, *prevailed upon* by the influence of Cæsar, led (their) army across the Rhine.—The chiefs, *induced* by

these considerations (= things), give hostages and an immense sum-of-money to the lieutenant.—Pompey, *when he had been defeated* (= *defeated*, 453, *d*) at Pharsalus, fled to Alexandria.—Jugurtha, *when he was expelled from* Africa, came to Rome.—The soldiers, *alarmed* by the sudden occurrence (453, *g*), take to flight (453, *d*).—For (enim) Pompey, *although-he-had-been-defeated* (= defeated) (in) no (nullō) battle, departed-out-of Italy.—Our (men) drove on the *alarmed* and *discomfited* enemy into the River Rhine.—The Helvetians, *induced* by these considerations (= things), bought-up as large a number as possible (453, *f*) of horses and beasts-of-burden.—The orator, *having-been-expelled-from* Athens, taught rhetoric at Carthage (453, *a*, R.).—The general, *induced* by these considerations, gave great rewards to the soldiers.—Orgetorix, *stimulated* by a strong-desire of royal-power, made a conspiracy of the nobility.

LESSON LXXIV.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

[THE ablative absolute is a very important part of Latin construction, and should be thoroughly learned.]

(456.) The participle is used in the *ablative with a noun*, when it is independent of the subject and object of the sentence.

(*a*) *When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.*	Pȳthăgŏras, Tarquĭnio regnante, in Itălĭam vēnit.

Here *Tarquin* is independent of *Pythagoras*, the subject of the sentence.

(457.) The want of a perfect active participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the *ablative absolute* with a passive participle.

(*b*) *Labienus, having taken possession of the mountain, was waiting for our men.*	Lăbiēnus, montĕ occŭpātō, nostrōs expectābat.

Here it would be impossible to say Lăbiēnus, occŭpātus montem, as *occupātus* is passive, not active.

(458.) A *noun* may be put in the ablative absolute with another noun *without* a participle.

(*a*) *In the prætorship of Cæsar.*	Cæsăre prætōrĕ (= Cæsar *being* prætor).
(*b*) *In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*	M. Messālā et M. Pisōnĕ consŭlĭbus (= Messala and Piso *being* consuls).

[This construction is used mostly to designate the *time* of an event.]

EXERCISE.

(459.) *Vocabulary.*

To avail, vălĕrĕ (vălŭ-).	*To finish*, perfĭcere (per + facere, perfĕc-, perfect-); also, confĭcĕre (fĕc-, fect-).
Tiberius, Tĭbĕrius (ĭ).	*To reign*, regnāre (āv-, āt-).
To die, mŏrīrī *and* mŏrī (mortŭ), *dep.*	*Night*, nox, (noct) Is (294).
A pleading, dictio, (dictiōn) Is (333).	*Territories*, fines (pl. of finis, 300).
Catiline, Cătilīnă, æ.	
Christ, Christŭs, ī.	

(460.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil præceptă vălent, nĭsĭ adjŭvante nātūrā (456, *a*).—Deō jŭvante, făcĭlis est lăbor.—Tĭbĕrio regnante, Christus mortuus est.—Concilio dīmisso, principes ad Cæsarem revertērunt.—Diē constĭtūtā causæ dictionis, Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit.—Cæsar, opere perfecto, præsidia disposuit.—Cæsar, hostĭbus pulsīs (457, *b*) in fīnēs Æduorum pervēnit.—Cæsar, duŏbus bellis confectīs, in hibernă exercĭtum duxit.—Bellō confectō, principēs cīvitātum ad Cæsărem, grātŭlātum (379), convēnērunt.—Cătilīnă, Cĭcerōnĕ consŭlĕ (458), conjurātiōnem fēcit.—Nātūrā dŭcĕ, nunquam errabĭmŭs.—Orgetorix, Marcō Messālā et Marcō Pisōnĕ consŭlĭbus, conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit.

(461.) *Translate into Latin.*

Our precepts will avail, *when nature assists* (= *nature assisting*).—*When the sun rises* (= the *sun rising*), the night flees.—*When the council was dismissed* (= the *council being dismissed*), the chiefs began to beseech Cæsar.—*When the council was dismissed*, Cæsar called the lieutenants to himself.—

Cæsar, *when the work was finished* (= *the work being finished*), fortified the towers.—Cæsar, *having defeated Pompey* (= *Pompey being defeated*), returned to Rome.—Cæsar, *having finished the war*, led-back his army into the territories of the Æduans.—*In the consulship of Cicero*, Catiline was expelled from Rome.—*When God assists* (= God assisting), it is not difficult to labour.—*With God for our guide* (= *God leader*), we shall never err.

LESSON LXXV.

Ablative Absolute, continued.

EXERCISE.

(462.) *Vocabulary.*

To abstain from, abstĭnēre (abstĭnŭ-, abstent-, abs+tĕnērĕ), with *abl.*
A plan, purpose, consĭlium, ī (not concĭlium).
To harass, lăcessĕre (īv-, ĭt-, 406, III., *b*).
From higher ground, ē locō sŭpĕriōrĕ.
A dart, pīlum, ī.
Phalanx, phălanx, (phălang) ĭs (293).
To hinder, prohĭbēre (hĭbŭ-, hĭbĭt-, pro+hăbēre).
Cnæus Pompey, Cnæŭs Pompēĭŭs.
Of one's own accord, ultrō (adv.).
To change, commūtāre (āv-, āt-)
To be born, nascī (nātus), *dep.*
Senate-house, cūria, æ.
Augustus, Augustus, ī.

(463.) *Translate into English.*

Lăbiēnus, montĕ occŭpāto, nostrōs expectābat, prælĭoque abstĭnēbat.—Barbărī, consĭlio commūtātō, nostrōs lăcessĕre cœpērunt.—Mīlĭtes, ē lŏcō sŭpĕriōre pīlīs missīs, făcile hostium phălangem perfregērunt (416, *b*).—Cognĭtō Cæsăris adventū, Ăriŏvistus lēgātos ad eum mittit.—Cnœō Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō consŭlĭbus, Germanī flūmen Rhenum transīvērunt.—Nullo hoste prohĭbente, Crassus legiōnem in Helvĕtios perduxit, ĭbĭque hiemāvit.—His rebus cognĭtis, impĕrātor ipsĕ ad exercĭtum contendit.—Hāc audītā pugnā, magna pars Aquitaniæ obsides ultrō mīsit.—Belgæ, omnibus vīcīs oppĭdisque incensīs, ad castră Cæsăris contendērunt.—Augustŏ regnante, Christus nātus est.

(464.) *Translate into Latin.*

The barbarians, *having changed their plan* (= plan being changed), made an attack upon our men.—The soldiers, *having-broken-through the phalanx*, began to harass the enemy.—The Belgians, *having heard of this battle*, sent ambassadors to Cæsar.—The soldiers, *having taken-possession-of the mountain*, easily put the enemy to flight (391, 3).—Cicero, *when he knew of the conspiracy*, went to the Senate-house.—*As no enemy hindered* (=*no enemy hindering*), the lieutenant led the army across the Rhine.—*When this battle was heard* (*of*), the Belgians, of-their-own-accord, sent hostages and ambassadors to Cæsar.—*In the consulship of Cicero and Antony*, Augustus was born.

§ 10.

INFINITIVE.—(LXXVI.—LXXIX.)

LESSON LXXVI.

Infinitive Forms.

(465.) The infinitive expresses action as completed or incomplete, but without reference to person or time; *e. g.*,

ACTIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, (Inf. Pres. Act.)	*to love*, or *to be loving*, *loving*, ăm-ā-re.
Action *Completed*, (Inf. Perf. Act.)	*to have loved*, ămāv-issĕ.

PASSIVE.

Action Incomplete, (Inf. Pres. Pass.)	*to be loved*, ăm-ā-rī.
Action Completed, (Inf. Perf. Pass.)	*to have been loved*, ămātŭs, ă, ŭm, esse or fuisse.

[*Rem.* The names *present* and *perfect* do not distinguish properly the two forms of the infinitive, but, as they are in universal use, we have to adopt them. The student must remember that the *present* expresses action incomplete, and the *perfect* action complete; but that the *time* of the action must depend upon the verb with which the infinitive is connected in the sentence.]

(466.) FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.			
Active.	Passive.	Active.		Passive.	
1. ăm-ārĕ.	ăm-ārī.	ămāv-	issĕ.	ămātŭs, ă, ŭm,	essĕ (*or* fuissĕ).
2. mŏn-ērĕ.	mŏn-ērī.	mŏnŭ-		mŏnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm,	
3. rĕg-ĕrĕ.	rĕg-ī.	rex-		rectŭs, ă, ŭm,	
4. aud-īrĕ.	aud-īrī.	audīv-		auditŭs, ă, ŭm,	

Rem. Observe that *perf. inf. act.* simply adds the ending -issĕ to the *perf.-stem* of the verb; and *perf. inf. pass.* is formed by the *perf. pass. part.* of the verb, combined with essĕ (sometimes fuissĕ).

EXERCISE.

(467.) *Vocabulary.*

To lay waste, vastāre (āv-, āt-).	*Peace,* pax, (pāc) is (293).
Ought, dēbēre (dēbu-, dēbit-).	*A very few,* perpaucī, æ, a.
To be vacant, vācāre (intransit.).	*Evil deed,* malēfīcium, ī.
I am able, possum; *I was able,* pōtui.	*To break through,* perrumpere (perrūp-, perrupt-).

(468.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *I wish to learn.*	Cŭpio **discĕre**.
The enemy began to cross the river.	Hostes flūmen **transīre** cœpērunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used, as in English, to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by many words.

☞ Such words are, *to wish, to be able, ought, to be accustomed, to hasten, to determine,* &c.; also, the adjectives **dignus, indignus, audax,** &c.

(*b*) *The Helvetians intend.*	Helvētiis est in ănĭmō (= *it is in mind to the Helvetians*).
(*c*) *Sometimes by day, oftener by night.*	Nonnunquăm **interdiū**, sæpiŭs **noctū**.
(*d*) *To keep off from the road.*	Itĭnĕrĕ prōhĭbēre (153, *a*).
(*e*) *In sight of.*	In conspectū.

(469.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar in Galliā **hiĕmāre** constĭtuit.—Ædui se suaque ab Helvētiis **dēfendĕre** non pŏtuērunt.—Agri **vastāri** non dēbent.—Hostes per mūnītiones **perrumpĕre** cōnāti sunt.—Agri Suēvorum **vācāre** dicuntur.—Mīlites incŏlas **expellĕre** non potuērunt.—Multĭtudo puĕrorum mŭliĕrumque **fŭgĕre** coepit.—Helvētii maxĭmum nŭmĕrum jūmentōrum et carrōrum **coëmĕre** constĭtuērunt.—Germāni cōpias suas Rhēnum **transdūcĕre** cōnāti sunt.—Helvētii cum proxĭmis cīvĭtatibus pācem et ămīcĭtiam confirmāre constĭtuērunt.

(470.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Place the infinitive before the verb on which it depends.]

Our towns ought not to-be-taken-by-storm.—In sight of our army, the fields ought not to be laid-waste.—The enemy endeavoured sometimes-during-the-day, oftener by-night, to burst-

through the fortifications.—The Æduans were not able to expel the enemy from (their) territories (153, *a*). On one side,* the lands are said to be vacant.—The boys and the women began to fly-in-every-direction (passim, adv).—The Helvetians intend to make (their) way through our province.—A very few are able to keep-off the Helvetians from the road.—The Helvetians ought to cross-over without any (ullo) evil-deed.—The remaining multitude of boys and women began to fly in-every-direction.

LESSON LXXVII.

Accusative with Infinitive.

(471.) VERBS signifying *to know, to see, to feel, to think, to say,* with some others, have frequently a sentence depending on them, the subject of which is in the *accusative,* and the verb in the *infinitive.*

He saw that war was preparing on all sides.	Undĭque bellum părārī vĭdēbat.

Here bellum, the subject, is accusative before the infinitive parari, after the verb videbat, *he saw.*

(472.) Many dependent sentences which are introduced in English by the conjunction *that,* are expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and *infinitive.* To translate such sentences into Latin, observe the following method:

1. Omit the word *that.*
2. Change the nominative following *that* into the Latin accusative.
3. Change the English verb into the Latin infinitive.

The messenger says *that the horsemen are hurling* darts.	Nuntius dīcit, ĕquĭtes tēlă conjĭcĕre.

(473.) If the predicate of the sentence containing the accusative and infinitive be an adjective, it must agree with the accusative subject in gender, number, and case.

* Una ex parte.

He knows *that Cicero is eloquent.*	Scit Cĭcĕrōnem essĕ ēlŏquentem.
I perceive *that the water* is cold.	Sentio ăquam frīgĭdam esse.

EXERCISE.

(474.) *Vocabulary.*

To think, existīmāre (āv-, āt-).
To encamp, considĕre (consēd-, consess-, con+sidĕre).
To know, scire (sciv-, scīt-).
Stone, lăpĭs, (lăpĭd) ĭs (m.).
Nearer, prŏpius (adv., 376).
To favour, fāvēre (fāv-, faut-, 395, V.), (governs *dat.*).
While, dūm (adv.).
To lose, āmittĕre (ā+mittere, 401, 3, *b*).

(475.) *Examples.*

(*a*) The messenger *says* that the horsemen *are hurling* darts.	Nuntius dīcit ĕquĭtes tēlă conjĭcĕre.
(*b*) The messenger *said* that the horsemen *were hurling* darts.	Nuntius dixit ĕquĭtes tēlă conjĭcĕre.
(*c*) The messenger *said* that the horsemen *had hurled* darts.	Nuntius dixit ĕquĭtes tēlă conjĕcisse.
(*d*) *Word is brought to Cæsar.*	Cæsărī nuntiātum est (=*it is told to Cæsar*).
(*e*) *To have about himself.*	Circum sē hăbēre.

(476.) *Translate into English.*

Helvētii existīmant, Rōmānos discēdĕre.—Explōrātor dixit, hostes consēdisse.—Cæsar scit, Dumnŏrīgem fāvēre Helvētiis.—Helvētii dīcunt, se omnem sĕnātum āmīsisse.—Cæsări nuntiātum est, mīlĭtes magnitūdĭnem sylvārum tĭmēre.—Nuntius dixit, ĕquĭtes tēla conjĭcĕre.—Galba certior factus est, Gallos omnes discessisse.—Explōrātōres dīcunt, oppĭdum ab hostĭbus tĕnēri.—Dum hæc in collŏquio gĕruntur, Cæsări nuntiātum est, ĕquĭtes Ariovisti prŏpius accēdĕre, et lăpides tēlaque in nostros conjĭcĕre.

[Be careful, in translating the following English into Latin, to write first the leading sentence, and after it the accusative and the infinitive, observing the rules in (472), and following the order of words in the examples given above.]

(477.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar knows that *this* (thing) *is true* (473).—The scouts say that *the horsemen* of Ariovistus *are approaching* (475, *a*).—The ambassadors said that the *Helvetians had lost* all their cavalry and all their senate.—Word was brought to Cæsar *that the horsemen* of Ariovistus *were hurling* stones against (in, *with accus.*) our (men).—Word-was-brought to Cæsar *that Ariovistus had-departed* from the camp.—Cæsar was informed by the scouts *that the enemy had encamped* under (sŭb, *with abl.*) the mountain.—The lieutenant says *that the mountain is held* by the enemy.—The general thinks that *our plans are told* to the enemy.—Word was brought to the general *that all the Gauls had departed* by night.—The chiefs say *that Divitiacus* always *has* a great number of horse-soldiers about himself.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Accusative with Infinitive.—Perfect Infinitive Passive.

(478.) It has been stated (466, R.) that the perfect infinitive passive is formed by the perfect participle passive, combined with esse (sometimes fuisse).

When the accusative is used with this infinitive, the participle must agree with the accusative in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; *e. g.*,

(*a*) *The messenger says that the Æduans have been conquered.*	Nuntius dīcit, Æduos victos esse.
(*b*) *Ariovistus said that all the forces had been routed in one battle.*	Ariŏvistus dixit, omnes cōpias ūno prælio fūsas esse.
(*c*) *The horsemen brought-back-word that the town had been taken-by-storm.*	Ĕquĭtes rĕnuntiāvērunt, oppĭdum expugnātum esse.

☞ Observe that in (*a*) the part. victos agrees with the accus. Æduos; in (*b*), fūsas with cōpias; in (*c*), expugnātum with oppĭdum.

EXERCISE.

(479.) *Vocabulary.*

To find-out, rĕpĕrīre (427, V.).
To frighten completely, perterrēre (perterru-, perterrīt-, per + terrēre).
Tributary, stīpendiārius, ă, ŭm.
To bring back word, rĕnuntiāre (āv-, āt-).
To rout, fundĕre (fūd-, fūs-, 416, *a*)
To overcome, sūpĕrāre (āv-, āt-).
Bond, chain, vincŭlum, i.
To hold in memory, to remember, mĕmŏriā tĕnēre.
To put (or *cast*) *in chains*, in vincŭla conjĭcĕre.

(480.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar rĕpĕriēbat ĭnĭtium fŭgæ a Dumnŏrige factum esse. —Impĕrātor dixit, ĕquĭtātum esse perterrĭtum.—Cæsar mĕmŏriā tĕnēbat, L. Cassium consŭlem occīsum esse ab Helvetiis. — Ariŏvistus dīcit, Æduos sĭbi (54), stīpendiārios esse factos. — Cæsar certior factus est, lēgātos in vincŭla conjectos esse. — Ĕquĭtes rĕnuntiāvērunt, castra esse mūnīta.—Dixit bella gesta esse.—Rĕpĕriēbat ĕtiam Cæsar, ĭnĭtium fŭgæ a Dumnŏrige atque ējus ĕquĭtibus factum esse; eōrumque fŭgā (55, *a*) rēlĭquum ĕquĭtātum perterritum esse. — Ariŏvistus dixit omnes Gallorum cōpias ūno a sē prælio (55, *a*), fūsas ac sŭpĕratas esse.

(481.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar found-out that the cavalry had been completely-frightened by the flight of Dumnorix.—The Æduans say that they (se) have been routed by the Germans.—Cæsar remembered (= held in memory) that the consul's army had been defeated by the Helvetians.—Cæsar remembered that the consul had been slain, and his (ējus) army sent under the yoke (323, N.). —Cæsar was informed by the chiefs that hostages had been given.—The lieutenant said that the ambassador had been cast into chains.—Ariovistus said that all the forces had been overcome by himself.—Ariovistus said that the Gauls had been overcome by himself in one battle.—The Æduans say that they (se) have been made tributary to Ariovistus (*dat.*).

LESSON LXXIX.

Infinitive Future Active and Passive.

(482.) By the combination of the *future participle active* with essĕ (or fuissĕ), an *infinitive future active* is formed; *e. g.*,

ămātūrŭs, ă, ŭm, essĕ, *to be about to love, to intend loving.*

ămātūrŭs, ă, ŭm, fŭīssĕ, { *to have been about to love, to have intended loving.*

(483.) Finally, by combining the *supine* with the verb īrī,* we form the *infinitive future passive; e. g.*,

ămātŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

doctŭm īrī, *to be about to be taught.*

Rem. 1. This form, being derived from the *supine*, is applied alike to nouns of all genders and of both numbers.

2. As there is no *future infinitive* in English, we must translate the Latin *future infinitive* by a periphrasis, as above.

EXERCISE.

(484.) *Vocabulary.*

To persuade, persuādēre (per+suādēre, suās-, suās-); governs *dat.*

To refrain, tempĕrārę (āv-, āt-, followed by ăb with *abl.*).

To neglect, nēglĭgere (nēglex-, nēglect-, nĕc+lĕgĕre).

To compel, cōgĕre (coĕg-, coact-, cōn+ăgĕre).

To restore, reddere (reddĭd-, reddĭt-, rĕ+dăre, 411, *c*).

Unfriendly, ĭnīmīcus, ă, ŭm. (ĭn+ămīcus).

To demand-back, rĕpĕtĕre (rĕpĕtīv-, rĕpĕtĭt-, rĕ+pĕtĕre).

To refuse, rēcūsāre (āv-, āt-).

(484, *a.*) *Example.*

The general said that he would come with the tenth legion alone.

Impĕrātŏr dixit sē cum sōlā dĕcĭmā lĕgione ventūrum.

Rem. The essĕ in the future infinitive is frequently omitted; *e. g.*, in the above, ventūrum.

* Īrī is the infinitive passive form of the verb īrĕ, *to go*. It is not in use, except in combination as above.

(485.) *Translate into English.*

Future Infinitive *Active.*

Dumnŏrix existĭmat sē regnum obtentūrum esse.—Helvētii exīstĭmābant sē fīnitĭmis (*dat.*) persuāsūros.—Cæsăr existĭmābat, fīnĭtĭmos tempĕratūros ab injūriā.—Cæsăr dīcit, se Æduorum injūrias non neglectūrum.—Helvētii existĭmabant, sē Æduos vī (301) coactūros.—Ariŏvistus dixit, Æduis (54) sē obsĭdes reddĭtūrum esse.—Cæsăr dīcit sē, proxĭmā noctĕ (118, II., *c*), de quartā vĭgĭliā, castrā mōtūrum.—Impĕrātor, hŏmĭnes ĭnĭmīcō ănĭmō (428, *a*) tempĕrātūros ab injūriā et mălĕfĭcio, non existĭmabat.

(486.) *Translate into Latin.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Cæsar said that he would move his camp.—Dumnorix thought that he would-hold the military-command of his own state.—The general says that he is-about-to-demand-back the hostages.—The Æduans say that they-are-about-to-implore assistance from (*a*) the Roman people.—Dumnorix assures (them) that he is-about-to-seize the royal-power with his own (suŏ) army.—Ariovistus said that he would not restore the hostages.—Cæsar did not think that the allies would-refrain from injury.—Cæsar thought that he would-compel the Germans by force.—Ariovistus said that he would-refuse the friendship of the Roman people.

§ 11.

THE GERUND.

LESSON LXXX.

(487.) (*a*) The *gerund* expresses the action of the verb under the form of a noun of the second declension, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative* cases (ī, ō, ŭm, ō).

(*b*) The *gerund-stem* is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

In the 1st conjugation,		-and;	*e. g.*,	ăm-and-.
" 2d	"	-end;	*e. g.*,	mŏn-end-.
" 3d	"	-ĕnd;	*e. g.*,	rĕg-end-.
" 4th	"	-iend;*	*e. g.*,	aud-iend-.

(*c*) The gerund of any *case* is formed by annexing the case-ending to the gerund-stem; *e. g.*, *gen.*, ămand-ī; *dat.*, ămand-ō; *acc.*, ămand-um; *abl.*, ămand-ō.

(488.) As the infinitive is used as a verbal noun in the *nominative* and *accusative* cases, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases; *e. g.*,

Nom.	Scrībĕrĕ,	*writing.*
Gen.	Scrībendī,	*of writing.*
Dat.	Scrībendō,	*to* or *for writing.*
Acc.	Scrībĕrĕ, / Scrībendŭm,	*writing.*
Abl.	Scrībendō,	*with writing.*

(489.) The rules for the use of the cases of nouns apply also to the cases of the infinitive and gerund; *e. g.*,

Nom.	*Writing is useful,*	scrībĕre est ūtile.
Gen.	*The art of writing is useful,*	ars scrībendi est ūtilis.

* Also in the io verbs (199); *e. g.*, căp-io, căp-iendī.

Dat.	*Paper is useful for writing,*	charta scrībendō est ūtĭlis.
Acc.	*I learn writing,*	scrībĕre disco.
	I learn during writing,	inter scrībendum disco.
Abl.	*We learn by writing,*	scrībendō discĭmus.

Rem. With a preposition, the *accusative gerund* must be used, and *not* the infinitive; ad (inter, ob) scrībendum, *not* ad (inter, ob) scrībĕre.

(490.) The gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived; *e. g.*,

The art of training boys is difficult.	Ars puerōs ēdŭcandī difficĭlis est.

EXERCISE.

(491.) *Vocabulary.*

To make war, bellāre (āv-, āt-).
To plunder, to obtain-booty, prædāri (prædāt-), *dep.*
Wearied, dēfessus, ă, ŭm.
Sufficiently, sātis.
To think, cōgĭtāre.
Opportunity, time for, spătium, ĭ.
To deliberate, dēlĭberāre (āv-, āt-).
To take, sūmĕre (sumps-, sumpt-).
Agriculture, ăgricultūra, æ.
Desire, stŭdium, ĭ.
Life, age, ætās, (ætāt) ĭs (293).
Mind, mens, (ment) ĭs (355, II., 1.)

(492.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Time was given for* (= opportunity was given of) *taking-up arms.*	Spătium armā căpiendī dătum est.
(*b*) *For the sake of collecting-corn.*	Frūmentandī causā (*ablat.*).

(493.) *Translate into English.*

Spes prædandī hŏmĭnes ăb ăgricultūrā rĕvŏcābat.—Spatium dēfessis ex pugnā excedendī nōn dătum est.—Brĕve tempus ætātis sātis est longum ad bĕnĕ beātēque vīvendum.—Hŏminis mens discendō ălĭtur.—Pars ĕquĭtātūs, prædandī causā, missa est.—Nox fīnem oppugnandī fēcit.—Magna pars ĕquitātūs, frūmentandī causā, missa ĕrat.—Cognōvĕrat enim Cæsar, magnam partem ĕquĭtātūs, prædandī frumentandīque causā, trans Rhēnum missam fuisse (471).

—Impĕrātor diem ad dēlībĕrandum sūmit.—Impĕrātor dixit, sē diem ad dēlībĕrandum sumptūrum (484, *a*).—Spes prædandī, stŭdiumquĕ bellandī incŏlas ab ăgricultūrā et lăbōre rĕvŏcābat.—Dŏcendō dŏcēmur.

(494.) *Translate into Latin.*

The desire *of plundering* and *making-war* has recalled the farmers from (their) fields.—Time *for* (492, *a*) *hurling* the darts was not given to the soldiers.—Time *for* (of) *fighting* was not given to the horsemen.—The horsemen were sent into the territories of the Æduans for the sake *of-collecting-corn*.—The mind of man is nourished *by thinking*.—Time *for departing-out-of* the town was not given to the wearied citizens.—The citizens ask time for (of) *deliberating*.—Wisdom is the art *of living* well.—Cæsar recalled the tenth legion into Gaul, for-the-sake-of *wintering*.—We learn *by teaching*.—Opportunity *of attacking* the town was not given to the soldiers, though they desired it (= desiring it).

§ 12.

THE GERUNDIVE, OR VERBAL ADJECTIVE IN DŬS, DĂ, DŬM.

(495.) (*a*) The gerundive expresses the action of the verb (generally with the additional idea of *necessity* or *continuance*) under the form of an adjective of the *first class* (76).

(*b*) The gerundive-stem is precisely the same as the gerund-stem. The cases are formed by adding the endings of the adjective; *e. g.*,

N. ămand-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
G. ămand-ī, æ, ī, &c.,

and so through all cases and both numbers.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Gerundive used instead of the Gerund.

(496.) The gerundive is used (to express continued action) as a verbal adjective, *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. *Of writing a letter.*	Scrībendæ ĕpistŏlæ, instead of scrībendi ĕpistŏlam.
Dat. *To or for writing letters.*	Scrībendis ĕpistŏlis, instead of scrībendo ĕpistolas.
Acc. *To write a letter.*	Ad scrībendam ĕpistŏlam, instead of ad scrībendum ĕpistŏlam.
Abl. *By writing a letter.*	Scrībendā ĕpistŏlā, instead of scrībendo ĕpistŏlam.

Rem. The gerundive *must* be used for the *dative* or *accusative* of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; *e. g.*, *of learning the true* = vēra discendi, not *vērorum discendorum*; *of hearing this*, hoc audiendi, not *hūjus audiendi*.

EXERCISE.

(497.) *Vocabulary.*

To choose, dēlĭgĕre (dēlēg-, dēlect-, dē+lĕgere).
To pursue, consĕquī (consĕcūt), *dep.*
To fail, to be insufficient, dēfĭcĕre (dēfēc-, dēfect-, dē+făcĕre).
To form a design, consĭlium căpĕre (to).
Space-of-two-years, bienniŭm, ī.
To reckon, deem, dūcĕre (dux-, duct-).
To discern, cernĕre (406, Cl. III., *a*).
Care, cūra, æ.
To apply, adhĭbĕre (adhĭbŭ-, adhĭbĭt-).
Negligent, neglĭgens, (neglĭgent) ĭs (107).

(498.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *The Helvetians reckoned that the space-of-two-years was enough for themselves.* — Helvētii biennium sĭbi sătis esse duxērunt.
(*b*) *The space of three-days.* — Trīdui spătium.
(*c*) *The house was given to the robbers to plunder.* — Dŏmus latrōnĭbus dīrĭpiendă dătă est.
The farmer gave his house to the robbers to plunder. — Ăgricŏla dŏmum latrōnĭbus dīrĭpiendam dĕdit.

☞ After verbs of *giving*, *going*, *sending*, *receiving*, and the like, the gerundive expresses a *purpose* or *object*.

(*d*) *For completing* (=*finishing*) *these things.* — Ăd eas res confĭciendās.

(499.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs ā dŭce mīlĭtibus dīrĭpienda dăta est.—Urbem dux mīlĭtibus dīrĭpiendam dĕdit.—Subĭtō Galli consĭlium belli gĕrendi cēpērunt.—Sŭbitō Galli lēgiōnis oppŭgnandæ consĭlium cēpĕrant.—Ad eas res confĭciendas Orgĕtorix dēlĭgĭtur.—Helvētii, ad eas res confĭciendas, biennium sĭbi sătis esse duxērunt.—Crassus lēgātos trĭbunosque mīlitum in fīnĭtĭmas cīvĭtātes frūmentī pĕtendī causā dīmīsit.—Plăto Rōmam (453, *c*) ad cognoscendas Numæ lēges contendit.—In vŏluptāte spĕrnendā virtūs maximē cernĭtur.—Multi.

in ĕquis părandis, adhĭbent cūram, sed in ămīcis dēlĭgendis neglĭgentes sunt.—Mīlites, ad urbem expugnandam, trīdui spătium sĭbi sătis esse duxērunt.

(500.) *Translate into Latin.*

For completing these things (498, *d*) Cæsar gave to the Gauls the space of three days.—The Æduans had suddenly formed the design of besieging the town.—Crassus is chosen for carrying-on the war (498, *d*).—Pythagoras went to Sparta (453, *c*) to learn (498, ☞) the laws of Lycurgus.—Cæsar reckoned that the space of two years was enough for himself, for overcoming the Gauls and finishing the war.—The general sent all the cavalry across the Rhine, for the sake of seeking corn.—Ariovistus hastened (contendĕre), with all his forces, to attack the town (498, ☞).—The Britons sent ambassadors to Cæsar, in-order-(ad)-to-seek (498, ☞) peace.

LESSON LXXXII.

The Gerundive used to express Necessity, &c.

THE GERUNDIVE AS SUBJECT.

(501.) (*a*) The gerundive *in the nominative neuter* (dŭm) is used with esse to express *necessity* or *duty*. If the person be expressed, it must be put in the dative.

One must write.	Scrībendŭm est.
I must write.	Scrībendŭm est mĭhĭ.

☞ Here the gerundive is the *subject* of the sentence (*the duty of writing is to me*).

(*b*) This neuter nominative may be combined with all the tenses of esse; *e. g.*,

Scrībendum est mĭhi,	*I must write.*
Scrībendum erat mĭhi,	*I had to write.*
Scrībendum erit,	*I must write hereafter.*
&c.,	&c.

(*c*) This neuter nominative may govern the case of its verb; *e. g.*,*

We must help the citizens.	Cīvibus (*dat.*) subvěniendum est.
One must use reason.	Rātiōne ūtendum est.

THE GERUNDIVE AS PREDICATE.

(502.) The gerundive is also used with esse, *in all cases and genders*, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express *necessity* or *worthiness*; *e. g.*, *I am to be loved*, ămandus sum; *thou art to be loved*, ămandus ĕs, &c. The person, if specified, is put in the dative.

I must love Tullia (= *Tullia is to be loved by me.*)	Tullĭă mĭhi ămandă est.
All things had to be done by Cæsar (= *Cæsar had to do all things*).	Omnĭă Cæsarī ĕrant ăgendă.

☞ Here the gerundive is the *predicate*.

EXERCISE.

(503.) *Vocabulary.*

Flag, vexillum, ī.
To set-up, prōpōnĕre (prō+pōnĕre, pōsŭ-, pōsĭt-, 406, *b*).
To go-forward, prōcēdĕre (prō+cēdĕre, 401, 3, *b*).
A little too far, paullō longius (*adv.*).
To think, pūtāre (āv-, āt-).
To send for, arcessĕre (arcessīv-, arcessīt-).
To understand, perceive, intellĭgĕre (intellex-, intellect-).
To determine, stātuĕre (stătŭ-, stătūt-).
In vain, frustrā.
More widely, lātiūs (*adv.*, 376).

(504.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Cæsar causes a bridge to be made* (= *takes care that a bridge should be made*).	Cæsar pontem făciendum (esse) cūrat.
I must hear.	Mĭhi audiendum.

Est is often omitted with the gerundive, as in (*a*).

(*b*) *The centurions thought that nothing should be done rashly.*	Centŭrĭōnes nĭhĭl tĕmĕre ăgendum (esse) existĭmābant.

* The *accusative* is hardly ever used after the neut. gerundive.

(505.) *Translate into English.*

(1.) *Gerundive in the nominative neuter* (dŭm).

Mīlĭtĭbus dē nāvibus ĕrat dēsĭlĭendum. — Mīlĭtĭbus sĭmul et dē nāvibus (ĕrat) dēsĭlĭendum, et cum hostibus ĕrat pugnandum.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun.*

Cæsări omnia ūno tempŏre (118, II., *c*) ĕrant ăgenda; vexillum prōpōnendum; rĕvŏcandi mīlites; qui paullo longius prōcessĕrant arcessendi; ăcies instruenda; mīlites hortandi; signum dandum.—Prōhĭbenda est īra.—Bellum nōbis est suscĭpiendum.—Cæsăr sĭbi lātius distrĭbuendum exercitum pŭtat.—Impĕrātor dicit, jam sĭbi lēgātos audiendos.—Cæsăr ŭbĭ intellexit frustrā tantum lăbōrem sūmi (471), stătuit expectandam classem.—Cæsăr pontem făciendum cūrat atque ĭtă exercĭtum trādūcit.

(506.) *Translate into Latin.*

(1.) *Gerundive in nominative, neuter* (dŭm).

We must leap-down from the ships.—*We must read.*—*You must hear.*—*You must fight* for liberty (pro libertate).—*All must hear;* we must *read.*—With whom (quibuscum) *must I fight?*—*We must leap down* from the walls and *fight* with the horsemen.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective.*

I must do all things at once (= *all things must be done by me* at one time).—*You must give the signal.*—*We had to set up* the flag.—*Cæsar must send* ambassadors.—*The soldiers must fortify* the camp.—*The general must encourage* the soldiers.—*The* Helvetians *cause bridges to be made* over the river.—Cæsar thought *that the army must be led-over.*—Cæsar thought that the *army must be divided* by him (sibi), and *distributed* more-widely.—The general says *that he must wait*-for the fleet.—Divitiacus says *that this-thing* (hōc) *must be done* by all the Gauls.

§ 13.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

LESSON LXXXIII.

(507.) The imperative mood expresses the action of the verb as a *command, wish, entreaty,* &c.; *e. g.*, *Love thou! Hear thy parents.*

(508.) FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.				
	2d Sing.	3d Sing.	2d Plur.	3d Plur.
ăm-	ā *or* āto.	āto.	ātĕ *or* ātōtĕ.	ānto.
mŏn-	ē *or* ēto.	ēto.	ētĕ *or* ētōtĕ.	ēnto.
rĕg-	ĕ *or* īto.	īto.	ītĕ *or* ītōtĕ.	ŭnto.
aud-	ī *or* īto.	īto.	ītĕ *or* ītōtĕ.	iūnto.
PASSIVE.				
ăm-	āre *or* ātŏr.	ātŏr.	āmĭnī *or* āmĭnŏr.	antŏr.
mŏn-	ērĕ *or* ētŏr.	ētŏr.	ēmĭnī *or* ēmĭnŏr.	entŏr.
reg-	ĕrĕ *or* ītŏr.	ītŏr.	ĭmĭnī *or* ĭmĭnŏr.	untŏr.
aud-	īrĕ *or* itŏr.	ītŏr.	ĭmĭnī *or* ĭmĭnŏr.	iuntŏr.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *2d pers. sing. act.* can be obtained from any verb by striking off rĕ from the infinitive; *e. g.*, *inf.*, ămārĕ; *imper.*, āmā; and that the *2d pers. sing. pass.* is the infinitive form precisely.

2. The longer forms of the 2d person are used especially in reference to *future* time; *e. g.*, in *laws, statutes,* and the like.

3. The io verbs of 3d conj. take the imperative endings of the 4th in the 3d pers. plur.: thus, căpiunto, *let them take;* căpiuntor, *let them be taken.* Făcio has 2d pers. sing. făc.

EXERCISE.

(509.) *Vocabulary.*

[Deponents take, of course, the *passive* endings.]

Enmity, ĭnĭmĭcĭtiă, æ.
To despise, contemnĕre (con+temnĕrĕ, temps-, tempt-).
Fleeting, fŭgax, (fŭgac) is (107).
To pursue, follow, persĕquī (persĕcūt-), *dep.*
Association, fellowship, sŏcĭĕtās (ātis, 293).

Frail, perishable, cădūcŭs, ă, ŭm (from *cădĕrĕ*, to fall).
To shun, avoid, vītārĕ (āv-, āt-).
Judge, jūdex, (jūdīc) ĭs (306).
To revere, vĕnĕrārī (vĕnĕrāt-), *dep.*
Show, spĕcĭēs, spĕcĭeī (117).
To trust, crēdĕre (crēdĭd-, crēdĭt-, 411, *c*); governs *dat.*
Admire, admirārī (āt-), *dep.*

(510.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Do not hear.*	Nē audī.
Do not trust appearance (colour).	Nē crēdĕ cŏlōrī.

Rule.—With imperatives, nē must be used for *not*. (Nōn would be very bad Latin.)

(*b*) *Let the judge neither give nor take rewards.*	Judex præmia nē dătō nēvĕ capĭto.

Neither — nor = nē — nēvĕ.

(*c*) *Instead of parents* = | Părentum lŏcō (abl.)

(511.) *Translate into English.*

Puerī (*voc.*), părentēs ămātĕ.—Magistrī puerōs linguăm Lătīnăm dŏcento.—Magnă vīs est in virtūtĭbus; ĕās (150) ĕxcĭtā, sī fortĕ dormiunt.—Abstĭnētōtĕ omnī injūriā (*abl.*) atque ĭnimīcĭtiis.—Impĕrā īræ (147).—Nē persĕquĕre omnia, quæ spĕcĭem gloriæ hăbent.—Hæc omnia, quæ hăbent spĕcĭem gloriæ contĕmnĕ: brevĭă, fŭgācĭă, cădūcă existĭmă.—Nē crēdĭtĕ omnĭbus.—Judĭces præmium nē căpiunto, nēvĕ danto.—Vītā sŏcĭĕtātem imprŏbōrum.—Vĕnĕrārĕ Deum, vĕnĕrārĕ părentes, et quōs părentum lŏcō (55, *a*) tibi (54) nātūră dĕdit.—Pueri præceptōres, ă quibus doctī sunt, ămanto et vĕnĕrantŏr.

(512.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys, *revere* (your) parents.—*Let* the master *teach* the boys the Greek language.—*Do not rouse-up* (your) vices: *rouse-up* (your) virtues, if perchance they sleep.—*Abstain ye from* (*abl.*) all vices and enmities.—My son, *rule* (your) anger (*dat.*, 147).—*Do not admire* all things which have the show of glory.—*Do not ye* fear death.—*Do not trust to* the show of glory.—*Love* those whom Nature has given to you in place of parents.—*Do not seek* the association of the wicked.—*Neither take* (*căpĕre*) *nor give* a reward.—*Hear* the wise and good.

§ 14.

SENTENCES.

[THE student should now be made to understand something of sentences. The following simple statements can readily be understood.]

(513.) (*a*) The sentence, "*the messenger fled*," is a *simple* sentence, as it contains but one subject and predicate.

(*b*) The sentence, "*the messenger, who saw me, fled*," is a *compound* sentence, as it contains *more* than one subject and predicate.

(*c*) In the last example, "*the messenger fled*" is called the PRINCIPAL SENTENCE; and "*who saw me*," the SUBORDINATE sentence.

(514.) The following are some of the classes of subordinate sentences:

(*a*) *The accusative with the infinitive; e. g.*, Nuntiŭs dixĭt, ĕquĭtēs tēlă conjĭcĕrĕ (The messenger said *that the horsemen were hurling darts*). Here ĕquĭtēs tēlă conjĭcĕrĕ (*that the horsemen were hurling darts*) is the *subordinate* sentence; nuntius dixit, the *principal* sentence.

(*b*) *Conjunctive sentences, i. e.*, such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time; *e. g.*, *Cæsar*, when he had crossed the river, *drew up his army*. Here, *Cæsar drew up his army* is the *principal* sentence; *when he had crossed the river*, the *subordinate* sentence.

(*c*) *Relative sentences; e. g.*, Nuntius, quī missus est, dixit (*The messenger*, who was sent, *said*). Here nuntius dixit is the *principal* sentence; quī missŭs est, the *relative subordinate* sentence.

(*d*) *Interrogative sentences* (*i. e.*), such as are introduced by an interrogative word; *e. g.*, Tell me *what you are doing?* Here *what you are doing* is a *subordinate interrogative* sentence.

§ 15.

CONJUNCTIONS.—(LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)

LESSON LXXXIV.

Copulative Conjunctions.

(515.) COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS unite words or sentences together. They are,

And.	Ĕt, quĕ, ăc, atquĕ.
Neither, nor.	Nĕc, nĕquĕ.
Also.	Etiăm, necnōn, quŏquĕ, ĭtĕm, ĭtĭdĕm.

EXERCISE.

(516.) *Vocabulary.*

Only, sōlŭm; *not only,* nōn sōlŭm.	*Some* (*some persons*), nōnnullī, æ, ă (nōn+nullŭs).
A debtor, ŏbærātŭs, ī.	*Javelin,* trāgŭlă, æ.
Formerly, at one time, quōndam.	*To hurl under,* subjĭcĕrĕ (jăc-, ject-, sub+jăcĕre).
Rich. ŏpŭlens, (ŏpŭlent) ĭs (107).	*I profit, benefit,* prōsŭm* (prŏ+sum); governs *dat.*
To hasten, to march rapidly, prŏpĕrārĕ (ăv-, ăt-).	*To the same place,* eōdĕm (adv.).
To give largess, to bribe, largīrī (largīt-), *dep.*	*Too much,* nĭmius, ă, ŭm.
Once and again, sĕmĕl atquĕ ĭtĕrum.	*Top, summit,* culmĕn, (culmĭn) ĭs (345).
Estate, rēs fămĭlĭārĭs, e (104).	*To pray,* ōrāre (ăv-, ăt-).
A wheel, rōtă, æ.	

(517.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Darius equipped a fleet,* and *placed over it Datis* and *Artaphernes.*	Dărīus classem compărāvit, eīquĕ Dătim præfēcit ĕt Artăphernem.

(*a*) Ĕt connects *independent* words and sentences; quĕ joins one word or sentence to another rather as an appendage. Thus, in (*a*), ĕt

* Prōsŭm is inflected like sŭm, but inserts d before the vowels; *e. g.,* prod-esse, prōd-ĕs, prod-est (not pro-es, pro-est).

joins Datim and Artăphernem; and quĕ joins the sentence "*placed over it*," &c., as an appendage to the *equipment* of the fleet.

(*b*) *Fierce* and *barbarous men were coming into the province*, and *were hastening into Italy.*	Hŏmĭnes fĕri āc barbări ĭn prōvinciam vĕniēbant atquĕ ĭn Italiam contendēbant.

(*b*) Āc is used before *consonants*, but not before *vowels* or *h*. Atquĕ may be used before either vowels or consonants.

(*c*) *Cæsar* both *had indulged* and *was greatly confident in the tenth legion.*	Dĕcĭmæ lĕgiōnī Cæsar ĕt indulsĕrat ĕt confīdēbat maxĭmē.

(*c*) Ĕt followed by *another* ĕt means *both—and*.

(*d*) (1) *Again and again.*	Ĕtiăm atquĕ ĕtiăm.
(2) *And again.*	Ĕt ĕtiam.
(3) *Not only—but also.*	Nōn sōlŭm—sĕd ĕtiam.

(518.) *Translate into English.*

Orgĕtŏrix ăd jūdĭcium omnĕm suăm fămĭlĭam coēgĭt, ĕt omnēs clientēs ŏbærātōsquĕ eōdĕm (*adv.*) conduxĭt.—Carthāgo ĕt Cŏrinthŭs atquĕ Numantia, ŏpŭlentissĭmæ quōndăm ĕt vălĭdissimæ cīvĭtātes, dēlētæ sunt ă Rōmānis.—Cæsăr fĭnem prŏpĕrandī (489) făcĭt, pontemquĕ ăd flūmĕn Rhēnum pōnit.—Dīscĭpŭli ĕt audiunt ĕt ămant præceptōrēs.—Rōmāni nōn sōlum ĭtĭnĕrum causă (135, II., R.) sĕd ĕtiam possessiōnĭs, culmĭnă montium occupāvērunt.—Nōn sōlum vīrēs (*plural of* vīs) sĕd ĕtiam tēlă nostrīs (*dat.*) dēfĭciēbant.—Hīs rēbus Dumnŏrix ĕt suam rĕm fămĭlĭārem auxĕrat ĕt făcultātes ăd largiendŭm magnās compărāvĕrat.—Hostes ĕt ē lŏcō superĭōre ĭn nostros tēla conjĭciēbant ĕt nonnullī intĕr carrōs rōtasquĕ trāgŭlās subjĭciēbant, nostrosquĕ vulnĕrābant.—Contemnuntŭr ĭī quī nĕc sibi nĕc alterī (194, R. 1) prōsunt.—Nĕc mĕlĭŏr vĭr fuit Scīpiōne (360, *c*) quisquăm, nĕc clārĭŏr.—Æduī nĕquĕ obsĭdes rĕpĕtīvērunt nĕquĕ auxĭlium implōrāvērunt.—Săpientĕm nĕquĕ paupertās nĕquĕ mors nĕquĕ vincŭlă terrent.—Nĭmius somnŭs nĕquĕ corpŏrī nĕquĕ ănĭmō (*dat.*, 516) prodest.—Rŏgo tē, ĕt ōro; ĕtiam ātquĕ ĕtiam tē rŏgo.—Æduī sĕmĕl atquĕ ĭtĕrŭm cŭm Germānīs contendĕrant.—Mīlites ex castrīs ērūpērunt (ērumpĕre) atquĕ omnem spĕm sălūtis ĭn virtūtĕ pŏsuērunt.

LESSON LXXXV.

Disjunctive and Adversative Conjunctions.

(519.) I. THE disjunctive conjunctions (meaning *or*) are aut, vĕl, vĕ, and sīvĕ *or* seu.

Rem. 1. Aut indicates a *real* difference of object; *e. g.*,

Here, soldiers, we must conquer or *die!*	Hīc vincendum aut moriendum, mīlitēs!

When aut is used, but *one* of the conditions can be fulfilled, as in the above example.

Rem. 2. Vĕl (derived from vellĕ) means *if you wish*, or *rather*. (Hence it is used for *even*.)

The nobles can either *corrupt* or *correct the morals of the state* (*i. e.*, they can do *whichever they please*).	Virī nōbilēs vĕl corrumpĕrĕ mōrēs cīvitātis, vĕl corrigĕrĕ possunt.

Rem. 3. Vĕ is always affixed to another word; duŏ, trēsve = *two* or *three*.

Rem. 4. These conjunctions are frequently *repeated*.

Either—or,	aut—aut.
	vĕl—vĕl.
	sīvĕ—sīvĕ.
Whether—or,	seu—seu.

(520.) II. The adversative conjunctions express opposition (*but*).

The most important are,

Ăt, atquī, autĕm, cætĕrŭm, sĕd, vērŭm (*but*).
Tămĕn (*however*); vērŏ (*truly*).

EXERCISE.

(521.) *Vocabulary.*

To run up, accurrĕrĕ (accurr- and accŭcurr-, accurs-, ad+currĕrĕ).	*To pay up*, persolvĕre (solv-, sŏlūt-).
Very rich, perdīvĕs, (dīvĭt) ĭs (per+dīvĕs), 107.	*To suffer full punishment*, pœnās persolvĕrĕ.
Chance, cāsŭs, ūs. *By chance*, cāsū (abl.).	*Handsome*, formōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Goodness, bŏnĭtās (ātis).	*Eloquent*, fācundŭs, ă, ŭm.
	Ulysses, Ulysses, (Ulyss) ĭs.

To possess, possĭdĕrĕ (possēd-, possess-).
Weeping, flētŭs, ūs.
Effect, effectŭs, ūs.
Sorrow, sadness, tristĭtĭă, æ.
Generally, plerumquĕ (adv.).
Joy, gaudĭŭm, ī.
Daily, quŏtĭdiānŭs, ă, ŭm.
A living being, ănĭmans, (animant) ĭs (107).
Motion, mōtŭs, ūs.
Various, dīversus, ă, ŭm.
To swim, nātārĕ (āv-, āt-).
Sometimes, interdum.

(522.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Those are to be esteemed brave, not who do, but who ward off injury.*
Fortēs sunt hăbendī, nōn quī făciunt, sĕd quī prōpulsant injūriăm.

(*b*) *Gyges was seen by nobody, but he himself saw all things.*
Gygēs ă nullō vīdēbātur, ipsĕ autĕm omniă vīdēbăt.

(*a*) Sĕd indicates a *strong* opposition; it always stands first in its clause, as in (*a*).

(*b*) Autĕm expresses a weaker opposition than sĕd. Autĕm and vēro *never* stand first in a sentence, but always after one or more words.

(523.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī cĕlĕrĭtĕr accurrērunt; ăt Germāni fortĭter impĕtum glădiōrum excēpērunt.—Ămīci rēgis duŏ trēsvĕ (519, R. 3) perdīvites sunt.—Sīvĕ cāsū (55, *a*) sīvĕ consĭlĭō deōrum immortālium, pœnās persolvērunt.—Nonnullī, sīvĕ fēlīcĭtāte (*abl.*) quādăm, sīvĕ bŏnĭtāte nātūræ, rectăm vītæ sĕcūti sunt viăm.—Fortēs ĕt magnănĭmi sunt hăbendī, nōn quī făciunt sĕd quī prōpulsant injūriam.—Nōn formōsus ĕrat, sĕd ĕrat făcundus Ulyssēs.—Ăvārus nōn possĭdĕt dīvĭtiās (57, R.) sed dīvĭtiæ possident eŭm.—Flētŭs plērumquĕ est effectŭs tristĭtiæ; interdŭm vēro ĕtiam (*even*) gaudiī.—Helvĕtii fĕrē quŏtĭdiānis prælĭis (55, *a*) cŭm Germānis contendunt, quum aut suis fīnĭbus eōs prōhĭbent, aut ipsī ĭn eōrum fīnĭbus bellum gĕrunt.—Ănĭmantium mōtŭs dīversus est; vĕl ambŭlant ĕt currunt, vĕl vŏlant, vĕl nătant.—Corpŭs mŏritŭr (*dcp.*), vērŭm ănĭmŭs nunquam mŏriētŭr.—Mīlites nostrī fortēs fuērunt, sĕd ăvāri.

§ 16.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—(LXXXVI.—XCII.)

(524.) The subjunctive mood expresses affirmation *doubtfully, indefinitely,* or as *conceived by the mind;* e. g., *I may write; I might write; I might have written; if I should write; if I had written.*

Rem.—The subjunctive has no future tense-form.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Subjunctive Present.

(525.) Forms of ess ĕ (*to be*) in subjunctive present.

Pres.	sĭm, *I may be.*	sis, *thou mayest be.*	sĭt, *he, she, it may be.*	sīmŭs, *we may be.*	sitĭs, *ye may be.*	sint, *they may be.*

(526.) Forms of regular verbs.

(*a*) The subjunctive present adds the person-endings

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*, and

r, ris or re, tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,

to the verb-stem by means of the following connecting vowels, viz.,

			Active.	Passive.
1st conj.,	e;	*e. g.,*	ăm-ĕ-m,	am-ĕ-r.
2d conj.,	ĕa;	*e. g.,*	mŏn-eă-m,	mŏn-eă-r.
3d conj.,	a;	*e. g.,*	rĕg-ă-m,	rĕg-ă-r.
4th conj.,	ĭa;	*e. g.,*	aud-ĭa-m,	aud-ĭa-r.

(*b*) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Active.—*I may love, advise, rule, hear.*						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ăm-	ĕm.	ĕs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ĕnt.
mŏn-	ĕăm.	ĕās.	ĕăt.	ĕāmŭs.	ĕātĭs.	ĕānt.
rĕg-	ăm.	ās.	ăt.	āmŭs.	ātĭs.	ānt.
aud-	ĭam.	ĭās.	ĭăt.	ĭāmŭs.	ĭatĭs.	ĭant.
Passive.—*I may be loved, advised, ruled, heard.*						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ăm-	ĕr.	ĕrĭs *or* ĕrĕ.	ētŭr.	ēmŭr.	ēmĭnī.	ēntŭr.
mŏn-	ĕăr.	ĕărĭs *or* ărĕ.	ĕātŭr.	ĕāmŭr.	ĕāmĭnī.	ĕāntŭr.
rĕg-	ăr.	ārĭs *or* ărĕ.	ātŭr.	āmŭr.	āmĭnī.	āntŭr.
aud-	ĭăr.	ĭārĭs *or* ărĕ.	ĭatŭr.	ĭāmŭr.	ĭāmĭnī.	ĭantŭr.

EXERCISE.

(527.) *Vocabulary.*

Value, prētĭŭm, ī.
To obey, pārērē (pārŭ-); governs *dat.*
To despair, dēspērāre (āv-, āt-).
Otherwise, ălītĕr (*adv.*).
To hinder, impĕdīre (īv-, īt-).
Carefully, stŭdiōsē (*adv.*).
To exercise, exercēre (exercŭ-, exercīt-).
To grieve, dŏlēre (dŏlŭ-, dŏlĭt-).
Would that, ŭtīnam (conj.).
To fear, mĕtuĕre (mĕtŭ-).
Incredible, incrēdĭbĭlis, e (104).
Mind (*talent*), ingĕnium, ī.
To be ignorant, ignōrāre (āv-, āt-).
To deny, nĕgāre (āv-, āt-).
To know, noscĕrē (nōv-, nōt-).
To afford, præbĕre (præbŭ-, præbĭt-).
To make one's self a judge, sē jŭdĭcēm præbĕrē.
To apply, to employ, adhĭbĕrē (ŭ-, ĭt-).
Cautious, cautŭs, ă, ŭm.
Rashly, tĕmĕrē (*adv.*).
Ever, unquām (*adv.*).
Truly, obviously, prorsŭs (*adv.*).
Finally, dēnīquĕ (*adv.*).

(528.) *Examples.*

[The principal use of the subjunctive in Latin is in dependent sentences; but in this lesson we show its uses in *principal* sentences, in which it occurs only when something is said without *definiteness* or *certainty*.]

(*a*) 1. *No sane man* can doubt *about the value of virtue.*	Nēmo sānus dē virtūtis prētiō dŭbĭtĕt.
2. *May I be safe!*	Sĭm salvŭs!
3. *I hope you are well* (= may you be safe).	Salvŭs sīs!
4. *May I not be safe, if I write otherwise than I think.*	Nē sĭm salvus, sī ălītĕr scrībo ăc sentio.
5. *I hope my father is alive* (= would that my father may be alive).	Ŭtīnam păter vīvat.
6. *I wish he would come.*	Ŭtīnam vĕniăt.

(*a*) The subjunctive present is used for the English potential, *may*, *can*, &c., and also to express a *wish*, when the thing wished is *possible*. A *negative* wish is expressed by nē prefixed, as in (4).

(*b*) 1. *Let us believe.*	Crēdāmŭs.
2. *Let us obey virtue.*	Virtūtī pāreāmus.
3. *Do not despair.*	Nē dēspēres.

(*b*) The subjunctive present is used, instead of the imperative, to soften a command. Nĕ is used for prohibition.

(*c*) *Who would not love virtue?*	Quis virtūtem nōn ămet?
What can I do?	Quĭd făciam?
Who is ignorant?	Quĭs īgnōret?
Who can doubt?	Quĭs dŭbĭtet?

(*c*) The subjunctive present is used in *direct* questions when any doubt is implied. (In English, we generally use *can*, *will*, *would*, &c., in such questions.)

(529.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) Use of subjunctive as *potential*, or to express a *wish* (the latter indicated by !).

Tempus vĕniat.—Salvŭs sīs! ămīcĕ.—Făveăt fortūnă!—Ŭtĭnam hōc vērŭm sĭt!—Diū vīvās!—Nēmo bŏnus dē Prōvĭdentiā Deī dŭbĭtĕt.—Mŏriăr, sī ălĭter scrībo ăc sentio.—Ŭtĭnam nēmo tē impĕdiat!—Ŭtĭnam dŏmum meam vērīs ămīcīs (55, *a*) impleam!

(*b*) Use of subjunctive as *imperative*.

Sē quisquĕ studiōsē exerceat.—Nātūram, optĭmam ducem, sĕquāmur, ĕĭquĕ pārĕāmus.—Amēmus pătriam, pāreāmus sĕnātuī, cōnsŭlāmus bŏnīs.—Suum quisquĕ noscăt ingĕnium, ăcremquĕ sē ĕt bŏnōrum ĕt vĭtiōrum suōrŭm jūdicĕm præbeăt.—Nĕ ămētis imprŏbos.—Prūdentiam adhĭbeāmus.—Cautiōrem adhĭbeāmus prūdentiam.—Ĭn rēbus grāviōrĭbus cautiōrem adhĭbeāmus prūdentiam, sĕd nĕc ĭn lĕviōrĭbus tĕmĕrĕ unquam ăgāmus.—Nĕ dŏleās.

(*c*) Use of subjunctive in *direct questions*.

Quĭs hōc crēdat?—Quĭs fābŭlās istās crēdat?—Quĭs imprŏbōs ăc stultōs dīlĭgat?—Quis eŭm dīlĭgat quĕm mĕtuit?—Quĭs crēdat illŭd quŏd prorsŭs incrēdĭbĭlĕ est?—Quĭs dē virtūtis prĕtiō dŭbĭtet?—Quĭd făciāmus?—Quĭs nĕget omnēs lĕvēs, omnēs ăvārōs, omnēs dēnĭque imprŏbōs essĕ servōs?

(530.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) No wise (man) can doubt concerning the benevolence of God.—My friends, I hope you are well (= may you be safe).

—I-hope-that (*utinam*) the commander is alive (= may live).—I hope our friends may come!—May these things be true!—May the citizens be wise.

(*b*) Let us not believe this.—Do not believe these fables.—Let us exercise ourselves diligently.—Let us love our friends, let us obey our parents, let us worship God.—Know your (own) mind.—Let the soldiers take-possession-of the mountain.—Let us not love the wicked.

(*c*) Who can say this?—Who can love a fool?—Who would obey a wicked king?—What good (man) can doubt concerning the value of virtue?—Who can deny that all avaricious men are slaves?

LESSON LXXXVII.

Subjunctive Perfect.

(531.) Form of esse (*to be*) in subjunctive perfect.

fuĕrĭm, *I may have been.*	fuĕrĭs, *thou mayest have been.*	fuĕrĭt, *he, she, it may have been.*	fuĕrĭmŭs, *we may have been.*	fuĕrĭtis, *ye may have been.*	fuĕrint, *they may have been.*

(532.) Forms of regular verbs.

1. The subjunctive perfect active adds the endings

ĕrĭm, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt, ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrĭnt,

to the indic. perf. stem of the verb; *e. g.*, ămāv-ĕrĭm, &c.

2. The subjunctive perfect passive is formed by combining the perfect participle with the subjunctive present of esse; *e. g.*, ămātŭs sĭm, &c.

[☞ Deponents, of course, are formed like passives.]

3. PARADIGM, SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT.

ACTIVE.—*I may have loved, advised, ruled, heard.*						
ămāv- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	ĕrĭm.	ĕrĭs.	ĕrĭt.	ĕrĭmŭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.	ĕrĭnt.
PASSIVE.—*I may have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.*						
Sing. ămātŭs, ă, ŭm, mŏnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, rectŭs, ă, ŭm, auditŭs, ă, ŭm,	sĭm. sĭs. sĭt.		Plur. ămātī, æ, ă, mŏnĭtī, æ, ă, rectī, æ, ă, auditī, æ, ă,	sĭmŭs. sītĭs. sint.		

EXERCISE.

(533.) *Vocabulary.*

Health, vălĕtādō, (valetudin) ĭs (339).
So, thus, ītă (*adv.*)
Kindness, pardon, vĕnĭă, æ.
To take captive, căpĕrĕ (io, cēp-, capt-, 199).
Patience, pătientĭa, æ.
To slay, cut to pieces, cædĕrĕ (occīd-, cæs-, 413, ☞).
It makes no difference, it matters not, nĭhĭl rĕfert.

☞ Form the subjunctive perfect active and passive of the following verbs:

Absŭm, *to be absent* (no passive).
Prōsŭm, *to profit* (do.).
Dēsŭm, *to be wanting* (do.).
Vŏcārĕ, *to call.*
Confirmārĕ, *to assert.*
Dīcĕrĕ, *to say* (dix-, dict-).
Trādĕrĕ, *to assert, deliver* (tradid-, tradit-).
Laudare, *to praise.*
Vĭdēre, *to see.*
Invĕnīre, *to find* (invēn-, invent-).
Scrībĕrĕ, *to write.*
Făcĕrĕ (io-, fēc-, fact-), *to do.*
Lŏquī (lŏcūt-), *to speak* (*dep.*).
Censĕrĕ (censŭ-, cens-), *to think.*
Opprĭmĕrĕ (press-, press-), *to repress, crush.*
Constituĕre (stĭtŭ-, stitūt-), *to place.*
Oppugnārĕ, *to assault.*
Rĕvŏcārĕ, *to recall, restore.*

(534.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *Do not do it.* | Nē fēcĕrĭs.

(*a*) The subjunctive perfect (as well as the present) may be used in prohibitions, with nē, or nĭhĭl, instead of the imperative.

(*b*) *By your leave I would say.* | Pācĕ tuā dixĕrĭm; or, Vĕnĭă tuā dixĕrĭm.
Epicurus may have said. | Dixĕrĭt Epĭcūrus.
Perchance some one may say. | Forsĭtăn ălĭquis dixĕrĭt.

(*b*) The subjunctive perfect may be used with or without an adverb, to express a *supposed case* (that *may* be true).

(*c*) *I think I can assert this.* | Hōc confirmāvĕrĭm.
You will scarcely find a man of any nation. | Vix ullĭus gentĭs hŏmĭnem invēnĕrĭs.

(*c*) The subjunctive perfect (as well as present) is used to *soften an assertion.* (Such phrases as, *Probably I might, I think I can, I would, perhaps*, &c., can be expressed in Latin by one word in the perfect subjunctive, as above.)

(*d*) (1) *Why do you laugh?*	Cūr rīdēs?
(2) Tell me *why you laugh.*	Dīc* mihi cūr rīdeās.
(1) *Where have you been?*	Ŭbĭ fuisti?
(2) I do not know *where you have been.*	Nescio ŭbi fuĕris?

The sentences marked (1) are *direct* interrogative sentences, and take the indicative mood; those marked (2) are *indirect* (or *subordinate*) interrogative sentences, and take the subjunctive. Hence,

(*e*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive mood is used in all indirect interrogative sentences.

Rem. Such sentences are introduced by the interrogative pronouns quis, qui, quantus, qualis, uter, &c., or the adverbs ubi, unde, quando, quo, cur, num, utrum, an, &c.

(535.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) Quŏd dŭbĭtas, nē fēcĕris.—Id nē dixĕris.—Nihĭl incommŏdō (*to the injury*) vāletūdĭnis tuæ fēcĕris.—Cŭm imprŏbis āc stultis nē lŏcūtus sīs.

(*b*) Făciat hōc ălĭquis.—Fēcĕrit hōc ălĭquis.—Dixĕrit Epĭcūrŭs, Deum essĕ nullum.—Forsĭtan eŭm āmāvĕris.—Forsĭtan ĭtă censuĕris.—Puerŭm magistrī mŏnuĕrint.—Urbĕm hostes oppugnāvĕrint.

(*c*) Frātĕr (*voc.*), bŏnă tuă vēnīă dixĕrim, meă sententiă mĕliŏr est.—Pătientiam laudāvĕrim boum (351, 2) atque ĕquōrum.—Ingĕniă studiăquĕ oppressĕris făcĭlius (376) quăm rĕvŏcāvĕrĭs.

(*d*) Nescio cūr rīdeās.—Dīc, cūr ăd mĕ nōn vĕnĕris.—Helvētiī ĭbĭ ĕrunt, ŭbĭ eōs Cæsar constĭtŭerit.—Magnō cŭm pĕrīcŭlō (89, II.) ĭd fēcit.—Intellĭgit, quantō cŭm perīcŭlō ĭd fēcĕrit.—Multī ĭn prælĭo cæsī sunt.—Multī ĭn prælĭo captī sunt.—Ŭbi (*when*) victōriă āmissă est (*is lost*) nihĭl rēfert, quŏt ĭn prælĭo cæsī aut ĭn fugă captī sint.—Dīc mihi ŭbi fuĕris.

(536.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) *Do not love* the wicked.—*Do not hear* the foolish.

* The imperative of dicĕrĕ is dīc, not dicĕ.

(*b*) Some philosophers *may-have-denied* the soul to be immortal.—*Perhaps-you-have-advised* the young-man.

(*c*) *I think-I-can-advise* the young man.—*You may* easily *repress* the minds of young men.—*You cannot* easily *recall* the industry (studium) of men.

(*d*) The mind itself knows-not *what* (quālĭs) *the mind is.*—Tell me *where you were.*—I-do-not-know why *you did not come* to me.—Tell (me), *were you* (fuerisne) in school yesterday?—It makes no difference *how many are taken-captive.*—The boy will remain (erit) there, *where the* master *may appoint* him.—I will tell you *what I have seen.*—I will tell you *what I have heard.*—Tell me *what you have done.*

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect.—Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(537.) THE subjunctive imperfect simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*,

r, ris (re), tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,

to the *present infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Inf. Pres.	Imperf. Subj. Act.	Imperf. Subj. Pass.
esse, *to be.*	essem, *I might be.*	
ămārĕ, *to love.*	ămāre-m.	ămāre-r.
rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*	rĕgĕre-m.	rĕgĕre-r.

(538.) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

1. Essĕm.—*I might, could, would, or should be.*					
essĕm.	essēs.	essĕt.	essēmŭs.	essētĭs.	essĕnt.
2. ACTIVE.—*I might, could, would, &c., love, advise, rule, hear.*					
ămār- mŏnēr- rĕgĕr- audīr- ēm.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ĕnt.
3. PASSIVE.—*I might, could, would, &c., be loved, advised, ruled, heard.*					
ămār- mŏnēr- rĕgĕr- audīr- ĕr.	ērĭs *or* ĕrĕ.	ētŭr.	ēmŭr.	ēmĭnī.	entŭr.

Rem.—The vowel e of the ending is *long*, except where it comes before m or t final, when it is short of necessity.

(539.) (*a*) The subjunctive pluperfect *active* simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, m u s, t i s, n t,

to the *past infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Past Infinitive.	Pluperfect Subjunctive.
f u i s s ĕ, *to have been.*	f u i s s ĕ-m, *I might have been.*
ămāvissĕ, *to have loved.*	ămāvissĕ-m, *I might have loved.*

(*b*) The subjunctive pluperfect *passive* is formed by combining the perfect participle with the subjunctive imperfect of e s s ĕ;

E. g., ă m ā t ŭ s e s s ĕ m (sometimes with the subjunctive pluperfect of e s s ĕ; *e. g.*, ă m ā t ŭ s f ŭ i s s ĕ m, &c.).

(*c*) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

1.	*I might, could, would, should have been, &c.*					
f u i s s ĕ m.	f ŭ i s s e s.	f ŭ i s s e t.	f u i s s ē m ŭ s.	f u i s s ē t ī s.	f u i s s ĕ n t.	
2. ACTIVE.—*I might, could, &c., have loved, advised, ruled, heard.*						
ămāv- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	issĕm.	īssēs.	īssĕt.	īssēmŭs.	īssētīs.	issĕnt.
3. PASSIVE.—*I might, could, &c., have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.*						
Sing.	ămatŭs, ă, ŭm, mŏnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, rectus, ă, ŭm, audītŭs, ă, ŭm,	essĕm. essēs. essĕt.	Plur.	amātī, æ, ă, mŏnĭtī, æ, ă, rectī, æ, ă, auditī, æ, ă.	essēmŭs. essētīs. essĕnt.	

Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(540.) (*a*) The conditional conjunctions are s ī, *if;* s ĭ n, *but if;* n ĭ s ĭ, or n ī, *if not, unless.*

(*b*) A conditional sentence is one which is introduced by a conditional conjunction; *e. g.*, *if men were good*, they would be happy.

Rem. The sentence introduced by *if* is called the *conditional* sentence; the other, the *consequent* sentence: *if men were good* is the conditional; *they would be happy*, the consequent.

EXERCISE.

(541.) *Vocabulary.*

To diminish, mīnuĕre (mĭnŭ-, mĭnūt-).	*To subdue,* sŭbĭgĕrĕ (subĕg-, sŭbact-, sŭb+ăgĕrĕ).
To cross over, transīrĕ (irreg.).	*Longer,* diutiŭs (*adv., compar.*).
The world, orbĭs terrārŭm.	*I wish that,* ŭtĭnam (conj.).

(542.) *Examples and Rules.*

(*a*) *Would that my father were alive!*	Ŭtĭnam păter vīvĕret!
I wish he could come!	Ŭtĭnam vĕnīret!

☞ In these examples (which refer to *present* time), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

I wish he had lived!	Ŭtĭnam vixisset!
I wish he had come!	Ŭtĭnam vĕnisset!

☞ In these examples (which refer to *past time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

(*a*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used to express an *impossible supposition*, or a *vain wish*; the *imperfect*, with reference to *present* or *future* time; the *pluperfect*, with reference to past time.

(*b*) *Conditional Sentences.*

(1) *If he has* (*any*) *money,* he gives (it).	Sī pĕcūniam hăbet, dăt.

Here the man is supposed to *have* money; the condition expressed by "*if*" is therefore *real.*

(2) *If he has* (*any*) money, he will give (it).	Sī pĕcūniam hăbeat, dăbit.

Here the condition is *possible,* if not real. The man *may have* money.

(3) If he had *any money, he would give it.*	Sī pĕcūniam hăbēret, dăret.

Here the man is supposed to have *no* money: the condition is *unreal.* (Observe that it refers to *present* or *future time.*)

(4) If he had had *any money, he would have given it.*	Sī pĕcūniam hăbuisset, dĕdisset.

Here the man is supposed not to *have had* any money; the condition is therefore *unreal* (referring to *past* time). Hence,

(*b*) *Rule of Syntax.*—In conditional sentences (1), a *real*

condition is expressed by the indicative; (2) a *possible* condition by the present or perfect subjunctive; (3) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in present time by the imperfect subjunctive; and (4) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time by the *pluperfect subjunctive.*

Rem. 1. In cases (3) and (4), the subjunctive must be used in the *consequent* as well as in the *conditional* sentence.

2. It follows that the perfect or pluperfect indicative can *never* be used with *sī*. *If he had come* = sī vēnisset, not sī vēnĕrat.

(543.) *Translate into English.*

Ūtĭnam salvus essēs.—Sī hōc dīcis, erras.—Sī hōc dīcas, erres.—Sī hōc dīcĕres, errāres.—Sī hōc dixisses, errāvisses.—Sī vēnisses ăd exercĭtum, ăb impĕrātōre vīsus esses.—Frāter mĭhi narrābat quĭd āmīcus tuus fēcisset (534, *d*).—Mĕmŏrĭă mīnuĭtur, nĭsĭ eăm exerceās.—Sī Helvētii flūmen transirĕ cōnentūr, Cæsar eōs prŏhibēbit.—Sī Helvētii flūmen transīre cōnārentur, Cæsar eōs prŏhĭbēret.—Sī Helvētii flūmen transīre cōnāti essent, Cæsar eōs prŏhĭbuissĕt.—Sī obsĭdes ăb Helvētiis Cæsări (54) dentur, cŭm iīs pācem făciet.—Sī obsĭdes ăb Helvētiis Cæsari dărentur cŭm iīs pācem făcĕret.—Sī obsĭdes ăb Helvētiis Cæsarī dătī essent, cŭm iīs pācem fēcisset.—Nōn sŭpĕrārēmur, cīvēs (*voc.*) sī nostrī fortēs essent.—Nōn sŭpĕrāti essēmŭs, cīvēs, sī fortiōres mīlĭtes nōbīs (*dat.*, 125, II., *a*) fuissent.—Alexander tōtum fĕrĕ orbĕm terrārum sŭbēgit.—Alexander, sī diutĭus vixisset, tōtum orbem terrārum sŭbēgisset.

(544.) *Translate into Latin.*

I wish my father *had lived* longer.—*I wish* you *had come.*—*Would-that* the soldiers *had been* braver.—*If you-would-read* this book (542, *b*, 2), *I would give* (it) to you.—*I wish* the general *had led* the army *across* the Rhine.—*If you had* any thing (quĭd), *you would* willingly *give* (it).—*If they had had* the money, *they would* willingly *have given* it.—*If-you-had-loved* the boy, *you-would-have* advised him.—*If you-love* the boy, *you-will-advise* him.—*If* the soldiers *would come* to the army, *they-would-be-praised* by the general.—*If* the Germans *had-led* (their) army *across* the Rhine, Cæsar *would-have-made* an attack upon (in) them.—*If we-are* brave, we shall not be overcome

LESSON LXXXIX.

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose. — Ŭt and Nē.

(545.) THE subjunctive forms of the verb possĕ, *to be able*, are the following:

[Observe that possĕ is compounded of pŏt-, the stem of pŏtis, *able*, and essĕ; thus, pŏt-essĕ, contracted, possĕ. So all similar forms are contracted, and the t changed into s before s.]

Subj. Pres.	(Pŏtis sim = pot-sim = possim.)				
pŏs- sim.	sīs.	sīt.	sīmŭs.	sītis.	sint.
Subj. Imperf.	(Pŏtis essem = potessem = possem.)				
pŏs- sĕm.	sēs.	sĕt.	sēmŭs.	sētis.	sĕnt.
Subj. Perf.	(Pŏtis fuerim = pot-fuerim = potuerim.)				
pŏtŭ- ĕrim.	ĕris.	ĕrit.	ĕrimŭs.	ĕritis.	ĕrint.
Subj. Plup.	(Pŏtis fuissem = pot-fuissem = potuissem.)				
pŏtŭ- issĕm.	issēs.	issĕt.	issēmŭs.	issētis.	issent.

(546.) The *final* conjunctions (*i. e.*, such as denote a *purpose, aim*, or *result*) are ŭt (or ŭtī), nē, quīn, quō, quōmĭnŭs.

Ŭt, or ŭtī, *that, so that, in order that.*
Nē, *that not, so that not, lest.*
Quīn, *but that.*
Quō, *in order that, to the end that.*
Quōmĭnŭs, *that* (after verbs of *hindering*).

EXERCISE.

(547.) *Vocabulary.*

To eat, ĕdĕrĕ (601).
A Rauracian, Raurācŭs, ī.
A Tulingian, Tulingŭs, ī.
To burn up, exūrĕrĕ (exuss-, exust-).
Together, unā (*adv.*).
Basely, turpĭter (215, 2).
To surround, circumvĕnīrĕ (vĕn-, vent-).
To resist, rĕsistĕrĕ (restĭt-, restĭt-).
To fix, hence *to decide*, stātuĕre (stātŭ-, stātū-).
To decide on something quite severe, ălīquid grāviŭs stātuĕrĕ.
To enjoin, præcĭpĕre (io, præcēp-, cept-), præ+căpĕrĕ).
To join battle, prælĭum committĕre.
End, finis, ĭs (m., 355, Ex. II., 2).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose, End, or Object.

(548.) *Examples and Rules.*

(*a*) I beseech you *that you do this*;
or,
I beseech you *to do this.*
} Tē obsĕcro, ŭt hōc făcias.

The general commanded *that the soldiers should keep their stations;* *or,* The general commanded the soldiers *to keep their stations.*	Dux impĕrāvit, ŭt mīlĭtes stătiōnēs suās servārent.
(*b*) I beseech you *that you do not do this;* *or,* I beseech you *not to do this.*	Tē obsĕcro nē hōc făcias.
The general commanded *that the soldiers should not desert their stations;* *or,* The general commanded *the soldiers not to desert their stations.*	Dux impĕrāvit nē mīlĭtes stătiōnes suās dēsĕrĕrent.

(*a*) These examples show that a *purpose* or *aim* may be expressed in English by *that*, *in order that*, or (especially after verbs of *asking* and *commanding*) by the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are expressed by ut, with the *subjunctive.**

(*b*) An object to be *provided against* is introduced in English by *that not*, *in order that not*, or by *not*, with the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are always expressed by nē, with the *subjunctive.*

(549.) *Translate into English.*

1. Ŭt.

Ēdīmus ŭt vīvāmus, nōn vīvīmus ŭt ēdāmus.—Vēnio ŭt discam.—Vēnī ŭt discĕrem.—Orgĕtŏrīx persuādĕt Castĭcō (*dat.*) ŭt regnum occŭpet.—In eō ĭtĭnĕre, persuāsit Castĭcō, cūjus păter regnum ĭn cīvĭtāte suā multōs annōs (191, *a*) obtĭnuĕrat, ŭt regnum ĭn cīvĭtāte suā occŭpāret.—Orgetŏrix persuādet Dumnorĭgi ŭt ĭdĕm (150) cōnētur.—Orgetŏrix persuāsit Dumnorĭgi ŭt ĭdĕm cōnārētur.—Helvētiī persuādent Raurācīs, ŭti cŭm iīs prŏfĭcīscantur.—Helvētiī persuādent Raurācīs ĕt Tulingīs, ŭtī, oppĭdis suīs vīcīsque

* *Jubĕō* takes accusative with infinitive.

exustīs (457), unā cŭm īīs profĭciscantur.—Cæsăr castellă commūnit, ŭt Helvētios prŏhĭbēre possit.—Cæsar castella communīvit ŭt Helvētios prŏhĭbēre posset.—Cæsar rŏgat Divitiācum ŭt fīnem ōrandī făciat.—Cæsar rŏgāvit Divitiācum ŭt fīnem ōrandī făcĕret.—Helvētiis (147) Cæsar impĕrat ŭtī perfŭgās rĕdūcant.—Helvētiīs Cæsar impĕrāvit ŭtī perfŭgas rĕdūcĕrent.

2. Nē.

Tē obsĕcrāvi nē hōc făcĕres.—Păter fīlium obsĕcrat nē quĭd turpĭter făcĕret.—Mīlītes, nē ăb hoste circumvĕnīrentur, audāciŭs (376) resistēre āc fortiŭs pugnāre cœpĕrunt.—Divitiācus Cæsărem obsĕcrat, nē quĭd grăviŭs in frātrem stătuat.—Dīvĭtiācus, multīs cŭm lăcrymīs (89, II.) Cæsărem obsĕcrāre cœpit, nē quĭd grăviŭs in frātrem stătuĕret.—Præceptum est (perf. pres., *it has been enjoined to or upon*) Labiēnō, nē prælium committat, nīsī Cæsăris cōpiæ vīsæ sint (542, *b*, 2).—Præceptum ĕrat Labiēnō, nē prælium committĕret, nīsī Cæsăris cōpiæ vīsæ essent.

[Recollect that a *purpose* or *aim* is often expressed in English by the *infinitive*; but in Latin *never*—always by ut with the subjunctive for a *positive* aim, by ne with the subjunctive for a *negative* aim.]

(550.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general commands the lieutenant (147) *not to do* (= *that he may not do*) this.—The general exhorted the soldiers *to make* (= *that they should make*) the attack sharply.—The father beseeches his daughter *to make* an end of praying.—Some-men (quīdam) live *to eat*, not eat *to live*.—He comes *to see* the general.—He came *to see* the general.—The Helvetians persuade the Tulingians *to set out* together with them.—The captive beseeches the general *not to decide-on* any-thing at-all-severe against (in) him (sē).—Cæsar commands the Gauls (147) *to bring back* (= *that they should bring back*) the deserters.—The Romans, *that they might not be surrounded* by the Gauls, began to fight more bravely.—The commander enjoins-it-upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.—The commander enjoined it upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.

LESSON XC.

Succession of Tenses.—Ŭt expressing a Result.

(551.) (1.) We cannot say in English, "*He comes, that he might see the general*;" or, "*He came, that he may see the general*;" but we must say, "He *comes*, that he *may* see the general," and, "He *came*, that he *might* see the general." It is obvious that this tense of the verb in the subordinate sentence depends upon that of the principal sentence; and this dependence is called *the succession of tenses*.

2. The tenses of the Latin verb are divided into *primary* and *historical*.

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(*a*) *Primary*,	ămăt, *he loves.*	ămābĭt, *he will love.*	ămāvĭt, *he has loved.*
	Imperfect.	**Pluperfect.**	**Perf. Aorist.**
(*b*) *Historical*,	ămābăt, *he was loving.*	ămāvĕrăt, *he had loved.*	ămāvĭt, *he loved.*

3. The *Rule* for the succession of tenses then is: If there be a *primary* tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary tense in the subordinate sentence; if a *historical* tense in the principal, a *historical* tense in the subordinate.

[The examples in the preceding lesson illustrate this rule, and those in the present lesson will farther confirm it.]

EXERCISE.

(552.) *Vocabulary.*

To strive, contend, nĭti (nĭs- and nix-), *dep.*
Despair, despērātĭō, (desperation) ōnis (333, R.).
To run together, concurrĕre (concurr- and concŭcurr-, concurs-).
Storm, tempestās, (tempestāt) ātis (293).
To rise (as a storm), coorīrī (coort-, con+orīrī).
Palisade (*rampart of stakes*) vallŭm, ī.
To cut or *tear down*, scindĕrĕ (scĭd-, sciss-).
To begin, incĭpĕrĕ (incēp-, incept-, in+căpĕrĕ).
To afford means or *facilities*, dărĕ făcultātem.
Deceit, dŏlŭs, ī.
Rather, măgĭs.
Integrity, prōbĭtās, (prōbĭtāt) ātis (293).
Course, cursŭs, ūs.
Change, commūtātio (ōnis, 333, R.).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Result.

(553.) *Examples and Rules.*

So great is the power of integrity, that we esteem it even in an enemy.	Tantă vīs prŏbĭtātis est, ŭt eăm vĕl ĭn hostĕ dīlĭgā mus.
The Helvetians have been so taught by (= have so learned from) their fathers, that they contend (or, *as to contend*) *rather with valour than deceit.*	Helvētii ĭtă ă pătrĭbus suīs dĭdĭcērunt, ŭt măgis virtūte quăm dŏlō nītantur.

(*a*) These examples show that a *result* (especially after the words *such*, *so*, *so great*, &c.) is expressed in English by *that* with the indicative, or, *as to* with the infinitive; in Latin, by ŭt with the subjunctive.

(*b*) *Rule of Syntax.*—Ŭt, signifying *that*, and introducing a *result*, governs the subjunctive.

Rem. Ŭt, expressing a *result*, generally follows the correlative words tālīs, tantus (*such, so great*); ădĕo, sīc, ĭtă (*so*); and verbs signifying *to accomplish, to bring to pass*, &c.

(554.) *Translate into English.*

Impĕrātor perfĭcit, ŭtī Sēquāni dent obsĭdēs.—Dummorix perfĭcit, ŭtī Sēquāni dent obsides, nē ĭtĭnĕre (153, *a*) Helvētiōs prohĭbeant (548, *b*).—Imperātor tantā vī (55, *a*) oppĭdum oppugnat, ŭt desperātio ănĭmos oppĭdānōrum occŭpet (551, 3).—Impĕrātŏr tantā vī oppĭdum oppugnāvit ŭt despĕrātio ănĭmos oppĭdānōrum occupāret.—Tantus tĭmor omnem exercĭtum occupāvit, ŭt omnĭŭm ănĭmos perturbāret.—Tantă tempestas sŭbĭtō coortă est (*perf. aor.*) ŭt nāvēs cursum tĕnērĕ nōn possent.—Impĕrātor tantam sĭbĭ (54) jăm ĭn Galliă auctorĭtātem compărāvĕrat, ŭt undĭque ăd eum lēgātiōnes concurrĕrent (551, 3).—Gallī vallum scindunt.—Gallī vallum scindĕre ĕt fossam complēre incĭpiunt.—Gallī sīc nostrōs contemnunt, ŭt vallum scindĕre ĕt fossam complēre incĭpiant.—Oppĭdum nāturā (55, *a*) lŏcī sīc muniēbātur, ŭt magnam ăd dūcendum (496) bellum dărĕt făcultātem.—Auxiliōrum adventū (55) magnă rērum commutātio facta est.

—Hōrum adventū tantă rērum commutātio factă est, ŭt nostrī fortius pugnārent atque hostēs rĕpellĕrent.

(555.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect that *as to* with the English infinitive must be translated by *ut* with subjunctive.]

The commander *brought-it-to pass that* the Sequanians *gave* hostages. — The Sequanians *gave* hostages *that* they would *not prohibit* the Helvetians from (their) journey (153, *a*).—*So-great-a* fear suddenly *seizes* the whole army, *that it alarms* the minds of all.—*So great* a tempest suddenly *arises*, *that* the ships *can* not hold their course.—The commander *procures* for himself *so great* authority in Italy, *that* even the senators *run-together* to him.—The Helvetians begin to cut-down the bridge. —The Helvetians *so despised* our men, *that* they *began* to cut down the bridge.—By the approach of the Æduans, so great a change was made *that* the Helvetians *began* to fight more bravely.—The Helvetians *had so learned* from their fathers, *as to contend* rather with valour than deceit.

LESSON XCI.

Periphrastic Conjugation, Subjunctive.—Use of quō, quīn, quōmĭnŭs, with the Subjunctive.

(556.) THE want of a future subjunctive is supplied to some extent by the periphrastic conjugation, formed by combining the participles in rŭs and dŭs with the subjunctive tenses of essĕ, *to be*.

	ACTIVE.	
Pres.	ămātūrŭs sĭm,	*I may be about to love.*
Imperf.	ămātūrŭs essĕm,	*I might be about to love.*
Perf.	ămātūrŭs fŭĕrĭm,	*I may have been about to love.*
Pluperf.	ămātūrŭs fuissĕm,	*I might have been about to love.*
	PASSIVE.	
Pres.	ămandŭs sĭm,	*I may be to be loved (one must love me)*
Imperf.	ămandŭs essĕm,	*I might be to be loved.*
Perf.	ămandŭs fŭĕrĭm,	*I may have been to be loved.*
Pluperf.	ămandŭs fuissĕm,	*I might have been to be loved.*
	Esse (*to be*).	
Pres.	fūtūrŭs sĭm,	*I may be about to be.*
Imperf.	fūtūrŭs essĕm,	*I might be about to be.*

EXERCISE.

(557.) *Vocabulary.*

To hold back, restrain, rētĭnĕrĕ (rē-tĭnŭ-, rētent-, rĕ+tĕnĕre).
To stand in the way, prevent, obstārĕ (obstĭt-, obstāt-, ob+stāre).
To sustain, sustĭnēre (tĭnŭ-, tent-, sub+tĕnĕrĕ).
Novelty, nŏvĭtās, (nŏvĭtāt) ĭs (293).
To decree, consciscĕrĕ (conscīv-, conscīt-).
To commit suicide, sĭbĭ mortem consciscĕrĕ (= to decree death to one's self).
Cowardice, ignāvia, æ.
To take away from, ērĭpĕrĕ (io-, ērĭpu-, ērept-); governs *acc.* and *abl.*
To train, educate, ēdūcārĕ (āv-, āt-).
To deceive, fallĕrĕ (fĕfell-, fals-).
It was Cæsar's fault, Per Cæsărem stĕtit (= it stood through Cæsar).
To finish, perfĭcĕre (perfēc-, perfect-).
Suspicion, suspĭcio, ōnĭs (333, R.).

(558.) *Examples and Rules.*

(*a*) Cæsar erects forts, *that he may the more easily* keep off the Helvetians.	Cæsar castellă commūnit, quō făcĭlius Helvētios prōhĭbēre possit.

(*a*) Quō is used to express a purpose (instead of ŭt), especially when a *comparative* enters the sentence.

Cæsar castellă commūnit ŭt possit (*that he may*, &c.).
Cæsar castellă commūnit quō făcilius possit (*that he may more easily*, &c.).

(*b*) (1) *There is no one but thinks;* or, *There is no one who does not think.*	Nēmo est quīn pŭtet.
(2) *There is no one so brave as not to be confounded.*	Nēmo est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.
(3) *It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.*	Nōn dŭbium est quīn mīlĭtes fortĭtĕr pugnātūri sint.
(4) *I did not doubt that the soldiers would fight bravely.*	Nōn dŭbitābam quīn mīlĭtes fortĭter pugnātūri essent.
(5) They could not be restrained *from hurling darts* (= but that they should hurl darts).	Nōn pŏtĕrant rētĭnēri quīn tēlă conjĭcĕrent.

(*b*) Quīn is used in the sense of "*but*," or "*as not*," after negative sentences; and in the sense of "*that not*," and "*that*," after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.; in the sense of "*from*" (= but that) after verbs of restraining, &c.

(*c*) (1) *What stands in the way of Julius being happy* (= what stands in the way *in order that* Julius may *not* be happy)?	Quĭd obstat quōmĭnus Jūlius sĭt bĕatus?
(2) *Nothing hinders him from doing this* (= nothing impedes, *in order* that he may *not*).	Nĭhil impĕdit, quōmĭnus hōc făciat.

(*c*) Quōmĭnŭs is used (in preference to nē) after verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, *standing in the way of*, &c. (It can generally be rendered into English by *of*, or *from*, with a participle, as above.)

(559.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) Quō (= *in order that*, used instead of ŭt, with *comparatives*).

Cæsar mīlĭtes hortātus est ŭt fortĭŏres essent.—Cæsar mīlites hortātus est quō fortĭōres essent.—Eō ŏpĕre perfectō (456) Cæsar præsĭdĭă dispōnit, castellă commūnit, quō făcĭlius, sī Helvetiī transīre conentur (542, *b*, 2) prŏhĭbēre possit.—Scripsī, ŭt auctōrĭtātem hăbĕrem.—Scripsī quō ĭn suadendō (488) plūs auctōrĭtātis (186, *a*) hăbĕrem.—Auxĭlium rōgant, ŭt hostiŭm cōpias sustĭneant.—Subsĭdium rōgant, quō făcĭlius hostium cōpias sustĭneant.

(*b*) Quīn (= *but that*).

Nēmo est tam fortis quīn rēī nŏvĭtāte (55, *a*) perturbētŭr.—Orgĕtorix mortuus est, nĕquĕ abest suspĭcio quīn ipsĕ sĭbĭ mortem conscīvĕrit.—Helvētii nōn dŭbĭtant quīn Rōmāni Æduīs (*abl.*, *verb of depriving*) lĭbertātem ēreptūrī sint.—Nōn dŭbium est quīn cīvēs, ŭbĭ (*when*) patriă ĭn pĕrīcŭlō fŭtūră sĭt (534, *e*), fortĭter pugnātūri sint.—Nōn dŭbĭto quīn puĕrum bĕnĕ ēdūcātūrus sīs.—Turpĕ est fallī.—Turpiŭs est fallĕre.—Nōn dŭbium est quīn turpius sĭt fallĕre quam fallī.—Germānī rĕtĭnēri nōn potĕrant quīn ĭn nostrōs tēlă conjĭcĕrent.

(*c*) Quōmĭnŭs (= *in order that not*).

Pĕr Lăbiēnum stĕtit quōmĭnus Rōmānī oppĭdum occupārent.—Nostrōrum ignāviā obstābat quōmĭnus hostēs sŭpersārentur.—Nōn mē impedīēs quōmĭnus ĭd făciam.—Sānectūs nōn impĕdit quōmĭnus littĕrārum stŭdiă tĕnĕāmus.

(560.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(*a*) Quō.

Cæsar, having finished the work (= the work being finished), exhorted the soldiers *to be of a braver* spirit (fortiorĕ ănĭmō).—I ask your assistance, that I *may do this* the more easily.

(*b*) Quĭn.

There is *no one who does not think* that the wise *are* always happy.—It is *not doubtful that* Cæsar *will cross* the Rhine.—I do *not doubt that* my father *will come*.—*I was not doubting that you had educated* the boys well.

(*c*) Quōmĭnŭs.

Nothing *hinders me from being* happy.—*It was the fault of* the commander *that* the soldiers *did not fight* bravely.—The cowardice of the commander *stood in the way of* our taking-possession-of the town.

LESSON XCII.

Use of Quŭm, with the Subjunctive.

(561.) The conjunction quum (sometimes written cum) has two uses: (1) to denote *time* simply (*when, while*); (2) to denote a *cause*, or *reason* (*since*). The former is called quum *temporal*, the latter quum *causal*.

EXERCISE.

(562.) *Vocabulary.*

To contemplate, contemplārī (ăt-), *dep.*	*To get sight of*, conspĭcĕre (spex-, spect-).
To perceive, ănĭmadvertĕrĕ (vert-, vers-, animum+ad+vertere).	*Incessant, continuous*, continens, (nent) is (107).
To delay, tardārĕ (ăv-, ăt-).	*Of right, justly*, jūrĕ (*abl.* of jūs).

To order, jŭbĕrĕ, does not take *ut* with subj., but acc. with inf.; *he ordered them to await* = jussĭt eōs expectārĕ.

Destruction, interĭtŭs, ūs.
To make-haste, mātūrāre (av-, at-)
To announce, nuntiārĕ (āv-, āt-).
To meet, convĕnīre (vĕn-, vent-).

(563.) *Examples and Rules.*

(*a*) *When we contemplate the firmament, we wonder at the greatness of God.*	Quum cœlum contemplāmur, Deī magnĭtūdinem admīrāmur.

(*a*) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum, when used *simply* to express the *time* (especially with the primary tenses), is followed by the indicative.

(*b*) *Cæsar, when he had conquered* (= *having conquered*) *Pompey, crossed over into Asia.*	Cæsar, quum Pompeium vīcisset, in Asĭam trājēcit.

(*b*) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *temporal* is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, if the events described *depend* on each other, and especially when the aorist perfect is used in the principal sentence.

[In the above example, the verb trajecit, of the principal sentence, is in the aorist perfect. In all such cases, the subordinate sentence with quum can be rendered by the English *participle*, as in the example above, and in the two following.]

The prætor, having come (= when he had come) *into the forum, perceived.*	Prætor, quum in fŏrum vēnisset, ănĭmadvertit (perf.).
The commander, having got sight of the enemy, ordered.	Impĕrātor, quum hostēs conspexissit, jussit.
(*c*) *Since these things are so.*	Quæ quum ĭtă sint.
Since they cannot defend themselves.	Quum sē dēfendĕre nōn possint.
Although the soldiers were retarded by rains, yet they overcame all (obstacles).	Mīlĭtes, quum imbrĭbus tardārentur, tămen omnĭă sŭperāvērunt.

(*c*) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *causal* (signifying *since*, or *although*) is always followed by the subjunctive.

(564.) *Translate into English.*

1. Quum *temporal*, with subjunctive (563, *b*).

Cæsar, quum ĭd nuntiātum esset, mātūravit ăb urbe prŏficiscī.—Quum lēgio dĕcĭmă constĭtisset, omnēs hostēs ăd eŭm lŏcum contendērunt.—Quum lēgātus ad oppĭdum accessisset, puĕri mŭliĕrēsquĕ pācem ăb Rōmānis pĕtīvērunt.—Quum Cæsar ăd oppidum accessisset, oppĭdāni pācem ăb eō pĕtiērunt.—Quum imperātor signum dĕdisset, mīlĭtes ĭn hostes impĕtum fĕcērunt.—Cæsar, quum Gallōs vīcisset, in Ităliam contendit (*perf.*).—Quum lēgāti Cæsarĕm ĭn ĭtĭnerĕ convēnissent, eōs suum adventum expectāre jussit.

2. Quum *causal* (*since*, or *although*), with subjunctive (563, *c*).

Mīlĭtes, quum frīgŏrĕ ĕt imbrĭbus tardārentur, tămen contĭnentī labōrĕ (55, *a*) omnia sŭpĕrāverunt.—Cicĕro jūrĕ patĕr pătriæ dictus est, quum urbĕm ab intĕrĭtū servasset.*—Æduī, quum sē suăque ab Helvĕtiīs dēfendĕre nōn possint, lēgātos ăd Cæsărem mittunt, rŏgātum (379) auxĭlium.—Quum omnes hŏmĭnes mortāles sint, ĕtiam tū mŏriĕrĭs.

(565.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. Quum *temporal*, with subjunctive (563, *b*).

The ambassadors *having asked* (=*when the ambassadors had asked*) peace of Cæsar, he ordered them to await his coming.—Cæsar *having ordered them* (=*when Cæsar had ordered them*) to await his coming, (they) obeyed.—The lieutenant, *when that was* (=had been) *announced*, returned to the citadel.—The fifth legion *having halted*, the enemy made an attack upon them.—The prætor, *having come* into the forum, saw the captives.—The boy, *having approached* the wood, heard a voice.

2. Quum *causal*, with subjunctive (563, *c*).

Since these things *are* so, let us believe (528, *b*, 1).—Nations, *when they cannot defend* themselves, ask assistance.—The scout, *though he was delayed* by the cold, came to the camp.—*Since* Cæsar *took-away* (ērĭpĕre) liberty from the Æduans, they rightly feared.

* Contracted from servavisset.

LESSON XCIII.

Use of the Subjunctive in Relative Sentences.

(566.) THE relative pronoun often takes the place of a conjunction in introducing a sentence, and is therefore followed by the subjunctive. The following examples illustrate some of these uses.

(*a*) You err *because* you think =	You err *who* think.
(*b*) They sent men *to seek for* peace =	They sent men *who should seek for* peace.
(*c*) I am not such a man *as to be* delighted with vices =	I am not *he who can be* delighted with vices.

EXERCISE.

(567.) *Vocabulary.*

A herald, a proclaimer, praeco, (praecōn) is (333).	*To be present*, ădessĕ (ad+esse).
A Nervian, Nervĭus, i.	*To bear*, ferrĕ (*irreg.*).
It pleased, plăcŭit (with *dat.*).	*Fortunate*, fortūnātŭs, ă, ŭm.
At length, dēmum.	*A youth*, ădŏlescens, (centis) is (m. and f., 25, *a*).
Affection, affectio, (tiōnis) is (333, R.).	*Innocence*. innŏcentia, æ.
To hurt, nŏcĕrĕ (with *dat.*).	*Fit for*, idōnĕŭs, ă, ŭm (with *dat.*).

(568.) *Examples and Rule.*

(*a*) *Hannibal did wrong in wintering* (= *because he wintered*) at Capua.	Mălĕ fēcit Hannĭbal, quī Capuæ hiemāvĕrit (= *who wintered at* Capua).

Here quī introduces the *ground* or *cause* of the judgment that *Hannibal erred.*

(*b*) *They send* ambassadors *to say* (= *who may say*).	Lēgātos mittunt, quī dīcant.
They *sent* ambassadors *to say* (= *who might say*).	Lēgātos mīsērunt, quī dīcĕrent.

Here quī (= ŭt ĭi) introduces a *purpose.*

(*c*) *You are not the man* to be ignorant.	Nōn is ĕs, quī nesciās (= you are not *he who* can be ignorant).
He ordered all (those) who could bear *arms to be present.*	Omnēs (eos *understood*) quī armā ferre possent, ădessĕ jussit.

In these examples, qui introduces a nearer definition of the demonstrative, which is expressed or implied.

(*d*) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive is used in a relative sentence to express a *ground*, a *purpose*, or to give a nearer definition of a demonstrative expressed or implied.

Rem. 1. Talis, tam, tantus, ita, &c., may be these demonstratives, as well as is, eă, id.

2. The relative *to express a purpose* is very common, especially in Cæsar, and should be thoroughly studied and practised.

(569.) *Translate into English.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(*a*) Quī, *ground, cause,* or *reason.*

Errās quī censeās Deŭm esse injustum.—Fortūnātŭs fuit Alexander, quī virtūtis suæ Hŏmērum præcōnem (225, *a*) invēnĕrit.—O fortūnātĕ ădŏlescens, quī tuæ virtūtis Hŏmērum præcōnem invēnĕris.—Nervĭī incūsāverunt rĕlīquōs Belgās quī sĕ pŏpŭlō Rōmānō (54) dēdĭdissent.

(*b*) Quī, *purpose.*

Erĭpiunt ălĭīs (153, *a*) quŏd ălĭīs (54) largiantŭr.—Lēgātos ăd Rōmānos mīsērunt, quī pĕtĕrent pācem.—Cæsar ĕquĭtātum præmittit, quī* vĭdeant quās ĭn partēs hostes ĭtĕr făciant (534, *d*).—Impĕrātor mīsit explorātōres, quī cognoscĕrent quālis esset (534, *d*) nātūră montis.—Cæsar cōpiās suās ĭn proxĭmum collem subduxit, ĕquĭtātumque, quī sustĭnĕret hostium impĕtum, mīsit.—Ariōvistus omnes cōpias, quæ nostros perterrērēnt, et mūnītiōne (153, *a*) prŏhĭbērent, mīsit.—Plăcuit Cæsărī ŭt ăd Ariōvistum lēgātos mittĕret (548, *a*).—Plăcuit Cæsărī ŭt ăd Ariōvistum lēgātos mittĕret, quī ăb eō postŭlārent, ŭt ălĭquem lŏcum collŏquiō (54) dicĕret (548, *a*).—Tŭm dēmum Ariōvistus partĕm suārum cōpiārum quæ castră oppugnārent mīsit.

(*c*) Qui, *defining a demonstrative (expressed or implied).*

Impĕrātor omnes cīves quī armă ferrĕ possent ădesse jussit.—Lēgātus pŏposcit (411, *a*) obsĭdes, arma, servos, quī ăd Helvetios perfŭgissent.—Mīlĭtes eă quæ impĕrārentur

* Equitatum (*cavalry*) being a noun of multitude, the relative quī *may be* in the plural.

lĭbenter fēcērunt.—Nōn tālis sŭm quī te fallam.—Innŏcentiă est affectio tālis ănĭmi, quæ nŏceat nēmĭnī (54).

(570.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) Cæsar did badly *in-crossing* (*who crossed*, perf. subj.) the Rhine.—They err *who think* that the soul is not immortal.—The father censured his son *for setting-out** (= *who had set out*, plup. subj.) from the city.

(*b*) Cæsar sends forward scouts, *to choose* (= *who may choose*) a place fit for the camp.—Cæsar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus *to demand* (= *who should demand*).—The general brings back his forces to the hill, and sends forward the cavalry *to sustain* (= who may sustain) the attack.

* Proficiscor.

§ 17.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. (XCIV.)

LESSON XCIV.

Oratio Obliqua (Oblique Narration).

(571.) In relating the words of another, we may either, (1) represent him as speaking in the first person, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, "He said, '*I will* come;'" or, (2) we may state what he said in a narrative form; *e. g.*, "He said *that he would come.*" The former is called Orātio rectă (*direct narration*); the latter, Orātio oblīquă (*oblique narration*).

☞ The example above given shows that the moods must be different in the two modes of narration.

(572.) The sentences introduced in the ōrātio ōblīquă are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*,

Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Æduans, *if they paid the tribute yearly.*

In this example, the sentence in spaced printing is the principal sentence; the sentence in *italic* the subordinate sentence.

EXERCISE.

(573.) *Vocabulary.*

To bring upon, to wage, inferrĕ (illāt-), *irreg.*
Tribute, stipendĭum, I.
Yearly, quŏtannīs (used as *adv.*).
To pay, pendĕrĕ (pĕpend-, pens-).
To show, point out, ostendĕrĕ (ostend-, ostens-, and ostent-).
To excel, præstārĕ (præstĭt-, præstĭt-, and præstāt-).
Because, proptĕrĕă quŏd.
To get, to gain for another, conciliārĕ (āv-, āt-).
To get possession of, pŏtīrī, (pŏtĭt) *dep.* (governs *gen.* or *abl.*).
Very easy, perfăcĭlis, e (with *dat.*).
Affirm, confirmāre (āv-, āt-).
☞ *The Helvetians intend,* Helvētiīs est in ănĭmo (= it is in mind to the Helvetians).

(574.) *Examples and Rules.*

(*a*) Ariovistus said *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans.*	Ariovistus dixit, sē Æduīs bellum nōn illātūrum esse.

(*a*) *Rule of Syntax.*—In principal sentences in oratio obliqua, the *accusative with the infinitive* is used.

Rem. When they express a *command* or *wish*, the subj. is used.

(*b*) Ariovistus said that *he would not wage war upon the Æduans, if they paid the tribute yearly.*	Ariovistus dixit, sē Æduīs bellum nōn esse illātūrum, *sī stīpendium quōtannis penderent.*

(*b*) In subordinate sentences in oratio obliqua, the *subjunctive* is always used (*e. g.*, penderent).

(*c*) The lieutenant denied *that he had crossed the Rhine.*	Lēgātus nēgāvit sē Rhēnum transissĕ.*
He denies *that he can give.*	Nēgat sē possĕ dăre.

(575.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar dixit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra mūnitūrum essĕ.—Dē dĕcĭmā lēgione Cæsar nōn dŭbĭtābat. —Cæsar dixit, sē dē dĕcĭmā lēgiōne nōn dŭbĭtāre.—Cæsar dixit, sē cŭm sōlā dĕcĭmā lēgiōne esse ĭtūrum.† —Cæsar dixit sē cum sōlā dĕcĭmā lēgione, dē quā nōn dŭbĭtāret, essĕ ĭtūrum.—Impĕrātor dixit, maxĭmas nātiōnes pulsas sŭpĕrātasque esse.—Helvētiīs (54) perfăcilĕ ĕrat tōtĭūs Gallĭæ impĕriō (*abl.*) pōtīrī.—Dumnŏrix ostendit, Helvētiīs perfăcĭle esse, quum virtutĕ (55, *a*) omnĭbus (*dat.*) præstārent, tōtĭūs Gallĭæ impĕriō pōtīrī.—Dumnŏrix ipse Casticō (54) regnum concĭlĭātūrus ĕrat.—Dumnŏrix confirmat sē Casticō regnŭm concĭlĭātūrum esse.—Helvētiĭs est ĭn ănĭmō ĭter pĕr prōvinciam făcĕre; ălĭud ĭter hăbeant nullum.—Sĭbi essĕ ĭn ănĭmō (573, ☞), dĭcunt Helvētiī, sĭnĕ ullō mălefĭcio ĭter pĕr prōvinciam făcĕre, proptĕreā quōd ălĭud ĭter hăbeant nullum.—Impĕrātor nōn pōtest ĭter Helvētiīs (54) pĕr prōvinciam dăre.—Impĕrātor

* Past infin. of transirĕ. † Fut. infin. of īrĕ, *to go.*

nĕgat sē, mōrĕ ĕt exemplō pŏpŭli Rōmāni, posse ĭter Helvētiīs pĕr prōvinciam dăre.

(576.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar said *that he, after Pompey was conquered, would cross-over into Asia.*—Cæsar had full confidence in (=*did not doubt concerning*) the fourth legion.—Cæsar said *that he would attack the town with the fourth legion alone, in which he had full confidence.*—Cicero said *that the greatest cities had been attacked.*—The lieutenant affirms *that he will lead the army across the Rhine, if the enemy attempt to hinder* (them) (prohĭbēre).—The Helvetians say *that they intend* (573, ☞) *to seek peace of Cæsar.*

§ 18.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. (XCV.—XCVI.)

LESSON XCV.

Impersonals.—Pudet, Piget, Tædet, &c.

(577.) IMPERSONAL verbs are those which have no subject, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; *e. g.*, pluĭt, *it rains.*

(578.) (*a*) Some impersonals are *never used* in the personal form; *e.g.*, pĭgĕt, *it grieves*, &c.; (*b*) others are simply the third person of personal verbs: *e. g.*, plăcĕt, *it pleases* (plăceŏ, I please). (*c*) Again, the third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive: currĭtŭr, *they run* (it is run); *I am envied*, invĭdētur mihĭ; nunciātŭm est, *it was told.*

(579.) (*a*) The following impersonals (which express certain feelings) take the *accusative* of the person and *genitive* of the cause of the feeling.

Pĭgĕt, pĭguĭt,	*it grieves.*
Pŭdĕt, pŭduĭt,	*it shames, one is ashamed.*
Pœnĭtĕt, pœnĭtuĭt,	*it repents.*
Tædĕt, pertæsum est,	*it wearies, disgusts.*
Miserĕt,	*one pities.*

Your folly grieves me.	Mē pĭgĕt stultĭtiæ tuæ (=*it grieves me of your folly*).

(*b*) Sometimes the cause or object of the feeling is expressed by the *infinitive*, or *a sentence* with quŏd.

I am not ashamed of having done this.	Nŏn pŭdĕt mē hŏc fēcissĕ (=*it does not shame me to have done this*).
I repent of offending you.	Pœnĭtet mē quŏd tē offendĭ (=*it repents me that I have offended you*).

EXERCISE.

(580.) *Vocabulary.*

Indolent, ignāv-us, ă, ŭm.
Folly, ineptiæ, ārum (57, R.).
To sin, peccārĕ (āv-, āt-).
Business, nĕgōtiŭm, ī.
Undertaken, susceptŭs, ă, ŭm (part. of suscīpĕre).
To confess, fătērī (fass-), *dep.*
Because, since, quŏniăm (*conj.*).
Almost, pænĕ (*adv.*).
Some day, ălĭquandŏ (*adv.*).
Innocent, innŏcens, (innŏcent) is
Lot, sors, (sort) is (293). [(107).

(581.) *Translate into English.*

(*a*) Ignāvum pœnĭtēbit ălĭquando ignāviæ.—Nōn pœnĭtet mē hūjus consĭlĭī.—Tuī* mē mĭsĕret.—Eōs ineptiārum pœnitēbat.—Pœnĭtēbat mē peccāti.—Mĭsĕret tē ălĭōrum, tuī* nĕc mĭseret, nĕc pŭdet.—Nōs mĭsĕret călămĭtātis tuæ.—Nunquam Cæsărem susceptī negotiī pertæsum est.—Mē cīvĭtātis mōrum pĭget, tædetque.

(*b*) Illum pœnĭtet quŏd mē offendĕrit.—Socrătem nōn pŭduit fătērī se multas rēs nescīre.—Tē ĭd pŭduit făcĕre.—Nōn pœnĭtet mē vixisse, quoniăm nōn frustrā vixī.—Quĕm pœnĭtet peccasse, pæne est innŏcens.

(582.) *Translate into Latin.*

(*a*) Thou wilt repent of thy folly.—He will be ashamed of his indolence.—We shall be ashamed of thee.—We pitied them.—He was ashamed of us.—We shall never repent of our industry.—The boy will some-day be ashamed of his indolence.—Thou wilt some-day repent of thy folly.—We are weary of life.—He was ashamed of the citizens.—I am ashamed of you and your ignorance.—Many are grieved (at) their lot (*gen.*) (= It grieves many of their lot).—I am not only grieved at, but also (sed etiam) ashamed of, my folly (= It not only grieves, but also shames me of my folly).

(*b*) I repent of having-sinned.—I am ashamed of doing this.—A wise man is not ashamed to confess that he is ignorant-of many things.—I am weary of living (vivere).—I repent of having lived in-vain.—The boy repents of having offended (quod, *with perf. subj.*) the master.—The young man is ashamed of having lived in-vain.—The general repented of having moved (*inf.*) the camp.—The Helvetians repented of having crossed (*inf.*) the river.—The barbarians repented of having approached (*inf.*) the rampart (use *ad* before the accusative).

* *Gen.* of tū.

LESSON XCVI.

Impersonal Verbs, continued.

(583.) *Vocabulary.*

Ought, it behooves, ŏportĕt, ēbat, uit, &c. (with *acc.* and *inf.*).	*It is agreeable,* lĭbet, *or* lūbet (with *dat.*).
It is becoming, dĕcĕt (with *acc.* and *inf.*).	*It is allowed, lawful* (*one must*), lĭcet (lĭcuit and licitum est), *dat.*
It pleases, plăcĕt, placuit, &c. (with *dat.*).	*It happens,* contingit (*dat.*). Accĭdit (used rather of *evil* accidents).
It is of importance, it interests, intĕrest (with *gen.*).	*It is expedient,* expĕdit (*dat.*).
It concerns, it matters, rĕfert (with *gen.*).	*With my permission,* meā vŏluntāte (*abl.*, 55, *a*).

(584.) *Examples and Rules.*

(*a*) *Boys ought to be diligent.*	Puĕros **ŏportet** dīligentes esse (= *it behooves boys to be diligent*).
It becomes a young man to be modest.	**Dĕcet** vĕrēcundum essĕ ădŏlescentem.

(*a*) **Ŏportet** and **dĕcet** are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

[☞ Ŏportet is also followed by the subjunctive.]

(*b*) (1) *It pleased the majority to defend the camp.*	Mājōri parti **plăcuit** castrā dēfendĕre.
(2) *Cæsar determined* (= *it pleased Cæsar*) *to send ambassadors to Ariovistus.*	**Plăcuit** Cæsări ŭt ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mittĕret.

(*b*) **Plăcĕt** (expressing a *purpose*) may be followed by the dative, with (1) the infinitive, or (2) the subjunctive with ŭt.

(*c*) *I may go* (= it is allowed to me to go).	Mĭhi īre **lĭcet**.
You may go.	Tĭbi īre **lĭcet**.
I might have gone (= it was allowed to me to go).	Mĭhi īre **lĭcuit**.
I may be idle.	Mĭhi ōtiōsō esse **lĭcet**.
I do not choose (= *it is not agreeable to me*).	Nōn **lĭbet** mĭhi.

(*c*) Lĭcĕt, lĭbĕt, and, in short, all impersonals which admit *to* or *for* after them in English, are followed by the dative.

(*d*) *It concerns all* (= it is the interest of all).	Intĕrest omnium.
It concerns me.	Meā intĕrest.
It is your concern.	Tuā rĕfert.
It is my business.	Meā rĕfert.

(*d*) Intĕrest governs the genitive; but when a *personal pronoun* is to be used, the *possessive ablative* (meā, tuā, &c.) is used instead of the genitive (meī, tuī, &c.). Rĕfert is rarely used except with these ablative forms.

(585.) *Translate into English.*

Omnium intĕrest vērā (*accus. pl.*) dīcĕre.—Intĕrest meā rectē făcĕre.—Nōn lĭbet mĭhi prælĭum committĕre.—Cæsări nōn plăcuit prælium committĕre.—Intĕrest meā hōc (*accus.*) scrībĕre.—Lēgātus pĕtēbat, ut sĭbi discēdĕre lĭcēret.—Expĕdit reipublĭcæ (*dat.*, 584, *c.*).—Tibi lĭcet id făcĕre.—Meā vŏluntātĕ tĭbi id făcĕre lĭcet.—Helvētĭī rōgant ut (548, *a*) Cæsaris vŏluntāte id făcĕre lĭceat.—Cæsărem ŏportet ad Ariovistum vĕnīre.—Ariovistus dixit; Cæsărem ŏportĕre (574, *a*) ad sē vĕnīre.—Plăcuit Cæsări ut dĕcĭmam lēgiōnem mittĕret.—Ămīcĭtiam immortālem esse ŏportet.—Mĭhi negligenti esse nōn lĭcet.—Nōbīs vĕnīre lĭcuit.—Lībĕrōrum (65, R.) intĕrest părentēs vīvĕre et salvōs esse.—Tĭbi ignāvō esse nōn lĭcet.—Peccāre nēmĭni lĭcet.—Dĕcet tē esse dīligentem.

(586.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys ought to be modest (584, *a*).—You ought to do this.—You ought to have done this (ŏportuĭt, *with pres. inf.*, făcĕrĕ).—It becomes us to follow nature.—It becomes a young man to love his parents.—The general determined (= *it pleased the general*) to make the attack.—The Helvetians determined to send ambassadors to Cæsar.—You may do this (584, *c*).—You may not do this.—I do not choose (= it is not agreeable to me) to ride-on-horseback.—I do not choose to come to the city.—It is every-body's interest (= it interests all) to do rightly (584, *d*).—It is my business to keep (my) word (fĭdes).—You are not allowed to come.—We ought to praise the brave.

§ 19.

IRREGULAR VERBS. (XCVII.—CII.)

LESSON XCVII.

Pos-sŭm, Pos-sĕ, Pŏt-uī, to be able, (can).

(587.) P o s - s ŭ m is compounded of p ŏ t - ĭ s, *able*, and the verb s ŭ m. The t before s is changed to s; *e. g.*, pŏt-sŭm, pos-sŭm; pŏt-sunt, pos-sunt.

INDICATIVE.						
Pres.	pos-sŭm.	pŏt-ēs.	pŏt-est.	pos-sŭmŭs.	pŏt-estĭs.	pos-sunt.
Imp., pŏt-ĕrăm; *Perf.*, pŏt-uī; *Plup.*, pŏt-uĕrăm; *Fut.*, pŏt-ĕrŏ; *Fut. Perf.*, pŏt-uĕrŏ: *all regular.*						
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
Pres.	pos-sim.	pos-sis.	pos-sĭt.	pos-sīmŭs.	pos-sītĭs.	pos-sint.
Imperf.	pos-sĕm.	pos-sēs.	pos-sĕt.	pos-sēmŭs.	pos-sētĭs.	pos-sent.
Perf., pŏt-uĕrĭm; *Plup.*, pŏt-uissĕm: *regular.*						
Infin. Pres., pos-sĕ; *Perf.*, pŏt-uissĕ; *Part.*, pŏt-ens (used only as an adjective).						

EXERCISE.

(588.) *Vocabulary.*

Laughter, rīsŭs, us, m.
To sow, sĕrĕrĕ (sĕv-, săt-).
Good deed, act of kindness, bĕnĕfĭcĭŭm, i.
Reap, mĕtĕrĕ (messŭ-, mess-).
To do good to, to benefit, prōdessĕ (prōfŭ-, prō+sŭm); governs *dat.*
Hang over, impendĕrĕ.
To render, reddĕre (reddĭd-, reddĭt-).
Influence, grātĭă, æ.
Fraud, fraus, (fraud) ĭs (293).
Restrain, rētĭnēre (rētĭnu-, rētent-, rē+tĕnēre).
With equanimity, æquō ănĭmō (*abl. = with equable mind*).

(589.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *To be very powerful.* — Plūrĭmum posse (= *to be very much able*).

(*b*) *Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.* — Tōtĭus Galliæ plūrĭmum Helvētiī possunt.

(*c*) *A very few can keep off* (many).	Perpauci prŏhĭbēre possunt.
(*d*) *In the rest of Gaul.*	In rĕlĭquā Galliā.

[What is the rule for the Succession of Tenses? 551, 3.]

[What case do the compounds of sum (prosum, desum, &c.) govern? 267, *b*.]

(590.) *Translate into English.*

Beātus esse sīne virtūte nēmo pŏtest.—Per rīsum multum pŏtĕris cognoscĕre stultum.—Sĕre (*imperative*) bĕnĕfĭcia, ut possis (548, *a*) mĕtĕre fructum.—Vĭri bŏni sŭmus, si (iīs) prōsŭmus, quĭbus possŭmus.—Semper ĭta vīvāmus (528, *b*) ut rătiōnem reddĕre possīmus (553, *b*).—Mons altissĭmus impendet ut făcīle perpaucī prŏhĭbēre possint (553, *b*).—Mons altissimus impendĕbat ut făcile perpauci prŏhĭbēre possent.—Sīne agrĭcultūra hŏmĭnes vivĕre nōn possunt.—Nostri hostes consĕqui nōn pŏtuērunt, quŏd ĕquĭtes īnsŭlam căpĕre nōn pŏtuĕrant.—Dīvĭtiăcus plūrĭmum dŏmi (*at home*) atque in rĕlĭquā Galliā pŏtĕrat (589, *a*).—Fraus est accĭpĕre quŏd nōn pŏtĕris reddĕre.—Nōn est dŭbium quīn tōtius Galliæ plūrĭmum Helvĕtiī possint (558, *b*).—Germāni rĕtĭnēri nōn pŏtĕrant quīn in nostros tēla conjĭcĕrent (558, *b*, 5).—Cæsar pŏtest ĭter Helvĕtiīs (54) dăre.—Cæsăr nĕgat sē posse ĭter Helvĕtiīs dăre.—Cæsăr nĕgat sĕ, mōre et exemplō (55, *a*) pŏpŭli Rōmāni, posse ĭter ullī (194, R.) per prōvinciam dăre.

(591.) *Translate into Latin.*

Men cannot be happy without virtue.—Without arts we cannot live.—Let us always so live (528, *b*) that (553, *b*) we may be able to die with equanimity.—Let us sow good-deeds, that we may be able to reap fruit.—The chief was very powerful, not only (nōn solŭm) at home, but also (sĕd ĕtiam) in the rest of Gaul.—Cæsar denies that (574, *c*) he is able to give a passage to the ambassadors through the province.—Cæsar finds out (rĕpĕrit) that the chief is very powerful (*accus. with inf.*).—Cæsar finds out that the chief is very powerful, not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states.—The enemy cannot be restrained from (quin) hurling darts against our soldiers.

LESSON XCVIII.

Vellĕ, to be willing.—Nollĕ, to be unwilling.—Mallĕ, to be more willing, to prefer.

(592.) Nōlo = nōn vŏlo; mālo = māgis vŏlo.

(*a*) INDICATIVE.						
Pres.	vŏlō.	vīs.	vult.	vŏlūmŭs.	vultĭs.	vŏlunt.
	nōlō.	nonvīs.	nonvult.	nōlūmŭs.	nonvultĭs.	nōlunt.
	mālō.	māvīs.	māvult.	mālūmŭs.	māvultĭs.	mālunt.

Rem. The following tenses are regular: *Imperf.*, vŏlēbăm, nōlēbăm, mālēbăm; *Perf.*, vŏluī, nōluī, mālŭī; *Fut.*, vŏlăm, nōlăm, mălăm; *Fut. Perf.*, vŏluerō, nōluerō, māluerō.

(*b*) SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	vĕl- nōl- māl-	im.	īs.	ĭt.	īmŭs.	ītĭs.	int.
Imperf.	vell- noll- mall-	ĕm.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.

Rem. 1. Regular are, *Perf.*, vŏluĕrĭm, nōluĕrĭm, māluĕrĭm; *Pluperf.*, vŏluissēm, nōluissēm, māluissēm.

2. *Imperative*, nōlī, nōlītō; nōlīte, nōlītōtĕ, nōluntō. (Imperative of vŏlō and mālō wanting.)

3. *Participles*, vŏl-ens, nōl-ens.

4. Infinitives: *Pres.*, vellĕ, nollĕ, mallĕ; *Past*, vŏluissĕ, nōluissĕ, māluissĕ.

EXERCISE.

(593.) *Vocabulary.*

To be empty, unoccupied, văcārĕ (ăv-, āt-), *intrans.*
Neighbour, fīnītĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (with *dat.*).
Attentive, attentŭs, ă, ŭm.
Attentively, attentē (*adv.*).
Grant, concession, concessŭs, ūs.
Content, contentŭs, ă, ŭm (with *abl.*).
To seem, vīdērī (pass. of vīdĕrĕ).
To return, to come back, rĕvertī (revers-), *dep.*
Old man, sĕnex, (sen) is (108, R. 1).
On the Ides of April, īd Idŭs Aprīlĭs (the 13th of April).
April, Aprīlis, is, m. (25, *e*).
Docile, dŏcĭlis, ĕ (104).

(594.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *If they wish anything.* | SĪ quĭd vēlint.

(*a*) The verbs **velle, nolle, malle**, as transitive verbs, govern the accusative.

(*b*) *He is willing to hear.* | Vult audīre.

(*b*) The verbs vellĕ, nōllĕ, mallĕ, take the infinitive after them, as the complementary object (210).

(*c*) Cæsar is not willing *that that country should remain unoccupied.* | Nōn vult Cæsar eum lŏcum văcārĕ.

(*c*) The verbs vellĕ, nollĕ, mallĕ, admit the accusative with the infinitive after them.

[What is the rule for *principal* sentences in oratio obliqua? (574, *a*.) For *subordinate* sentences? (574, *b*).]

(595.) *Translate into English.*

Ĕgo nōn eădem vŏlo, sĕnex (225, *a*) quæ vŏlui ădŏlescens. — Sī vīs ămāri, ămā (*imperative*). — Nōn vult Cæsar eum lŏcum văcāre. — Nōluit Cæsar eum lŏcum, unde Helvētiī discessĕrant, văcāre; nĕ Germāni fīnītimī Galliæ (54) essent (548, *b*).—Bŏni hŏmĭnes, mĭsĕri quam imprŏbi esse, mālunt. — Fĕre lĭbenter hŏmĭnes ĭd quŏd vŏlunt, crēdunt. — Ĭdem vellе ēt ĭdĕm nollе, eă* firmă ămīcĭtiă est.—Dŏcĭlis est quī attentē vult audīre. — Quĕm docīlem vŏlīs făcĕre, sīmŭl attentum făcĭās ŏportet (584, *a*, ☞).—Nīsī Cæsar Rōmānīs (147) sōlŭs impĕrāre vŏluissĕt (542, *b*), ā Brutō ēt Cassio nōn interfectus esset.—Ariovistus dixit sē regnum mallе (574, *a*) Cæsaris concessū (55, *a*) quăm Æduōrum bĕnĕfĭcio hăbēre.—Mālŭmus, cŭm virtūte, paucīs (55, *a*) contentī essĕ, quăm sīne virtūte multă hăbēre. — Aristīdēs bŏnŭs esse mālēbat quam vidērī.—Hăbet iracundiă hōc malī (186, *a*, R.); nōn vult rēgī.—Cæsar legatīs respondet (574, *a*) diĕm sē ăd dēlĭberandum (489) sumptūrum (esse); sī quĭd vēlint (542, *b*, 2) ăd Īdūs Aprīlis revertantur (574, *b*).—Tămĕn Cæsar, ŭt spătium intercēdĕrĕ possĕt (548, *a*) dum mīlĭtēs convēnīrent. lēgātīs respondīt, diĕm sē ad dēlĭberandum sumptūrum; sī quĭd vellent, ăd Īdus Aprīlis rĕvertĕrentur.—Cæsar ăb Helvētiīs discēdĕre nōlēbat. — Omnĭă ĕrunt făcĭlĭă sī vŏlēs (542, *b*).—Ariovistus respondĕt; sī quĭd Cæsar a sē vēlit, illum ad se vĕnīre ŏportēre.—Ariovistus respondit, sī quĭd Cæsar a sē vellet, illum ăd sĕ vĕnīre ŏportēre.

* Eă is in apposition with the clause idem velle et idem nolle.

LESSON XCIX.

Fero, Ferre, Tuli, Latum, *to bear, bring.*

(596.) (*a*) PARADIGM OF IRREGULAR FORMS.

INDICATIVE.						
Pres. Act.	fĕrō.	fers.	fert.	fĕrīmŭs.	fertĭs.	fĕrunt.
Pres. Pass.	fĕrŏr.	ferrĭs.	fertŭr.	fĕrīmŭr.	fĕrīmĭnī.	fĕruntŭr.

INFINITIVE.			
Act.	*Pres.*, ferrĕ, *to bear.*	*Perf.*, tŭlissĕ, *to have borne.*	*Fut.*, lātūrus essĕ.
Pass.	*Pres.*, ferrī, *to be borne.*	*Perf.*, lātŭs essĕ, *to have been borne.*	*Fut.*, fĕrendum essĕ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Imperf. Act.	ferr-	ĕm.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.
Imperf. Pass.	ferr-	ĕr.	ērĭs (ē).	ētŭr.	ēmŭr.	ēmĭnī.	entŭr.

IMPERATIVE.				
	Singular.		Plural.	
Active.	2. fĕr, ferto.	3. ferto.	2. fertĕ, fertōtĕ.	3. fĕruntŏ.
Passive.	2. ferrĕ, fertŏr.	3. fertŏr.	2. fĕrimĭnī.	3. fĕruntŏr.

(*b*) The remaining tenses are formed regularly from fĕr-, the present stem; tŭl-, the perfect stem; and lāt-, the supine stem.

1. From fĕr-,

 Imperfect active and passive, fĕrēbam, fĕrēbăr.

 Future active and passive, fĕram, es; fĕrăr, ērĭs.

 Participle active and passive, fĕrens, fĕrendŭs. *Gerund*, fĕrendī, &c.

2. From tŭl-,

 Indicative perfect, tŭlī; *pluperfect*, tŭlĕrăm; *future perfect*, tŭlĕrŏ.

 Subjunctive perfect, tŭlĕrĭm; *pluperfect*, tŭlissĕm.

3. From lāt-,

 Participle passive, lātŭs: hence all the passive forms, lātŭs sŭm, ĕrăm, ĕro, sim, essem, &c.; lātūrŭs sum, sim, &c.

(*c*) The compounds are inflected in the same way; *e. g.*, inferre, *to bring against;* intŭlī, illātŭm;* infĕro, infers, infert, &c.

(*d*) Tollo, tollĕrĕ, *to raise, to take away*, forms its perfect and supine from tŭlī, lātŭm, viz., sustŭlī, sublātŭm.

* in + lātum = illātŭm, n being changed into l before l.

EXERCISE.

(597.) *Vocabulary.*

Frequent, crēbĕr, brā, brum (77, *a*).
Rumour, rūmŏr, (rūmōr) ĭs (319).
To bring to, bring, afferrĕ (attŭl-, allāt-, ad+ferre).
To bring together, conferrĕ (contŭl-, collāt-, con+ferrĕ); *to betake one's self*, sē conferrĕ.
Poor, helpless, inops, (inŏp) ĭs (in+ops), *adj.*, 107.
To prefer, præferrĕ (tŭl-, lāt-, præ+ferrĕ); governs *acc.* and *dat.*
Mean, sordid, sordĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
To bring against, inferrĕ (tŭl-, lāt-), governs *acc.* and *dat.*
To make war upon one, bellŭm ălicuī inferrĕ.
Especially, præsertim.
Giant, gĭgas, (gĭgant) ĭs, m. (N. on p. 133).
To conspire, plot, conjūrāre (āv-, āt-).
Impediment, impĕdīmentum, ī.
Baggage, impĕdīmentă, ōrum (*pl.*).
Whatever, quicquid (n. of quisquis).

(598.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *It is the* part,
It is the duty,
It is the mark,
It is the characteristic,
of a wise man.

Est săpientis (=*it is of a wise man*).

(*b*) *The poets say.*
They say.

Poetæ fĕrunt.
Fĕrunt.

Ferunt is used for *they say*, and followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

(599.) *Translate into English.*

Eās rēs Cæsar grăvĭter fert.—Cæsar dīcīt, eās rēs sē grăvĭter ferrĕ.—Săpiens bonă ŭă sēcŭm (125, II., *b*) fert.—Terră circă sōlem ĭtă fertur ŭt circă eăm sĭmul lūnă fĕrătur.—Crebrī rūmōres ăd Cæsărem affĕrēbantur, omnēs Belgās contrā pŏpŭlum Rōmānum conjūrāre, obsĭdes que inter sē dăre.—Helvētiī nostrōrum impĕtūs (*acc. pl.*) sustĭnēre nōn possunt.—Diūtius quum Helvētiī nostrōrum impĕtūs sustĭnēre nōn possent (563, *b*) altĕrī sē ĭn montem rĕcēpērunt, alterī ăd impĕdimentă ĕt carrōs sē contŭlērunt.—Helvētiī ĭn ūnum lŏcum impĕdīmentă contŭlērunt.—Fertĕ miserō (54) atque ĭnopī (54) auxĭlium.—Est săpientis (598, *a*) injūrias æquō animō ferre.—Est bonī (598, *a*), mĭsĕrīs atque inŏpĭbus auxĭlium ferre.—Quĭd quæque (178, 6) nox aut diēs fĕrat, incertum

est.—Pĕcūniam præferre ămīcĭtiæ sordĭdum est.—Ămīcĭtiam præferre pĕcūniæ hŏnestum est.—Ariovistus pŏpŭlō Rōmānō bellum intŭlit.—Cæsări nunciātum est (578, *c*) Ariovistum pŏpŭlō Rōmānō bellum intŭlisse.—Æquō ănĭmō fĕrāmus quicquid nōbīs accidat.—Fĕrenda est fortūnă, præsertĭm quæ ăbest ă culpā.—Improbī ăd vŏluptātem fĕruntur.—Poëtæ fĕrunt (598, *b*), gigantēs bellum diīs (62, R. 3) intŭlisse.—Demētrius, quum patriā pulsus esset (563, *b*) ăd Ptŏlĕmæum rēgem sē contŭlit.—Catilīnæ sŏcii armā contrā pātriam fĕrēbant.—Dŏmōs suās Helvētii reliquērunt, ut tōtī (194, R. 1) Gallĭæ bellum inferrent (548, *a*).

LESSON C.

Fieri, *to become, to be done, to happen.*—Edere, *or* Esse, *to eat.*

1. Fĭĕrī.

(600.) Fĭerī forms the passive of făcĕrĕ, *to make, to do.* The tenses are formed regularly with the endings of the 4th conjugation, except the infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive.

INDICATIVE.	
Pres., fī-o, fī-s, fī-t, &c.	*Imperf.*, fīēbām, bās, &c.
Fut., fiām, fiēs, &c.	*Perf.*, factŭs sum, ĕ, est, &c.
Pluperf., factŭs ĕrām, ĕrās, &c.	*Fut. Perf.*, factŭs ĕro, ĕris, &c.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres., fiām, fiās, &c.	*Imperf.*, fĭĕrĕm, fĭĕrēs, &c.
INFINITIVE.	
Pres., fĭerī; *Perf.*, factŭs, ă, ŭm, esse; *Fut.*, factum īrī, *or* futūrŭm esse, *or* fōrĕ.	
PARTICIPLES.	
Pres. wanting; *Perf.*, factŭs; *Fut*, făciendŭs.	

Rem. Observe that in all the forms of this verb except fĭerī and fĭerĕm, rēs, &c., the ĭ is *long*, contrary to the general rule that a vowel before another is short.

2. Ĕdĕrĕ (essĕ).

(601.) Ĕdĕrĕ (or essĕ), *to eat*, forms all the tenses regularly with the endings of the third conjugation; but it has, in

addition, a few forms similar to those of **essĕ**, *to be*, which are shown in the following table:

INDIC. *Pres.*	edo.	ēdĭs *or* ēs.	ēdĭt *or* est.	ēdĭmŭs.	ēdĭtĭs *or* estĭs.	ēdunt.
SUBJ. *Imperf.*	ēdĕrĕm *or* essĕm.	ēdĕrēs *or* essēs.	ēdĕrĕt *or* essĕt.	ēdĕrēmŭs *or* essēmŭs.	ēdĕrētĭs *or* essētĭs.	ēdĕrent *or* essent.
IMPERATIVE.	ēdĕ *or* ēs.	ēdīto *or* esto.		ēdītĕ *or* este.	ēdītōtĕ *or* estōtĕ.	ēdunto.

Rem. Ēs, from **esse**, *to be*, is short; from **esse**, *to eat*, it is *long* (ēs).

EXERCISE.

(602.) *Vocabulary.*

To wander, vāgārī (*dep.*).
Fewness, small number, paucĭtās, (paucĭtāt) ĭs (293).
To be born, nascī (nāt-), *dep.*
To admonish, admŏnērĕ (ad+mŏnērĕ, mŏnŭ-, mŏnĭt-).
Among, ăpŭd (*prep., acc.*).
According to, sĕcundŭm (*prep., acc.*).
Less, mĭnus (*adv.*).
Sickness, ægrĭtūdo, (ægrĭtūdĭn) ĭs (340).
To eat up, corrode, exēdĕre (ex+ēdĕrĕ).
Fate, fātum, ī.
Perpetual, perpĕtŭus, ă, ŭm.
Poor, paupĕr, (paupĕr) ĕris (107).
To drink, bĭbĕre (bĭb-, bĭbĭt-).

(603.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *It happens* (it is brought to pass) *that they wander less widely.* | **Fĭt, ŭt mĭnus latē vāgentur.**

Ut with subjunctive, expressing a *consequence*, frequently follows **fĭt**.

(*b*) *He was informed* (= he was made more certain). | Certior **factus est** (may be followed by acc. with infin.).
(*c*) *Cicero was made consul.* | Cĭcĕro consul **factus est**.

The verb **fĭerī** admits a *predicate-nominative* after it.

(*d*) *Nothing could be done.* | **Nĭhil fĭerī pŏtĕrat.**

[Repeat the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(604.) *Translate into English.*

His rēbus fĭt, ut Helvētiī mĭnus lātē vāgentur (603, *a*).—**His rēbus fiebat**, ut Helvētiī mĭnus lātē vāgārentur.—**His rēbus fit ut** Helvētiī mĭnus făcile fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferrĕ possint.—**Dē Cæsăris** adventū Æduī certiōres **facti sunt**.—**Cæ-**

sar. litteris (55, *a*) Labiēnī certior **fīēbat**, omnes Belgas contrā pōpŭlum Rōmānum conjūrārĕ, obsĭdesque inter sē dăre.—Impĕrātor dixit, id **fĭĕrī** posse.—Nostrōrum propter paucĭtātem nĭhil **fĭĕrī** pŏtĕrat.—Labiēnus prælium commīsit, ut undique unō tempŏrĕ (118, II., *c*) in hostes impĕtŭs **fĭĕrĕt**.—Nĕmo **fĭt** cāsū (55, *a*) bŏnŭs.—Poëtă nascĭtur, nōn **fĭt**.—Si fatō (55, *a*) omniă **fīunt** (542, *b*, 1), nihil nos admōnēre pŏtest ut cautiōres **fīāmus**.—Contrā vim sīne vī nĭhil **fĭerī** pŏtest.—Dīligentiā (55, *a*) omniă **fīunt** făcĭliă (603, *c*).—Ăpud vĕtĕrēs Rōmānos, ex ăgrĭcōlīs interdum **fīēbant** consŭlēs; ĭta Cincinnātus consul (603, *c*) **factus est**.—Omniă quæ secundŭm nātūrăm **fīunt**, hăbendă sunt (502) in bŏnīs.*—Sæpe quī ex paupĕribus dīvītes **fīunt**, dīvitiīs (*abl.*, 316, *b*) ūtī nesciunt.—Vīvĭmus ut **ēdāmus**; nōn **ēdĭmus** ut vīvāmŭs.—Ĕdĕre ŏportĕt ŭt vīvāmus, nōn vīvĕre ŭt ēdāmus.—**Essĕ** (601) ŏportet ut vīvās, nōn vīvĕre ut ēdās.—Perpĕtuă cură ănĭmum ăvārī **exest**.—Bĭbĕ, ēs.—Bĭbīte, **estĕ**—Ægrĭtūdo ănĭmum **exest**.

LESSON CI.

Ire, *to go*.—Quire, *to be able* (*can*).—Nequire, *to be unable* (*cannot*).

(605.) Eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm, *to go*, mostly follows the 4th conjugation; but is irregular in the present tense, gerund, and supine, as appears by the following

PARADIGM.

TENSES.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres.	ĕō, īs, ĭt, īmŭs, ītĭs, eunt.	eam, ĕās, eat, ĕāmus, eātĭs, eant.
Imperf.	ībăm, ībās, ībat, &c.	īrĕm, īrēs, īrĕt, &c.
Fut.	ībŏ, ībīs, &c. ibunt.	ītūrŭs, sīm, sis, sĭt, &c.
Perf.	īvī *or* ii, īvistī, īvĭt *or* iit, &c.	īvĕrĭm, īvĕrīs, īvĕrĭt. &c.
Pluperf.	īvĕrăm, īvĕrās, &c.	īvissĕm, īvissēs, īvissĕt, &c.
Fut. Perf.	īvĕrŏ, īvĕrĭs, &c.	

IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
ī. ītō, ītŏ.	*Pres.*, īrĕ.	tŭm.	*Pres.*, ĭens (euntĭs).	eundī.
ītĕ, ītōtĕ.	*Perf.*, īvissĕ *or* issĕ.	ītū.	*Fut.*, ītūrŭs, ă, ŭm.	eundō, &c.
euntŏ.	*Fut.*, ītūrŭm essĕ.		*Verbal*, eundŭs, ă, ŭm.	

* **Habendă sunt in bŏnīs** = *should be reckoned among blessings.*

Rem. 1. In the same manner the compounds are formed; *e. g.*, exīrĕ, abīrĕ, &c.; but they generally drop the v in the perfect-stem; thus, ăb-ii, ab-istī, ab-iit, abissĕ, abissēm, &c.

2. Some of the compounds obtain a *transitive* force, and then take a passive form like other transitive verbs; *e. g.*, prætĕrīrĕ, *to pass by*; prætĕrĕor, *I am passed by*, &c.

(606.) Queo, *I can, I am able*; nĕqueo, *I cannot, I am unable*, are conjugated like eo, *I go*; but they rarely occur except in the present tense.

EXERCISE.

(607.) *Vocabulary.*

To go out, exīrĕ (ex+īrĕ). *Takes* abl., *with or without prep.* dō.
To return, rĕdīrĕ (re+īrĕ; d *inserted for euphony*).
To undergo, sŭbīrĕ (sub+īrĕ); governs *accus.*
A return, returning, rĕdĭtio, (rĕdĭtiōn) is (333, R.).
Ready, prepared, pārātŭs, ă, ŭm (*part. of* pārārĕ).
To pass over, transīrĕ (trans+īrĕ).
Before, præ, *adv.* (or *prep.* with *abl.*).
Of Cannæ, Cannensīs, ĕ (104).
Whither, quō, *adv.*
By what route? quō ĭtĭnerĕ (*abl.*, 55, *a*).
To perish, pĕrīrĕ (pĕr+īrĕ).
Manfully, vīrīlĭtĕr (215, 2).
Tell me, dic (*imperat. of* dīcĕrĕ).
Whether—or, utrum—ăn.
Taken away, sublātŭs, ă, ŭm (*part. pass. of* tollĕrĕ) (596, *d*).
Of Zurich, Tigurīnŭs, ă, ŭm.
To suffer, allow, pătī (pass-), *dep.*
To fight, dĕcertāre (āv-, āt-).
To be sick, ægrōtāre (āv-, āt-).
Light, lux, (lūc) is (293).

☞ Recollect, *they went* = īvĕrunt or iĕrunt.
he departed = ăbiit, rather than ăbīvĭt; and so of other compounds.

[Give the Rule for ŭt (*purpose*), 548, *a*).

(608.) *Translate into English.*

Helvētiī dē fīnĭbus suīs exeunt.—Orgĕtorix Helvētiīs (*dat.*) persuādet, ut dē fīnĭbus suis exeant.—Orgĕtorix Helvētiīs persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suis cum omnĭbus copiīs (*property*) exīrent.—Dŏmum (113, III., R.) rĕdeunt.—Omniă pĕrīcŭlă sŭbeunt.—Helvētiī, dŏmŭm redĭtiōnīs spē sublātā (456), pārātiōres ad omniă pĕrīculă sŭbeundă (496) ĕrant.—Cæsar in Ăsiam transiit.—Pompeius in Ăsiam transiĕrat.—Dŏmō (*abl.*) exīrĕ possunt.—Ĕrant omninō ĭtĭnĕra duŏ, quĭbus ĭtĭnĕrĭbus dŏmō exīre possent.—Æduī per fīnes suŏs Helvētiōs īrĕ pătiuntur.—Pāgŭs Tigurīnus dŏmō exi-

ĕrat.—Hīc pāgus ūnus, quum dŏmō exisset, L. Cassium, consŭlem, interfēcĕrat, ĕt ējus exercĭtum sŭb jŭgum mīsĕrat. —Helvētĭī in eām partem Ibunt, ŭbĭ Cæsar constĭtuĕrit.—Quō ĭtūnĕre (55, *a*) hostēs iĕrunt?—Eōdĕm ĭtūnĕre, quō hostes iĕrant, Cæsar ad eōs contendit, ĕquĭtātumque omnem ante sē mittit.—Ibam fortĕ Viā Sacrā (55, *a*) sīcut meus est mōs.—Ī præ, ĕgŏ sĕquar.—Ex pugnā Cannensī admŏdum paucī Rōmānī dŏmum rĕdiĕrunt.—Ī, quō tē fortunā vŏcĕt (534, *d*). —Quicquid transiĭt tempŏris (186, *a*, *Rule*) pĕriĭt.—Quīdam ferrō (55, *a*) dēcertāre ācerrimē possunt, ægrōtārĕ vīrĭlĭtĕr nōn queunt.—Sīnĕ lūcĕ cŏlōrēs esse nĕqueunt.—Pompeius pĕriĭt.—Dic utrum queās ăn nĕqueās mēcum īrĕ.—Risŭs interdŭm ĭta rĕpentĕ ērumpĭt, ut eām cŭpientēs (442, *e*) tĕnērĕ nĕqueāmus (553, *b*, R.).

Dec 4th 1850 Wednesday

§ 20.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

LESSON CII.

Aio, Inquam, Novi, Memini, Cœpi, Odi.

(609.) Aiŏ, *I say, say yes, affirm,* is used in very few tenses.

Ind. Pres.	āio.	āis.	āĭt.	——	——	āiunt.
Ind. Imperf.	aiēbăm.	-bās.	-băt.	-bāmŭs.	bātĭs.	bant.
Subj. Pres.	——	āiās.	aiăt.	——	——	āiant.
Part. Pres.	aiens (aientĭs) used only as *adjec.*					

(610.) Inquăm, *I say,* is used *between* the words of a quotation.

Ind. Pres.	inquam.	inquis.	inquĭt.	inquĭmus.	inquiunt.
Ind. Imperf.	——	——	inquiēbăt *or* inquībat.	——	inquiēbant.
Ind. Fut.	——	inquiēs.	inquiet.	——	——
Ind. Perf.	——	inquistī.	inquĭt.	——	——
Subj. Pres.	inquiam.	as.	at.	atĭs.	ant.

(611.) Nōvī, *I know;* mĕmĭnī, *I remember;* cœpī, *I have begun, I began;* ōdī, *I hate,* are perfect forms with present meanings. All the tenses made on the perfect stem exist, regularly formed.

INFINITIVE.			
nōvissĕ, *to know.*	mĕmĭnissĕ, *to remember.*	cœpissĕ, *to have begun.*	ōdissĕ, *to hate.*

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.			
nōv- / memĭn- / cœp- / ōd-	ī, istī, ĭt, &c.	Ind. Pres.,	*I know.*
	ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt, &c.	Ind. Past,	*I remembered.*
	ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt, &c.	Ind. Fut.,	*I shall begin.*
	ĕrĭm, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt, &c.	Subj. Pres.,	*I may know.*
	issĕm, issēs, issĕt, &c.	Subj. Past,	*I might hate.*
IMPERATIVE, mĕmentŏ, mĕmentōtŏ (the others wanting).			

☞ Recollect, nōvī = *I know* (not *I have known*); nōveram, *I knew* (not *I had known*), &c.; and so of the others. But cœpī, nōvi, &c., may be used as *perf. pres.*, = *I have known, I have begun,* &c.

EXERCISE.

(612.) *Vocabulary.*

To fall back, to give way, pĕdem rĕferrĕ (= to draw back the foot).
Young, raw, inexperienced, tīro, (tīrōn) is (107).
Surly, fĕrōcŭlus, ă, ŭm.
Lucius Varius, L. Varius, I.
Forgetful, immĕmor, (immĕmŏr) is (107); governs *genit.*
Calmly, quietly, tranquillĭtĕr (tranquill-us, 215, 2, *a*).
Cruelty, sævĭtiă, æ.
Demonax, Demōnax, (act) is (a philosopher of Hadrian's time).
To philosophize, philŏsŏphārī (*dep.*).
In no way, by no means, nullō mŏdō (*abl.*).
Conscious, conscius, ă, ŭm (with *dat.* of person, *gen.* of thing).
Livy, Līvius, I.

(613.) *Examples.*

(*a*) *He exhorts them to remember.* — Hortātŭr eōs ut mĕmĭnĕrint.

(*b*) *Aristides, when asked what was just*, replied, "*Not to covet what belongs to others.*" — Aristīdes interrŏgātus quĭd justum esset? "Ăliēnă," inquĭt, "nōn concupiscĕre" (= "Not to covet," said he, "what," &c.).

☞ Inquam is used in quoting the very *words* of another (oratio recta), and is always placed *among* the words quoted (as "*said he*" in English). Ait is used generally in quoting the *sense*, not the exact words of another (oratio obliqua).

(*c*) *He began to build the city.* — Urbĕm ædĭfĭcāre cœpit.

The city began to be built. — Urbs ædĭfĭcārī cœptă est.

☞ If a *passive* infinitive is used with the word *begin*, you must employ the passive form, cœptus sum, instead of cœpi; cœptŭs eram, instead of cœperam, &c.

(614.) *Translate into English.*

Mīlĭtes, vulnĕribus dēfessī, pĕdem rĕferre cœpērunt.—"Quĭd tū," inquĭt Labiēnus, "mīles tīro (*voc.*) tam fĕrōcŭlus ĕs?" Tum mīles: "Nōn sum," inquĭt, "tīro, Labiēnĕ, sĕd dē dĕcimā lĕgiōnĕ vĕterānus."—Helvētiī nostrōs lăcessĕre cœpērunt.—Hostēs, quī in montem sēsē rĕcēpĕrant, prælium rĕdintegrāre cœpērunt.—Cæsar dīcit (574, *a*), ĭd fīerī possĕ, sī Æduī fīnitimōrum ăgros pŏpulārī cœpĕrint (574, *b*).—

Mīlites in mūrum lăpĭdes jăcĕre cœpērunt. — Undĭque in mūrum lăpĭdes jăcī (613, *c*, ☞) cœptī sunt.—Dux mīlitēs hortātur ut vĕtĕris gloriæ mĕmĭnerint.—Lēgatī dixērunt sē portūs (*accus. pl.*) insŭlasque nōvissĕ.—Multī tē ōdērunt, sī tē sōlum ămās.—Germānī sŭperbiam L. Variī ĕt sævĭtiam ōdissĕ cœpĕrant. — Omnēs immĕmŏrem bĕneficiī ōdĕrunt.—Tullus Hostilius, ut Livius ait, fĕrōcior ĕtiam Rōmŭlō (360, *c*) fuit.—Sōcrătēs interrŏgātus quīnăm hōmĭnes tranquillĭter vīvĕrent (534, *e*)? "Quī," inquĭt, "nullĭus turpĭtūdĭnis sibĭ conscĭī sunt."—Demōnax interrŏgātus, quando cœpisset (534, *e*) philŏsŏphārī? "Tum," inquĭt, "cum cognoscĕre meipsum (159) cœpī."—Hannĭbal Rōmānos sīc ōdĕrat, ut in grātiam cum illīs rĕdīre nullō mŏdō (55, *a*) posset (553, *b*, R.). —Is mĭser est, quem omnēs bŏni ōdērunt. — Nōvĭmus Aristīdis justĭtiam, nōvĭmus Sōcrătis săpientiam. — Nōn ămābĭmus bŏnōs mōres, sī nōn ōdĕrĭmus mălōs.

PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§1. LETTERS, QUANTITY, &c.

(615.) 1. THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of **w**.

2. Six are *vowels*, **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **y**: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.

3. The consonants are divided into

(*a*) *Liquids*, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**;

(*b*) *Spirants*, **h**, **s**, **j**;

(*c*) *Mutes*; the remaining consonants, among which there are

(1) c-sounds, **c**, **g** (ch); **q**;

(2) p-sounds, **b**, **p** (ph);

(3) t-sounds, **d**, **t** (th);

(4) Double consonants, **x**, **z**.

4. The diphthongs are, **au**, **eu**, **ae**, **oe** (rare, **ei**, **oi**, **ui**).

(616.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

(1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, **vĭa**.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, **amānt**.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, **ăgri**.]

(3) All diphthongs are *long*; *e. g.*, **mens ēs**, **āū-rum**.

(4) Contracted syllables are *long*; *e. g.*, **cōgo** (**coago**).

§ 2. NOUN.

(617.) 1. The *noun* is the name of any object (person or thing). Nouns are *proper* (13, *a*), *common* (13, *b*), or *abstract* (13, *c*).

2. There are *three* genders, *masculine, feminine,* and *neuter: two* numbers, *singular* and *plural: six* cases, *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative,* and *ablative:* and *five* declensions.

3. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

Males, rivers, winds, and *mountains* most we find
With *months* and *nations* MASCULINE declined;
But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
As FEMININE; most *islands,* too, the same.
COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

First Declension.—(*Genitive-ending* æ.)

(618.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ă.	æ.	æ.	ăm.	ā.
Plur.	æ.	ārŭm.	īs.	ās.	īs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity.*—Final syllables all long but ă, *nom.* and *voc.*; ăm, *acc.*; and ŭm, *gen. plur.*

2. *Gender.*—Nouns of first declension are *feminine,* except names of male beings, &c.

Second Declension.—(*Genitive-ending* ī.)

(619.) MASCULINE nouns of second declension have nominative-ending ŭs; neuter nouns, ŭm.

(*a*) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ŭs.	ī.	ō.	ŭm.	ĕ.	ō.
Plur.	ī.	ōrŭm.	īs.	ōs.	ī.	īs.

(*b*) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ŭm.	ī.	ō.
Plur.	ă.	ōrŭm.	īs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity.*—*Short* final syllables, ŭs, ĕ, ŭm, ă.
Long " ī, ō, īs, ōs.

2. *Gender.*—A few nouns are feminine in ŭs, and a few neuter (see 62, R. 1).

3. *Stems in* r.—(1) All nouns whose stems end in r, reject the ending ŭs in nom. and ĕ in voc.; *e. g.*, *field*, nom., ăgĕr (not ăgĕr-ŭs); voc., ăgĕr (not ăgĕr-ĕ). (2) Most which have ĕ in nom. drop it in the remaining cases; *e. g.*, nom., ăgĕr; gen., ăgrī (not ăgĕr-ī).

4. *Exceptions to Case-endings.*—(1) Proper names in ius, with filius, genius, meus, have voc. in ī; *e.g.*, Georg-ī, fil-ī, mī. (2) Deŭs has voc., deŭs, nom. plur., diī, dat. and abl. plur., diīs. (3) A few take ûm in gen. plur., instead of ōrŭm; *e. g.*, sestertiûm.

Third Declension.—(*Genitive-ending* ĭs.)

(620.) (*a*) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	ĭs.	ī.	ĕm (ĭm).	ĕ (ī).
Plur.	ēs.	ŭm (ĭum).	ĭbŭs.	ēs.	ĭbŭs.

(*b*) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Sing.	—	ĭs.	ī.	ĕ (ī).
Plur.	ă (ĭă).	ŭm (ĭŭm).	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity.*—Final syllables all short but ī and ēs.

2. *Euphonic Rules.*—(*a*) c-sound + s = x: arc-s = arx; leg-s = lex.
(*b*) t-sound before s is dropped: laud-s = laus; mont-s = mons.

3. *Rules of Gender from the Formation of the Nominative.*

[Learn these from 355.]

4. *Peculiar Case-endings.*—(1) Acc. in ĭm: (*a*) *commonly* in
Febrĭs, puppĭs, pulvĭs,
Sĕcūrĭs, restĭs, turrĭs:
(*b*) *always* in
Sĭtĭs, tussĭs,
Vĭs, amussĭs.
(2) Abl. in ī: (*a*) *sometimes* in those which take ĭm in acc., with ignīs, cīvīs: (*b*) *always* in vīs; and in neuters whose nom. ends in ăl, ăr, or ĕ.
(3) Gen. plur. ium: (*a*) in all which take ĭ in abl. sing.; (*b*) in monosyllables whose stems end in two consonants (*e. g.*, mont-, mont-ĭŭm); (*c*) in all which insert a vowel before adding s in nom. (*e. g.*, nāv-ĭ-s, nāv-ĭŭm).

Fourth Declension.—(*Genitive-ending* ūs.)

(621.) MASCULINE nominative-ending ŭs; *neuter* nominative-ending ū.

(*a*) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ŭs.	ūs.	ŭī.	ŭm.	ū.
Plur.	ūs.	ŭum.	ĭbŭs.	ūs.	ĭbŭs.

(*b*) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	Nom., Acc., Voc.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ū.	ūs, *or* ū.	ū.
Plur.	ŭă.	ŭum.	ĭbŭs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity.*—Ū s long, except in nom. sing., and dat. and abl. plur.; ŭ and ĭ long always.

2. *Genders.*—Only the following nouns are feminine:

Ācūs, mānūs, trĭbŭs,
Dŏmŭs, portĭcūs, *and* Īdūs.

3. *Peculiar Case-ending.*—The following take ŭbŭs in dat. and abl. plur., instead of ĭbŭs:

Arcŭs, ăcŭs, portŭs, vĕrū,
Fĭcus, lăcŭs, ārtŭs,
Spĕcŭs, quercŭs, *also* pĕcū,
Trĭbŭs *too, and* partŭs.

4. Dŏmŭs, *house*, is thus declined:

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dom-ŭs.	-ūs. / -ī.	-ŭī.	-ŭm.	-ō.
Plur.	dom-ūs.	-ŭum. / -ōrŭm.	-ĭbŭs.	-ōs. / -ūs (*rarely*).	-ĭbŭs.

Obs. The genitive dŏmī is used only in the sense of *at home, at my house.*

Fifth Declension.—(*Genitive-ending* eī.)

(622.) THERE are but few nouns of this declension: all feminine except dĭēs, *day*, and mĕrĭdĭēs, *midday*; and even dĭēs is feminine in singular when it means a *fixed day*.

(623.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	ĕī.	ĕī.	ĕm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērŭm.	ēbŭs.	ēs.	ēbŭs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity.*—The e in eī is *long* when a vowel stands before it, as dĭ-ē-ī; *short* when a consonant, as fid-ĕ-ī.

2. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are wanting in all nouns of this declension except rēs, dĭēs, spĕcĭēs.

§ 3. ADJECTIVE.

(624.) THE *adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; *e. g.*, *good, small, white,* &c. In Latin, adjectives are divided into three classes, according to their endings.

1. CLASS I. (us, a, um).

(625.) These take the *feminine*-ending of first declension of nouns; *masculine* and *neuter* endings of the second.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ŭs.	ă.	ŭm.	N.	ī.	æ.	ă.
G.	ī.	æ.	ī.	G.	ōrŭm.	ārŭm.	ōrŭm.
D.	ō.	æ.	ō.	D.	īs.	īs.	īs.
A.	ŭm.	ăm.	ŭm.	A.	ōs.	ās.	ă.
V.	ĕ.	ă.	ŭm.	V.	ī.	æ.	ă.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

(2.) *Stems in* er.—Adjectives whose stem ends in er reject ŭs and ĕ in nom. and voc.

(*a*) Most of them also drop ĕ in the nom. in the other cases; *e. g.*, *beautiful,* pulchĕr.

Nom.	Pulchĕr,	pulchră,	pulchrŭm.
Gen.	Pulchrī,	pulchræ,	pulchrī, &c.

(*b*) But aspĕr, lăcĕr, lĭbĕr, mĭsĕr, prospĕr, tĕnĕr, retain the ĕ; *e. g.*,

Nom.	Mĭsĕr,	mĭsĕră,	mĭsĕrŭm.
Gen.	Mĭsĕrī,	mĭsĕræ,	mĭsĕrī, &c.

(3.) *Peculiar Case-endings.*—Some adjectives, numerals, and adjective pronouns have gen., ĭŭs, and dat., ī; *e. g.*, ūnŭs, unĭŭs, unī. [They are ūnŭs, tōtŭs, sōlŭs, nullŭs, ullŭs, ălĭŭs, altĕr, ŭtĕr, neutĕr, ŭterquĕ.]

2. CLASS II. (*Two Endings*).

(626.) Adjectives of the *second class* have ĭs in the nominative singular for masculine and feminine ending, and ĕ for neuter.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N., V.	ĭs.	ĭs.	ĕ.	N., V.	ēs.	ēs.	ĭă.
G.	ĭs.	ĭs.	ĭs.	G.	ĭŭm.	ĭŭm.	ĭŭm.
D.	ī.	ī.	ī.	D.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.
Acc.	ĕm.	ĕm.	ĕ.	Acc.	ēs.	ēs.	ĭă.
Abl.	ī.	ī.	ī.	Abl.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

(2.) Some adjectives of this *class* take ĕr for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of ĭs; *e. g.*, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ.

(3.) The ablative has ĕ instead of ī in juvĕnis, *youth*; ædīlis, *ædile*. The genitive plural has ŭm instead of ĭum in cĕlĕr, *swift*.

3. CLASS III. (*One Ending*).

(627.) (1.) Adjectives of the *third class* have but *one* ending in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, *happy*, fēlix (m., f., n.); *bold*, audax (m., f., n.). Participles in ns fall under this *class*.

(2.) The case-endings are those of nouns of third declension (see paradigm, 108). They have abl. ī generally, but ĕ in pauper, senex, and a few others (108, R. 1); neut. plur., ĭă; gen. plur., ĭum. Vĕtŭs has nom. plur., vĕtĕr-ă, gen. plur., vĕtĕr-ŭm.

For participles, abl., ĕ } is more common.
" adjectives, abl., ī }

4. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

(628.) *Comparative*-ending, ĭŏr; *superlative*, issĭmŭs.

Brave,	fort-is,	fort-ĭŏr,	fort-issĭmŭs.
Hard,	dūr-ŭs,	dūr-ĭŏr,	dur-issĭmŭs.

Rem. The *comparative* is declined (after third declension of nouns) thus:

Nom.	Dūrĭŏr,	dūrĭŏr,	dūrĭŭs.
Gen.	Dūrĭŏr-is,	dūrĭorĭs,	dūrĭoris, &c. (See 358.)

(629.) Adjectives whose stems end in r have rĭmŭs for *superlative*-ending (instead of issĭmŭs); *e. g.*,

Mĭsĕr,	mĭsĕr-ĭŏr,	mĭser-rĭmŭs.
Pulchĕr,	pulchr-ĭŏr,	pulcher-rĭmŭs.

(630.) Several adjectives whose stem ends in l have lĭmŭs for *superlative*-ending; *e. g.*,

Făcĭl-is,	făcĭl-ĭŏr,	făcĭl-lĭmŭs.

They are

Sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, *and* făcĭlis;
Hŭmĭlis, difficĭlis, *and* grăcĭlis.

5. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

(631.) *Irregulars.*

Good.	bŏnŭs.	mĕliŏr.	optĭmŭs.
Bad.	mălŭs.	pējŏr.	pessĭmŭs.
Great.	măgnŭs.	mājŏr.	maxĭmŭs.
Much.	multŭs.	plūs (n. sing.). / plūrēs, ă (pl.).	plūrĭmŭs.
Small.	parvŭs.	mĭnŏr.	mĭnĭmŭs.
Old.	sĕnex.	sĕnĭŏr.	(*wanting.*)
Young.	jŭvĕnis.	jūnĭŏr.	(*wanting.*)
Outward.	extĕrŭs.	exterĭŏr.	extrēmŭs.
Below.	infĕrŭs.	infĕrĭŏr.	infĭmus. / īmŭs.
Above.	sŭpĕrŭs.	sŭpĕrĭŏr.	suprēmŭs. / summŭs.
Hind.	postĕrŭs.	postĕrĭŏr.	postrēmŭs.

(632.) *Defectives.*—[*Comparative and Superlative formed from a Preposition, Adverb, or Obsolete Word.*]

(*on this side*, citra.)	*nearer*, cĭtĕrĭor.	*nearest*, cĭtĭmŭs.
(*within*, intra.)	*inner*, intĕrĭor.	*inmost*, intĭmŭs.
(*beyond*, ultra.)	*further*, ultĕrĭor.	*furthest*, *last*, ultĭmŭs.
(*near*, prŏpe.)	*nearer*, prŏpĭor.	*nearest*, *next*, proxĭmŭs.
(*bad*, deter.)	*worse*, dēterĭor.	*worst*, dēterrĭmŭs.
	former, prĭor.	*first*, prīmŭs.
	swifter, ōcĭor.	*swiftest*, ōcissĭmŭs.

Rem. 1. *Rich*, dīves; *richer*, dĭtĭor, dīvĭtĭor; *richest*, dītissĭmŭs. dīvĭtissimŭs.

[*Cæsar* uses the shorter form.]

2. Compound adjectives in dĭcŭs, fĭcŭs, vŏlŭs, add entiŏr for the *comparative* and entissĭmŭs for the *superlative*; *e. g.*,

Bĕnĕvol-ŭs, bĕnĕvŏl-entiŏr, bĕnĕvŏl-entissĭmŭs.

3. Adjectives whose stem ends in a *vowel* prefix to the *positive* măgĭs, *more*, for the *comparative*, and maxĭmĕ, *most*, for the *superlative*.

Pious, pĭŭs, măgĭs pĭŭs, maxĭmĕ pĭŭs.

§ 4. NUMERALS.

(633.) NUMERALS are divided into the following classes, of which the first three are adjectives, the fourth adverbs.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
	One, two, &c.	*First, second, &c.*	*One by one, &c.*	*Once, twice. &c.*
1	Ūnŭs.	Prīmŭs.	Singŭlī.	Sēmĕl.
2	Duŏ.	Sĕcundŭs.	Bīnī.	Bis.
3	Trēs.	Tertĭus.	Tērnī.	Tĕr.
4	Quattuŏr.	Quartŭs.	Quāternī.	Quātĕr.
5	Quinquĕ.	Quintŭs.	Quīnī.	Quinquĭēs.
6	Sex.	Sextŭs.	Sēnī.	Sexiēs.
7	Septĕm.	Septĭmŭs.	Septēnī.	Sēptiēs.
8	Octŏ.	Octāvŭs.	Octōnī.	Octiēs.
9	Nŏvĕm.	Nōnŭs.	Novēni.	Nŏviēs.
10	Dĕcĕm.	Dĕcĭmŭs.	Dēnī.	Dĕciēs.
11	Undĕcim.	Undĕcĭmŭs.	Undēnī.	Undĕciēs.
12	Duŏdĕcim.	Duŏdĕcĭmŭs.	Duŏdēnī.	Duŏdĕciēs.
13	Trĕdĕcim. [im.	Tertĭus-	Tērnī-	Trĕdĕciēs.
14	Quattuordĕc-	Quartŭs-	Quātērnī-	Quatŭordĕciēs.
15	Quindĕcim.	Quintŭs-	Quīnī-	Quindĕciēs.
16	Sexdĕcim.	Sextŭs- dĕcĭmŭs.	Sēnī- dēnī.	Sēdĕciēs.
17	Septendĕcim.	Septĭmŭs-	Septēnī-	Dĕciēs & sēptiēs.
18	Octodĕcim.	Octāvŭs.	Octōnī-	Dŭodēvicĭēs.
19	Nŏvemdĕcim.	Nōnŭs-	Novēni-	Undevicĭēs.
20	Viginti.	Vicēsĭmŭs.	Vicēni.	Vicĭēs.
30	Trigintā.	Tricēsĭmus.	Tricēni.	Tricĭēs.
40	Quădrāgintā.	Quădrāgēsĭmŭs.	Quădrāgēni.	Quădrāgĭēs.
50	Quinquāgintā.	Quinquāgēsĭmŭs.	Quinquāgēni.	Quinquāgĭēs.
60	Sexāgintā.	Sexāgēsĭmŭs.	Sexāgēni.	Sexāgiēs.
70	Septuāgintā.	Septuāgēsĭmŭs.	Septŭāgēni.	Septŭāgiēs.
80	Octōgintā.	Octōgēsĭmŭs.	Octōgēni.	Octōgiēs.
90	Nōnāgintā.	Nōnāgēsĭmŭs.	Nōnāgēni.	Nōnāgiēs.
100	Centum.	Centēsĭmŭs.	Centēni.	Centiēs.
200	Ducenti.	Ducentēsĭmŭs.	Ducentēni.	Ducentiēs.
300	Trĕcenti.	Trĕcentēsĭmŭs.	Trĕcentēni.	Trĕcentiēs.
400	Quădringenti.	Quădringentēsĭmŭs.	Quădringentēni.	Quădringentiēs.
500	Quingenti.	Quingentēsĭmŭs.	Quingentēni.	Quingentiēs.
600	Sexcenti.	Sexcentēsĭmŭs.	Sexcentēni.	Sexcentiēs.
700	Septingenti.	Septingentēsĭmŭs.	Septingentēni.	Septingentiēs.
800	Octingenti.	Octingentēsĭmŭs.	Octingentēni.	Octingentiēs.
900	Noningenti.	Nongentēsĭmŭs.	Nongentēni.	Nongentiēs.
1000	Millĕ.	Millēsĭmŭs.	Millēni.	Milliēs.

For the declension of unus, duo, and tres, see 194.

Ducenti, and all the compounds of centi, are declined like the plural of bonus.

Millia, *thousands*, the plural of mille, is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Ordinal numbers are declined like bonus.

Distributives, like the plural of bonus.

All the rest are undeclinable.

In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with et, or the larger without et, precedes; as quattuor et viginti, or viginti quattuor. Above one hundred the larger number precedes, with or without et; as centum et unus, or centum unus.

§ 5. PRONOUN.

(634.) THE *pronoun* is a substitute for the noun; *e. g.*, *he, she, it,* may be substitutes for *man, woman, book.*

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(635.) (*a*) *Substantive Personal,* so called because used as substantives, not as adjectives.

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc., Abl.		N., A.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
I.	ĕgŏ.	mĕī.	mĭhĭ.	mē.	*We.*	nōs.	nostrŭm, *or* nostrī.	nōbīs.
Thou.	tū.	tŭī.	tĭbĭ.	tē.	*You.*	vōs.	vestrŭm, *or* vestrī.	vōbīs.
Him, her, it.	—	sŭī.	sĭbĭ.	sē.	*Them.*	(same as sing.)		

(*b*) *Adjective Personal,* or *Possessive* (derived from the above).

Mine.	mĕŭs, ă, ŭm (voc., mī).	*Ours.*	nostĕr, nostră, nostrŭm.
Thine.	tŭŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Yours.*	vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm.
His, hers, its.	sŭŭs, ă, ŭm.	*Theirs.*	sŭŭs, suă, sŭŭm.

2. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(636.) The *demonstrative pronouns* are so called because they serve to *point out* an object; *e. g.*, *this, that, these, those,* &c.

(1.) Īs, ĕă, ĭd, *this, that* (*he, she, it*), often antecedent of qui.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	īs, ĕă, ĭd.	ējŭs.	ĕī.	ĕŭm, ĕām, ĭd.	ĕō, ĕā, ĕō.
Plur.	īī, ĕæ, ĕă.	ĕōrŭm, ĕārŭm, ĕōrŭm.	īīs, *or* ĕīs.	ĕōs, ĕās, ĕă.	īīs, *or* ĕīs.

(2.) Īdĕm, ĕădĕm, ĭdĕm, *the very same,* compounded of Is and dĕm. Declined like īs with dem added; thus, ējusdem, eīdĕm, eundĕm (not eumdem), &c.

(3.) Hīc, hæc, hōc, *this,* points out an object present to the *speaker,* and is called the *demonstrative* of the *first* person. (It is also used for *he, she, it.*)

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hīc, hæc, hōc.	hŭjŭs.	huīc.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hāc, hōc.
Plur.	hī, hæ, hæc.	hōrŭm, hārŭm, hōrŭm.	hīs.	hōs, hās, hæc.	hīs.

(4.) Īstĕ, istă, istŭd, *this, that,* points out an object present to the person *spoken to,* and is called the *demonstrative* of *second* person.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istĕ, istă, istŭd.	istĭŭs.	istī.	istŭm, istăm, istŭd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	istī, istæ, istă.	istōrŭm, istārŭm, istōrŭm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istă.	istīs, istīs, istīs.

☞ Iste is often used to express contempt.

(5.) Illĕ, illă, illŭd, points out an object remote from the *speaker* (*that, the former*, opposed to hīc), and is called *demonstrative* of *third* person. (It is often used for *he, she, it*.)

☞ Declined throughout like istĕ, istă, istŭd.

(6.) Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm, *self*, is added to other pronouns, mē, tē, sē, &c., and expresses *myself, thyself, himself*, &c., accordingly.

☞ Declined like istĕ, except that neuter is ipsŭm (not ipsŭd).

3. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(637.) The *relative pronoun* (*who, which, what*) is so called because it commonly refers to some other word called the antecedent.

(1.) Quī, quæ, quŏd, *who, which, what*.

Sing.	quī, quæ, quŏd.	cŭjŭs.	cuī.	quĕm, quăm, quŏd.	quŏ, quā, quŏ.
Plur.	quī, quæ, quæ.	quōrŭm, quārŭm, quōrŭm.	quĭbŭs.	quōs, quās, quæ.	quĭbŭs.

(2.) Quīcunque, quæcunquĕ, quodcunquĕ (*whoever, whichever, whatever*), declined like quī, quæ, quŏd, with cunque added.

(3.) Quisquis (*whoever, whatever*), used *without* a substantive. The following cases only occur, and of these only quisquis and quicquid *commonly*.

	Nom.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quisquis (m., f.). quicquĭd (n.).		quemquĕm (m., f.), quidquĭd (n.).	quŏquŏ, quâquā, quŏquŏ.
Plur.	qŭiqŭi (m., f.).	quĭbŭsquĭbŭs.		

4. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(638.) The *interrogative pronouns* (*who? which? what?*) are used in asking questions.

(1.) Quĭs, quæ, quĭd (*who? which? what?*), is declined precisely like the *relative* quī, except that in nom. sing. masc. it has quĭs, and in nom. and acc. sing. neut., quĭd. [Quī, quæ, quŏd, is also used interrogatively, as an *adjective* (172).]

(2.) Quĭsnăm, quænăm, quidnăm, is more *emphatic* than quĭs. (*Pray, what* are you doing? quidnăm ăgĭs?) It is declined like quĭs, quæ, quĭd.

5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(639.) The *indefinite pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual (*any one, some one,* &c.).

(1.) Quīdăm, quædăm, { quoddăm, used as an *adjective,* / quiddam, used as a *noun,* } *a certain* (one); plur., *some.* Declined like quī; but takes n generally before d instead of m; *e. g.*,

Quendăm, quorundăm (not quemdam, quorumdam).

(2.) Quīvis, Quīlĭbĕt, } (*any you please*). Declined like quī. In neut., quŏd used as *adjective,* quĭd as *substantive.*

(3.) Quisquam (*any, any one; e. g.*, when it is denied that there are any). Neut., quicquam or quidquam. Declined otherwise like quī. [This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]

(4.) Quispĭăm, quæpĭăm, { quodpĭăm, used as *adj.,* / quidpĭăm, used as *subst.,* } *somebody, some.*

(5.) Ălĭquīs, ălĭquā, { ălĭquŏd, as *adj.,* / ălĭquĭd, as *subst.,* } *some one, something.*

(6.) Quisquŏ, quæquŏ, { quodquĕ, as *adj.,* / quidquĕ, as *subst.,* } *each.*

Ūnusquisquĕ, -quæquĕ, { -quodquĕ, as *adj.,* / -quidquĕ, as *subst.,* } *each one* (stronger than quisquĕ). *Genitive,* ūniuscŭjusquĕ, &c., both ūnŭs and quis being declined.

(7.) Ecquīs? Used interrogatively (*does*); *any one, anything.*

Ecquīs, ecquæ, *or* ecquă, { ecquŏd, as *adj.,* / ecquĭd, as *subst.,* } neut. plural, ecquă.

☞ Ecquīs expects the answer *none.*

6. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(640.) *Correlative pronouns* are such as answer to each other; *e. g.*, *how great? so great; as many, so many,* &c.

(1.) The following are declined

(*a*) Like adjectives of Class I. (625):

Tantŭs, *so great, so much;*	quantuscunquĕ, *however great*
Quantŭs, *as great;*	ălĭquantŭs, *somewhat great.*

(*b*) Like adjectives of Class II. (626):

Tālĭs, *such.*
Quālĭs, *as, of what kind.*
Quālĭscunque, *of whatever kind.*

(2.) The following are indeclinable:

Tŏt, *so many;*	ălĭquŏt, *some.*
Tōtĭdĕm, *just so many;*	quotquŏt, *however many.*
Quŏt, *as many.*	

§ 6. VERBS.

(641.) THE *verb* declares something of a person or thing: the eagle *flies*; the queen *loves* her daughter.

1. CLASSES OF VERBS.

(642.) Verbs are *active*, *passive*, or *deponent*.

(1.) *Active* verbs express *action*: (*a*) either *transitively*, requiring an object; *e. g.*, the queen *loves* (*whom?*) her daughter; or (*b*) *intransitively*, *not* requiring an object; the eagle *flies*.

(2.) *Passive* verbs express the *receiving* or *suffering* of an action; *I am loved*; *I was punished*.

Obviously *intransitive* verbs have no passive form. We cannot say, *I am danced*, *I am slept*.

(3.) *Deponent* verbs have the *passive* form, but an *active* signification.

2. PARTS OF THE VERB.

(643.) The verb is divided into,

(*a*) The *indefinite* verb, including certain parts which do not refer to a definite person or time.

(*b*) The *finite* verb, including the parts which always do so refer.

Indefinite Verb.

(644.) (*a*) The *indefinite* verb includes,

(1.) The *infinitive*, which expresses the action of the verb without relation to a definite person, and partakes also of the nature of a noun; *e. g.*, *to learn*; *to love* is pleasant.

(2.) The *participle*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of an adjective; *loving*, *blooming*.

(3.) The *gerund*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of the noun, in all cases but the nominative, and supplies oblique cases to the infinitive.

(4.) The *gerundive*, which expresses the action of the verb as *necessary* or *continued*, under the form of an adjective, in all cases and genders.

(5.) The *supine*, which also expresses the action of the verb in the form of two cases (acc. and abl.) of the noun.

Finite Verb.

(645.) (*b*) The *finite* verb includes those parts which express the

(1.) Different varieties of affirmation, viz., the *moods*.

(2.) Different times at which the action of the verb takes place, viz., the *tenses*.

(3.) Different relations of the verb to persons or things, viz., the *numbers* and *persons*.

(1.) *The Moods.*

(646.) The verb expresses *affirmation*; the *moods* of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

(1.) By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed; *e. g.*, *I write, I did not write.*

(2.) By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently*, or *indefinitely*; *e. g.*, *I may write*, if *I should write*, perhaps some (*may*) *think.*

(3.) By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction* or *request*; *e. g.*, *write.*

(2.) *The Tenses.*

(647.) Time may be past, present, or future, and the verb has therefore *three* tenses to express these. But action may be represented as *going on* or as *completed*, either in past, present, or future time, and therefore two forms are required for each, making *six* in all.

	Present.	Past.	Future.
Action going on, or *imperfect.*	*I love*, or *am loving.*	*I was loving.* (Imperfect.)	*I shall love*, or *be loving.* (Future.)
Action completed, or *perfect.*	*I have loved.* (Perfect.)	*I had loved.* (Pluperfect.)	*I shall have loved.* (Future Perfect.)

Rem. 1. The Latin uses its *perfect* form in two ways: (1) like the English perfect, to express action complete in present time; *e. g.*, ămāvī, *I have loved:* (2) like the English imperfect, to express action indefinitely in past time; *e. g.*, ămāvī, *I loved.* This is called the *perfect aorist.* [The latter use is by far the most common. This distinction should be thoroughly understood.]

2. The *subjunctive* mood has no future (it uses the periphrastic form 661).

3. The present, perfect, and future are called *primary* tenses, referring, as they do, either to present or future time; the imperfect, perfect aorist, and pluperfect are called *historical* tenses, referring, as they do, to *past* time.

(3.) *Numbers and Persons.*

(648.) As there may be more than one person engaged in an action, the verb has *two numbers*, singular and plural. These persons must be either *I, thou, we, ye*, or some *other* person or thing; therefore the verb has *three persons*, 1st, 2d, and 3d, which are denoted in Latin by different *endings.*

3. CONJUGATION.

(649.) Conjugation is the *inflection* (21, R.) of a verb through all its parts. There are in Latin *four* conjugations of verbs, distinguished by the ending of the infinitive; thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ārĕ.	-ērĕ.	-ĕrĕ.	-īrĕ.

4. THE AUXILIARY OR SUBSTANTIVE VERB ESSĔ, *to be.*

(650.) [Before proceeding to the conjugations, we must give the forms of essĕ, *to be*, called an *auxiliary*, because it is used in forming some of the parts of the verb; and *substantive*, because it is the verb expressing simple existence.]

1. INDICATIVE.

ACTION INCOMPLETE.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sŭm, *I am.*	ĕs, *thou art.*	est, *he is.*	sŭmŭs, *we are.*	estĭs, *ye are.*	sunt, *they are.*
Imperf.	ĕrăm, *I was.*	ĕrās, *thou wast.*	ĕrăt, *he was.*	ĕrāmŭs, *we were.*	ĕrātĭs, *ye were.*	ĕrant, *they were.*
Future.	ĕrŏ, *I shall be.*	ĕrĭs, *thou, &c.*	ĕrĭt, *he, &c.*	ĕrĭmŭs, *we, &c.*	ĕrĭtĭs, *ye, &c.*	ĕrunt, *they, &c.*

ACTION COMPLETED.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fŭī, *I have been.*	fuistī, *thou hast been.*	fŭĭt, *he has been.*	fŭĭmŭs, *we have been.*	fŭistĭs, *ye have been.*	fŭērunt, *they have been.*
Pluperf.	fŭĕrăm, *I had been.*	fŭĕrās, *thou hadst, &c.*	fuĕrăt, *he had been.*	fŭĕrāmŭs, *we had been.*	fŭĕrātĭs, *ye had been.*	fŭĕrant, *they had been.*
Fut. Perf.	fŭĕrŏ, *I shall have been.*	fuĕrĭs, *thou shalt, &c.*	fŭĕrĭt, *he shall, &c.*	fuĕrĭmŭs, *we shall, &c.*	fŭĕrĭtĭs, *ye shall, &c.*	fuĕrint, *they shall, &c.*

2. SUBJUNCTIVE.

INCOMPLETE.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sĭm, *I may be.*	sīs, *thou, &c.*	sĭt, *he, &c.*	sīmŭs, *we, &c.*	sītĭs, *ye, &c.*	sint, *they, &c.*
Imperf.	essem, *I might be.*	essēs, *thou, &c.*	essĕt, *he, &c.*	essēmŭs, *we, &c.*	essetĭs, *ye, &c.*	essent, *they, &c.*

COMPLETED.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fŭĕrĭm, *I may have been.*	fŭĕrĭs, *thou, &c.*	fŭĕrĭt, *he, &c.*	fŭĕrĭmŭs, *we, &c.*	fŭĕrĭtĭs, *ye, &c.*	fŭĕrint, *they, &c.*
Pluperf.	fŭissĕm, *I might have been.*	fŭissēs, *thou, &c.*	fŭissĕt, *he, &c.*	fŭissēmŭs, *we, &c.*	fŭissētĭs, *ye, &c.*	fŭissent, *they, &c.*

3. IMPERATIVE.

Singular.	Plural.
2. ĕs, estŏ, *be thou.*	2. estĕ, estōtĕ, *be ye.*
3. estŏ, *let him be.*	3. suntŏ, *let them be.*

4. INFINITIVE.

Present.	Perfect.	Future.
Essĕ, *to be.*	fuissĕ, *to have been.*	fūturŭs, ă, ŭm, esse, *to be about to be.*

5. PARTICIPLE.

Present.	Future.
Only in compounds; absens, *absent* (from absum); præsens, *present* (from præsum).	Fūturŭs, ă, ŭm, *one who will be.*

5. PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.

(651.) (1.) *Verb-stem.*—The *stem* of any verb is found by striking off the infinitive-ending; *e. g.*, of ăm-ārĕ, mŏn-ērĕ, rĕg-ĕrĕ, and aud-īrĕ the stems are ăm-, mŏn-, rĕg-, aud-, respectively.*

(2.) *Tense-stem.*—Each *tense* has its own tense-stem, consisting of the verb-stem with or without some additions. Thus, in the first conjugation:

Pres. tense-stem = verb-stem = am-.
Imperf. tense-stem = verb-stem + ab = amab-.
Perf. tense-stem = verb-stem + av = amav-.

[In the annexed paradigms the tense-stems are shown upon the left-hand side. Observe that the *perfect tense-stem* serves also for the stem of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.]

(3.) *Tense-ending.*—Each *tense* has its own endings, which, added to the tense-stem, give the person-forms. Thus:

Imperfect-stem ămăb- + ăm = amabam, 1st person.
amab- + ās = amabas, 2d person,† &c.

(4.) The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive voice are formed by means of the past participle and forms of essĕ; thus:
ămātŭs sum, ămātŭs eram, ămātŭs ĕro.

[No farther explanation of the paradigm is necessary. The student should learn the modes of formation, and the tense-endings for each tense, apart from the stems am-, mon-, &c., and unite them afterward with those or any other stems.]

* In reality, the crude-forms are ama-, mone-, audi- (the three *pure* conjugations), and rĕg- (the *consonant* conjugation). But the changes of the crude-form in inflection form too great a difficulty for beginners; we therefore present the stem as the language affords it to us, without going into a nicer analysis.

† Farther, the *person-ending* forms part of the tense-ending. From the paradigm (active), it will be seen that in every tense except the perfect the endings are

o, *or* m, s, t, mus, tis, nt.

These endings are added to the tense-stem, either directly, as am-o, or by means of a connecting-vowel, as reg-i-s, or of a flexion syllable and connecting-vowel, as amav-er-a-s.

PARADIGMS FOR

ACTIVE.

(652.) INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I love or am loving, thou art loving, &c.*

ăm-	ŏ.	ās.	ăt.	āmŭs.	ātĭs.	ant.
mŏn-	ĕŏ.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.
rĕg-	ŏ.	ĭs.	ĭt.	ĭmŭs.	ĭtĭs.	unt.
aud-	ĭŏ.	īs.	ĭt.	īmŭs.	ītĭs.	ĭunt.

IMPERFECT, *I was loving, advising, ruling, hearing, &c.*

ăm-āb mŏn-ēb- rĕg-ēb- aud-ĭēb-	ăm.	ās.	ăt.	āmŭs.	ātĭs.	ant.

FUTURE, *I shall or will love, advise, rule, hear, &c.*

ăm-āb- mŏn-ēb- rĕg- aud-ĭ-	ŏ.	ĭs.	ĭt.	ĭmŭs.	ĭtĭs.	unt.
	ăm.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.

PERFECT, *I have loved.* (PERFECT AORIST, *I loved.*)

ăm-āv- mŏn-ŭ- (reg-s) rex- aud-īv-	ī.	istī.	ĭt.	ĭmŭs.	istĭs.	ērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT, *I had loved, &c.*

ăm-āv- mŏn-ŭ- rex- aud-īv-	ĕrăm.	ĕrās.	ĕrăt.	ĕrāmŭs.	ĕrātĭs.	ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have loved, &c.*

ăm-āv- mŏn-ŭ- rex- aud-īv-	ĕrŏ.	ĕrĭs.	ĕrĭt.	ĕrĭmŭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.	ĕrīnt.

(653.) IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.
ăm-	ā, ātŏ.	ātŏ.	ātĕ, ātōtĕ.	antŏ.
mŏn-	ē, ētŏ.	ētŏ.	ētĕ, ētōtĕ.	entŏ.
rĕg-	ĕ, ĭtŏ.	ĭtŏ.	ĭtĕ, ĭtōtĕ.	untŏ.
aud-	ī, ītŏ.	ītŏ.	ītĕ, ītōtĕ.	ĭuntŏ.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I am loved, &c.*

ăm-	ŏr.	ārĭs. / ārĕ.	ātŭr.	āmŭr.	āmĭnĭ.	ăntŭr.
mŏn-	ĕŏr.	ērĭs. / ērĕ.	ētŭr.	ēmŭr.	ēmĭnĭ.	entur.
rĕg-	ŏr.	ĕrĭs. / ĕrĕ.	ĭtŭr.	ĭmŭr.	ĭmĭnĭ.	untŭr.
aud-	ĭŏr.	īrĭs. / īrĕ.	ītŭr.	īmŭr.	īmĭnĭ.	iuntur.

IMPERFECT, *I was loved, &c.*

ăm ăb- mŏn-ēb- rĕg-ēb- aud-iēb-	ar.	ārĭs. / ārĕ.	ātŭr.	āmŭr.	āmĭnĭ.	antŭr.

FUTURE, *I shall be loved, &c.*

ăm-ăb- mŏn-ēb- reg- aud-ĭ-	or. ăr.	ĕrĭs. / ĕrĕ. ērĭs. / ērĕ.	ĭtŭr. ētŭr.	ĭmŭr. ēmŭr.	ĭmĭnĭ. ēmĭnĭ.	untŭr. entur.

PERFECT, *I have been loved, &c.*

ămātŭs.* mŏnĭtŭs.* rectŭs.* auditŭs.*	sŭm, *or* fŭī.	ĕs, *or* fuistī.	est. *or* fuĭt.	sŭmŭs, *or* fŭīmŭs.	estĭs, *or* fŭistĭs.	sunt, *or* fŭĕrunt.

PLUPERFECT, *I had been loved, &c.*

ămātŭs.* mŏnĭtŭs.* rectŭs.* auditŭs.*	ĕrăm.†	ĕrās.	ĕrăt.	ĕrāmŭs.	erātĭs.	erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been loved, &c.*

ămātŭs.* mŏnĭtŭs.* rectŭs.* auditŭs.*	ĕrŏ.‡	ĕrĭs.	ĕrĭt.	ĕrĭmŭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.	erunt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.
ăm-	ārĕ, ātŏr.	ātŏr.	āmĭnĭ, āmĭnŏr.	antŏr.
mŏn-	ērĕ, ētŏr.	ētŏr.	ēmĭnĭ, ēmĭnŏr.	entŏr.
rĕg-	ĕrĕ, ĭtŏr.	ĭtŏr.	ĭmĭnĭ, ĭmĭnŏr.	untŏr.
aud-	īrĕ, ītŏr.	ītŏr.	īmĭnĭ, īmĭnŏr.	iuntŏr.

* The participle must be inflected in gender and number to agree with the subject.

† Sometimes fueram, fueras, &c.

‡ Sometimes fuero, fueris, &c.

(654.) ACTIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may love, &c.*

ăm- mŏn-e- rĕg- aud-i-	ĕm.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.
	ăm.	ās.	ăt.	āmŭs.	ātĭs.	ant.

IMPERFECT, *I might love, &c.*

ăm-ār- mŏn-ēr- rĕg-ĕr- aud-īr-	ĕm.	ēs.	ĕt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.

PERFECT, *I may have loved, &c.*

ăm-āv- mŏn-ŭ- rĕx- aud-īv-	ĕrĭm.	ĕrĭs.	ĕrĭt.	ĕrĭmŭs.	ĕrĭtĭs.	ĕrint.

PLUPERFECT, *I might have loved, &c.*

ăm-āv- mŏn-ŭ- rex- aud-īv-	īssĕm.	īssēs.	īssĕt.	īssēmŭs.	issētĭs.	issent.

(655.) INFINITIVE.

PRESENT [*to love or be loving, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ăm-ārĕ,	mŏn-ērĕ,	rĕg-ĕrĕ,	aud-īrĕ.

PERFECT [*to have loved, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ămāv-issĕ,	mŏnŭ-issĕ,	rex-issĕ,	audīv-issĕ.

FUTURE [*to be about to love, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ămātūrŭs essĕ,	mŏnĭtūrŭs essĕ,	rectūrŭs essĕ,	auditūrŭs essĕ.

(656.) PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT [*loving, advising, ruling, hearing*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ăm-āns,	mon-ens,	rĕg-ēns,	aud-ĭēns.

PERFECT [*having loved, advised, ruled, heard*].

Wanting: supplied by abl. absol., or by quum with subj.

FUTURE [*about to love, advise, rule, hear*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ămātūrŭs,	mŏnĭtūrŭs,	rectūrŭs,	auditūrŭs.

(657.) GERUND AND

	1.	2.	3.	4.
GERUNDS:	ămandī,	mŏnendī,	regendī,	audiendī.

(658.) SUPINES.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
SUPINE in um:	ămātŭm,	monĭtŭm,	rectŭm,	auditŭm.
" u:	ămātū,	monĭtū,	rectū,	auditū.

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be loved, &c.*

ăm-	ĕr.	ērĭs. / ērĕ.	ētŭr.	ēmŭr.	ēmĭnĭ.	ēntŭr.
mŏn-e- rĕg- aud-ĭ-	ăr.	ărĭs. / ărĕ.	ātur.	āmŭr.	āmĭnĭ.	āntŭr.

IMPERFECT, *I might be loved, &c.*

ăm-ār- mŏn-ēr- rĕg-ĕr- aud-īr-	ĕr.	ērĭs. / ērĕ.	ētŭr.	ēmur.	ēmĭnĭ.	ēntŭr.

PERFECT, *I may have been loved, &c.*

ămātŭs. mŏnĭtŭs. rectŭs. audītŭs.	sĭm.*	sĭs.	sĭt.	sĭmus.	sĭtĭs.	sint.

PLUPERFECT, *I might have been loved, &c.*

ămātŭs. mŏnĭtŭs. rectŭs. audītŭs.	essĕm.†	essĕs.	essĕt.	essĕmŭs.	essĕtĭs.	essent.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT [*to be (being) loved, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ăm-ārī,	mŏn-ērī,	rĕg-ī,	aud-īrī.

PERFECT [*to have been loved, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ămātŭs essĕ,	mŏnĭtŭs essĕ,	rectŭs essĕ,	audītŭs essĕ.

FUTURE [*to be about to be loved, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ămātŭm īrī,	mŏnĭtŭm īrī,	rectŭm īrī,	audītŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT [*loved, being loved, having been loved, &c.*].

1.	2.	3.	4.
ămātŭs,	mŏnĭtŭs,	rectŭs,	audītŭs.

GERUNDIVE.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
GERUNDIVE:	ămandŭs,	mŏnendŭs,	rĕgendŭs,	audiendŭs.

* Sometimes fuerim. † Sometimes fuissem.

6. VERBS IN ĭŏ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

(659.) Some verbs of the third conjugation assume ĭ before the person-ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of căpĕrĕ, *to take.*

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	ĭ-ŏ.	ĭs.	ĭt.	ĭmŭs.	ĭtĭs.	ĭ-ŭnt.
Imperf.	căp-ĭ-ēb-	ăm.	ās.	āt.	āmŭs.	ātĭs.	ant.
Fut.	căp-ĭ-	ăm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmŭs.	ētĭs.	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	cap-ĭ-	ăm.	ās.	āt.	āmŭs.	ātĭs.	ant.
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	ĭ-ŏr.	ĕrĭs.	ĭtŭr.	ĭmŭr.	ĭmĭnĭ.	ĭ-untŭr.
Imperf.	căp-ĭ-ēb-	ăr.	ārĭs.	ātŭr.	āmŭr.	āmĭnĭ.	antŭr.
Fut.	căp-ĭ-	ăr.	ērĭs.	ētŭr.	ēmŭr.	ēmĭnĭ.	entur.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-ĭ-	ăr.	ārĭs.	ātŭr.	āmŭr.	āmĭnĭ.	antŭr.
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, căp-ĭ-untŏ.					3d Plur. Pass., căp-ĭ-untŏr.		
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, căp-ĭ-ens.					Fut. Pass., căp-ĭ-endus.		
GERUND, căp-ĭ-ĕnd-ī, ŏ, &c.							

7. DEPONENT VERBS.

(660.) (1.) Deponent verbs have the *passive* form with *active* signification. As the endings are the same as those of the passives (Paradigm, p. 263, 265), we need not repeat them.

(2.) But deponents have *three* active participles, while other verbs have but *two:* thus,

Pres., *exhorting,*	Perf., *having exhorted,*	Fut., *about to exhort,*
hort-ans.	hort-ātŭs.	hortāt-ūrŭs.

(3.) Also, all *transitive* deponents have the verbal adjective in dus; *e. g.,* hortandŭs, *one that should be exhorted: intransitive* deponents have it only in the *neuter; e. g.,* moriendŭm est, *one must die.*

8. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

(661.) By means of the tenses of essĕ, combined with the future participle in rus, and the verbal in dus, the periphrastic conjugation is formed; *e. g.,* āmātūrŭs sum, *I am about to love, I intend to love;* āmandŭs sŭm, *I am to be loved, I must be loved, one must love me;* and so through all the tenses and persons. The deponent verbs employ this periphrastic conjugation also.

1. WITH PARTICIPLE IN rŭs.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
ămātūrŭs, ă, ŭm,	sŭm, ĕs, est, &c. ĕrăm, ĕrās, &c. fuī, fuistī, &c. fuerăm, fuĕrās, &c. ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c.	ămātūrŭs, ă, ŭm,	sĭm, sīs, sĭt, &c. essĕm, essēs, &c. fuĕrĭm. fuissĕm.
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., ămātūrŭs essĕ, *to be about* (or *intending*) *to love.* Perf., ămātūrŭs fuissĕ, *to have been about to love.* Fut., ămātūrŭs fōrĕ, *to intend to love hereafter.*			

2. WITH VERBAL IN dŭs.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
ămandŭs, ă, ŭm,	sŭm. ĕrăm. fuī. fuĕrăm. ĕrŏ.	ămandŭs, ă, ŭm,	sĭm. essĕm. fuerĭm. fuissĕm.
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., ămandŭs, ă, ŭm, essĕ, *ought to be loved.* Perf., ămandŭs, ă, ŭm, fuissĕ, *ought to have been loved.* Fut., ămandŭs, ă, ŭm, fōrĕ, *ought to be loved hereafter.*			

9. ON THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT-STEM.

(662.) In the paradigms, the perfect-stems are formed by adding to the verb-stem in the 1st conj. ăv- (ăm-ăv-); in the 2d, ŭ (mŏn-ŭ-); in the 3d, s (reg-s); in the 4th, īv- (aud-īv-). But, although most Latin verbs form the perf.-stem thus, many use different endings, which are exhibited in the following classification:

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.

(663.) Four ways of forming the perfect-stem:

I. By adding ăv to the verb-stem:	ăm-ārŏ—ăm-ăv-ī.	
II. " ŭ "	crĕp-ārŏ—crĕp-ŭ-ī.	
III. By reduplicating the first consonant:	d-ārŏ—dĕd-ī.	
IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel:	jŭv-ārŏ—jūv-ī.	

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

I. By adding ŭ to the verb-stem:	mŏn-ĕrĕ—mŏn-ŭ-ī.
II. " ēv "	dēl-ĕrĕ—dēl-ēv-ī.
III. " s "	alg-ĕrĕ—al(g)-s-ī.
IV. By reduplication:	mord-ĕrĕ—mŏ-mord-ī.
V. By lengthening the stem-vowel:	căv-ĕrĕ—cāv-ī.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Six ways:

I.	By adding **s** to the verb-stem:	scrīb-ĕrĕ—scrīp-s-ī.	
II.	" **u** "	ăl-ĕrĕ—ăl-ŭ-ī.	
III.	" **v** *or* **iv** "	cern-ĕrĕ—crĕv-ī.	
		arcess-ĕrĕ—arcess-īv-ī.	
IV.	By reduplication:	curr-ĕrĕ—cŭ-curr-ī.	
V.	By lengthening the stem-vowel:	ĕm-ĕrĕ—ēm-ī.	
VI.	By presenting the simple verb-stem:	ăcu-ĕrĕ—ăcŭ-ī.	

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

I.	By adding **iv** to the verb-stem:	aud-īrĕ,	aud-īv-ī.
II.	" **ŭ** "	ăpĕr-īrĕ,	ăpĕr-ŭ-ī.
III.	" **s** "	fulc-īrĕ,	fūl(c)-s-ī.
IV.	By lengthening the stem-vowel:	vĕn-īrĕ,	vēn-ī.
V.	By presenting the simple verb-stem:	compĕr-īrĕ,	compĕr-ī.

[In the following lists, the verbs are arranged according to the above classification, and the supines also given. When any peculiarity exists in the compounds, it is stated. Of Class I. (which embraces most of the verbs in the language), only one example is given in each conjugation, as the student is familiar with its form; but under the remaining heads *all* the verbs in common use are mentioned.]

10. LIST OF VERBS.

(664.) FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. *Perfect-stem adds* **āv** *to the Verb-stem.*

To love,	ăm-ō,	ăm-ārĕ,	ăm-āv-ī,	ăm-ā-tŭm.

II. *Perfect-stem adds* **ŭ** *to the Verb-stem.*

To creak,	crĕp-o,	crĕp-ārĕ,	crĕp-ŭ-ī,	crĕp-ĭ-tŭm.
Lie down,	cŭb-o,	cŭb-ārĕ,	cŭb-ŭ-ī,	cŭb-ĭ-tŭm.

So the compounds; *e. g.*, accŭbō, accŭbārĕ, accŭbuī, accŭbĭtŭm.

Some compounds, however, which take **m** before *b*, follow the 3d conj.; *e. g.*, accumbō, accumbĕrĕ, accŭbuī, accŭbĭtŭm.

To tame,	dŏm-o,	dŏm-ārĕ,	dŏm-ŭ-ī,	dŏm-ĭ-tŭm.
To rub,	frĭc-o,	frĭc-āre,	frĭc-ŭ-ī,	frĭc-t-ŭm and frĭc-ā-tŭm.
To glitter,	mĭc-o,	mĭc-ārĕ,	mĭc-ŭ-ī,	
To gush forth,	ēmĭc-o,	ēmĭc-ārĕ,	ēmĭc-ŭ-ī,	ēmĭc-ā-tŭm.
To fold,	plĭc-o,	plĭc-ārĕ,	plĭc-ŭ-ī,	plĭc-ĭ-tŭm.

Plĭcŏ is used only in composition: supplĭcŏ, duplĭcŏ, multĭplĭcŏ, have āvī, ātŭm; explĭcŏ, *to explain,* āvī, ātŭm; *to unfold,* uī, ĭtŭm.

To cut,	sĕc-o,	sĕc-ārĕ,	sĕc-ŭ-ī,	sec-t-ŭm.
To sound,	sŏn-o,	sŏn-ārĕ,	sŏn-ŭ-ī,	sŏn-ĭ-tŭm.
To thunder,	tŏn-o,	ton-ārĕ,	tŏn-ŭ-ī,	tŏn-ĭ-tŭm.
To forbid,	vĕt-o,	vĕt-ārĕ,	vĕt-ŭ-ī,	vĕt-ĭ-tŭm.

III. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant with* e.

To give,	d-o,	d-ărĕ,	dĕd-ī,	dă-tŭm.

So, also, those compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*; *e. g.*, circumdŏ, circumdărĕ, circumdĕdī, circumdătum, *to surround*; but the compounds with *monosyllables* follow the 3d conj.; *e. g.*, addŏ, addĕrĕ, addĭdī, addĭtŭm, *to add.*

To stand,	st-o,	st-ārĕ,	stĕt-ī,	st-ā-tŭm.

The compounds have in the perfect stĕtī when the first part is a *dissyllable*; *e. g.*, circumstŏ, circumstĕtī; but stĭtī when it is a *monosyllable*; *e. g.*, adstŏ, adstĭtī.

IV. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

To assist,	jŭv-o,	jūv-ārĕ,	jūv-ī,	jū-tŭm.
To wash,	lăv-o,	lāv-ārĕ,	lāv-ī,	lāvā-tŭm. lau-tŭm. lō-tŭm.

(665.) SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. *Perfect-stem adds* ŭ *to the Verb-stem.*

To admonish,	mŏn-eo,	mŏn-ērĕ,	mŏn-ŭ-ī,	mŏn-ĭ-tŭm.

II. *Perfect-stem adds* ēv *to the Verb-stem.*

To blot out,	dēl-eo,	dēl-ērĕ,	dēl-ēv-ī,	dēl-ē-tŭm.
To weep,	fl-eo,	fl-ērĕ,	fl-ēv-ī,	fl-ē-tŭm.
To spin,	n-eo,	n-ērĕ,	n-ēv-ī,	n-ē-tŭm.
To fill up,	compl-eo,	compl-ērĕ,	compl-ēv-ī,	compl-ē-tŭm.
To abolish,	ăbŏl-eo,	ăbŏl-ērĕ,	ăbŏl-ēv-ī,	ăbŏl-ĭ-tŭm.

The primitives ŏleo and pleo are obsolete: like compleo are conjugated impleo, expleo; like abolĕo, adoleo, and exoleo.

III. *Perfect-stem adds* s *to the Verb-stem.*

Euphonic Rules.

1. A t-sound before s is dropped; *e. g.*, ar(d)-sī = ars-ī.
2. A c-sound + s = x; *e. g.*, aug-sī = aux-ī.
3. But a c-sound *after* l or r, before s, is dropped; *e. g.*, ful(g)-sī = fuls-ī.

To shiver with cold,	alg-eo,	alg-ērĕ,	al-s-ī (alg-s-ī).	
To burn.	ard-eo,	ard-ērĕ,	ar-s-ī (ard-s-ī).	ars-tum.
To increase,	aug-eo,	aug-ērĕ,	aux-ī (aug-s-ī).	auc-tŭm.
To be bright,	fulg-eo,	fulg-ērĕ,	ful-s-ī (fulg-s-ī).	

To stick,	hær-eo,	hær-ērĕ,	hæs-s-ī (hær-s-ī).	hæs-sŭm.
To indulge,	indulg-eo,	indulg-ērĕ,	indul-s-ī (indulg-s-ī),	indul-tŭm.
To command,	jŭb-eo,	jŭb-ērĕ,	jus-s-ī (jub-s-ī),	jus-sŭm.
To remain,	măn-eo,	măn-ērĕ,	man-s-ī,	man-sŭm.
To assuage,	mulc-eo,	mulc-ērĕ,	mul-s-ī (mulc-s-ī),	mul-sŭm.
To milk,	mulg-eo,	mulg-ērĕ,	mul-s-ī (mulg-s-ī),	mulc-tŭm.
To laugh,	rīd-eo,	rīd-ēre,	rī-s-ī (rīd-s-ī),	rī-sŭm.
To advise,	suād-eo,	suād-ērĕ,	suā-s-ī (suad-s-ī),	suā-sŭm.
To wipe,	terg-eo,	terg-ērĕ,	ter-s-ī (terg-s-ī),	ter-sŭm.
To swell,	turg-eo,	turg-ērĕ,	tur-s-ī (turg-s-ī).	
To twist,	torqu-eo,	torqu-ērĕ,	tor-s-ī (torqu-s-ī),	tor-tŭm.
To press,	urg-eo,	urg-ērĕ,	ur-s-ī (urg-s-ī).	
To shine,	lūc-eo,	lūc-ērĕ,	lux-i (lūc-s-ī).	
To mourn,	lūg-eo,	lūg-ērĕ,	lux-ī (lug-s-ī).	

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates first Consonant and Vowel.*

To bite,	mord-eo,	mord-ērĕ,	mŏmord-ī,	mor-sŭm.
To hang,	pend-eo,	pend-ērĕ,	pĕpend-ī,	pen-sŭm.
To betroth,	spond-eo,	spond-ērĕ,	spŏpond-ī,	spon-sŭm.
To shear,	tond-eo,	tond-ērĕ,	tŏtond-ī,	ton-sŭm.

The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication; *e. g.*, re-spondī (not re-spopondī).

V. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

To take care,	căv-eo,	căv-ērĕ,	cāv-ī,	cau-tŭm.
To favour,	făv-eo,	făv-ērĕ,	fāv-ī,	fau-tŭm.
To cherish,	fŏv-eo,	fŏv-ērĕ,	fōv-ī,	fō-tŭm.
To move,	mŏv-eo,	mŏv-ērĕ,	mōv-ī,	mō-tŭm.
To dread,	păv-eo,	păv-ērĕ,	pāv-ī.	
To sit,	sĕd-eo,	sĕd-ērĕ,	sēd-ī,	ses-sŭm.

In the same manner are conjugated the compounds with dissyllables; *e. g.*, circumsĕdeo, circumsĕdērĕ, circumsēdī, circumsessŭm, *to sit around*; but those with monosyllables change ĕ of the stem into ĭ; *e. g.*, assĭdeo, assĭdērĕ, assēdī, assessŭm, *to sit by.*

To see,	vĭd-eo,	vĭd-ērĕ,	vīd-ī,	vī-sŭm.
To vow,	vŏv-eo,	vŏv-ērĕ,	vōv-ī,	vō-tŭm.

(666.) THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. *Perfect-stem adds* s *to the Verb-stem.*

Euphonic Rules.

1. b before s = p; *e. g.*, scrib-sī = scrip-sī.
2. c-sound + s = x; *e. g.*, cing-si = cinx-ī.

[c, g, h, qu, are regarded as c-sounds.]

3. t-sound (d or t) before s is dropped; *e. g.*, claud-s-i = claus-ī.
4. m before s is either changed into s, or p is interposed (prem-s-i = pres-sī; com-s-ī = comp-s-ī).

To write.	scrīb-o,	scrīb-ĕre,	scrip-s-ī (scrib-s-ī),	scrip-tŭm.
To bind,	cing-o,	cing-ĕrĕ,	cinxī (cing-s-ī),	cinc-tŭm.
To carry,	vĕh-o,	vĕh-ĕrĕ,	vexī (veh-s-ī),	vec-tŭm.
To cook,	cŏqu-o,	cŏqu-ĕrĕ,	coxī (coqu-s-ī),	coc-tŭm.
To shut,	claud-o,	claud-ĕrĕ,	clau-s-ī (claud-s-ī),	clau-sŭm.

A u in the compounds is changed into ū; *e. g.*, inclūdo, inclūdĕrĕ, inclūsī, inclūsŭm, *to shut in.*

To give way,	cēd-o,	cēd-ĕrĕ,	cessī (cēd-s-ī),	ces-sŭm.
To scatter,	sparg-o,	sparg-ĕrĕ,	spar-s-ī (sparg-s-ī),	spar-sŭm.

In the compounds a is changed into e; *e. g.*, aspergo, aspergĕrĕ. asper-s-ī, aspersŭm, *to besprinkle.*

To adorn,	cŏm-o,	cŏm-ĕrĕ,	com-ps-ī,	com-p-tŭm.
To press,	prĕm-o,	prĕm-ĕre,	pressī (prem-s-ī),	pres-sŭm.

In the compounds ĕ is changed into ĭ; *e. g.*, comprĭmo, comprĭmĕrĕ, compressī, compressŭm, *to press together.*

To carry,	gĕr-o,	gĕr-ĕrĕ,	gess-ī (gĕr-s-ī),	ges-tŭm.

II. *Perfect-stem adds* u *to the Verb-stem.*

(*a*) Without change of Verb-stem.

To nourish,	ăl-o,	ăl-ĕrĕ,	ăl-u-ī,	ăl-ĭ-tŭm.
To till,	cŏl-o,	cŏl-ĕrĕ,	cŏl-u-ī,	cūl-tăm.
To ask advice,	consŭl-o,	consŭl-ĕrĕ,	consŭl-u-ī,	consul-tŭm.
To knead,	deps-o,	deps-ĕrĕ,	deps-u-ī,	deps-tŭm.
To murmur,	frĕm-o,	frĕm-ĕrĕ,	frĕm-u-ī,	frĕm-ĭ-tŭm.
To groan,	gĕm-o,	gĕm-ĕrĕ,	gĕm-u-ī,	gĕm-ĭ-tŭm.
To grind,	mŏl-o,	mŏl-ĕrĕ,	mŏl-u-ī,	mŏl-ĭ-tăm.
To conceal,	occŭl-o,	occŭl-ĕrĕ,	occŭl-u-ī,	occul-tŭm.
To grind,	pins-o,	pins-ĕrĕ,	pins-u-ī,	pins-ĭ-tŭm.
To snatch,	răp-io,	răp-ĕrĕ,	răp-u-ī,	rap-tŭm.
To join together,	sĕr-o,	sĕr-ĕrĕ,	sĕr-u-ī,	ser-tŭm.

To weave,	tex-o,	tex-ĕrĕ,	tex-u-ī,	tex-tŭm.
To tremble,	trĕm-o,	trĕm-ĕrĕ,	trĕm-u-ī.	
To vomit,	vŏm-o,	vŏm-ĕrĕ,	vŏm-u-ī,	vŏm-ĭ-tŭm.

(*b*) With change of Verb-stem.

To beget,	gign-o,	gign-ĕrĕ,	gĕn-u-ī,	gĕn-ĭ-tŭm.
To reap,	mĕt-o,	mĕt-ĕrĕ,	mess-u-ī,	mes-sŭm.
To place,	pōn-o,	pōn-ĕrĕ,	pŏs-u-ī,	pŏs-ĭ-tŭm.

[For compounds of cumbĕrĕ, see 664, II.]

III. *Perfect-stem adds* v *or* īv *to the Verb-stem.*

(*a*) Adds v, and lengthens Stem-vowel if short.

To separate, perceive,	cern-o,	cern-ĕrĕ,	crē-v-ī,	crē-tŭm.

The perfect and supine of cerno are found only in the compounds *e. g.*, dĕcerno, dĕcernĕrĕ, dĕcrēvī, dĕcrētŭm, *to decree.*

To grow,	cresc-o,	cresc-ĕrĕ,	crē-v-ī,	crē-tŭm.
To smear,	līn-o,	līn-ĕrĕ,	lē-v-ī, *or* lī-v-ī,	lī-tŭm.
To know,	nosc-o,	nosc-ĕrĕ,	nō-v-ī,	nō-tŭm.

So, also, the compounds inter, ig, per, præ-nosco, have ōvī, ōtŭm; but cog, ag, prævog, recog-nosco, have ōvī, ĭtŭm; *e. g.*, agnosco, agnoscĕrĕ, agnōvī, agnĭtŭm, *to perceive.*

To feed,	pasc-o,	pasc-ĕrĕ,	pā-v-ī,	pas-tŭm.
To rest,	quiesc-o,	quiesc-ĕrĕ,	quiē-v-ī,	quiē-tŭm.
To decide,	scisc-o,	scisc-ĕrĕ,	scī-v-ī,	scī-tŭm.
To sow,	sĕr-o,	sĕr-ĕrĕ,	sē-v-ī,	sā-tŭm.

The compounds have the supine in ĭtum; *e. g.*, consĕro, consĕrĕrĕ consēvī, consĭtŭm, *to plant.*

To allow,	sĭn-o,	sĭn-ĕrĕ,	sī-v-ī,	sī-tŭm.
To despise,	spern-o,	spern-ĕrĕ,	sprē-v-ī,	sprē-tŭm.
To strew,	stern-o,	stern-ĕrĕ,	strā-v-ī,	strā-tŭm.
To become accustomed,	suesc-o,	suesc-ĕrĕ,	suē-v-ī,	suē-tŭm.

(*b*) Perfect-stem adds īv.

To summon,	arcess-o,	arcessĕrĕ,	arcess-īv-ī,	arcess-ī-tŭm.

In the same manner, capesso, facesso, incesso, lacesso.

To seek, strive after,	pĕt-o,	pĕt-ĕrĕ,	pĕt-īv-ī,	pĕt-ī-tŭm.
To seek,	quær-o,	quær-ĕrĕ,	quæs-īv-ī,	quæs-ī-tŭm.

The compounds change æ of the stem into ī; *e. g.*, conquīro, conquīrĕrĕ, conquīsīvī, conquīsītŭm, *to examine.*

To rub,	tĕr-o,	tĕr-ĕrĕ,	tr-īv-ī (*for* tĕr-īv-ī),	trī-tŭm.

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

Some of these present vowel-changes, which must be carefully observed. (*a*) When the first vowel is i, o, u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (*b*) in other verbs with e; (*c*) the compounds of dăre, *to give*, with i.

(*a*) First Vowel i, o, or u.

To run, curr-o, curr-ĕrĕ, cŭ-curr-ī, cur-sŭm.

Most of the compounds have the perfect both with and without the reduplication; *e. g.*, accurro, accurrĕrĕ, accurrī and accŭcurrī, accursum, *to run to.*

To learn, disc-o, disc-ĕrĕ, dĭ-dĭc-ī.

The compounds also reduplicate; *e. g.*, perdiscŏ, perdĭdĭcī, *to learn thoroughly.*

To weigh, pend-o, pend-ĕrĕ, pĕ-pend-ī, pen-sum.

The compounds do not reduplicate; *e. g.*, appendŏ, appendĕrĕ, appendī, appensŭm, *to hang to.*

To demand, posc-o, posc-ĕrĕ, po-posc-ī.

The compounds reduplicate; *e. g.*, rĕposcĕrĕ, rĕpŏposcī, *to demand back again.*

To prick, pung-o, pung-ĕrĕ, pŭ-pŭg-ī, punc-tŭm.

Compounds have perf. p u n x ī.

To beat, tund-o, tund-ĕrĕ, tŭ-tŭd-ī, tun-sŭm.

Compounds have supine t ū s u m; *e. g.*, contundĕrĕ, contūsŭm, *to crush.*

(*b*) Other Verbs reduplicate with e.

To fall, căd-o, căd-ĕrĕ, cĕ-cĭd-ī, ca-sŭm.
To cut, cæd-o, cæd-ĕrĕ, cĕ-cĭd-ī, cæ-sŭm.

The compounds have cīdī, cīsŭm; *e. g.*, occīdĕrĕ, occīdī, occīsŭm, *to kill.*

To sing, căn-o, căn-ĕrĕ, cĕ-cĭn-ī, can-tŭm.

The compounds have cĭnuī; *e. g.*, succĭnĕrĕ, succĭnuī, *to sing to.*

To cheat, fall-o, fall-ĕrĕ, fĕ-fell-ī, fal-sŭm.
To bargain, pang-o, pang-ĕrĕ, pĕ-pĭg-ī, pac-tŭm.

The compounds have pingŏ, pĕgī, pactŭm; *e. g.*, compingĕrĕ, compĕgī, compactŭm, *to fasten together.*

To spare, parc-o, parc-ĕrĕ, pĕ-perc-ī, par-sŭm.
To bring forth, păr-io, păr-ĕrĕ, pĕ-pĕr-ī, păr-tŭm.
To drive, pell-o, pell-ĕrĕ, pĕ-pŭl-ī, pul-sŭm.
To touch, tang-o, tang-ĕrĕ, tĕ-tĭg-ī, tac-tŭm.

The compounds have tingo, tingĕrĕ, tĭgī, tactŭm; *e. g.*, attingĕrĕ, attĭgi, attactŭm, *to reach.*

(*c*) Compounds of *dăre*, reduplicate with ĭ.

To hide,	ab-do,	abd-ĕrĕ,	ab-dĭd-ī,	ab-dĭ-tŭm.
To add,	ad-do,	add-ĕrĕ,	ad-dĭd-ī,	ad-dĭ-tŭm.
To lay up,	con-do,	con-d-ĕrĕ	con-dĭd-ī,	con-dĭ-tŭm.
To believe,	crē-do,	crēd-ĕrĕ,	crē-dĭd-ī,	crē-dĭ-tŭm.
To surrender,	dē-do,	dēd-ĕrĕ,	de-dĭd-ī,	dē-dĭ-tŭm.
To publish,	ē-do,	ēd-ĕrĕ,	ē-dĭd-ī,	ē-dĭ-tŭm.
To put in,	in-do,	ind-ĕrĕ,	in-dĭd-ī,	in-dĭ-tŭm.
To oppose,	ob-do,	obd-ĕrĕ,	ob-dĭd-ī,	ob-dĭ-tŭm.
To destroy,	per-do,	perd-ĕrĕ,	per-dĭd-ī,	per-dĭ-tŭm.
To betray,	prō-do,	prod-ĕrĕ,	pro-dĭd-ī,	pro-dĭ-tŭm.
To restore,	red-do,	redd-ĕrĕ,	red-dĭd-ī,	red-dĭ-tŭm.
To deliver,	trā-do,	trad-ĕrĕ,	tra-dĭd-ī,	tra-dĭ-tŭm.
To sell,	ven-do,	vend-ĕrĕ,	ven-dĭd-ī,	ven-dĭ-tŭm.

V. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.*

(*a*) Without Vowel-changes.

To take,	ĕm-o,	ĕm-ĕrĕ,	ēm-ī,	em-tŭm.

Compounds, coĕmo, adĭmō, exĭmō.

To dig,	fŏd-io,	fŏd-ĕrĕ,	fōd-ī,	fos-sŭm.
To fly,	fŭg-io,	fŭg-ĕrĕ,	fūg-ī,	fŭg-ĭ-tŭm.
To pour,	fund-o,	fund-ĕrĕ,	fūd-ī,	fū-sŭm.
To read,	lĕg-o,	lĕg-ĕrĕ,	lēg-ī,	lec-tŭm.

The compounds with per, præ, re, and sub retain ĕ; *e. g.*, perlĕgĕrĕ, perlĕgī, perlectŭm, *to read through*; but those with col, de, e, se, change ĕ into ĭ; *e. g.*, colligĕrĕ, collēgī, collectŭm, *to collect*: three, diligo, *I love*; intelligo, *I understand*; negligo, *I neglect*, have exī, ectŭm; *e. g.*, dilĭgĕrĕ, dilexī, dilectŭm.

To leave,	linqu-o,	linqu-ĕrĕ,	līqu-ī,	lic-tŭm.
To burst,	rump-o,	rump-ĕrĕ,	rūp-ī,	rup-tŭm.
To conquer,	vinc-o,	vinc-ĕrĕ,	vīc-ī,	vic-tŭm.

(*b*) With Vowel-change.

To drive,	ăg-o,	ăg-ĕrĕ,	ēg-ī,	ac-tŭm.

Three of the compounds retain ă, circumăgo, perăgo, sătăgo: two undergo contraction, cōgo (con + ăgo), dēgo (de + ăgo): compounds with ab, amb, ad, ex, prod, sub, change ă into ĭ; *e. g.*, ăbĭgĕrĕ, ăbēgi, abactŭm, *to drive away.*

To take,	căp-io,	căp-ĕrĕ,	cēp-ī,	cap-tŭm.

All the compounds change ă into ĭ, and have supine ceptŭm; *e. g.*, accĭp-ĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm, *to receive.*

To make, To do,	făc-io,	făc-ĕrĕ,	fēc-ī,	fac-tŭm.

1. Compounds with verbs retain ă; *e. g.*, lăbefăcĕrĕ, lăbĕfēcī, labefactŭm, *to weaken.*

2. Compounds with prepositions change ă into ĭ; *e. g.*, affĭcĕrĕ, affēcī, affectŭm, *to affect.*

To break,	frang-o,	frang-ĕrĕ,	frēg-ī,	frac-tŭm.

Compounds change a into i; *e. g.*, refringĕrĕ, refrēgī, refractŭm, *to break open.*

To cast,	jăc-io,	jăc-ĕrĕ,	jēc-ī,	jac-tŭm.

Compounds ab, ad, de, e, in, ob, re, trans, all change ă into ĭ; *e. g.*, abjĭcĕrĕ, abjēcī, abjectŭm, *to throw away.*

VI. *The Perfect-stem presents the simple Verb-stem.*

(*a*) Stems ending in *u* or *v*.

To refuse,	abnu-o,	abnu-ĕrĕ,	abnu-ī.	
To sharpen,	ăcu-o,	acu-ĕrĕ,	ăcu-ī,	acū-tŭm.
To show,	argu-o,	argu-ĕrĕ,	argu-ī,	argū-tŭm.
To agree,	congru-o,	congru-ĕrĕ,	congru-ī.	
To put off,	exu-o,	exu-ĕrĕ,	exu-ī,	exū-tŭm.
To put on,	indu-o,	indu-ĕrĕ,	indu-ī,	indū-tŭm.
To imbue,	imbu-o,	imbu-ĕrĕ,	imbu-ī,	imbū-tŭm.
To pay,	lu-o,	lu-ĕrĕ,	lu-ī.	lū-tŭm.
To fear,	mĕtu-o,	mĕtu-ĕrĕ,	mĕtu-ī.	
To lessen,	mĭnu-o,	mĭnu-ĕrĕ,	mĭnu-ī,	mĭnū-tŭm.
To rush,	ru-o,	ru-ĕrĕ,	ru-ī,	rū-tŭm.
To loose,	solv-o,	solv-ĕrĕ,	solv-ī,	solū-tŭm.
To spit,	spu-o,	spu-ĕrĕ,	spu-ī,	spū-tŭm.
To place,	stătu-o,	statu-ĕrĕ,	statu-ī,	statū-tŭm.
To sneeze,	sternu-o,	sternu-ĕrĕ,	sternu-ī,	sternu-tŭm.
To sew,	su-o,	su-ĕrĕ,	su-ī,	sū-tŭm.
To give,	trĭbu-o,	trĭbu-ĕrĕ,	trĭbu-ī,	trĭbu-tŭm.
To roll,	volv-o,	volv-ĕrĕ.	volv-ī,	volū-tŭm.

(*b*) Consonant-stems.

To weigh,	append-o,	append-ĕrĕ,	append-ī,	appen-sŭm.

So, also, the other compounds of pendo.

To attend,	attend-o,	attend-ĕrĕ,	attend-ī,	atten-sŭm.

So, also, the other compounds of tendo.

To drink,	bĭb-o,	bĭb-ĕrĕ,	bĭb-ī,	bĭbĭ-tŭm.
To forge,	cūd-o,	cūd-ĕrĕ,	cūd-ī,	cū-sŭm.
To eat,	ĕd-o,	ĕd-ĕrĕ,	ēd-ī,	ē-sŭm.
To lick,	lamb-o,	lamb-ĕrĕ,	lamb-ī.	
To chew,	mand-o,	mand-ĕrĕ,	mand-ī,	man-sŭm.
To spread,	pand-o,	pand-ĕrĕ,	pand-ī,	pan-sŭm.

To take,	prĕhend-o,	prĕhend-ĕrĕ,	prĕhend-ī,	prĕhen-sŭm.
To scratch,	scăb-o,	scăb-ĕrĕ,	scăb-ī.	
To climb,	scand-o,	scand-ĕrĕ,	scand-ī.	scan-sŭm.

Compounds (a, e, de, con, in) change ă into ĕ; *e. g.*, ascendo.

To sink down,	sīd-o,	sīd-ĕrĕ,	sīd-ī.

The compounds take the perf. and supine from sĕdĕō; *e. g.*, consīdĕrĕ, consēdī, consessŭm, *to sit together.*

To hiss,	strīd-o,	strīd-ĕrĕ,	strīd-ī.	
To turn,	vert-o,	vert-ĕrĕ,	vert-ī,	ver-sŭm.

Deverto, prævertо, and rĕvertо are also used in the passive form as deponents; *e. g.*, rĕvertŏr, rĕvertī, reversŭs sŭm, *I turn back.*

To brush,	verr-o,	verr-ĕrĕ,	verr-ī,	ver-sŭm.
To pluck,	vell-o,	vell-ĕrĕ,	vell-ī,	vul-sŭm.

Compounds of candŏ and fendŏ belong here, viz.,

To burn,	incend-o,	incend-ĕrĕ,	incend-ī,	incen-sŭm.
To defend,	dēfend-o,	dēfend-ĕrĕ,	dēfend-ī,	dēfen-sŭm.

(667.) FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. *Perfect-stem adds* īv *to the Verb-stem.*

(*Obs.*) This class contains most of the verbs of the fourth conjugation; the following alone has a peculiar supine:

To bury,	sĕpĕl-io,	sĕpĕl-īrĕ,	sĕpĕl-īv-ī,	sĕpul-tŭm.

II. *Perfect-stem adds* u *to the Verb-stem.*

To clothe,	ămĭc-io,	ămĭc-īrĕ,	ămĭc-u-ī,	ămic-tŭm.
To open,	ăpĕr-io,	ăpĕr-īrĕ,	ăpĕr-u-ī,	ăper-tŭm.*
To cover,	ŏpĕr-io,	ŏpĕr-īrĕ,	ŏpĕr-u-ī,	ŏper-tŭm.
To leap,	săl-io,	săl-īrĕ,	săl-u-ī,	sal-tŭm.

Compounds change ă into ĭ; *e. g.*, dēsĭlīrĕ, dēsĭlŭī, dēsultŭm, *to leap down.*

III. *Perfect-stem adds* s *to the Verb-stem.*

To cram,	farc-io,	farc-īrĕ,	{ far-s-ī (farc-s-ī), }	farc-tŭm.

The compounds change a into e; *e. g.*, confercīre, cŏnfersī, confertŭm, *to fill up.*

To prop,	fulc-io,	fulc-īrĕ,	{ ful-s-ī (fulc-s-ī), }	ful-tŭm.
To draw,	haur-io,	haur-īrĕ,	{ hau-s-ī (haur-s-ī), }	haus-tŭm.
To decree,	sanc-io,	sanc-īrĕ,	{ sanx-ī (sanc-s-ī), }	sanc-ī-tum *and* sănc-tŭm.

* The compounds of par-iŏ which begin with a vowel have ui, ertŭm, as in Class II.; those beginning with a consonant have ī, ertŭm, as in Class V.

To patch,	sarc-io,	sarc-īrĕ,	{ sar-s-ī (sarc-s-ī), }	sar-tŭm.
To feel,	sent-io,	sent-īrĕ,	{ sen-s-ī (sent-s-ī), }	sen-sŭm.

Instead of assentiŏ, assentiŏr, deponent is more common.

To hedge in,	sĕp-io,	sĕp-īrĕ,	sĕp-s-ī,	sep-tŭm.
To bind,	vinc-io,	vinc-īrĕ,	{ vinx-ī (vinc-s-ī), }	vinc-tŭm.

IV. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

Contains but a single simple verb.

To come,	vĕn-io,	vĕn-īre,	vēn-ī,	ven-tŭm.

V. *Perfect-stem takes the simple Verb-stem.*

To ascertain,	compĕr-io,	compĕr-īrĕ,	compĕr-ī,	comper-tŭm.*
To discern,	rĕpĕr-io,	rĕpĕr-īrĕ,	rĕpĕr-ī,	rĕper-tŭm.*

(668.) DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

To exhort,	hort-ŏr,	hort-ārī,	hort-āt-ŭs.

The deponents of the first conjugation are the most numerous, but are formed like hortŏr, with ārī, ātŭs.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

To acknowledge,	fāt-eŏr,	fāt-ērī,	fas-sŭs.

The compounds make fĭteŏr, fessŭs; *e. g.*, confĭteŏr, confĭtērī, confessŭs, *to confess:* diffĭteor has no participle.

To bid,	lĭc-eŏr,	lĭc-ērī,	lĭc-ĭt-ŭs.
To heal,	mĕd-eŏr,	mĕd-ērī.	
To deserve,	mĕr-eŏr,	mĕr-ērī,	mĕr-ĭt-ŭs.
To pity,	mĭsĕr-eŏr,	mĭsĕr-ērī,	{ misĕr-ĭt-us, *or* miser-tŭs.
To think,	r-eŏr,	r-ērī,	rā-tŭs.
To look upon,	tu-eŏr,	tu-ērī,	{ tu-ĭt-ŭs, *or* tū-tŭs.
To fear,	vĕr-eŏr,	vĕr-ērī,	vĕr-ĭt-ŭs.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

To devise,	comminisc-ŏr,	comminisc-ĭ,	commen-tŭs.

Rĕminiscor, *to remember,* has no perfect.

To obtain,	ădĭpisc-ŏr,	ădĭpisc-ī,	ădep-tŭs.
To be weary,	dēfetisc-ŏr,	dēfetisc-ī,	dēfes-sŭs.

* See note, p. 276.

To awake,	expergisc-ŏr,	expergisc-ī,	experrec-tŭs.
To enjoy,	fru-ŏr,	fru-ī,	fruc-tŭs *and* fru-ĭt-us.
To perform,	fung-ŏr,	fung-ī,	func-tŭs.
To proceed,	grăd-iŏr,	grăd-ī,	gres-sŭs.

Compounds change the ă into ĕ; *e. g.*, aggrĕdi, aggressŭs, *to assail.*

To be angry,	īrasc-ŏr,	īrasc-ī.	
To fall,	lăb-ŏr,	lăb-ī,	lap-sŭs.
To speak,	lŏqu-ŏr,	lŏqu-ī,	lŏcū-tŭs.
To die,	mŏr-iŏr,	măr-ī,	mor-tuŭs.
To obtain,	nancisc-ŏr,	nancisc-ī,	nac-tŭs.
To be born,	nasc-ŏr,	nasc-ī,	nā-tus.
To lean upon, to strive,	nĭt-ŏr,	nĭt-ī,	nī-sus, *or* nix-ŭs.
To forget,	ŏblivisc-ŏr,	ŏblivisc-ī,	oblī-tus.
To bargain,	păcisc-ŏr,	păcisc-ī,	pac-tŭs.
To feed,	pasc-ŏr,	pasc-ī,	pas-tŭs.

This verb is the passive of pascĕrĕ, *to give food.*

To suffer,	păt-iŏr,	păt-ī,	pas-sus.

Perpĕtiŏr, perpessŭs, *to endure,* changes ă into ĕ.

(From plectŏ, *to twine.*)

To embrace,	amplect-ŏr, complect-ŏr,	amplect-ī, complect-ī,	amplex-ŭs. complex-ŭs.
To set out,	prŏficisc-ŏr,	prŏficisc-ī,	prŏfec-tŭs.
To complain,	quĕr-ŏr,	quĕr-ī,	ques-tŭs.
To grin,	ring-ŏr,	ring-ī.	
To follow,	sĕqu-or,	sĕqu-ī,	sĕcū-tŭs.
To revenge,	ulcisc-ŏr,	ulcisc-ī,	ul-tus.
To use,	ūt-or,	ūt-ī,	ū-sus.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

To assent,	assent-iŏr,	assent-īrī,	assen-sŭs.
To flatter,	bland-iŏr,	bland-īrī,	bland-ĭt-ŭs.
To try,	expĕr-iŏr,	expĕr-īrī,	exper-tŭs.
To bestow money,	larg-iŏr,	larg-īrī,	larg-ĭt-ŭs.
To lie,	ment-iŏr,	ment-īrī,	ment-ĭt-ŭs.
To measure,	mĕt-iŏr,	mĕt-īrī,	men-sŭs.
To move a mass,	mōl-iŏr,	mōl-īrī,	mōl-ĭt-ŭs.
To wait for,	oppĕr-iŏr	oppĕr-īrī,	opper-tŭs.
To begin,	ord-iŏr,	ord-īrī,	or-sŭs.

To rise,	ŏr-iŏr,	ŏr-īrī,	or-tŭs.
To divide,	part-iŏr,	part-īrī,	part-īt-ŭs.
To possess myself of,	pŏt-iŏr,	pŏt-īrī,	pŏt-īt-ŭs.
To cast lots,	sort-iŏr,	sort-īrī,	sort-īt-ŭs.

(669.) INCHOATIVE VERBS.

Inchoatives are verbs derived from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs, expressing a *beginning* or *becoming* of the act or state denoted by the primitive. Their stems always end in *sc*, and they all follow the form of the 3d conj.; *e. g.*,

From puer, *boy*, we have puerasc-ĕrĕ, *to become a boy (again)*.
" mātūr-ŭs, *ripe*, we have mātūresc-ĕre, *to become ripe*.
" dorm-īrĕ, *to sleep*, we have obdormisc-ĕrĕ, *to fall asleep*.

(1.) It is enough to observe on those derived from *adjectives* and *nouns* that they either *have* no perfect, or else form it in ŭi.

(2.) As to those derived from verbs,

(*a*) Most are from verbs in the *second* conjugation, and form their perfect-stem by adding u to the stem, rejecting sc; or, in other words, their perf.-stem is the same as that of the simple verb from which they are derived; *e. g.*,

To become gray,	canesc-ĕrĕ (canērĕ),	canu-ī.
To grow sour,	acesc-ĕrĕ (acēre),	acu-ī.

(*b*) Those derived from verbs of the other conjugations take the perfects of the simple verbs from which they are derived.

To grow old,	invĕterasc-ĕrĕ (*inveterārĕ*),	inveterāv-ī,	inveterā-tum.
To come to life,	rĕvīvisc-ĕrĕ (*vivĕrĕ*),	rĕvix-ī,	rĕvic-tum.
To fall asleep,	obdormisc-ĕrĕ (*dormīrĕ*),	obdormīv-ī,	obdormī-tum

11. IRREGULAR VERBS.*

(670.) INFINITIVE MOOD.

Tenses for Incomplete Action. Present and Imperfect.	*Tenses for Complete Action.* Perfect and Pluperfect.
1. possĕ, *to be able.*	pŏtuissĕ, *to have been able.*
2. vellĕ, *to be willing.*	vŏluissĕ, *to have been willing.*
3. nollĕ, *to be unwilling.*	nŏluissĕ, *to have been unwilling.*
4. mallĕ, *to be more willing.*	māluissĕ, *to have been more willing.*
5. ēdĕrĕ, *or* essĕ, *to eat.*	ēdissĕ, *to have eaten.*
6. ferrĕ, *to bear.*	tŭlissĕ, *to have borne,* or *suffered.*
7. fĭĕrī, *to become.*	factŭm essĕ, *to have been made,* or *done.*
8. ferrī, *to be borne.*	lātŭm essĕ, *to have been borne.*

* See note, next page.

(671.) INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I am able, &c.*			PERFECT, *I have been able, &c.*		
1. possŭm,*	pŏtĕs,	pŏtest,	1. pŏtu-ī,	istī,	ĭt,
possŭmŭs,	pŏtestĭs,	possunt.	pŏtu-ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt *or* ērĕ.
2. vŏlŏ,	vīs,	vult,	2. vŏlu-ī,	isti,	ĭt,
vŏlŭmŭs,	vultĭs,	volunt.	vŏlu-ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt *or* ērĕ.
3. nōlŏ,	nonvis,	nonvult,	3. nōlu-ī,	isti,	ĭt,
nōlŭmŭs,	nonvultĭs,	nōlunt.	nōlu-ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt *or* ērĕ.
4. mālŏ,	māvis,	māvult,	4. mālu-ī,	isti,	ĭt,
mālumŭs,	māvultĭs,	mālunt.	mālu-ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt *or* ērĕ.
5. ĕdŏ,	ĕdis *or* ēs,	ĕdit *or* est,	5. ēd-ī,	isti,	ĭt,
ĕdĭmŭs,	ĕditĭs *or* estĭs;	ĕdunt.	ēd-ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt *or* ērĕ.
6. fĕrŏ,	fers,	fert,	6. tŭl-ī,	isti,	ĭt,
fĕrĭmŭs,	fertĭs,	fĕrunt.	tŭl-ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt *or* ērĕ.
7. fĭo,†	fīs,	fit,	7. factus sŭm,	ĕs,	ĕst,
fĭmŭs,	fitĭs,	fiunt.	facti sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt.
8. fĕrŏr,	ferris *or* ferre;	fertur,	8. lātŭs sŭm,	ĕs,	est,
ferĭmŭr,	fĕrīmĭnī,	fĕruntur.	lāti sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt.

IMPERFECT, *I was able, &c.*			PLUPERFECT, *I had been able, &c.*		
1. pŏt-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,	1. pŏtu-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
pŏt-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.	pŏtu-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
2. vŏl-ēbăm,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	2. vŏlu-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
vŏl-ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.	vŏlu-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
3. nōl-ēbăm,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	3. nōlu-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
nōl-ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.	nōlu-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
4. māl-ēbăm,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	4. mālu-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
māl-ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.	mālu-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
5. ĕd-ēbăm,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	5. ēd-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
ĕd-ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.	ēd-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
6. fĕr-ēbăm,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	6. tŭl-ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
fĕr-ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.	tŭl-ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
7. fī-ēbăm,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	7. factŭs ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
fī-ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.	facti ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
8. fĕr-ēbār,	ēbāris *or* ē,	ēbātŭr,	8. lātŭs ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
fĕr-ēbāmur,	ēbāmĭnī,	ēbantŭr.	lāti ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.

FUTURE, *I shall or will be able, &c.*			FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall or will have been able, &c.*		
1. pŏt-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,	1. pŏtu-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrunt.	pŏtu-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
2. vŏl-ăm,	ēs,	ĕt,	2. vŏlu-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
vŏl-ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.	vŏlu-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
3. nōl-ăm,	ēs,	ĕt,	3. nōlu-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
nōl-ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.	nōlu-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
4. māl-ăm,	ēs,	ĕt,	4. mālu-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
māl-ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.	mālu-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
5. ĕd-ăm,	ēs,	ĕt,	5. ēd-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
ĕd-ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.	ēd-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
6. fĕr-ăm,	ēs,	ĕt,	6. tŭl-ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
fĕr-ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.	tŭl-ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
7. fī-ăm,	ēs,	ĕt,	7. factus ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
fī-ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.	facti ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.
8. fĕr-ăr,	ĕris *or* ērĕ,	ētŭr,	8. lātŭs ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
fĕr-ēmŭr,	ēmĭnī,	entŭr.	lāti ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrint.

* As many of these verbs are nearly related to each other, it seems unnecessary to separate their forms of inflection. The correspondent *numbers* will be sufficient direction in tracing the several tenses of each verb.

† Fio, contrary to the general rule (24, *a*), has ĭ *long* throughout, before vowels: but before *er* it is *short*; as, fĭĕri.

(672.) IMPERATIVE MOOD.

NOTE.—*Possum, volo, malo,* have no imperative mood.

3. nōlī, *or* nōlītō, *be thou unwilling.*
nōlītĕ, *or* nōlītōtĕ, *be ye, &c.*
5. ēdē, ēdītō, *or* ēs, estō, *eat thou.*
ēdītĕ, ēdītōtĕ: 3. ĕduntō.
6. fĕr, *or* fertō, *bear thou.*
fertĕ, *or* fertōtĕ: 3. fĕruntō.
7. fī, *or* fītō, *become thou.*
fītĕ, *or* fītōtĕ: 3. fīuntō.
8. ferrĕ, *or* fertŏr, *be thou borne.*
fĕrīmĭnī, *or* fĕrīmĭnōr: 3. fĕruntŭr.

(673.) SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be able, &c.*			PERFECT, *I may have been able, &c.*		
1. poss-īm,	īs,	īt,	1. pŏtu-ĕrīm,	ĕrīs,	ĕrīt,
poss-īmŭs,	ītīs,	int.	pŏtu-ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrītīs,	ĕrint.
2. vĕl-īm,	īs,	īt,	2. vŏlu-ĕrīm,	ĕrīs,	ĕrīt,
vĕl-īmŭs,	ītīs,	int.	vŏlu-ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrītīs,	ĕrint.
3. nōl-īm,	īs,	īt,	3. nōlu-ĕrīm,	ĕrīs,	ĕrīt,
nōl-īmŭs,	ītīs,	int.	nōlu-ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrītīs,	ĕrint.
4. māl-īm,	īs,	īt,	4. mālu-ĕrim,	ĕrīs,	ĕrīt,
māl-īmŭs,	ītīs,	int.	mālu-ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrītīs,	ĕrint.
5. ĕd-ăm,	ās,	ăt,	5. ēd-ĕrīm,	ĕrīs,	ĕrīt,
ĕd-āmŭs,	ātīs,	ant.	ēd-ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrītīs,	ĕrint.
6. fĕr-ăm,	ās,	ăt,	6. tŭl-ĕrīm,	ĕrīs,	ĕrīt,
fĕr-āmŭs,	ātis,	ant.	tŭl-ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrītīs,	ĕrint.
7. fī-ăm,	ās,	ăt,	7. factus sĭm,	sis,	sĭt,
fī-āmŭs,	ātis,	ant.	factī sīmŭs,	sitīs,	sint.
8. fĕr-ār,	ārīs *or* ārĕ,	ātŭr,	8. lātus sĭm,	sis,	sĭt,
fĕr-āmŭr,	āmĭnī,	antŭr.	lātī sīmŭs,	sitīs,	sint.

IMPERFECT, *I might be able, &c.*			PLUPERF., *I might have been able, &c.*		
1. Poss-ĕm,	ēs,	ĕt,	1. pŏtu-issĕm,	issēs,	issĕt,
poss-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	pŏtu-issēmŭs,	issētis,	issent.
2. vell-ĕm,	ēs,	ĕt,	2. vŏlu-issĕm,	issēs,	issĕt,
vell-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	vŏlu-issēmŭs,	issētis,	issent.
3. noll-ĕm,	ēs,	ĕt,	3. nōlu-issĕm,	issēs,	issĕt,
noll-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	nōlu-issēmŭs,	issētis,	issent.
4. mall-ĕm,	ēs,	ĕt,	4. mālu-issĕm,	issēs,	issĕt,
mall-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	mālu-issēmŭs,	issētis,	issent.
5. ĕdĕr-ĕm *or* essĕm;	ēs,	ĕt,	5. ēd-issĕm,	issēs,	issĕt,
ĕdĕr-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	ēd-issēmŭs,	issētis,	issent.
6. ferr-ĕm,	ēs,	ĕt,	6. tŭl-issĕm,	issēs,	issĕt,
ferr-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	tŭl-issēmŭs,	issētis,	issent.
7. fĭĕr-ĕm,	ēs,	ĕt,	7. factŭs essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt,
fĭĕr-ēmŭs,	ētīs,	ent.	factī essēmŭs,	essētis,	essent.
8. ferr-ĕr,	ērīs *or* ērĕ,	ētŭr,	8. lātŭs essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt,
ferr-ēmĕr,	ēmĭnī,	entŭr.	lātī essēmŭs,	essētis,	essent.

(674.) GERUNDS.

2. vŏlendī, volendō, volendŭm, *of being, in being, to be, willing.*
3. nōlendī, nōlendō, nōlendŭm, " " " *unwilling.*
4. mālendī, malendō, malendŭm, " " " *more willing.*
5. ĕdendī, ĕdendō, edendŭm, *of eating, in eating, to eat.*
6. fĕrendī, fĕrendō, fĕrendŭm, *of bearing, in bearing, to bear.*

(675.) SUPINES.

Accusative.	*Ablative.*
5. ēsum, *to eat.*	ēsū, *to be eaten, to eat.*
6. lātŭm, *to bear.*	lātū, *to be borne.*

(676.) PARTICIPLES.

Active. 1. pōtens, *being able.*
2. vōlens, " *willing.*
3. nōlens, " *unwilling.*
4. mālens, " *more willing.*
5. ēdens, *eating.* ēsūrus, *about to eat.*
6. fĕrens, *bearing.* lātūrus, *about to bear.*
7. fāciendŭs, *to be made* or *done.*
8. fĕrendŭs, *to be borne.*

Passive. 7. factŭs, *being* or *having been made* or *done.*
8. lātŭs, *being* or *having been borne* or *suffered.*

(677.) Eo, *I go.*

Eŏ, *I go*, is conjugated like *audio*, except in the following tenses:

	Singular.			Plural.		
Imp. Ind. Pres.	eō,	īs,	īt.	īmŭs,	ītĭs,	eunt.
Past.	ībăm,	ības,	ībăt.	ībāmŭs,	ībātĭs,	ībant.
Fut.	ībŏ,	ībĭs,	ībĭt.	ībĭmŭs,	ībĭtĭs,	ībunt.
Imperative.		ī, *or* ītō.		ītĕ, *or* ītōtĕ.	3.	euntō.
Imp. Pot. Pres.	eăm.	eās,	eăt.	eāmŭs,	eātĭs,	eant.
Gerunds.	eundī,	eundō,	eundŭm.			
Particips. Pres.	iens (*gen.* euntĭs), *going.*			*Fut.* ītūrŭs, *about to go.*		
Supines.	ītŭm, ītū.					

Rem. In like manner, the compounds of eo are formed: also, queo, *to be able*, and nequeo, *to be unable*; except that these two have no imperative mood or gerunds.

12. DEFECTIVE VERBS

(678.) Are those which have only some particular tenses and moods; as, aio, *I say*; ausīm, *I dare*; avē, *hail!* &c.

(1.) Aio, *I say.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
Ind. Pres.	aio,	ăis,	ăit.			ăiunt.
Imperfect.	āi-ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbăt.	ēbāmŭs,	ēbātis,	ēbant.
Imperative.		ăi.				
Subj. Pres.		ăiās,	ăiăt.			ăiant.
Participle.	ăiens.					

(2.) Ausīm, *I dare.*

Ind. Pres.	ausīm,	ausīs,	ausīt.	ausint.

(3.) Āvē, *hail!*

Imperative.	āvē, *or* āvēto.	āvētĕ, *or* āvētōtĕ.
Infinitive.	āvērĕ.	

(4.) Salvē, *God save you!*

Imperative.		salvē, *or* salvētō.	salvētĕ, *or* salvētōtĕ.
Infinitive.	salvērĕ.		
Ind. Fut.		salvēbĭs.	

(5.) Cĕdo, *give me.*		
	Singular.	Plural.
Imperative.	cĕdŏ.	cĕdĭtĕ.

(6.) Faxo, *or* faxim (for *faciam*), *I will* or *may do it.*					
Ind. Pres.	fax-o, *or* fax-im,	is,	it.	imŭs,	itis, int.

(7.) Quæsŏ, *I pray.*			
Ind. Pres.	quæs-ŏ,	is,	it. ŭmŭs.
Infinitive.	quæsĕrĕ.		
Participle.	quæsens.		

(8.) Inquăm, *or* Inquiŏ, *I say.*					
Impf. Ind. Pres.	inqu-iē, *or* ăm,	is,	it.	imus,	iunt.
Past.		inquiēbat.			inquiē-
Fut.	inquiēs,	inquiēt.			[bant.
Perf. Ind. Pres.	inquistī.				
Imperative.	inquĕ,	inquĭtŏ.		inquĭtĕ.	
Participle.	inquiens.				

(9.) These verbs,

Nōv-ī, *I know;*
Měmĭn-ī, *I remember;*
Cœp-ī, *I begin;*
Od-ī, *I hate,*

have the forms of the perfect tenses combined with the meanings of the imperfect. Nosco, the present of nōvī, is in use, and denotes *to learn*, whence nōvī expresses the actual knowledge which is the result of past learning.

Nōv-	ī,	istī, &c. (*Pres.*)
Memĭn-	ĕrăm,	ĕrās, &c. (*Past.*)
Cœp-	ĕrŏ,	ĕris, &c. (*Fut.*)
Od-	ĕrim,	ĕris. &c. (*Subj. Pres.*)
	issĕm,	issēs, &c. (*Subj. Past.*)
	issĕ,	(*Infinitive.*)

Mementŏ, mementōtĕ. (*Imperative.*)
Ōsŭs, ōsūrŭs; cœptus, cœptūrŭs. (*Participles.*)

13. IMPERSONAL VERBS

(679.) Are those which have no *subject*, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; *e. g.*, pluit, *it rains.*

1. Impersonals *never used personally.*

lĭbĕt, lĭbuĭt, *it pleases.*	*pœnĭtĕt, pœnĭtuĭt, *it repents.*
lĭcĕt, lĭcuĭt, *or* lĭcĭtum est, } *one may, it is lawful.*	*pŭdĕt, pŭduĭt, } *it shames, one is ashamed.*
ŏportĕt, ŏportuĭt, } *one ought, it behooves.*	*tædĕt, pertæsŭm est, } *it wearies, disgusts.*
*mĭsĕrĕt, *one pities.*	rĕfert, *it concerns.*
*pĭgĕt, *it grieves (one).*	

* Those marked * take *acc.* of person and *gen.* of the thing (or object of the feeling).

2. Impersonals sometimes *used personally* in third person singular or plural.

fulmĭnăt, fulgŭrat,	*it lightens.*	ningĭt,	*it snows.*
grandĭnăt,	*it hails.*	pluĭt,	*it rains.*
lucescĭt,	*it grows light.*	tŏnăt,	*it thunders.*
		vespĕrascĭt,	*it grows dark.*

3. Personal verbs used *specially* as impersonals in third person singular.

accĭdit,	*it happens.*	fĭt,	*it happens.*
accēdĭt,*	*it is added.*	intĕrest,	*it concerns.*
appārĕt,	*it appears.*	jŭvăt,	*it is pleasant.*
attĭnĕt,	*it belongs to.*	lătĕt,	*it is unknown, concealed.*
conducĭt,	*it is conducive.*	liquĕt,	*it is clear.*
constăt,	*it is known, it is agreed upon.*	pătĕt,	*it is plain, open.*
contingĭt,	*it happens.*	plăcĕt,	*it pleases (I resolve).*
convenĭt,	*it suits, agrees.*	præstăt,	*it is better.*
delectăt,	*it is delightful.*	restăt,	*it remains.*
dĕcĕt,	*it is becoming.*	sŏlĕt,	*it happens usually.*
dēdĕcĕt,	*it is unbecoming.*	assolĕt,	
evĕnĭt,	*it turns out.*	stăt,	*it is resolved.*
expēdĭt,	*it is expedient.*	suffĭcĭt,	*it suffices.*
excĭdit,†	*it has escaped me.*	văcăt,	*(I) have leisure.*

Rem. These may be used in the different tenses of indic. and *subj.* moods.

4. The third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive; *e. g.*, currĭtŭr, *they run* (it is run by them); pugnātŭm est, *they fought* (it was fought by them). Those which govern the dative, govern it also in the impersonal form; *e. g.*, *I am envied*, mĭhĭ invĭdētŭr.

* Accēdit quod (*or* ŭt) = *moreover.*

† *i. e.*, dē mĕmŏrĭā excĭdit = *it has slipped from my memory—is forgotten.*

§ 7. ADVERB.

THE adverb qualifies a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

I. *Derivative Adverbs.*

(680.) *Derivative adverbs* (*a*) are nearly all formed from *adjectives* or *participles*, by adding ē or ĭtĕr to their stems:

1. Add ē to stem of adjectives in ŭs, ă, ŭm; *e. g.*,

clār-ŭs, *illustrious.* clār-ē, *illustriously.*

Rem. Bŏnŭs makes bŏnē, *well*; and mălŭs (*bad*); mălē, *badly.* All others end in ē (*long*).

2. Add ĭtĕr to the stem of adjectives of 2d or 3d class; *e. g.*,

brĕv-ĭs, *brief.* brĕv-ĭtĕr, *briefly.*
fĕrox (ferōc-s), *fierce.* fĕrōc-ĭtĕr, *fiercely.*

Rem. 1. Those which end in ns do not take the connecting vowel ĭ; *e. g.*,

prūdens, *prudent.* prūden-tĕr, *prudently.*

2. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tĕr, *boldly.*

(*b*) A few are formed from nouns, by adding tŭs or tĭm to the stem by means of a connecting vowel; *e. g.*,

cœl-ŭm, *heaven.* cœl-ĭ-tŭs, *from heaven.*
fund-ŭs, *bottom.* fund-ĭ-tŭs, *from the bottom, totally.*
grex (greg-s), *flock.* grĕg-ă-tĭm, *by flocks.*

(*c*) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter*, are often used as adverbs; *e. g.*, dulcĕ, *sweetly*; falsō, *falsely*, &c.

II. *Primitive Adverbs.*

(681.) *Primitive adverbs* are such as cannot conveniently be classed among the derivatives above mentioned. The most common are arranged in the following lists:

1. ADVERBS OF PLACE (fivefold).

(1.) *In a Place.*

ŭbĭ?	*where?*	ŭbĭquĕ,	*everywhere.*
hīc,	*here.*	nusquām,	*nowhere.*
illīc,	*there.*	ălĭcŭbĭ,	*somewhere.*
istīc,	*there, where you are.*	ălĭbī,	*elsewhere.*
ībĭ,	*there.*	ŭbĭvis,	*anywhere (you please).*
intŭs,	*within.*		
fŏrĭs,	*without.*	ĭbĭdĕm,	*in the same place.*

(2.) *To a Place—(o, uc).*

quō?	*whither?*	fŏrās,	*to without.*
hūc,	*hither.*	eō,	*to that place.*
illūc,	*thither.*	aliō,	*to another place.*
istūc,	*thither, to where you are.*	alĭquō,	*to some place.*
		eōdĕm,	*to the same place.*
intrō,	*to within.*		

(3.) *Towards a Place.*

quorsŭm,	*whitherward?*	rĕtrorsŭm,	*backward.*
versŭs,	*towards.*	dextrorsŭm,	*to the right hand.*
sursŭm,	*upward.*	sinistrorsŭm,	*to the left hand.*
deorsŭm,	*downward.*		

(4.) *From a Place—(nc, nde).*

undĕ?	*whence?*	aliundĕ,	*from elsewhere.*
hinc,	*hence.*	ălĭcundĕ,	*from some place.*
illĭc,	*thence.*	sĭcundĕ,	*if from any place.*
īstinc,	*thence, from where you are.*	utrinquĕ,	*on both sides.*
		sŭpernĕ,	*from above.*
indĕ,	*thence.*	infernĕ,	*from below.*

(5.) *Through or by a Place.*

quā?	*which way?*	istāc,	*that way, by you.*
hāc,	*this way.*	alĭā,	*another way.*
illāc,	*that way.*		

2. ADVERBS OF TIME (threefold).

(1.) *Being in time, either,*

1. *Present.*

nunc,	*now.*
hŏdiĕ,	*to-day.*

2. *Past.*

tunc, tŭm,	*then.*
hĕrī,	*yesterday.*
dūdŭm, prīdĕm,	*heretofore.*
prīdiĕ,	*the day before.*
nūpĕr,	*lately.*

3. *Future.*

(*Very Near.*)

jamjam, mox,	*presently.*
statim,	*immediately.*
protĭnus, illĭco,	*by-and-by.*

(*Remote.*)

crās,	*to-morrow.*
postridie,	*the day after.*
perendie,	*two days hence.*
nondum,	*not yet.*

4. *Indefinite.*

quandō ?	*when ?*
aliquandō, nonnunquăm interdum,	*sometimes.*
sempĕr,	*always.*
nunquăm,	*never.*
intĕrīm, intĕreā,	*in the mean time.*
quŏtidiĕ,	*daily.*

(2.) *Continuance of Time.*

quamdiū ?	*how long ?*
diū,	*long.*
tamdiū,	*so long.*
jamdiū, jamdūdŭm, jamprīdĕm,	*long ago.*

(3.) *Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.*

1. *Indefinite.*

quŏtiĕs ?	*how often ?*
sæpĕ,	*often.*
tŏtiĕs,	*so often.*
alĭquŏtiĕs,	*for several times.*
vicissīm,	*by turns.*
rursŭs,	*again.*
ĭtĕrŭm,	*a second time.*
subindĕ,	*immediately after.*
identĭdĕm,	*several times.*

2. *Definite, or in Number.*

sĕmĕl,	*once.*
bĭs,	*twice.*
tĕr,	*thrice.*
quatĕr,	*four times.*

3. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

indĕ,	*then.*	deinceps,	*successively.*
deindĕ,	*thereafter.*	dĕnuō,	*anew.*
dehinc,	*henceforth.*	denĭquĕ,	*finally.*
porrō,	*moreover.*	(postrēmō,†	*lastly.*
prīmo,* -um,†	*first.*		
secundō,†	*secondly.*)		
&c.			

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, &c.

ădeō,	*so, and therefore.*
admŏdŭm,	*very, greatly.*
ăn,	*whether ? or else ?*
cūr,	*why.*
dēmŭm,	*at length.*
ĕtiam,	*likewise, yes.*
fĕrē,	*almost.*
haud,	*not.*
ĭmmŏ,	*yes, truly.*
ĭtă,	*so, thus.*
măgĭs,	*more.*
nĕ,	*not.*
nempĕ,	*truly.*
nīmĭum,	*too much.*
nōn,	*not.*
nŭm ?	*whether ?*
omnīnō,	*at all, in general.*
părŭm,	*little.*
sătĭs,	*enough.*
sīc,	*so, thus.*
scilĭcĕt,	*namely.*
vīdēlĭcĭt,	*namely.*
vix,	*scarcely.*

* Prīmo = *at first*; prīmŭm = *first, in the first place.*
† These fall under (680, *c*).

§ 8. PREPOSITION.

(662.) 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the *accusative:*

Antĕ, ăpŭd, ăd, adversŭs,
Circŭm, circā, citrā, cĭs,
Ergā, contrā, intĕr, extrā,
Infrā, intrā, juxtā, ŏb,
Pĕnĕs, pŏnĕ, post, *and* prætĕr,
Prŏpĕ, proptĕr, pĕr, sĕcundŭm,
Sŭprā, versŭs, ultrā, trans.

[VERSŬS is placed *after* the noun which it governs.]

2. Governing the *ablative:*

Absquĕ, ā, ăb, abs, *and* dē.
Cōrăm, clām, cūm, ex, *and* ē.
Tĕnŭs, sĭnĕ, prō, *and* præ.

3. Governing both *accusative* and *ablative:*

In, sŭb, sŭpĕr, subtĕr

§ 9. CONJUNCTION.

(683.) CONJUNCTIONS connect words and sentences. They may be divided into the following classes:

I. *Copulative*, which simply unite sentences together (*and*): they are ĕt, atquĕ or ăc, quĕ, nĕquĕ or nĕc, necnōn, ĕtiăm, quŏquĕ, with the adverbials ĭtĕm and ĭtĭdĕm.

II. *Disjunctive*, which connect *unlike* prepositions (*or*): they are aut, vĕl, the suffix vĕ, and sīvĕ or seu; (*either—or*): aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl; (*whether—or*): sīvĕ—sīvĕ.

III. *Comparative* (*as, like, as if*, &c.): they are ŭt, sīcŭt, vĕlŭt, proŭt, ceu, quăm, tamquăm, quāsĭ, utsī, acsī, together with ăc and atquĕ, when they mean *as*.

IV. *Adversative*, expressing *opposition* of thought (*but*): they are sĕd, autĕm, vĕrŏ, ăt and its compounds, tămĕn (and its compounds with at sed and verum), and cēterum.

V. *Concessive*, expressing something *granted* (*although, even if*): they are etsī, etiamsī, tămetsī, quamquăm, quamvīs, quantumvīs, quamlĭbĕt, lĭcĕt, with ŭt and quum, when they mean *although*.

VI. *Conditional*, expressing a *condition* (*if, if only, if but*): they are sĭ, sīn, nī or nĭsĭ, sĭmŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, mŏdone, and some times dŭm and mŏdŏ used alone.

VII. *Conclusive*, expressing a *conclusion* or *inference* (*therefore*): they are ergo, ĭgĭtŭr, ĭtăquĕ, eō, ideō, idcircō, proindĕ, proptĕreā, and the relatives (*wherefore*) quāproptĕr, quārē, quamobrĕm, quōcircā, undĕ.

VIII. *Causal*, expressing a *cause* or *reason* (*for, because*): năm, namquĕ, ĕnĭm, ĕtĕnĭm, quiă, quŏd, quŏniăm, quippĕ, quum, quandō, quandōquĭdĕm, sīquĭdĕm.

IX. *Final*, expressing a *purpose* or *aim* (*in order that, in order that not*): ŭt or ŭti, quō, nĕ, utnĕ, nĕvĕ, neu, quĭn, quōmĭnŭs.

X. *Temporal*, expressing a relation of *time* (*when, as soon as, after that, just as*): quum, ŭt, ŭbĭ, postquăm, antĕquăm, prīusquăm, quandŏ, sĭmŭl, sĭmŭlăc, dŭm, usquĕ dŭm, dōnĕc, quoăd.

XI. *Interrogative*, used in asking questions: nŭm, utrŭm, ăn, nĕ (suffix).

§ 10. INTERJECTION.

(684.) INTERJECTIONS are simply signs of emotion.

āh,	*ah!*	hĕm,	*hem! how!*
ăpăgĕ,	*away!*	iō,	*huzza!*
eccĕ,	*behold!*	ōh,	*oh! alas!*
eccŭm,	*see him!*	păpæ,	*O strange! good!*
eŭ,	*lo!*	prō,	*alas!*
heī, heū,	*alas!*	væ,	*woe!*
		vāh,	*O rare!*

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

(685.) A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words; *e. g., the rose blooms; the rose is beautiful.*

(686.) A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition; *e. g., the messenger was sent; the swift messenger arrived.*

(687.) A *compound sentence* is one made up of two or more propositions; *e. g.*, the messenger, *who had been sent*, arrived.

(688.) SYNTAX treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences, and of the relation of sentences to each other. We speak first,

PART I.

OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 1. *Definition of Subject and Predicate.*

(689.) Every sentence (*e. g., the eagle flies*) consists of two parts, the *subject* (*e. g., eagle*) and the *predicate* (*e. g., flies*).

(*a*) The *subject* is that of which anything is declared, and is generally (1) a *noun*, or (2) some word used instead of a noun.

1. The *eagle* flies. Here the noun *eagle* is the subject.
2. *To err* is human. Here the infinitive *to err* is used as a noun, and forms the subject.

(*b*) The *predicate* is that which is declared of the subject, and is generally either (1) a *verb*, (2) an *adjective* or *participle*, or (3) a *noun*, connected with the subject by some form of the verb *to be*.

1. The eagle *flies*. Here the verb *flies* is the predicate.
2. To err is *human*. Here the adjective *human* is the predicate.
3. John is a *man*. Here the noun *man* is the predicate.

§ 2. *Agreement.*

(690.) RULE I. The verb of the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person.

The trees are green.	Arbores virent.
Art thou happy?	Esne tu beatus?

Rem. 1. If the subj. consists of two or more singular nouns denoting *persons*, the verb is generally in the plural.

2. A *collective* noun sometimes has a plural verb.

The crowd rushes.	Turba ruunt.

[This construction is not used by Cicero, and seldom, if at all, by Cæsar.]

3. A plural verb is sometimes used with uterque and quisque.

Each of them leads his army out of the camp.	Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.

4. The verb agrees with the first person rather than the second; the second rather than the third.

If *you* and Tullia *are well*, Cicero and *I are well.*	Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.

(691.) An adjective may stand either

(1.) As predicate; *e. g.*, the man is *happy*;

(2.) As modifying the subject; *e. g.*, the *good* man is happy;

(3.) As modifying the predicate; *e. g.*, the good man is a *happy* man.

In either case we have

RULE II. Adjectives agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case.

[This rule applies to all adjectives, pronouns, and participles.]

Rem. If there be two or more nouns denoting *persons*, the most worthy* gender prevails; if *things*, the neuter is used.

My father and mother are dead.	Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.
Labour and enjoyment are united.	Labor voluptasque juncta sunt.

(692.) RULE III. If the predicate be a noun, it takes the *case* of the subject.

Numa was made king.	Numa rex creabatur.

§ 3. *Apposition.*

(693.) A noun may stand

(*a*) In the subject, denoting the same person or thing with the subject-noun; *e. g.*, the general, a *brave man*, led the army.

(*b*) In the predicate, denoting the same person or thing with a noun in the predicate; *e. g.*, we have sent the consul, a *brave man.*

Nouns thus expressing the same person or thing, whether in the subject or predicate, are said to be in *apposition* with each other; and in either case we have

RULE IV. Nouns in apposition with each other agree in case.

* The *masculine* is said to be more worthy than the *feminine*; the *feminine* than the *neuter.*

The *commander, a brave man,* led the army.	Imperator, vir fortis, exercitum duxit.
We sent the *consul, a brave man.*	Consulem, virum fortem, misimus.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is commonly put in the plural.

M. Antony and C. Crassus, *tribunes* of the people.	M. Antonius, C. Crassus, tribuni plebis.

2. A noun in apposition with the name of a town may be put in the ablative, with or without the preposition in.

At *Rome,* the chief *city* of Italy.	Romæ, (in) prima urbe Italiæ.

II. USE OF CASES.

§ 4. *Nominative.*

(694.) *Subject-nominative.*—The subject of a proposition takes the nominative case, and is called the *subject-nominative.*

(2.) *Predicate-nominative.*—The predicate-nominative (692) is always connected with the subject by esse, *to be,* or some verb expressing an incomplete idea.

Rem. Of this class of verbs are *to appear,* apparere, videri; *to become,* fieri, evadere, existere; *to be named,* dici, appellari, nominari; *to be esteemed,* existimari, haberi, &c.

Ariovistus was called king by the senate.	Ariovistus a senatu rex appellatus est.

§ 5. *Genitive.*

(695.) RULE V. The genitive answers the questions *whose? of whom? of what? e. g., the love of glory,* amor gloriæ; *Cicero's orations,* Ciceronis orationes.

Rem. The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which a thing belongs; *e. g.,* Ciceronis orationes. It is *objective* when it denotes that which is affected by the action or feeling spoken of; *e. g.,* amor gloriæ: *the taking of the town,* expugnatio urbis.

(696.) RULE VI. *Genitive of Quality.*—The genitive (with an adjective, or pronoun of quality, number, &c.) is used to express the *quality* of a thing.

A man of great bravery.	Vir magnæ virtutis.
A ditch of fifteen feet.	Fossa quindecim pedum.

Rem. 1. The *ablative* is also used in the same way (724).

2. If the two nouns are connected, not immediately, but by another part of speech, the *accusative* must be used: fossa quindecim pedes lata.

(697.) RULE VII. *Partitive-genitive.*—The genitive is used to express the *whole* of which anything is a part. Hence,

(*a*) With comparatives and superlatives:

The more learned of the two brothers.	Doctior fratrum duorum.
The most learned of the Romans.	Doctissimus Romanorum.

(*b*) With all words expressing *number* or *quantity*, whether adjectives, pronouns, numerals, or adverbs; *e. g.*, *many of the soldiers*, multi militum; *which of you?* quis vestrum? *the last of the Romans*, ultimus Romanorum; *enough eloquence*, satis eloquentiæ; *where* (in what part) *of the world?* ubinam gentium?

Rem. This rule includes the neuters tantum, quantum, aliquantum, quid, aliquid, &c.

(698.) RULE VIII. *Genitive of Mental Affections.*—The genitive is used with verbs and adjectives expressing certain operations of the mind or feelings, to denote the *object* thereof.

(*a*) *Operations of the mind.*

1. Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance, remembering* and *forgetting, certainty* and *doubt.*

Mindful of a kindness.	Beneficii memor.
He was not ignorant of the result of the war.	Eventus belli non erat ignarus.

2. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (recordor, memini, reminiscor, obliviscor).

To remember past events.	Meminisse præteritorum.
He exhorts the Æduans to forget their disputes.	Cohortatur Æduos ut controversiarum obliviscantur.

[The *thing* remembered is often put in the accusative.]

(*b*) *Operations of the feelings.*

1. Adjectives expressing *desire* or *aversion, patience* or *impatience, appetite* or *passion.* Participles used as adjectives fall under this rule.

Desirous of praise.	Avidus laudis.
A lover of (= one loving) *virtue.*	Amans virtutis.

2. Verbs.

(*a*) Those expressing *pity*, viz., miseresco, misereor.

I pity the unfortunate.	Miseresco infelicium.

(*b*) The impersonals pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret (*shame, disgust, repentance, loathing, pity*).

I am not only sorry for my folly, but ashamed of it.	Me non solum pœnitet stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.
I am weary of my life.	Me tædet vitæ.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

2. The cause of feeling may be a verb, or part of a sentence, instead of a noun in the genitive.

I am not sorry (= it does not repent me) *that I have lived.*	Non pœnitet me vixisse.

(699.) RULE IX. *Genitive of Participation.*—The genitive is used with adjectives and participles expressing (1) *plenty* or *want*, (2) *power* or *weakness*, (3) *sharing* or its opposite, (4) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

(1.) *Full of wrath.*	Plenus iræ.
(2.) *Master of one's faculties.*	Compos mentis.
(3.) *He is like his brother.*	Similis est fratris.
(4.) *Man is a sharer of reason.*	Homo particeps est rationis.

Rem. 1. Those of *plenty* and *want* take also ablative (716, R. 4).

2. Those of *likeness* and *unlikeness* take also the dative (704, 4).

(700.) RULE X. *Genitive of Value.*—The genitive of certain adjectives is used with verbs of *valuing*, *esteeming*, *buying*, *selling*, &c., to denote the price or value.

The poor man estimates riches at a great value.	Pauper divitias magni æstimat.

Rem. 1. Such genitives are magni, permagni, pluris, maximi, minoris, and others.

2. If the price be a noun, the ablative is used (719). Also, the ablatives magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo, are often used.

(701.) RULE XI. *Genitive of Crime.*—The genitive is used with verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., to denote the *crime* or *offence* charged.

To accuse of treachery.	Proditionis accusare.
The judge acquitted the prisoner of the crime.	Prætor reum criminis absolvit.

(702.) RULE XII. *Genitive of Property.*—The genitive is used with esse to denote (1) that to which something belongs; (2) that to which something is peculiar.

(1.) *This book belongs to my father.*	Hic liber est mei patris.
(2.) *It is peculiar to the brave to endure pain with fortitude.*	Fortium est dolorem fortiter pati.

Rem. 1. Under this last head come the following constructions:

It is { the property / peculiarity / duty / mark / characteristic / &c. } of a wise man = est sapientis.

2. Observe carefully, that instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns (mei, tui, &c.), the neuter possessives (meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum) are used; *e. g., it is my duty*, &c.; est meum, &c.

(703.) RULE XIII. The genitive is used with the impersonal interest (*it concerns*), to express the person concerned.

It concerns my brother.	Mei fratris interest.
It concerns the state.	Reipublicæ interest.

Rem. But instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns (mei, tui, &c.), the possessive forms mea, tua, &c., are always used; and with them the impersonal refert has the same force as interest.

It concerns you.	Tua interest (not tui interest)
It is of great importance to me to see you.	Magni mea refert ut te videam

§ 6. *Dative.*

(704.) RULE XIV. The dative case is used to express the person or thing *to or for whom* (or *which*), *to or for whose advantage or disadvantage* anything is done or tends.

☞ Almost every instance in which the dative occurs may be explained by a proper application of this rule. For the sake of fuller illustration, however, we add the following heads:

(1.) *Dative of Remote Object.*—The dative is used to express the *remote* object,

(*a*) With *transitive* verbs governing also a *direct object.*

I send you a book.	Mitto tibi librum.
Pisistratus conquered the Megarenses for himself.	Pisistratus sibi Megarenses vicit.

Rem. The accusative is often omitted, and the dative alone appears with the verb; *e. g., I persuade you*, tibi suadeo; *he told the general*, nuntiavit imperatori.

(*b*) With *intransitive* verbs expressing an action done to or for some person or thing.

I have leisure for philosophy.	Vaco philosophiæ.

(2.) On the same principle (*advantage* or *disadvantage*), the dative is used with verbs of the following meanings, viz.:

Envy, profit, please, displease, obey,
Help, hurt, resist, excel, or *disobey,*
Command, indulge, be angry, spare, upbraid,
Marry, heal, favour, meet, trust, and *persuade.*

Rem. 1. Juvo, lædo, delecto, offendo, rego, guberno, govern the accusative.

2. Impero, credo, minor, comminor, are also used transitively, with *accusative* and *dative.*

(3.) *Dative with Compound Verbs.*—The dative is used with *most* verbs compounded with ad, con, in, inter, ob, præ, sub; and with *many* of those compounded with ab, ante, de, e, post, præ, re, super.

Rem. These verbs govern the dative when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative; *e. g.*, *to join*, jungere, takes accusative; but *to join to*, adjungere, takes dative also. When they are transitive, they take both accusative and dative; but when intransitive, the dative only.

To prefer unknown men to known.	Ignotos notis anteferre.
Vices creep upon us.	Vitia nobis obrepunt.

(4.) So, also, the dative is used with *adjectives* expressing *advantage, likeness, usefulness, fitness, facility, nearness to,* and their opposites.

Be kind to all.	Cunctis esto benignus.
Hurtful to the body.	Corpori perniciosum.
A place fit for ambush.	Locus insidiis aptus.
They are neighbours to the Germans.	Proximi sunt Germanis.

Rem. 1. Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* may take the genitive (699, 3).

2. Those of *fitness* and *unfitness* often take the accusative with ad; *e. g.*, locus ad insidias aptus.

(705.) RULE XV. *Dative of Possession.*—The dative is used with esse to express the person who has or possesses something.

I have a book.	Est mihi liber (= habeo librum).

Rem. 1. *I have a name* = est mihi nomen; but if the name be expressed, it may be put either in nominative or dative; *e. g.*, *my name is Lælius* = mihi est nomen Lælius (or Lælio).

2. The possessor is expressed by the *dative* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possession* (*e. g.*, *I have a book* = est mihi liber); but by the *genitive* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possessor* (*e. g.*, *this book is my father's* = hic liber est mei patris).

(706.) RULE XVI. *Dative of the End (Double Dative).*—Two datives are used with esse, and with verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, *imputing*; one to express the *person*, the other the *object* or *end*.

The Boians were (for) *a protection to the rear.*	Boii novissimis præsidio erant.
Pausanias came to aid (for an aid to) *the Athenians.*	Pausanias venit Atheniensibus auxilio.

Rem. The verbs used with double dative are esse, dare, ducere, tribuere, vertere, accipere, relinquere, deligere, mittere, venire, habere.

[The dative is used with gerundives, for which see 737, *b*.]

§ 7. *Accusative.*

(707.) The ACCUSATIVE is the case of the *direct object*, and answers the questions *whom? what? to what place?*

☞ Under this general statement we make three heads: (1) the accusative with verbs; (2) the accusative with prepositions; (3) the accusative according to the usage of the language.

I. *Accusative with Verbs.*

(708.) RULE XVII. *Accusative of the Direct Object.*—The accusative is used with transitive verbs, to express the *direct object*.

Cæsar recalls the lieutenant.	Cæsar legatum revocat.

Rem. 1. Some verbs are used both transitively and intransitively; the use of these must be learned by practice.

2. Some *intransitives* (especially those of motion), compounded with prepositions, acquire a transitive force easily recognised from their meaning; thus: *to go*, ire; *to go across*, transire, which takes the accusative.

3. Some intransitives take an accusative of a noun from the same root with themselves; *e. g.*, *to live a life*, vivere vitam.

(709.) RULE XVIII. *Accusative with Impersonals.* — The accusative of the *person affected* is used with the impersonals pudet, piget, tædet, miseret, pœnitet.

I am tired of life.	Tædet me vitæ.

Rem. Decet and its compounds (which admit a personal subject), also juvat and delectat, take the accusative.

Anger becomes wild beasts.	Decet ira feras.

(710.) RULE XIX. *Double Accusative.*

(*a*) Two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the

thing, are used with verbs of *teaching*, *concealing*, *asking*, or *entreating*, and also with those verbs whose passives have a double nominative (694, 2, R.).

(1.) *Who taught Epaminondas music?*	Quis musicam docuit Epaminondam.
(2.) *I conceal nothing from you.*	Nihil te celo.
(3.) *I ask this of you earnestly.*	Hoc te vehementer rogo.
(4.) *Avarice renders men blind.*	Avaritia homines cæcos reddit.

Rem. 1. With verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, the ablative with a preposition is used instead of one of the accusatives.

The ambassadors were asking peace of Cæsar.	Legati pacem a Cæsare poscebant.

2. Petere and postulare always take the ablative with ab; and quærere, the ablative with ab, de, or ex.

(*b*) Two accusatives are used also with verbs compounded with trans.

Cæsar led the army across the Rhine.	Cæsar exercitum Rhenum transduxit.

The trans is often repeated; *e. g.*, Cæsar exercitum trans Rhenum transduxit.

Rem. 1. In the passive construction of verbs which take a double accusative, the *person* takes the nominative, but the *thing* generally remains in the accusative.

I was asked my opinion.	Ego rogatus sum sententiam.
The multitude is led across the Rhine.	Multitudo Rhenum transducitur.

2. But with verbs of *demanding* the ablative with a preposition is generally used.

Money is demanded of me.	Pecunia a me poscitur.

II. *Accusative with Prepositions.*

(711.) Rule XX. The accusative is used with the prepositions ad, apud, ante, adversus, cis, citra, circa, circum, circiter, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, versus, ultra. Also, with in and sub, when motion is expressed; with super, when it means *over*, and with subter nearly always.

III. *Accusative according to the Usage of the Language.*

(712.) Rule XXI. *Accusative of Measure.*—The accusative is used in answer to the questions *how far? how deep? how*

thick? how broad? how old? how long? (whether of *time* or *distance*).

The city is two miles off.	Urbs duo millia abest.
The ditch is ten feet wide (deep, or long).	Fossa decem pedes lata (alta, longa).
Only one hour.	Unam modo horam.
Twenty years old.	Viginti annos natus.

Rem. 1. *How far?* is sometimes answered by the ablative.

Six miles from Cæsar's Camp.	Millibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris.

2. For *time how long*, the accusative with per is sometimes used, and sometimes the ablative alone.

Through the whole night.	Per totam noctem.
He was absent six months.	Sex mensibus abfuit.

(713.) RULE XXII. *Accusative of Direction, Whither?*—The accusative is used with names of *towns* and *small islands*, in answer to the question, *whither?*

To set out for Athens.	Athenas proficisci.

Rem. 1. With names of *countries* or *large islands* the prepositions in, ad, must be used.

He crossed into Europe.	In Europam trajecit.

2. Domus and rus follow this rule.

To go home.	Ire domum.
I will go into the country.	Rus ibo.

(714.) *Greek Accusative.*—The accusative is used to express a special limitation.

Naked as to his limbs.	Nudus membra.
For the most part (men) say so.	Maximam partem ita dicunt.

Rem. This is a Greek usage, common in Latin poetry, but not in prose.

(715.) *Exclamations.*—The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection.

Miserable me!	Me miserum.
Behold, four altars!	En quattuor aras.

[For the accusative with the infinitive, see 751.]

§ 8. *Ablative.*

(716.) RULE XXIII. *General Rule.*—The ablative is used to express the (1) *cause*; (2) *manner*; (3) *means*, *material*, or *instrument*; (4) *supply*.

1. *Cause.*—The ablative of cause is used with passive verbs, and with the participles natus, genitus, ortus, contentus.

The world is illuminated by the sun.	Sole mundus illustratur.
I am content with my lot.	Sorte mea contentus sum.
O thou, born of a goddess!	Nate Dea!

☞ If the cause be a *person* (or a thing *personified*), a or ab must be used with passive verbs.

The world was built by God.	A Deo mundus ædificatus est.

2. *Manner.*—(*a*) This ablative generally occurs in nouns *denoting* manner; *e. g.*, mos, modus, ratio, &c.

In this way I wrote.	Hoc modo scripsi.

(*b*) With other nouns, cum is generally used, unless an *adjective* is joined with the noun.

He hears with pleasure.	Cum voluptate audit.
He bears the injury with firmness.	Æquo animo fert injuriam.

3. *Means, Material, Instrument.*—Ablative without a preposition.

To travel by horse, carriage, ships.	Equo, curru, navibus, vehi.
Bulls defend themselves with their horns.	Cornibus tauri se tutantur.

☞ If the instrument or means be a *person*, per or propter is used, with the accusative.

I was freed by you.	Per te liberatus sum.

4. *Supply.*—As supply may be either abundant or defective, the ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *abounding, wanting, filling, emptying*, &c.; *e. g.*, abundare, egere, carere, inops, refertus, præditus, &c.

Germany abounds in rivers.	Germania fluminibus abundat.
The mind is endowed with perpetual activity.	Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.

(717.) RULE XXIV. The ablative of the *thing needed*, and the dative of the *person*, are used with opus est (*there is need*).

We have need of a leader.	Duce nobis opus est.

Rem. If opus est be used personally, the *thing needed* is put in the nominative as subject.

Leaders are necessary for us.	Duces nobis opus sunt.

(718.) RULE XXV. The ablative is used with the deponents utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor.

To make use of advice.	Consilio uti.
They were enjoying peace.	Pace fruebantur.

Rem. Potior is used also with the genitive.

To obtain possession of all Gaul.	Totius Galliæ potiri.

(719.) RULE XXVI. *Ablative of Price.*—The ablative is used with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *valuing*, &c.; also with the adjectives dignus and indignus, to express the *price* or *value*.

He sold his country for gold.	Patriam auro vendidit.
Worthy of hatred.	Odio dignus.
That battle cost the blood of many.	Multorum sanguine ea victoria stetit.

☞ If the price or value be an *adjective*, it is generally put in the genitive (700).

(720.) RULE XXVII. *Ablative of Limitation.*—The ablative is used to denote the limitation generally expressed in English by *as to*, *in respect of*, *in regard to*.

Older (i. e., *greater in age*).	Major natu.
Skilled in the law.	Jure peritus.
In affection a son.	Pietate filius.

(721.) RULE XXVIII. *Ablative of Separation.*—The ablative is used with verbs of *removing*, *freeing*, *depriving*, and the like.

Cæsar removed his camp from the spot.	Cæsar castra loco movit.
The trees are stripped of leaves.	Arbores foliis nudantur.

Rem. Many of these verbs also take the prepositions a, ab, de, ex.

(722.) RULE XXIX. *Ablative of Quality.*—The ablative is used (with an adjective of quality) to express that one thing is a quality or property of another.

Cæsar was a man of consummate talent.	Cæsar summo fuit ingenio.
Agesilaus was a man of low stature.	Agesilaus statura fuit humili.

Rem. The genitive is also thus used (696).

(723.) RULE XXX. *Ablative of Comparison.*—The ablative is used with the comparative degree (quam being omitted) to express the object with which another is compared.

Cicero was more eloquent than Hortensius.	Cicero fuit eloquentior Hortensio.

(724.) RULE XXXI. *Ablative of Measure.*—The ablative of measure is used,

(*a*) With *comparatives* and *superlatives*, to express the measure of excess or defect.

(*b*) To express the measure of *time before or after* any event.

Much greater.	Multo major.
Themistocles lived many years before Demosthenes.	Themistocles permultis annis ante fuit quam Demosthenes.

(725.) RULE XXXII. *Ablative of Time When.*—The ablative is used to express the point of time at which anything occurs.

On the sixth day.	Sexto die.

Rem. The time *within which* anything occurs is expressed by the ablative with or without in or de.

Within ten years.	Decem annis.
Within those days.	In his diebus.

(726.) RULE XXXIII. *Ablative of Place.*

(*a*) The place *whence* is expressed by the ablative.

He departed from Corinth.	Corintho profectus est.

(*b*) The place *where* is expressed by the ablative, if the noun be of the *third* declension or *plural* number.

Alexander died at Babylon.	Alexander Babylone mortuus est.
At Athens.	Athenis.

Rem. If the noun be of the 1st or 2d declension singular, the genitive is used.

At Rome. At Corinth.	Romæ. Corinthi.

(Domi follows this rule.)

(727.) The ablative is used with the following prepositions, viz.:

Absque, a, ab, abs, *and* de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, *and* e,
Tenus, sine, pro, *and* præ.

Also with in and sub (implying *rest*, not *motion*), and super, when it means *upon*. Subter is sometimes, also, used with ablative.

(728.) RULE XXXIV. *Ablative with Compound Verbs.*—The ablative is used with some verbs compounded with a (ab, abs), de, e (ex), and super.

To be absent from the city.	Urbe abesse.
Cæsar resolved to desist from battle.	Cæsar prælio supersedere statuit.

Rem. The preposition is sometimes repeated.

To depart from life (= to die).	Exire de vita.

[For the Ablative Absolute, see 750.]

(729.) Verbs followed by genitive, dative, or ablative, where *we* use *no* preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an accusative of the *thing*, though some of them only when the accusative is a neuter pronoun.)*

GENITIVE.	
obtain,	potior (*abl.*).
pity,	misereor. / miseresco.
forget,	obliviscor (*acc.*).
remember, / *recollect,*	memini (*acc.*). / recordor (*acc.*). / reminiscor (*acc.*).
require, / *need,*	egeo / indigeo } (*abl.*).

DATIVE.	
abuse, / *revile,*	maledico.
advise,	*suadeo.
answer,	*respondeo.
believe,	credo.
command,	*impero.
commission, / *charge,*	*mando.
congratulate,	*gratulor.
displease,	displiceo.
direct,	*præcipio.
envy.	*invideo.
favour,	faveo.
flatter,	adulor (*acc.*).
give,	*do.
help, / *aid,*	auxilior.
assist,	opitulor.
succour,	subvenio. / succurro.
heal, / *cure,*	medeor.
hurt,	noceo.
indulge,	*indulgeo.
marry,	nubo.
obey,	pareo. / obedio. / obtempero.
pardon,	*ignosco.
permit,	*permitto.
persuade,	*persuadeo.
please,	placeo.
resist, / *oppose,*	resisto, / repugno.
rival,	æmulor (*acc.*).
satisfy,	satisfacio.
spare,	parco.
suit,	convenio.
threaten,	*minor. / *minitor.
trust,	fido / confido } (*abl.*).

ABLATIVE.	
abuse,	abutor.
discharge, / *perform,*	fungor.
enjoy,	fruor.
obtain,	potior (*gen.*).
require, / *need,* / *want,*	egeo / indigeo } (*gen.*).
use,	utor.
want, / *am without,*	careo.

III. USE OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 9. *Infinitive.*

(730.) RULE XXXV. *Infinitive as Subject.*—The infinitive is used as the *subject* of a verb, and is then regarded as a neuter noun.

To love (= *loving*) *is pleasant.*	Jucundum est amare.

* Arnold.

(731.) RULE XXXVI. *Infinitive as Complementary Object.*—The infinitive is used (exactly as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain words.

I wish to learn.	Cupio discere.
Worthy to be loved.	Dignus amari.

Rem. 1. The complementary infinitive occurs after *verbs* denoting *to wish, to be able, to be accustomed, ought* (debere), *to hasten*, &c.; after the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax*, &c.

2. Observe that this construction, which occurs after *all* verbs in English, can only stand in Latin after those expressing imperfect ideas, as above stated. A *purpose* cannot be expressed in Latin, as in English, by the simple infinitive; *e. g.*, *he comes to learn* = venit ut discat, *not* venit discere.

(732.) *Historical Infinitive.*—In animated narrative the infinitive is sometimes used for the indicative.

The Romans hastened, made ready, &c.	Romani festinare, parare, &c.

(This construction is quite common in Sallust.)

[For Accusative with Infinitive, see 751.]

§ 10. *Participle.*

(733.) RULE XXXVII. The participle agrees with its noun in gender, case, and number, and the active participle governs the same case as its verb.

The honoured man.	Vir laudatus.
The blooming rose.	Rosa florens.
I saw him reading a book.	Eum legentem librum vidi.

(734.) The participle future active is used to express a *purpose* (where in English we should use *to, in order to*, with the infinitive).

Alexander goes to Jupiter Ammon, in order to inquire *concerning his descent.*	Alexander ad Jovem Ammonem pergit, consulturus de origine sua.

(735.) The passive participle is often used to supply the place of a noun.

After Tarentum taken (= after the taking of Tarentum).	Post Tarentum captum.
From the city built (= from the building of the city).	Ab urbe condita.

[For Participle in Subordinate Sentences, see 749.]

§ 11. *Gerund.*

(736.) RULE XXXVIII. As the *infinitive* is used as a noun in the nominative or accusative, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases, and governs the same case as its verb.

Nom.	*Writing is useful.*	Scribere est utile.
Gen.	The art *of writing* is useful.	Ars scribendi est utilis.
Dat.	Paper is useful *for writing.*	Charta scribendo est utilis.
Acc.	I learn *writing.*	Scribere disco.
	I learn *during writing.*	Inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	We learn *by* writing.	Scribendo discimus.

Rem. 1. With a preposition the gerund in the accusative must be used, *not* the infinitive: ad (inter, ob) scribendum, *not* ad (inter, ob) scribere.

2. The general rules for the use of cases of nouns (695–728) apply to the cases of the infinitive and gerund, as above given.

Special Remark. The gerund is *not* used in the *dative* or *accusative* with an active government; *e. g.*, we can say scribendi epistolas, *of writing letters*, or scribendo epistolas, *by writing letters*, but *not* charta utilis est scribendo (*dat.*) *epistolas*, nor charta utilis est ad scribendum *literas*. In these last cases the *gerundive* must be used (738).

§ 12. *The Gerundive, or Verbal in* dus, da, dum.

(737.) RULE XXXIX. (*a*) The gerundive in the *nominative neuter* (dum) is used with the tenses of esse, to denote that an action *should* or *must* be done; and these may govern the case of the verb.

(*One*) *must write.*	Scribendum est.

(*b*) The *person* by whom the action *should* or *must* be done is put in the dative.

I must write.	Scribendum est mihi.
Caius must write.	Scribendum est Caio.
One must use reason.	Ratione utendum est.

(738.) RULE XL. (*a*) The gerundive is used with esse, in *all cases and genders*, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express *necessity* or *worthiness*.

I am to be loved; she is to be loved, &c.	Amandus sum; amanda est, &c.

(*b*) When the *person* is specified, it must be put in the dative.

I must love Tullia.	Tullia mihi amanda est.
All things were to be done by Cæsar at one time.	Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

Rem. a or ab with ablative is sometimes used instead of the dative.

My cause must be managed by the consuls.	A consulibus mea causa suscipienda est.

(739.) RULE XLI. The gerundive is used (*to express continued action*) as a verbal adjective, in all genders and cases (but the nominative) *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. *Of writing a letter.*
Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of scribendi epistolam.

Dat. *To or for writing letters.*
Scribendis epistolis, instead of scribendo epistolas.

Acc. *To write a letter.*
Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of ad scribendum epistolam.

Abl. *By, &c., writing a letter.*
Scribenda epistola, instead of scribendo epistolam.

Rem. As observed in (736), the gerundive *must* be used for the dative or accusative of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; *e. g.*, *of learning the true* = vera discendi, not verorum discendorum; *of hearing this* = hoc audiendi, not hujus audiendi.

§ 13. *Supines.*

(740.) RULE XLII. (1.) The supine in um is used with verbs of motion, to express the *design* of the motion, and governs the same case as its verb.

I came to ask you.	Venio te rogatum.

(2.) The supine in u is used,

(*a*) With *adjectives*, to show in *what respect* they are used; *e. g.*,

Pleasant as to taste.	Dulce gustatu.

(*b*) With the nouns fas, nefas, opus, in the same sense: fas est dictu.

PART II.

OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(741.) A compound sentence is one made up of two or more simple sentences. The sentences thus combined are either co-ordinate or subordinate.

I. CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 14. *Classes of Co-ordinate Sentences.*

(742.) Co-ordinate sentences are united together, but yet *independent* of each other:* co-ordination is either,

(*a*) *Copulative*; *e. g.*, His father has abandoned him, and his friends have deserted him, *and* the son remains.

(*b*) *Disjunctive*; *e. g.*, Either his father has abandoned, *or* his friends have deserted him.

(*c*) *Adversative*; *e. g.*, His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends have not.

(*d*) *Causal*; *e. g.*, His friends will abandon him, *for* his father has done so.

(*e*) *Conclusive*; *e. g.*, His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

II. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 15. *Classes of Subordinate Sentences.*

(743.) Subordinate sentences are so united to others (called *principal sentences*) as to be *dependent* upon them.

The messenger, *who was sent*, announced.	Nuntius, qui missus est, nuntiavit.

Here *the messenger announced* is the principal sentence; *who was sent*, the subordinate sentence.*

(744.) Subordinate sentences are of five classes:

A. *Participial sentences.*

B. *Accusative with infinitive.*

C. *Conjunctive sentences, i. e.*, such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time.

D. *Relative sentences, i. e.*, such as are introduced by a relative word.

E. *Interrogative sentences, i. e.*, such as are introduced by an interrogative word.

We shall treat these in order, premising a few remarks upon the use of the moods and tenses, which must be thoroughly understood.

§ 16. *The Moods.*

(745.) The verb expresses affirmation. The moods of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

* It must be obvious that *all co-ordinate* sentences are, for grammatical purposes, *principal* sentences. Moreover, the doctrines and rules applied to *simple sentences* (Part I.) are applicable to all *principal* sentences: it is only in *subordinate* sentences that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain as accurate a knowledge as possible of the various kinds of subordinate sentences, and the different modes of affirmation which they express, as it is upon these that their syntax depends.

1. By the *indicative*, affirmation of *a fact* is expressed; *e. g., I write, I did* not *write.**
2. By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently,* or *indefinitely;* e. g., *I may write,* if *I should write,* perhaps some (may) *think.*
3. By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction* or *request;* e. g., *write.*

(746.) It must be obvious that in principal sentences the indicative mood chiefly occurs, and in subordinate sentences the subjunctive, as affirmations of fact are made more frequently in the former than in the latter. But,

(*a*) The subjunctive is used (of course), even in principal sentences, when the affirmation is doubtful, contingent, or indefinite (745, 2).

(*b*) The indicative is used, even in subordinate sentences, when the affirmation is positive.

True friendships are everlasting, *because nature cannot be changed.*	Veræ amicitiæ sempiternæ sunt, quia natura mutari non potest.

§ 17. *The Tenses.*

(*a*) DIVISION.

(747.) The tenses are either primary or historical (647, R. 3).

		Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(*a*) *Primary,*	{	amat,	amabit,	amavit,
	{	*he loves.*	*he will love.*	*he has loved.*
		Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(*b*) *Historical,*	{	amabat,	amaverat,	amavit,
	{	*he was loving.*	*he had loved.*	*he loved.*

(*b*) SUCCESSION OF TENSES.

(748.) RULE XLIII. If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary tense in the subordinate; if an historical tense in the principal, an historical in the subordinate.

Principal.	Subordinate.	Principal.	Subordinate.
I know	what you *are doing.*	Scio,	quid agas.
I was knowing	what you *were doing.*	Sciebam,	quid ageres.
I have learned	what you *are doing.*	Cognovi,	quid agas.
I learned	what you *were doing.*	Cognovi,	quid ageres

(A.) § 18. *Participial Sentences.*

[The participle is used to abridge discourse, instead of a relative, adverb, or conjunction with a verb. Thus (1), Tarquin, *when he was expelled*

* Of course the *action* may be either positive or negative, without affecting the *affirmation.*

from Rome = Tarquin, *expelled* from Rome. (2) Cæsar, *when the work was finished*, departed = Cæsar, *the work having been finished*, departed

These are abridged subordinate sentences, (1) being called the *conjunctive* participial construction, and (2) the ablative absolute.]

(749.) *Conjunctive Participial Construction.*—The participle in a subordinate sentence *which has for its subject the subject or object of the principal sentence*, agrees with this last in gender, number, and case.

Aristides, *when he was expelled from his country*, fled to Lacedæmon.	Aristides, patria pulsus, Lacedæmonem fugit.

☞ Observe, in this example, that Aristides is the subject of both the principal and the subordinate sentence, and pulsus agrees with Aristides in gender, number, and case. In English such sentences are generally expressed by an adverb or conjunction with a verb.

(750.) RULE XLIV. *Ablative Absolute.*—If the subordinate sentence contains a noun and participle *independent of the subject of the leading sentence*, both noun and participle are placed in the ablative. (This construction is called the *ablative absolute.*)

When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.	Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit.
All things having been provided, they appoint a day.	Omnibus rebus comparatis, diem dicunt.

Rem. Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle.

Under the guidance of Nature (= Nature being guide).	Natura duce.
In the consulship of Manlius.	Manlio consule.

(B.) § 19. *Accusative with Infinitive.*

(751.) RULE XLV. Many subordinate sentences, which in English are introduced by the conjunction *that* (especially after verbs of *thinking*, *saying*, *knowing*, &c.), are expressed in Latin by the *accusative with the infinitive.*

They said *that they did not fear the enemy.*	Dicebant non se hostem vereri.
He knows *that Cicero is eloquent.*	Scit Ciceronem esse eloquentem.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *subject* of the sentence thus subordinated is put in the accusative, and the *predicate* in the infinitive. If the predicate contain an adjective, it must agree with the subject.

I perceive *that the water is cold.*	Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

2. The accusative with infinitive occurs chiefly,

(*a*) After verba sentiendi et dicendi (*thinking, feeling, perceiving, knowing, saying, announcing, willing, forbidding,* &c.).

(*b*) After such expressions as apparet (*it is evident*), constat (*it is known*), opus est, oportet, necesse est, justum est (*it is necessary, right, just,* &c.). In this case the accusative with infinitive becomes the *subject* of the entire sentence.

It is known to all *that the Romans were very brave.*	Constat inter omnes Romanos fuisse fortissimos.

☞ Oportet and necesse est may take the subjunctive, instead of the accusative with infinitive.

We ought (= it behooves us) *to practice virtue.*	Oportet nos virtuti studere; *or* Virtuti studeamus oportet.

(C.) § 20. *Conjunctive Sentences.*

Relation of Conjunctions to the Moods.

(752.) From what has been said (745, 746), it is obvious, that as the *moods* express the varieties of affirmation, and as the *conjunctions* are used to indicate different relations of thought (as *positive, conditional, causal,* &c.), there must be a close connexion between the use of the conjunctions and that of the moods. It must be borne in mind, however, that the *nature of the affirmation* (except, perhaps, in purely idiomatic expressions) decides both the mood and the conjunction that shall be used. It cannot properly be said, therefore, that the conjunctions *govern* the moods; but, for convenience' sake, we treat them together.

GENERAL RULE.

(753.) The subjunctive is used in all subordinate sentences in which affirmation is expressed as *dependent* upon some previous affirmation, either as *purpose, aim, consequence, condition,* or *imaginary comparison.*

SPECIAL RULES.

1. *Final Conjunctions,* ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.

(754.) RULE XLVI. The subjunctive is used in sentences expressing a *purpose* or a *consequence,* introduced by the final conjunctions ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.

1. Ut, ne, expressing *purpose.*

I did not write that *in order to instruct you.*	Ea non ut te instituerem scripsi.
I beseech you *not to do this.*	Te obsecro ne hoc facias.

2. Ut, expressing *consequence.*

The soldiers went with *such* violence *that* the enemy *betook themselves* to flight.	Eo impetu milites ierunt, ut hostes se fugæ mandarent.

(3.) Quo is used to express a purpose, instead of ut, especially when a *comparative* enters into the sentence.

Cæsar erects forts, *that he may the more easily keep off* the Helvetians.	Cæsar castella communit, quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit.

(4.) Quin is used in the sense of "but that" (*as not*, &c.) after *negative* sentences, and after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.

There is no one but thinks.	Nemo est quin putet.
It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.	Non dubium est quin milites fortiter pugnaturi sint.

(5.) Quominus is used (in preference to ne) after verbs of *hindering, preventing, standing in the way of*, &c. (It can generally be rendered in English by "*of*" or "*from*" with a participle.)

Nothing hinders him *from doing this.*	Nihil impedit quominus hoc faciat.

2. *Conditional Conjunctions*, si, nisi, dum, dummodo, modo.

(755.) RULE XLVII. **Conditional conjunctions take the indicative if the condition is expressed as *real* or *certain*; the subjunctive, where it is not.**

If he has any money, he will give it (it is *uncertain* whether he has any).	Si pecuniam habeat, dabit.

Rem. 1. If the condition is represented as *impossible* or *unreal*, (1) the *imperfect* subjunctive must be used for present or future time; (2) the *pluperfect* subjunctive for past time.

(1) *If he had any money*, he would give it (but he has none).	Si pecuniam haberet, daret.
(2) *If he had had any money*, he would have given it.	Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset.

Rem. 2. As dum, dummodo, modo, in the sense of *provided that*, can never express a *real*, existing condition, they *always* take the subjunctive.

3. *Concessive Conjunctions* (683, 5).

(756.) The *concessive conjunctions* take the indicative when they introduce a definite statement of fact, but the subjunctive when something is expressed as possible, not actual. Etsi, quamquam, and tametsi are used principally in the *former* sense; in the *latter*, etiamsi more commonly, and licet and quamvis* nearly always. Hence,

RULE XLVIII. Licet and quamvis (*although*) are always followed by the subjunctive; etiamsi, generally.

Though truth should obtain no defender.	Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat.
The wise man endures pain patiently, *even though it be* grievous.	Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat, quamvis acerbus sit.

Rem. The comparative conjunctions, when used concessively, velut, quasi, acsi, tanquamsi, &c. (meaning *as if, as though*), always take the subjunctive, for the reason given (756) for licet and quamvis.

Why do I use witnesses, *as though the matter were doubtful?*	Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit?

4. *Temporal Conjunctions.*

(757.) *Temporal conjunctions* (*when, after that, as soon as, just as*, &c.) of course generally take the *indicative*.

After Cæsar drew up the line of battle.	Postquam Cæsar aciem instruxit.
Every animal, as soon as *it is born.*	Omne animal, simulac ortum est.

SPECIAL REMARKS.

(A.) Quum has two uses: *temporal* and *causal*.

(*a*) *Temporal.*

1. As a *pure particle of time*, quum takes the indicative.
2. In *historical narrative* (especially where the principal clause has the indicative perfect) quum temporal is followed by the *subjunctive* imperfect or pluperfect.

When *Cæsar had conquered Pompey, he* crossed over *into Italy.*	Cæsar, quum Pompeium vicisset, in Italiam trajecit.

[In many such cases, the action introduced by *when* is in some sense the *cause* of the action in the principal sentence.]

* Quamvis is used by the later writers in the sense of quamquam, with the indicative.

(*b*) Quum causal, expressing the relation of *cause* and *effect* (*since, because, although*), obviously requires the *subjunctive*.

Since *these things are so.*	Quæ cum ita sint.

Hence,

RULE XLIX. Quum *causal* is always followed by the subjunctive; and quum *temporal* by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, when the aorist perfect indicative is used in the principal sentence.

(B.) Antequam and priusquam are used,

1. To express simple *priority* of one action to another, and here the *indicative* is obviously required.

All these things were done before Verres touched Italy.	Hæc omnia ante facta sunt quam Verres Italiam attigit.

2. To express a *connexion* between one action and another, and here the *subjunctive* is obviously required.

Before Cæsar attempted anything, he orders Divitiacus to be summoned.	Cæsar, priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet.

3. To introduce a *general* or *indefinite* statement, requiring, of course, the *subjunctive*.

The tempest threatens before it rises.	Tempestas minatur, antequam surgat.

(C.) Dum, donec, quoad, in the sense of *until*, take the *subjunctive* when the affirmation is expressed as *possible* or future.

He was unwilling to leave the spot until Milo came.	Dum Milo veniret, locum relinquere noluit.

[For interrogatives, see § 22.]

(D.) § 21. *Relative Sentences.*

(758.) In the compound sentence, "the messenger, *who was sent*, announced," the clause "the messenger announced" is the principal sentence; and the clause "*who was sent*" the relative sentence. The word "*messenger*" is the *antecedent* of the relative "*who*."

1. *Agreement.*

(759.) RULE L. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its *case* depends upon the construction of the relative sentence.

The bridge which was at Geneva he orders to be cut down.	Pontem, qui erat ad Genevam, jubet rescindi.

This was a kind of fighting in *which the Germans had exercised themselves.*	Genus hoc erat pugnæ, quæ Germani se exercuerant.

Rem. The verb in the relative sentence takes the *person* of the antecedent.

We who write.	Nos qui scribimus.

2. *The Moods in Relative Sentences.*

(760.) (*a*) The *indicative* mood occurs in the relative sentence only when it states a fact distinctly, with reference to a particular subject.

The messenger who was sent.	Nuntius qui missus erat.

(*b*) But qui is used in Latin very commonly (1) to avoid the use of a conjunction, and (2) to introduce indefinite statements, or the words or opinions of another; and in such cases is always followed by the subjunctive.

(761.) RULE LI. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences expressing the *purpose*, *result*, or *ground* of the principal sentence.

1. *Purpose* (qui = ut with demonstrative).

They sent ambassadors *to sue for* (= *who should sue for*) peace.	Miserunt legatos, qui pacem peterent (= ut ii pacem peterent).

2. *Result* (qui = ut after is, tam, talis, dignus, ita, &c.).

I am not the man to do this (= I am not such who can do).	Non is sum qui hoc faciam.
Pollio is worthy of our love (= worthy, *whom we may love*).	Dignus est Pollio, quem diligamus.

3. *Ground* or *cause* (qui = cur or quod).

You err, *who think* (= *because you think*)—	Erras qui censeas—
Hannibal did wrong in wintering (= *because he wintered*) at Capua.	Male fecit Hannibal qui Capuæ hiemarit.

(762.) RULE LII. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences containing *indefinite statements*, especially after the words *there are*, *there can be found*, *there is no one*, &c.

There are those who say.	Sunt qui dicant.
I have nothing *whereof to accuse* (= no reason to blame) old age.	Nihil habeo quod incusem senectutem.

Rem. When the sentence introduced by the relative expresses the

sentiments of another (rather than of the writer), the subjunctive is used.

The Helvetians determined to get together those things which (they thought) *belonged to marching* (were necessary for setting out).	Helvetii constituerunt ea quæ ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare.

§ 22. *Interrogative Sentences.*

1. *Questions.*

(763.) Questions are often expressed in English without any interrogative word; *e. g.*, *Is Caius writing?* but in the Latin, almost invariably, an interrogative word is used. These are either (*a*) interrogative particles, (*b*) interrogative pronouns, or (*c*) interrogative adverbs or conjunctions.

(*a*) *Interrogative Particles:* ne, nonne, num, utrum, an.

(1.) Ne simply asks for information.

Is Caius writing?	Scribitne Caius?

(2.) Nonne expects the answer YES.

Do you not think the wise man happy?	Nonne putas sapientem beatum esse?

(3.) Num expects the answer NO.

Do you think the fool happy?	Num putas stultum esse beatum?

(4.) Utrum is used in *double* questions, with an (*whether—or*).

(Whether) is that your fault *or* ours?	Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est?

(*b*) *Interrogative Pronouns:* quis, qui, qualis, quantus, ecquis, &c.

Who taught *Epaminondas music?* &c.	Quis Epaminondam musicam docuit?

(*c*) *Interrogative Adverbs or Conjunctions:* quare, cur, quando, ubi, quomodo, &c.

(764.) Questions are either *direct* or *indirect:* direct, when they are not dependent on any word or sentence going before; *e. g.*, *Is Caius writing?* Indirect, when they are so dependent; *e. g.*, *Tell me if Caius is writing.*

2. *Use of the Moods in Questions.*

(*a*) *Direct.*

(765.) In *direct* questions the *indicative* is used when the question is put *positively*, and the *subjunctive* when it is put *doubtfully*; *e. g.*,

(Positive.) *What are you doing?*	Quid agis? (*Indic.*)
(Doubtful.) *What can we do?*	Quid agamus?

(b) Indirect.

(766.) RULE LIII. In *indirect* questions the *subjunctive* is always used.

I do not know *what* book you are reading.	Nescio quem librum legas.
Tell me *what* you are doing.	Dic, quid agas.

§ 23. *Oratio Obliqua.*

1. *Nature of Oratio Obliqua.*

(767.) When any one relates the words or opinions of another, he may do it in two ways:

(*a*) He may represent him as speaking in the *first person*, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said, "*I have crossed the Rhine*"—Ariovistus dixit, Rhenum transii. This is called oratio recta, *direct discourse.*

(*b*) He may *state* the substance of what the speaker said in narrative form; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said *that he had crossed the Rhine*—Ariovistus dixit se Rhenum transisse. This is called oratio obliqua, *indirect discourse.*

2. *The Moods in the Oratio Obliqua.*

(768.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said that he would not wage war on the Æduans if they paid the tribute yearly. Here the sentence *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans* is a principal sentence, and *if they paid the tribute yearly* is a subordinate sentence.

(769.) RULE LIV. (*a*) *Principal sentences* in the *oratio obliqua* are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; *e. g.*, Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum.

Rem. If the principal sentence contains a *command* or *wish*, it is expressed by the *subjunctive*; *e. g.*,

The leader said *that the troops should consult their own safety.*	Dux dixit, milites suæ saluti consulerent.

(*b*) *Subordinate* sentences in *oratio obliqua* always take the *subjunctive*; *e. g.*, Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum, si stipendium quotannis penderent (*if they paid the tribute yearly*).

APPENDICES.

APPENDIX I.

OF PROSODY.

§ 1. *Quantity.*

[THE *rules of quantity* in Lesson XLII. should be reviewed, and the following additional rules learned.]

1. *Penults.*

(770.) DISSYLLABIC SUPINES lengthen the penult; *e. g.*, vīsum.

Rem. The following are short, viz.:

Dătum, rătum, sătum, stătum, ĭtum,
Cĭtum, lĭtum, sĭtum, rŭtum, quĭtum.

(771.) REDUPLICATED PERFECTS shorten both penult and antepenult, *e. g.*, cĕcĭdi, dĭdĭci.

Rem. Penult is *long* in cecīdi (cædĕre) and pĕpēdi (pēdĕre).

(772.) In ADJECTIVE PENULTS observe the following:

1. *Short Penults:* -ăcus, -ĭcus, -ĭdus, ĭmus; *e. g.*, Ægyptiăcus, modĭcus, cupĭdus, legitĭmus.

 Exceptions.—Merācus, opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, antīcus, postīcus, mendīcus, umbilīcus, fīdus, infīdus, bīmus, trīmus (of *two, three years*, &c.), matrīmus, opīmus, patrīmus, īmus, prīmus.

2. *Long Penults:* -ālis, -ānus, ūdus, ūtus, with all before -rus, -vus, -sus; *e. g.*, dotālis, montānus, percrūdus, astūtus, avārus, sincērus, delīrus, decōrus, octāvus, æstīvus, famōsus.

 Exc.—Infĕri, postĕri, barbărus, opipărus.

3. *Penults sometimes long, sometimes short:* -ilis, -inus.

 (*a*) -ilis, from *verbs*, is short; from *nouns*, long; *e. g.*, facĭlis (*short*); civīlis (*long*). Exĭlis, subtĭlis, and the names of months (Aprilis, &c.), are long.

 (*b*) -inus, from *nouns* denoting *time* or *material*, is short; from other words, long; *e. g.*, crastĭnus, elephantĭnus (*short*); canīnus, Latīnus (*long*).

2. *Compound Words.*

(773.) Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words; *e. g.*, per+lĕgo = perlĕgo; per+lēgi = perlēgi.

Rem. 1. A change of vowels does not affect the rule; e + lĕgo = ellĭgo.

2. Dejĕro, pejĕro (jūro); maledĭcus, &c. (dĭco); cognĭtum, agnĭtum (nōtum), are short, though the simple words are long.

(774.) ā, ē, dē, dĭ, prō, sē, in composition are long, but rĕ is short.

Exc.—Dīrimo, dīsertus, rēfert. Pro is short in Greek words, and in the compounds of cello, fanum, fari, fateor, festus, fugio, fundo, nepos, neptis, torvus; also in prŏficiscor. In prŏpago, prŏpino, it is doubtful.*

(775.) If the first part of a compound word end in *a*, it is generally long; if in *e*, *i*, or *u*, generally short; *e. g.*, trāduco, trădo (contracted from trans); trĭcenti, agrĭcola, quadrŭpes.

§ 2. *Rhythm, Arsis, Thesis, Verse, Feet.*

(776.) (*a*) By *Rhythm* we mean a regular alternation of elevations (stress) and depressions of the voice. In poetry this alternation follows certain fixed laws.

(*b*) The effort of voice by which stress is laid upon one syllable is called *Ictus*, or rhythmical accent. A syllable so raised by the ictus stands in the *Arsis*. The syllable or syllables on which the voice rests or sinks are said to be in the *Thesis*.

(*c*) A *Foot* is formed by the union of arsis and thesis. A combination of feet forms a *Verse*.

Thus, in the line vĭsĕrĕ mōntās, the ictus falls on the syllables marked with the accent; vĭs and mōn, therefore, are in the arsis, sĕrĕ and tĕs in the thesis. The union of arsis and thesis in vĭsĕrĕ forms a foot; so also in mōntĕs. The combination of these two feet forms the verse

Vĭsĕrĕ mōntĕs.

(*d*) A *Dactyl* is a foot composed of one long syllable (arsis) and two short syllables (thesis); *e. g.*, vĭsĕrĕ: a *Spondee* of two long (arsis and thesis); *e. g.*, mōntĕs.

§ 3. *Scanning.*

(777.) SCANNING is the measuring of a verse into the feet which compose it. Observe the following points in scanning:

1. *Synalœpha* cuts off a vowel at the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or h; *e. g.*, instead of regina ad, we read regin' ad; instead of atque hinc, atqu' hinc.

2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off m with the vowel before it at the end of a word

* The following lines contain the exceptions:

At rape quæ fundo, fugio, neptisque, neposque,
Et cello, fari, fateor, fanumque, festumque;
Atque procus, proficiscor, cumque propheta, profecto.

when the next begins with a vowel; *e. g.*, instead of ignōtum est, we read ignōt' est.

3. The last syllable of a word ending with a consonant is always long if the next word begins with a consonant; *e. g.*, manibūs tremor; here būs (naturally short) is made long.

4. *Synæresis* contracts two syllables into one; *e. g.*, aurĕă into aurēā (pronounced aurya).

5. *Diæresis* divides one syllable into two; *e. g.*, pictæ, pictaĭ.

§ 4. *Hexameter Verse.*

(778.) (*a*) HEXAMETER verse is so called because it has *six measures*, of a foot each. The first *four* feet may be either dactyls or spondees; the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, the *sixth* a spondee.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Sĕd fŭgĭt	ĭntĕrĕ-	ā, fŭgĭt	ĭrrĕpă-	rābĭlĕ	tēmpūs.
Ĭnfān-	dūm Rĕ-	gīnă jŭ-	bĕās rĕnō-	vārĕ dŏ-	lōrēm.

Rem. 1. Sometimes a spondee is found in the 5th place, especially when anything grave or solemn is expressed. The line is then called *spondaic*.

2. The final syllable of a verse is always reckoned *long*; *e. g.*, rem, in dolorem.

(*b*) *Cæsura* is the separation, by the end of a word, of syllables entering into a foot. If the feet of a verse be marked off like bars in music, whenever a bar falls in the middle of a word there is a cæsura; *e. g.*, the following hexameter has *five* cæsuras:

Ĭllĕ la- | tūs nĭvĕ- | ūm mōl- | lī fŭl- | tūs, hўă- | cīnthō.

(*c*) The *cæsural pause* in hexameter verse is a pause or rest of the voice on a cæsural syllable, designed to give harmony to the entire verse.

(1.) The most approved cæsural pause (*the heroic*) falls on the arsis of the *third foot*, as in the following examples:

Sĕd fŭgĭt	ĭntĕrĕ-	ā	fŭgĭt	ĭrrĕpă	rābĭlĕ	tēmpūs.
Ĭllĕ lă-	tūs nĭvĕ	ūm	mōl-	lī ful	tūs hўă-	cīntho.

(2.) Next in excellence is the cæsural pause in the thesis of the third foot, or in the arsis of the fourth. Occurring in other places, it mars the harmony of the verse.

APPENDIX II.

(779.) **GREEK NOUNS.**

1*st Decl.*	Ænē-ās,	æ,	æ,	am (ān),	ă,	ā.	
	Anchis-ēs,	æ,	æ,	ēn,	ē,	ē.	Voc. sometimes *ā* and *ē*
	Pēnēlŏp-ē,	ēs,	æ,	ēn,	ē,	ē.	
2*d Decl.*	Del-ŏs,	i,	o,	um, *or* ŏn,	e,	o.	
	Orph-eŭs,	eï,	eo,	eum, *or* ĕă,	eŭ	eo.	
	(*or*, N. eûs, G. eos, D. ĕi (eî), Acc. ĕă poetical.)						
	Ath-ōs,	ō,	ō,	ōn, *or* ō,	ōs,	ō.	(In Greek, ως.)
3*d Decl.*	Poēs-is,	is, (eos,)	i, (in,)	im,	is,	i.	es, eōn (ibus *not found*).
	Nerē-is,						
	G. Nerēĭd-is, (ōs,)	i, (ă,)	em,	(Nerēī), ĕ.			es, um, ĭbus, es. (ās.)
	Perĭcl-ēs,	is, i,	i, em, es,		es, e,	e.	
	Did-ō,	ūs,	ō,	ō,	ō.		(also, ōnis, &c.)

Obs. Neuters in *a*, gen. ătis, have dat. plur. in *atis*; thus: poēma, dat. plur. poēmătis, not poēmatĭbus.

(780.) **EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMICS**

(OR NAMES FROM A FATHER OR ANCESTOR).

	Ænēas,	Anchises,	Tyndărus,	Theseus,	Atlas (antis).
Masc.	*Æneădes,	*Anchisiădes,	*Tyndarĭdes,	*Thesĭdes,**	*Atlantĭdes, Atlantiădes.*
Fem.	(*Ænēis,*)	*Anchisias,*	*Tyndăris,*	*Thesēis,*	*Atlantis, Atlantias.*

(781.) **EXAMPLES OF NAMES**

(DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY).

Masc.	Persa,	Cres,	Tros,	Thrax,	Laco (Lacon), Phœnix.
Fem.	*Persis,*	*Cressa, Cretis,*	*Troas,*	*Threissa, Thressa.*	*Lacæna,* *Phœnissa.*

Romānus (*Roman*). Clusīnus (*of Clusium*). Atheniensis (*an Athenian*). Abderītēs (*fem.*, *Abderītis*). (*of Abdera*).

Milesius (*of Miletus*).

Arpīnas (*of Arpinum*).

* For *Thesĕides*. Hence ĭdes comes from nom. in *eus*.

APPENDIX III.

(782.) THE CALENDAR.

(1.) The Roman months had the same number of days as ours, but were differently divided.

1. The *Kalends* were the 1*st* day of the month.
2. The *Nones* " 5*th* or 7*th* day of the month.
3. The *Ides* " 13*th* or 15*th* day of the month.

☞ We make in *March, July, October, May,*
The Nones the *seventh*, the Ides the *fifteenth* day.

In all the other months the 5th and 13th were used.

(2.) The names of the months are used as adjectives agreeing with Kalendæ, Nonæ, and Idus.

The 1*st of January.*	Kalendis Januariis.
The 5*th of June.*	Nonis Juniis.
The 13*th of September.*	Idibus Septembribus.

(3.) (*a*) Instead of beginning at the 1st of the month and numbering the days regularly 2d, 3d, &c., as we do, the Romans counted them backward from the Kalends, Nones, and Ides. Thus, the 2d of January was called *the 4th day before the Nones of January*, quarto (die ante) Nonas Januarias; the 3d, tertio Nonas; the 4th, pridie Nonas; the 5th, Nonis.

(*b*) From the above cases it will be seen that the day with which the reckoning commences is included (except pridie), *i. e.*, the 2*d* day before the Nones is tertio Nonas; the 3d day before, quarto Nonas, &c.

The 13*th of October.*	Tertio (die ante) Idus Octobres.
The 3*d of June.*	Tertio (die ante) Nonas Junias.

(*c*) Special care must be taken, in designating any day between the *Ides* of one month and the *Kalends* of another, to ensure correctness. Thus, III. (die ante) Kalend. Januar. will be December 30; but III. Kal. Maias = 29th April, inasmuch as December has 31 days and April but 30. So III. Kal. Martias = 27th February.

(4.) The following table, exhibiting the correspondence between the Roman calendar and ours, can now be readily understood:

The Days of our Months.	March, May, July, and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, September, and November (have 30 days).	February (has 28, and in Leap-years 29 days).
1.	*Kalendis.*	*Kalendis.*	*Kalendis.*	*Kalendis.*
2.	VI. }	IV. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante
3.	V. } ante	III. } Nonas..	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.
4.	IV. } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III. }	*Nonis.*	*Nonis.*	*Nonis.*
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VIII. }
7.	*Nonis.*	VII. }	VII. }	VII. }
8.	VIII. }	VI. } ante	VI. } ante	VI. } ante
9.	VII. }	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.
10.	VI. } ante	IV. }	IV. }	IV. }
11.	V. } Idus.	III. }	III. }	III. }
12.	IV. }	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III. }	*Idibus.*	*Idibus.*	*Idibus.*
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX. }	XVIII. }	XVI. }
15.	*Idibus.*	XVIII. }	XVII. }	XV. }
16.	XVII. }	XVII. }	XVI. }	XIV. } ante Kalendas Martias.
17.	XVI. }	XVI. }	XV. }	XIII. }
18.	XV. }	XV. }	XIV. }	XII. }
19.	XIV. }	XIV. }	XIII. }	XI. }
20.	XIII. }	XIII. }	XII. }	X. }
21.	XII. }	XII. }	XI. }	IX. }
22.	XI. }	XI. }	X. }	VIII. }
23.	X. } ante Kalendas (of the following month).	X. } ante Kalendas (of the following month).	IX. } ante Kalendas (of the following month).	VII. }
24.	IX. }	IX. }	VIII. }	VI. }
25.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VII. }	V. }
26.	VII. }	VII. }	VI. }	IV. }
27.	VI. }	VI. }	V. }	III. }
28.	V. }	V. }	IV. }	Prid. Kalendas Martias.
29.	IV. }	IV. }	III. }	
30.	III. }	III. }	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	
31.	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).		

(5.) *The 5th day before the Kalends of April* (for instance) may be expressed in three ways:

(*a*) Die quinto ante Kalendas Aprilea.

(*b*) Quinto Kalendas Aprileo.

(*c*) Ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprileo; or, abbreviated, a. d. V. Kal. Apr.

APPENDIX IV.

ABBREVIATIONS.

(783.) The following abbreviations of words occur in Latin authors:

(*a*) NAMES.

A.	Aulus.	M'.	Manius.	Sept.	Septimius.
Ap.	Appius.	M.	Marcus.	Serv.	Servius.
C.	Caius.	Mam.	Mamercus.	Sex.	Sextus.
Cl.	Claudius.	M. T. C.	Marcus Tullius Cicero.	Sp.	Spurius.
Cn.	Cnæus.	N.	Numerius.	T.	Titus.
D.	Decimus.	P.	Publius.	Ti. *or* Tib.	Tiberius.
D.	Decius.	Q.	Quintus.	Tull.	Tullius.
L.	Lucius.				

(*b*) PUBLIC EXPRESSIONS.

Æd.	Ædilis.	Id.	Idus.	Pr.	Prætor.
Aug.	Augustus.	Imp.	Imperator.	Præf.	Præfectus.
Cal. *or* Kal.	Kalendæ.	Impp.	Imperatores.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Cos.	Consul.	Non.	Nonæ.	Resp.	Respublica.
Coss.	Consules.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus.	S.	Senatus.
D.	Divus.	P. C.	Patres Conscripti.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
Des.	Designatus.	Pl.	Plebis.	S. P. Q. R.	Senatus populusque Rom.
Eq. Rom.	Eques Romanus.	Pop.	Populus.	Tr.	Tribunus.
F.	Filius.	P. R.	Populus Rom.		

(*c*) OTHER ABBREVIATIONS.

A.	Anno.	S.	Salutem.
A. C.	Anno currente.	S. P. D.	Salutem dicit plurimam.
A. pr.	Anno præterito.	c.	caput.
A. M.	Anno mundi.	cf.	confer.
A. Chr.	Anno Christi.	e. g.	exempli gratia.
A. D.	Anno Domini.	i. e.	id est.
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditæ.	l. c.	loco citato.
D. D.	Dono dedit.	pag. m.	pagina mea.
D. D. D.	Dono dedit dicavit.	q. d.	quasi dicat.
D. D. C. q.	Dedit dicavit consecravitque.	q. l.	quantum libet.
		q. s.	quantum sufficit.
D. M.	Diis Manibus.	scil.	scilicet.
L. S.	Loco sigilli.	seq.	sequens.
M. S.	Manuscriptus.	v.	versus.
P. S.	Postscriptum.	v. g.	verbi gratia.
Q. D. B. V.	Quod Deus bene vertat.	viz.	videlicet.
S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est ego valeo.	vid.	vide.

WORD-BUILDING

AND

READING LESSONS.

WORD-BUILDING.

(784.) 1. THE *generic* meaning of a word is contained in its *root*; the *specific* meaning is generally given by its *ending*. Thus, in all the words am-o (*I love*), am-or (*love*), am-ātor (*a lover*), am-īcus (*friend*), we find the same generic idea (*love*) expressed by the root am; while the specific meanings, *I love* (verb), *love* (noun), *lover* (noun), *friend* (adjective noun), are given by the endings o, or, ātor, īcus, respectively.

2. The meanings of words are farther modified by certain *prefixes*; *e. g.*, ire (*to go*), amb-ire (*to go round*).

3. Again, words may be compounded with each other, and form new words; *e. g.*, with agr- (the stem of ager, *field*), and col- (the stem of colĕre, *to till*), we form agricol-a, *a tiller of the field = a farmer*.

Thus there are three modes of forming words: by *suffixes*, *prefixes*, and *composition*. We treat them in order.

(I.) WORD-BUILDING BY SUFFIXES.

(A.) *Nouns.*

(785.) *First Declension.*

1. The ending -a, suffixed to verb-stems, expresses an *agent* or *doer*.

scrīb-a,	*writer*,	from	scrīb-ĕre,	*to write.*
perfŭg-a,	*deserter*,	from	perfŭg-ĕre,	*to desert.*

2. -ia, -itia, with adjective-stems, a *disposition* or *condition*.

ignav-ia,	*cowardice*,	from	ignav-us,	*cowardly.*
prudent-ia,	*prudence*,	from	prudēn(t)-s,	*prudent.*
trist-itia,	*sadness*,	from	trist-is,	*sad.*
victor-ia,	*victory*,	from	vict-or,	*victorious*

3. -ūra, with supine-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pict-ura,	*painting*;	pingĕre (pict-),	*to paint.*
præfect-ura,	*prefectship*;	præfĭcĕre (præfect-),	*to place over.*

(786.) *Second Declension.*

1. -us, -ius, with verb-stems, form nouns denoting the *agent* or the *action* of the verb.

serv-us,	*slave*;	serv-īre,	*to serve.*
fluv-ius,	*river*;	flu(v)-ĕre,	*to flow.*
coqu-us,	*cook*;	coqu-ĕre,	*to cook.*
lud-us,	*sport*,	lud-ĕre,	*to play.*

2. -um, -ium, with verb-stems, gives a *result* of the action of the verb.

jug-um,	*yoke*,	jung-ĕre,	*to join.*
vad-um,	*ford*;	vad-ĕre,	*to go.*
incend-ium,	*fire*;	incend-ĕre,	*to burn.*

3. -ium, with noun-stems, (*a*) *an office*, or (*b*) *an assemblage of men* exercising an office or function.

(*a*)	sacerdot-ium,	*office of* sacerdos.
	minister-ium,	*office of* minister.
(*b*)	colleg-ium,	*assemblage of* collegæ.
	conviv-ium,	*assemblage of* convivæ.

4. -mentum, with verb-stems, the *means* of doing what the verb expresses.

teg-u-mentum,	*covering*;	teg-ĕre,	*to cover.*
adju-mentum,	*aid*;	adjuv-āre,	*to assist.*

5. -ulum, -bulum, -culum, with verb-stems, *means* or *instrument.*

jac-ulum,	*javelin*;	jac-ĕre,	*to hurl.*
venab-ulum,	*hunting-spear*;	ven-āri,	*to hunt.*
vehi-culum,	*carriage*;	veh-ĕre,	*to carry.*

Rem. culum also sometimes—*the place where*; *e. g.*, cœna-culum, cubi-culum.

6. -crum, -strum, with verb-stems, *place* or *thing prepared* for any purpose.

lava-crum,	*bath*;	lav-āre,	*to wash.*
claus-trum,	*lock*;	claud-ĕre,	*to shut.*

(787.) *Diminutives of First and Second Declensions.*

lus, -la, -lum, with noun-stems, form diminutive nouns, of masculine, feminine, and neuter genders.

(*a*) Connecting vowels *i*, *o*, *u*, the latter sometimes with c.

fili-o-lus, fili-o-la, *little son, daughter*—(filius); fraterculus (frater); opus-culum (opus).

(*b*) Sometimes l is doubled: lap-illus (lapis); codic-illus (codex, codicis); sac-ellum (sacrum).

(788.) *Third Declension.*

1. -tās, -tūs (with or without *i* as connecting vowel), form, with adjective-stems, abstract nouns denoting *quality*, &c.

bon-i-tas,	*goodness*;	bon-us,	*good.*
hones-tas,	*honour*;	honest-us,	*honourable.*
fort-i-tudo,	*bravery*;	fort-is,	*brave.*

2. (*a*) -or, with verb-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pav-or,	*fear;*	pav-ēre,	*to fear.*
am-or,	*love;*	am-āre,	*to love.*

(*b*) -or, with supine-stems, the *agent* or *doer.*

doct-or,	*teacher;*	doc-ēre (doct-),	*to teach.*
monit-or,	*adviser;*	mon-ēre (monit-),	*to advise.*

3. -io, with supine-stems, the *action* of the verb, especially the doing of it.

act-io,	*action;*	ag-ĕre (act-),	*to act, do.*
caut-io,	*caution;*	cav-ēre (caut-),	*to take care.*

4. -tūdo, with adjective-stems, the *abstract quality.*

fort-i-tudo,	*bravery;*	fort-is,	*brave.*

(789.) *Fourth Declension.*

Most nouns of the 4th declension are abstracts formed from verb-stems or supine-stems.

us-us,	*use;*	ūtī (us-),	*to use.*
mōt-us,	*motion;*	mōv-ēre (mōt-),	*to move.*

(790.) *Fifth Declension.*

1. -es, -ies, -ities, with verb or adjective-stems, *a property, operation, quality,* &c.

fid-es (fid-ēre); ser-ies (ser-ēre); fac-ies (fac-ĕre); dur-ities (dur-us); mund-ities (mund-us).

2. [Those in -ities coexist with others in -itia (784, 2); *e. g.* munditia, duritia, &c.]

(B.) *Adjectives.*

(791.) *First Class,* us, a, um.

1. -us, *quality* in general (coexisting with verb and noun stems).

alb-us,	*white;*	alb-āre,	alb-umen.
curv-us,	*curved;*	curv-āre,	curv-amen.
dur-us,	*hard;*	dur-āre,	dur-ities.
viv-us,	*alive;*	viv-ĕre,	vit-a.

2. -ĭdus and uus, chiefly with stems of intransitive verbs, the *quality* of the verb, without addition.

turg-ĭdus,	*swelling;*	turg-ēre,	*to swell.*
cal-idus,	*warm;*	cal-ēre,	*to be warm.*
noc-uus,	*hurtful;*	noc-ēre,	*to hurt.*

3. -bundus, with verb-stems, force of present participle, intensified.

hæsita-bundus, *full of hesitation;* hæsit-āre, *to hesitate.*
lacryma-bundus, *weeping profusely;* lacrym-āre, *to weep.*

4. -cundus, same as bundus, generally with the additional idea of *permanency*.

ira-cundus,	*passionate;*	ira-sc-i,	*to be angry.*
vere-cundus,	*bashful;*	verē-ri,	*to fear.*

5. -icus, with noun-stems, *belonging* or *relating* to a thing.

class-icus,	*belonging to a fleet;*	class-is,	*fleet.*
civ-icus,	*civic;*	civ-is,	*citizen.*

6. -eus, -aceus, -icius, with noun-stems, *material* or *origin*.

ferr-eus,	*of iron;*	ferr-um,	*iron.*
chart-aceus,	*of paper;*	chart-a,	*paper.*

7. -inus, with noun-stems, *similarity*, *quality*, or *material*.

asin-inus, asinine,	*like an ass;*	asin-us,	*an ass*
mar-inus,	*marine;*	mar-e,	*the sea.*
crystall-inus,	*crystalline;*	crystall-um,	*crystal.*

8. -anus, with names of towns ending in a or æ, a *native* of such place.

Rom-anus,	*a Roman;*	Roma,	*Rome.*

9. -osus, -lentus, with noun-stems, *fulness*, *abundance* (like the English -ous).

fam-osus,	*famous;*	fam-a,	*fame.*
vino-lentus,	*drunken;*	vīn-um,	*wine.*

(792.) *Second Class*, is, ĭs, e.

1. -is, *quality* in general (coexisting commonly with noun and verb forms).

lev-is,	*light;*	lev-āre,	lev-itas.

2. -ĭlis, -bĭlis, with verb-stems, the *quality* of the verb, or the *capacity* of it, in two senses, (*a*) *active* and (*b*) *passive*.

(*a*) terri-bĭlis,	*exciting terror;*	terr-ēre,	*to terrify.*
(*b*) dŏc-ĭlis,	*docile;*	doc-ēre,	*to teach.*
amăb-ĭlis,	*amiable;*	am-āre,	*to love.*

3. -īlis (ī *long*), with noun-stems, *belonging* or *relating* to a thing.

civ-īlis,	*belonging to a citizen, civil;*	civ-is,	*citizen.*
host-īlis,	*hostile;*	hos-tis,	*enemy.*

[Observe that ĭlis, with verb-stems, is *short*; with noun-stems, *long*.]

4. -ālis, -āris, with noun-stems, *of* or *belonging to*.

convīv-ālis,	*convivial;*	convīv-a.	
capit-ālis,	*capital;*	caput,	*head.*
consul-āris,	*consular;*	consul.	

5. -ensis, with names of towns—a *native* of such town.

Cann-ensis, *an inhabitant of* Cannæ.
Arimin-ensis, *an inhabitant of* Ariminum.

(793.) *Third Class*, one ending.

-ax, with verb-stems, the *tendency* of the verb, generally in a bad sense.

pugn-ax,	*pugnacious;*	pugn-āre,	*to fight.*
rap-ax,	*rapacious;*	rap-ĕre,	*to seize.*

(C.) *Verbs.*

(794.) *First Conjugation.*

1. **-āre**, generally a *transitive* ending, with noun-stems.

numer-āre,	*to count;*	numer-us,	*number.*
nomin-āre,	*to name;*	nomen (nomin-is),	*name.*

2. FREQUENTATIVE verbs, expressing a *repetition* or *increase* of the action of the original verb, are formed by the endings **-āre** and **-ĭtāre**; thus:

(*a*) **-āre**, added to supine-stems.

curs-āre,	*to run to and fro;*	currĕre (curs-um),	*to run.*
dormīt-āre,	*to be sleepy;*	dormīre (dormīt-um),	*to sleep.*

(*b*) **-ĭtāre**, added to verb-stems.

rog-ĭtāre,	*to ask often;*	rog-āre,	*to ask.*
vol-ĭtāre,	*to fly to and fro;*	vol-āre,	*to fly.*

3. **-āri**, deponent-ending, with noun-stems, is much used for expressing "*to be that which, or of the character that,*" the noun indicates.

comīt-āri,	{ *to attend as companion;* } comes (comit-is),	*companion.*
domĭn-āri,	*to rule as master;* domin-us,	*master.*

(795.) *Second Conjugation.*

-ēre, frequently an *intransitive* ending, with noun and adjective stems.

alb-ēre,	*to be white;*	alb-us,	*white.*
luc-ēre,	*to shine;*	lux (luc-is),	*light.*

(796.) *Third Conjugation.*

INCHOATIVE verbs express the *beginning* or *increase* of the action of the verb from which they are derived. They are formed by adding **sc** to the verb-stem, with the connecting-vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*. Most of them are formed on stems of verbs of second conjugation.

pallesc-ĕre,	*to grow pale;*	pall-ēre,	*to be pale.*
labasc-ĕre,	*to totter;*	lab-āre,	*to waver.*

(797.) *Fourth Conjugation.*

DESIDERATIVE verbs express a *desire* of that which is implied in the primitive, and are formed by adding **-ūrire** to supine-stems.

es-ūrire,	*to want to eat;*	ēdĕre (es-um),	*to eat.*

(II.) WORD-BUILDING BY PREFIXES.

(798.) Under this head we place only the *inseparable prepositions* (229), viz., amb-, dis- (di-), re-, se.

1. Amb- = *about, around, on both sides*; *e. g.*, amb-īre, *to go round* (amb+ire).

☞ Before *p* the *b* is dropped; *e. g.*, am-plector: before c-sounds amb is changed into an; *e. g.*, an-ceps, an-quiro.

2. Dis (dī) = *asunder*; *e. g.*, dis-jungĕre, *to disjoin* (dis+jungĕre).

☞ Dī is used before *d*, *g*, *l*, *m*; *e. g.*, digerere, &c. Before *f* the *s* is assimilated; *e. g.*, differre (dis+ferre).

3. Rĕ = *back, again, away, un-*; *e. g.*, rĕpellere, *drive back* (re+pellere); rĕficĕre, *refit* (rĕ+facere).

☞ Before vowels, *d* is inserted; *e. g.*, rĕd-īre (re+ire).

[Rē *long* occurs only in rēfert.]

4. Sĕ = *aside*; *e. g.*, sēducĕre, *lead astray, seduce* (sĕ+ducere); sēpōnĕre, *lay aside* (sĕ+ponere).

(III.) WORD-BUILDING BY COMPOSITION.

I. *Prepositions in Composition with other Words.*

(799.) ☞ Most prepositions are used to form compound words, and generally modify their meaning in a way easily understood; *e. g.*, stare, *to stand*; præstāre, *to stand before, to excel*. We notice here only those which present some peculiarities.

1. a, ab, abs = *away, from*. (*a*) *a* is used before *m* and *v*; *e. g.*, a-mittere, *to send away, lose*; a-vertere, *turn away*. (*b*) *ab* is used before ferre and fugĕre: auferre, aufugĕre. (*c*) *as*, before *p* or *sp*: asperto, aspernor.

2. ad = *to*. (*a*) Assimilated before consonants, except *d*, *j*, *v*, *m*; *e. g.*, arripĕre, assurgĕre, adducĕre, &c. (*b*) *d* dropped before *gn*; *e. g.*, agnoscĕre, agnatus.

3. con (a variation of cum) = *with*. (*a*) *co* before *h* and vowels; *e. g.*, co-ortus, co-hibēre. (*b*) *com* before *b*, *p*:* com-burĕre, com-pellĕre. (*c*) Assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*: col-ligĕre, com-movēre, cor-ripĕre.

4. e *or* ex = *out of*. (*a*) Assimilated before *f*; *e. g.*, effero (ex+fero). (*b*) *e* before liquids and *b*, *d*, *g*, *v*.

5. in, with verbs = *into, on, in, against*; with adjectives has privative force; *e. g.*, doctus, *learned*; indoctus, *unlearned*.

(*a*) Assimilated before *l*, *r*, *e. g.*, illatum (in+latum); irrum pĕre (in+rumpere).

* And sometimes before vowels: comedere.

(*b*) Changed into im before *b*, *p*; *e. g.*, imbibĕre (in+bibere); imponĕre (in+ponere).

6. ob = *against*; *e. g.*, obtrudĕre (ob + trudere), *thrust against.*
☞ Assimilated before *c*, *f*, *p*; *e. g.*, oc-cĭdere (ob+cadere); of-ferre, op-ponĕre.

7. pro = *forth, forward*; *e. g.*, projicĕre (pro+jacere), *cast forth.*
☞ Before vowels, *d* is inserted; *e. g.*, prod-esse (pro+esse).

8. præ = *before*; *e. g.*, præcēdĕre (præ+cedere), *to go before, to surpass.*

9. sub = *under, from under*; *e. g.*, subducĕre, *to draw from under.*
(*a*) Generally assimilated; *e. g.*, sum-movēre, sup-ponere, &c.
(*b*) Sometimes sus-; *e. g.*, sus-cipĕre, sus-tinēre, &c.

10. trans = *across, over*; *e. g.*, transducere, *to lead across.*
☞ Trā, instead of trans, occurs in trādere, trāducĕre, trājicĕre.

(800.) II. *Adverbs in Composition with other Words.*

1. nē, vē, have a *privative* force; *e. g.*, nĕfas, *wicked* (ne+fas); vēsanus, *insane* (vē+sānus).

2. benĕ, *well*; malĕ, *ill*; satis, *enough*; *e. g.*, beneficium, *a good deed*; maleficium, *an evil deed*; satisfacĕre, *to satisfy* (= to do enough).

3. bis (and other numerals), *twice* (*thrice*), &c.: bicorpor, *two-bodied* (bis+corp-us).

(801.) III. *Nouns and Adjectives in Composition with other Words.*

☞ When a noun or adjective is compounded with another word, the connecting vowel is always short *i*.

agrĭ-cola (agr-+col-), *a husbandman.*
arti-fex (art-+fac-), *an artificer.*

(802.) IV. *Verbs in Composition with other Words.*

None occur, except in composition with facere; *e. g.*, calefacere (calĕre+facere), *to make hot*; patefacere (patēre+facere), *to lay open.*

[☞ Observe that the vowel *a* in facere remains unchanged.]

(803.) V. *Common Vowel-changes in Composition.*

1. *a* into *i*; *e. g.*, arrĭpĕre (ad+rapere), conflĭcĕre (con+facere), constituĕre (con+statuere), &c.

2. *a* into *e* (more rarely); *e. g.*, ascendĕre (ad+scandere).

3. *e* into *i* (not always); *e. g.*, colligĕre (con+legere), abstinēre (abs+tenere), &c.

4. *æ* into *i*; *e. g.*, occidĕre (ob+cædere), requirĕre (rĕ+quærere).

READING LESSONS.

I.

GALLIA est omnis divisa[1] in partes tres.—Belgæ unam incolunt;[2] Aquitani alteram; Celtæ tertiam.—Hi, ipsorum* linguâ[3] C e l t æ[4] appellantur;[5] nostrâ* linguâ, G a l l i.[4]

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; q u a r u m unam incolunt Belgæ, alteram Aquitani, tertiam q u i[6] ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli appellantur.

Hi omnes inter se differunt.[7]—Linguâ, institutis,[8] legibus differunt.—Garumna[9] flumen Gallos ab Aquitanis dividit.—Matrŏna flumen Gallos a Belgis dividit.—Horum omnium[10] fortissimi sunt Belgæ.—Ab humanitate[11] Provinciæ longe absunt.[12]—A cultu[13] Provinciæ longissime absunt.—Minime ad eos mercatores[14] commeant.—Quædam[15] animos effeminant.[16]—Quædam ad effeminandos animos pertinent.[17]

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt.—Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrŏna e t Sequăna dividit.—Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, p r o p t e r e a q u o d a cultu a t q u e humanitate Provinciæ longissime absunt, minimę q u e ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, a t q u e ea, q u æ ad effeminandos animos pertinent,[18] i m p o r t a n t.[19]

Proximi sunt Germanis.[20]—Germani trans Rhenum incolunt.—Belgæ cum Germanis continenter[21] bellum gerunt.

[1] 435, *c.*—[2] in-+colere.—[3] 716.—[4] 694, 2, *R.*—[5] ad-+pellare *(obsolete)*, 799, 2, *a.*—[6] 167, *d*, 4.—[7] 798, ☞.—[8] 786, 2, instituere = in-+statuere, 803, 1.—[9] 225, *a.*—[10] 697, *a.*—[11] 788, 1 (humanus), humanitas = *refinement.*—[12] ab-+sum, 799, 1.—[13] cultus *(civilization)*, from colere (cult-), 789.—[14] mercator, from mercari (mercat-), 788, 2, *b.*—[15] *Some things.*—[16] effĕminare *(to make effeminate)*, ex-+fĕminare, 799, 4, *a*: fĕminare, from fĕmina *(woman)*, 794, 1.—[17] *tend to make minds effeminate*, 739.—[18] per-+tenere, 803, 3.—[19] in-+portare, 799, 5, *b.*—[20] 704, 4.—[21] from continens (con-+tenere), 215, 2, *b.*

* Ipsorum and nostra precede linguâ, instead of following it, because *opposed* to each other, and therefore *emphatic*.

Proximi sunt Germanis, q u i trans Rhenum incolunt, q u i b u s c u m[23] continenter bellum gerunt.

II.

Helvetii quoque[1] reliquos[2] Gallos virtute[3] præcedunt.[4]—Fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt.—Aut[5] suis finibus Germanos prohibent,[6] aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Q u ā[7] d e c a u s ā[8] Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt, q u o d[9] fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt, q u u m aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Galli unam partem obtĭnent.[10]—Unam partem Gallos[11] obtinere dictum est.[12]—Eă pars initium capit a flumine Rhŏdănŏ. —Continetur Garumnā flumine,[13] Oceano,[13] finibus[13] Belgarum. —Attingit[14] ab Sequănis flumen Rhenum.—Vergit ad Septentriones.—Belgæ ab extremis[15] Galliæ finibus oriuntur.—Pertinent[16] ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni.—Spectant* in Septentriones et orientem[17] solem.

E o r u m una pars, q u a m[18] Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur[19] Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit e t i a m ab[20] Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad Septentriones.—Belgæ ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes pertinet. —Una pars Oceani est ad[20] Hispaniam.—Aquitania ad eam

[23] 125, II., *b*.

[1] Quoque never begins a sentence.—[2] from relinquere (reliqu-), 791, 1. —[3] 718, *in valour*.—[4] 799, 8.—[5] 519, *R.* 4.—[6] 721.—[7] 89, II.—[8] Qua de causa = *for which reason*.—[9] *because*.—[10] ob-+-tenere, 803, 3.—[11] 751.—[12] 751, *R.* 2.—[13] 716.—[14] ad-+-tangere, 799, 2, *a*, 803, 1.—[15] 78, II., *b*.—[16] Pertinent = *they extend*, per-+-tenere.—[17] 438, *a*.—[18] 759.—[19] *is bounded*.—[20] *on the side of*, or *near*.

* Spectant in Septentriones, &c.: *they look into the north and the rising sun*; i. e., *they lie in a N.E. direction*.

partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet.— Spectat inter occasum[21] solis et Septentriones.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat* inter occasum solis et Septentriones.

III.

Orgetorix nobilis fuit.—Apud Helvetios nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Apud Helvetios longè ditissimus[1] fuit Orgetorix.—Is regni cupiditate[2] inductus conjurationem[3] nobilitatis[4] fecit.—Is civitati[5] persuadet, ut de finibus suis exeant.[6]—De finibus suis exeunt.—Perfacile erat totius Galliæ imperio[7] potiri.—Perfacile esse[8] (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent,[9] totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco Pisone consulibus,[10] regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent:[11] perfacile esse (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent, totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Id facile eis persuadet.[12]—Id hoc facilius eis persuasit.—Undique naturâ loci[13] Helvetii continentur.—Unâ ex parte continentur flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo.—Alterâ ex parte continentur monte Jurâ altissimo; tertiâ ex parte lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano.—Flumen Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit.—Mons Jurâ est inter Sequanos et Helvetios.—Flumen Rhodanus provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

[21] 789, from occidere, ob+cadere.

[1] 371, *R.* 1.—[2] from cupid-us, by 788, 1.—[3] 788, 3; con+jurare.—[4] 788, 1.—[5] 704, 2: *he persuades the state*; i. e., *the citizens*.—[6] ut exeant = *to go out of*: subj. pres., 754 (ex+ire).—[7] abl., 718.—[8] The sentence *perfacile esse*, &c., is in orat. obliqua; 769, *a*, applies.—[9] 799, 8.—[10] 458, *b*.—[11] Why is exirent in subj. imperf.? 748.—[12] suadere, *to recommend*; persuadere, *recommend thoroughly*, i. e., *persuade*.—[13] *by the nature of the country*.

* *It looks between the setting of the sun and the north*; i. e., *in a N.W. direction*

Id hoc facilius eis persuadet, q u o d undique loci naturâ Helvetii continentur; unâ ex parte, flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, q u i agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; alterâ ex parte, monte Jurâ altissimo, q u i est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiâ, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, q u i provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

Minus latè vagantur.—His rebus fit,[14] ut minus late vagentur.[15]—Bellum inferunt.[16]—Bellum inferre[17] possunt.—Minus facile bellum finitimis[18] inferre possunt.—His rebus fit, ut minus facile bellum finitimis inferre possent.—Magno dolore afficiebantur.[19]—Bellandi[20] erant cupidi.[21]

His rebus fiebat, ut e t minus late vagarentur, e t minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.—Quâ de causa, homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur.

IV.

Pro[1] multitudine[2] hominum, angustos habebant fines.—Pro gloriâ[3] belli atque fortitudinis,[4] angustos habebant fines.—Angustos se[5] fines habere arbitrabantur.[6]—Hi (*i. e.*, f i n e s) millia passuum ducenta (CC.) patebant.[6]—Hi in longitudinem[8] millia[7] passuum ducenta et quadraginta (XL.) patebant.

Pro multitudine a u t e m[8] hominum, e t pro gloriâ belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, q u i in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL., in l a t i t u d i n e m centum et octoginta (CLXXX.) patebant.

Ducti sunt.—Adducti[9] sunt.—Moti sunt.—Permoti[10] sunt.—Auctoritate[11] Orgetorigis adducti et permoti sunt.—Quædam ad proficiscendum[12] pertinent.—Constituerunt[13] ea comparare.[14]—Constituerunt jumenta et carros emere.[15]—Constituerunt se-

[14] *By these circumstances it is brought about.*—[15] 754, 2.—[16] in+ferre.—[17] 731.—[18] 704, 3.—[19] ad+facere, 799, 2; 803, 1.—[20] 736.—[21] cupĕre, 791, 2.

[1] *For*, or, *in view of.*—[2] mult-us, 788, 4.—[3] *reputation for war and courage.*—[4] 471.—[5] from arbit-er, by 794, 3.—[6] *extended.*—[7] 712.—[8] 522, *b*.—[9] Ducti sunt = *they were led*: adducti sunt = *they were led to*, i. e., *they were induced.*—[10] Moti sunt = *they were moved*: permoti sunt = *they were thoroughly moved*, i. e., *prevailed upon.*—[11] 788, 1.—[12] 487.—[13] con+statuere, 803, 1.—[14] con+parare, 799, 3, *b*.—[15] 731.

mentes magnas facere,[16] ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret.[17]—Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam[18] confirmant.

His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt, ea, quæ[19] ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum[20] coemere;[21] sementes quam maximas[22] facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Biennium Helvetiis[23] satis erat.—Biennium sibi[23] Helvetii satis esse duxerunt.[24]—Ad eas res conficiendas[25] biennium satis erat. —Profectionem[26] lege confirmant.[27]—In tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. — Ad eas res conficiendas[25] Orgetorix deligitur.[28]—Is sibi legationem[26] suscepit.[29]—In eo itinere persuadet Castico.—Casticus Catamantalēdis erat filius, Sequănus. —Pater Castici regnum in Sequanis multos annos[30] obtinuerat. —Pater Castici a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat. —Orgetorix Castico persuadet, ut regnum in civitate suā occuparet.[31]

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaledis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod[32] pater ante habuerat.

V.

Item Dumnorigi persuadet. — Dumnorix erat Æduus. — Dumnorix erat frater Divitiaci. — Dumnorix principatum[1] in

[16] *to make great sowings*, i. e., *to sow much land.*—[17] Sub+petere, 799, 9, *a*, *neuter*; suppeteret = *might be in store*: subjunc. by 754, 1.—[18] 785, 2. —[19] 759, *Rem.*—[20] *As great a number as possible.*—[21] con+emere, *to buy together*, *to buy up*, 799, 3.—[22] *As great sowings as possible.*—[23] 704.— [24] *reckoned.*—[25] 498, *d.*—[26] 788, 3.—[27] *They fix the departure by a law.*— [28] de+legere, 803, 3.—[29] 799, 9, *b.*—[30] 712.—[31] 754.—[32] 759.

[1] *chief power*, from princeps.

civitate obtinebat. — Dumnorix plebi[2] acceptus[3] erat. — Dumnorigi, ut idem conaretur persuadet,* eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore[4] principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac maximē[5] plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Perfacile factu[6] erat conata perficere.[7] — Ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus erat.—Totius[8] Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possunt.—Non est dubium quin plurimum Helvetii possint.[9]— Ipse illis regnum conciliaturus[10] erat.—Ipse, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regnum conciliaturus erat.

(*Oblique Narration*, 769.) "Perfacile factu esse," illis probat, "conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent;" "Se, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum," confirmat.

Helvetii jam[11] se[12] ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrantur.— Oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim,[13] incendunt.—Vicos suos ad quadringentos incendunt.—Reliqua[14] privata ædificia[15] incendunt.—Frumentum secum portaturi erant.—Frumentum omne comburunt. — Domum[16] reditionis[17] spes sublata[18] est.— Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda[19] erant.

Ubi[20] jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe[21] sublata,[21] paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.[22]

[1] 702, *was acceptable to the common people* (a favourite).—[3] ad+capere, 803, 1.—[4] 725.—[5] 376.—[6] 380. *It was a very easy thing to do.*—[7] *to accomplish*, per+facere, 803, 1.—[8] *Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.*—[9] 754, 4.—[10] 446.—[11] jam = *at last.*—[12] 751.—[13] *in number* (amounting) *to twelve.*—[14] relinquere.—[15] 801, ædes+facere.—[16] 713, *Rem.* 2.—[17] 788, 3.—[18] tollere.—[19] sub+ire, gerundive, 739.—[20] *when.*—[21] 750.—[22] 754.

* Cæsar often uses the *historical present*, as in this instance, instead of the perfect aorist. If persuadet were used really as the present, then conaretur would have to be conetur, by 748; but, as the historical present, it requires a past tense in the subordinate sentence.

VI.

Omnes res ad profectionem comparant.—Diem dicunt[1] qua die omnes conveniant.[2]—Is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas[3] Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.—Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone, A. Gabinio Coss.

Omnibus rebus[4] ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.

Helvetii per provinciam nostram iter[5] facere conantur.—Id Cæsari nuntiatum erat.—Cæsari nuntiatum erat, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere[6] conari.[7]—Maturat ab urbe proficisci,[8] et magnis itineribus in Galliam contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit.—De ejus adventu[8] Helvetii certiores facti sunt.—Legatos ad eum mittunt.—Helvetiis est in animo[9] sine ullo maleficio[10] iter per provinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum; rogant, ut, Cæsaris voluntate, id facere liceat.[11]

Cæsari quum id nuntiatum esset,[12] eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari,[7] maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatōs ad eum mittunt,[13] qui dicerent,[14] "*sibi*[15] *esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere*, propterea quod *aliud iter habeant nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat.*"

Lucius Cassius, consul, ab Helvetiis occisus erat.—Exercitus[16] Cassii ab Helvetiis pulsus[17] erat, et sub jugum missus.—Eā Cæsar memoriā[18] tenebat.—Concedendum[19] non putabat.—Facultas[20] per provinciam itineris faciendi[21] non dăta est.—

[1] *They appoint.*—[2] con+venire; subj. pres., 766.—[3] 782, 5.—[4] 750.—[5] iter facere = *to make journey* = *to march.*—[6] 731.—[7] 751.—[8] advenire (advent-), 789.—[9] 468, *b.*—[10] 800, 2.—[11] 754.—[12] 757, A. 2.—[13] historical present.—[14] 761, 1.—[15] oblique narration.—[16] exercere, 789.—[17] pellere.—[18] memoriā tenebat, *held in memory*, i. e., *remembered.*—[19] 737 (esse understood, 504, *a*).—[20] *power of marching through*, or *permission to march through* facultas, 788, 1, from facil-is, facio.—[21] 496.

Homines inimico[22] animo ab injuria et maleficio non temperant.

Cæsar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitum que ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque,[23] homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria[24] et maleficio, existimabat.

VII.

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit.—Divico, bello Cassiano,[1] dux Helvetiorum fuerat.—Is ita cum Cæsare egit.[2]—Helvetii in eam partem ibunt, atque ibi erunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.[3]—Cæsar veteris incommodi[4] reminiscitur.[5]—Cæsar pristinæ virtutis[6] Helvetiorum reminiscitur.

(*Oblique Narration, present time.*[7]) Is ita cum Cæsare agit: "*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciat,*[8] *in eam partem ituros*[9] *atque ibi futuros*[9] *Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituerit atque esse voluerit; sin bello persequi perseveret,*[10] *reminiscatur*[11] *et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum.*

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit (obl. narr., *past* time): "*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar eos constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum.*"

[22] 722.—[23] neque existimabat = *nor did he think.*—[24] *outrage.*

[1] *In the Cassian war*, i. e., in which Cassius had been the Roman general.—[2] *He treated with Cæsar as follows.*—[3] 803, 1; subj. by 766.—[4] in + commodum, *disaster*, in + commodus, 799, 5; con + modus, 795, 3, *c*; genitive by 698, *a*, 2.—[5] re + miniscor, *stem* of memini, *mēmĭ-*, 5*c*, 2*a*; genitive by 698, *a*, 2.—[7] Observe carefully the *tenses* in this and the following paragraphs.—[8] *If the Roman people will make peace.*—[9]

His Cæsar ita[12] respondet.—Cæsări nihil dubitatiōnis[13] datur.[14] —Legāti Helvetii quasdam res commemoravērunt.[15]—Eas res Cæsar in memoria tenet.[16]—Eo[17] Cæsari minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverunt, in memoria tenet.—Eas res graviter[18] fert.[19]—Eæ res non meritō[20] popŭli Romāni accidērunt.[21]—Eas res graviter fert, quod non merito populi Romani acciderunt.—Eo[22] gravius fert, quo[23] minus merito Populi Romani acciderunt.

His Cæsar ita respondet[24] (*oblique narration, present time*): "*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoravĕrint, memoria teneat: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidĕrint.*"

His Cæsar ita respondit (*oblique narration, past time*): "*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria tenĕret: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent.*"

VIII.

Helvetii postĕro die[1] castra ex eo loco movent.—Idem[2] Cæsar facit.—Quas in partes[3] hostes iter faciunt?[4]—Equitātum[5] omnem præmittit.[6]—Hi vidēbunt, quas in partes hostes iter faciant.[7]—Equitatus ex omni Provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactus[8] erat.—Hunc equitatum præmittit, qui videant,[9] quas in partes hostes iter faciant.[7]—Hi cupidius[10] novissĭmum[11] agmen insequuntur.[12]—Cum equitātu Helvetiōrum prœlium commit-

[12] *as follows*.—[13] 788, 3, dubitare (dubitat-).—[14] *To Cæsar nothing of doubt is given* = *Cæsar has no doubt*.—[15] con + memorare (memor).—[16] *holds in memory*, i. e., *remembers*.—[17] *On* this account *Cæsar has* less *doubt, because*.—[18] 215, 2, *a*.—[19] ferre graviter = *to bear heavily, to be indignant at*.—[20] 716.—[21] accĭdere = ad + cădere, 803, 1, *to happen*.—[22] *By so much*.—[23] *by how much*.—[24] Observe the moods and tenses carefully in this and the following paragraph of *oblique narration*.

[1] 725.—[2] 150.—[3] *Into what parts* (of the country)?—[4] 765.—[5] Equitare (equitat-), 789.—[6] 795, 8.—[7] 766.—[8] *had been collected*; cogere = con + agere.—[9] *who may see*, i. e., *to see*, 761, 1.—[10] *too eagerly*, adv., 376.—[11] novissimum agmen = the *newest* rank, i. e., the *rear* rank.—[12] in + sequi.

tunt.—Aliēno[13] loco prœlium committunt.—Pauci de nostris cadunt.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent: idem Cæsar facit; equitatumque omnem ad numĕrum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactum habēbat, præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.—Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti,[14] alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt.

Hoc prœlio sublāti[15] sunt Helvetii.—Quingentis equitĭbus tantam multitudĭnem equĭtum propulĕrant.[16]—Audacius[17] subsistĕre[18] cœpērunt.—Nonnunquam[19] et[20] prœlio[21] nostros lacessĕre cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat.[22]—Hostem rapīnis,[23] pabulationĭbusque prohibēre[24] volēbat.—Hoc satis habēbat in præsentia.[25]

Quo prœlio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam et novissĭmo agmĭne prœlio nostros lacessere cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis pabulationibusque[26] prohibere.

IX.

Multa[1] antĕhac tacuĕrat[2] Liscus.—Hæc oratiōne[3] Cæsăris adductus propōnit[4].—Sunt nonnulli,[5] quorum auctorĭtas apud plebem plurĭmum[6] valet.—Hi privātim[7] plus possunt[8] quam ipsi

[13] *In a place not their own*, i. e., *on disadvantageous ground*.—[14] 451, *c*.—[15] sub+latus, irreg. perf. of tollere: *the Helvetians were elated*.—[16] *they had driven off*, pro+pellere.—[17] 376.—[18] *to halt*, sub+sistere; inf., 731.—[19] non+nunquam, *not never*, i. e., *sometimes*.—[20] *also*.—[21] *by an assault*.—[22] *to hold together*, i. e., *to restrain*.—[23] 721, *from plunder and from foraging parties*.—[24] pro+habēre.—[25] acc. pl. of præsens; in præsentia (tempora), *for the present*.—[26] 517, *a*.

[1] *Many things, before this, Liscus had kept secret*.—[2] tacēre, *intrans* = *to be silent*; *trans* = *to keep secret*.—[3] 788, 3, orare (orāt).—[4] pro+ponere, *to set before, to relate*.—[5] non+nullus, *not none*, i. e., *some*.—[6] plurimum valet = *avails very much (has very great weight)*.—[7] 215, 3.—[8] plus possunt = *can more*, i. e., *have more power*.

magistrātus.[8]—Hi seditiōsa[10] atque improba[11] oratione multitudĭnem deterrent.[12]—Frumentum non confĕrunt.[13]—Hi multitudinem deterrent, ne frumentum conferant.[14]—Ipsi quidem principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possunt. — Satius[15] est Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia perferre.[16]

Si Helvetios superavĕrint[17] Romāni, una[18] cum relĭqua Gallia Æduis libertātem eripient.[19]—Dubitare non debent, quin Romani Æduis libertatem sint ereptūri.[20]—Satius est si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre.

Tum demum Liscus,[21] oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit.—(*Oratio obliqua*): "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrēre, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre satius esse, neque dubitare debēre, quin si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertatem sint erepturi."

X.

Hac oratiōne Lisci, Dumnŏrix, Divitiaci frater, designabātur.[1]—Id Cæsar sentiēbat.[2]—Pluribus præsentĭbus[3] eas res jactāri[4] nolēbat. — Celeriter[5] concilium dimittit; Liscum retĭnet. — Quærit,[6] ex solo,[7] ea quæ in conventu[8] dixerat.—Dicit liberius[9] atque audacius.[9]—Eădem secrēto[10] ab aliis quærit.—Repĕrit[11] esse vera.

[8] *The magistrates themselves.*—[10] 791, 9 (seditio).—[11] in+probus, 799, 5.—[12] de+terrēre.—[13] con+ferre, *contribute.*—[14] ne conferant, *that they may not contribute*, i. e., deter them *from contributing*, 548, *b*.—[15] Satius, *compar. of* satis, 376: *it is better.*—[16] per+ferre, *to endure.*—[17] 542, *b*, 2.—[18] *they will wrest liberty from the Æduans, together with the rest of Gaul.*—[19] e+raperĕ, 803, 1.—[20] 754, 4.—[21] *Then, finally (then, and not till then).*

[1] *was alluded to*, de+signare.—[2] *was aware of.*—[3] 750, *many being present*, i. e., *in the presence of many.*—[4] 794, 2, *a*; from jacio (jact-): jactare = to *toss to and fro*; hence, *to discuss.*—[5] 215, 2.—[6] *He inquires into.*—[7] ex solo = *of him alone.*—[8] 789.—[9] 376.—[10] *privately.*—[11] *He finds (the statements) are true.*

Ipse est Dumnŏrix,[12] summa audacia,[13] magna apud plebem propter liberalitātem gratia,[14] cupĭdus rerum[15] novārum.—Complūres annos[16] portoria[17] reliquăque omnia Æduorum vectigalia habet.—Hæc vectigalia parvo pretio[18] redemta sunt.[19]—Vectigalia[20] parvo pretio redemta habet, propterea quod, illo[21] licente,[22] contra licēri[23] audet nemo. — His rebus suam rem familiārem auxit.—His rebus facultātes[24] ad largiendum[25] magnas comparāvit.—Magnum numerum equitātūs suo sumptu[26] semper alit.—Magnum numerum equitatūs semper circum se habet.—Non solum domi,[27] sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter[28] potest.

Cæsar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorĭgem, Divitiaci fratrem, designāri sentiebat: sed, quod pluribus præsentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærit, ex solo, ea quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit; reperit esse vera: "Ipsum esse Dumnorĭgem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redemta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatūs suo sumtu semper alĕre et circum se habēre: neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse."

XI.

Ad has suspiciones certissimæ res[1] accedēbant.—Dumnŏrix per fines Sequanōrum Helvetios transduxĕrat.—Obsĭdes inter eos dandos[3] curavĕrat.—Ea omnia jussū[4] Cæsăris fecĕrat.—Ea

[12] *Dumnorix is the very person,* (a man) *of the highest audacity,* &c.—[13] 722.—[14] *influence.*—[15] 698, *b.*—[16] 712.—[17] *transit duties, custom duties.*—[18] 719.—[19] *were contracted for.*—[20] vectigalia . . . habet, *he holds the taxes contracted for at a low price;* i. e., *holds them under a very favourable contract.*—[21] 456, *a, when he bids.*—[22] liceor, licēri, *to bid.*—[23] 731.—[24] *Means for making largesses.*—[25] 489.—[26] suo sumptu, *at his own expense.* Sumptus, 789, from sumere.—[27] 726, *R., at home.*—[28] largiter potest, *he can largely,* i. e., *he has extensive power.*

[1] certissimæ res = *most certain (or undoubted) facts.*—accedebant = *were added;* ad-+cedĕre, intransitive.—[3] trans-+ducere.—[3] 504, *a.*—[4] 789; from jubēre (juss-): *by the command,* 716.

omnia injussu[5] Cæsaris et[6] civitatis fecerat.—Ea omnia inscientibus ipsis[7] fecerat.—Ea omnia non modo injussu Cæsaris et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecerat.—A magistratū[8] Æduōrum accusabātur.—Satis est caussæ,[9] quare in eum animadvertat.[10]—Satis est caussæ, quare in eum civitātem animadvertĕre jubeat.—Satis erat caussæ, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertĕret, aut civitatem animadvertere jubēret.—Satis esse[11] caussæ arbitrabātur.

Quibus rebus cognĭtis,[12] quum[13] ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accedĕrent—quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset[14]—quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset—quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset—quod a magistratu Æduorum accusarētur; satis esse caussæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.

His omnĭbus rebus[15] unum repugnābat.[16]—Divitiaci fratris[17] summum in populum Romānum studium[18] cognoverat Cæsar.—Divitiaci summam in se voluntātem cognoverat.—Divitiaci egregiam fidem, justitiam,[19] temperantiam,[19] cognoverat.—Dumnorĭgis supplicio[20] Divitiaci anĭmum offendet.—Ne[21] Divitiaci animum offendat, verētur.—Ne[22] Divitiaci animum offendĕret, verebātur.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur.

[5] *without the command*; in+jussū.—[6] The English idiom demands *or* instead of *and*: *without the command of Cæsar* or *the state*.—[7] *themselves not knowing it*, i. e., without the knowledge of Cæsar and the Æduan government.—[8] *By a magistrate*, 93, II., *b*.—[9] 697, *b*.—[10] in eum animadvertere, *to animadvert upon him*, i. e., *to punish him*.—[11] 751, *R*. 2.—[12] Quibus rebus cognitis = *Which things being known by inquiry*, i. e., *after he had inquired into these things*.—[13] *Since (seeing that)*, 757, A, *b*.—[14] transduxisset, curasset, &c., are subjunctives, because they express, not Cæsar's own sentiments or knowledge, but what he had heard from others: *certissimæ res accederent*.—[15] 704, *To all these considerations one (thing) opposed itself*.—[16] re+pugnare.—[17] *Of his brother Divitiacus*, i. e., the brother of Dumnorix.—[18] *zeal*.—[19] 785, 2.—[20] *By the punishment of Dumnorix he will hurt the feelings of Divitiacus*.—[21] veretur ne . . . *he fears that he shall*.—[22] verebatur ne . . . *he feared that he should*.

XII.

Cæsar graviter[1] in[2] Dumnorigem statuet.—Divitiacus Cæsărem complectĭtur.—Divitiacus multis[3] cum lacrymis Cæsarem complectitur.—Obsecrāre incĭpit ne[4] quid gravius[5] in[2] fratrem statuat. — Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera. — Nemo ex eo[6] plus quam Divitiacus doloris[7] capit. — Divitiacus gratiā[8] plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia poterat. — Dumnŏrix minĭmum[9] propter adolescentiam poterat. — Dumnorix per Divitiacum crevit.[10]—His opibus[11] ac nervis[12] ad minuendam[13] gratiam Divitiaci utitur.—His opibus ad perniciem[14] Divitiaci utitur.—Quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem Divitiaci utitur. — Divitiacus tamen et[15] amore fraterno et existimatione[16] vulgi commovetur.[17]— Divitiacus summum locum amicitiæ apud Cæsarem tenet.—Nemo existimābit non ejus voluntate factum.[18]—Ex hac re tōtius Galliæ animi a Divitiaco avertentur.[19]

(*Direct Narration, Present Time.*[20]) Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capit, propterea quod, quum ipse gratiā plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem ipsius utitur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovetur, quod, si[21] quid fratri a Cæsare acciderit, quum[22] ipse talem locum amicitiæ apud eum teneat, nemo existimabit non

[1] graviter statuet = *will decide severely.*—[2] *against.*—[3] 89, II.—[4] 548, *a.* [5] quid gravius = *anything more severe (than usual): anything at all severe.*—[6] *from him,* i. e., Dumnorix.—[7] plus doloris, *more pain,* 697.—[8] *by his influence* (popularity).—[9] minimum poterat = *had very little power.*—[10] crescere: *grew* (in power).—[11] *resources.*—[12] *sinews,* abl. by 716.—[13] 739, *for diminishing the influence of Divitiacus.*—[14] 790, 1.—[15] 517, *c.*—[16] existimāre, 788, 3: existimatione vulgi = *by the opinion of the public.*—[17] con+movēre; commovētur = *is strongly moved.*—[18] *No one will think it was not done with his* (Divitiacus's) *consent.*—[19] a+vertere: *the affections of all Gaul will be turned away from him.*—[20] Observe carefully the moods and tenses in the following paragraphs of direct and oblique narration.—[21] *if anything happen to his brother from Cæsar.*—[22] quum ipse teneat, *seeing that he himself holds.*

ejus voluntate factum; qua ex re fiet[23] uti totius Galliæ animi ab eo avertantur.[24]

(*Direct Narration, Past Time.*) Sciebat Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capiēbat, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevĕrat; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem ipsius utebātur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēbātur, quod si quid fratri a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse talem locum amicitiæ apud eum tenēret, nemo erat existimatūrus non ejus voluntate factum, qua ex re futūrum erat uti totius Galliæ animi ab eo averterentur.

Divitiacus, multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare incipit (*oblique narration, present time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuat; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capĕre, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevĕrit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam utātur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēri, quod, si quid ei gravius a Cæsare accidĕrit, quum ipse eum locum amicitiæ apud eum teneat, nemĭnem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliæ animi a se avertantur."

Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare cœpit (*oblique narration, past time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuĕret; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uterētur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod si quid ei a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiæ apud eum tenēret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliæ animi a se averterentur."

[23] *from which thing it will result.*—[24] 754. 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

☞ The numbers refer to paragraphs. In verbs, the perfect and supine-stems are placed in brackets, immediately after the infinitive endings. The declensions of nouns may be known by the genitive endings; the conjugations of verbs by the infinitive endings.

A, ab, abs, prep. with abl., *by, from.*

Abesse (abfu-, ab+esse), *to be away from, to be distant, to be absent.*

Abrog-āre (av-, at-), *to abrogate.*

Abstin-ēre (abstinu-, abstent-, abs+tenere), *to abstain from* (with abl.).

Abund-āre (av-, at-), *to abound* (with abl.).

Ac, conj., *and, as well as.*

Acced-ĕre (accĕss-, access-, ad+cedere, 401, 3), *to approach.*

Accid-ĕre (accĭd-, ad + cadere), *to happen.*

Accidit, impers., 583, *it happens.*

Accip-ĕre (io, accĕp-, accept-, 666, V., *b*), *to receive:* acceptus erat, *he was popular,* or *acceptable.*

Accurr-ĕre (accurr-, and accucurr-, accurs-, ad+currere), *to run to, to run up to.*

Accus-āre (av-, at-), *to accuse.*

Acer, acris, acre, 105, R. 1, *sharp, spirited.*

Acerrime (superl. of acriter), *very spiritedly.*

Acies, ei, *line of battle.*

Acriter, adv., 217, *sharply, spiritedly.*

Acut-us, a, um, *sharp, acute.*

Ad, prep. with accus., *to, near.*

Add-ĕre (addid-, addit-, ad + dare, 411, *c*), *to add.*

Adduc-ĕre (adduc-, adduct-), *to lead to, induce.*

Adeo, adv., *to this point, to such a degree.*

Adesse (adfu-, ad+esse), *to be present* (with dat.).

Adhib-ēre (adhibu-, adhibit-, ad+habere), *to apply, employ, admit.*

Adhort-āri (at-), dep., *to exhort.*

Adjung-ĕre (adjunx-, adjunct-), *to join to.*

Adjuv-āre (adjūv-, adjūt-), *to assist.*

Admŏdum, adv., *very.*

Admon-ēre (admonu-, admonit-), *to advise, admonish.*

Adolescens, (adolescent) is, *young man.*

Adolescenti-a, æ, *youth.*

Ador-āre (av-, at-), *to adore, worship.*

Advent-us, ūs, *approach.*

Adversus, *or* adversum, prep. with accus., *against, towards.*

Ædific-āre (ay-, at-), *to build.*

Ædifici-um, i, *building.*

Ædu-us, i, *Æduan* (people of Gaul).

Ĕgens, (ĕgent) is, 107, *poor.*

Æger, gra, grum, *sick.*

Ægritudo, (ægritudin) is, 339, *sorrow, affliction, sickness.*

Ægrot-āre (av-, at-), *to be sick.*

Ægyptus, i, f., 25, *a, Ægypt.*

Æquor, (æquŏr) is, 327, *sea.*

Æstas, (æstāt) is, 293, *summer.*

Ætas, (ætāt) is, 293, *age, time of life.*
Æternitas, (æternitāt) is, 293, *eternity.*
Ætern-us, a, um, *eternal;* in æternum, *forever.*
Affectio, (affection) is, 293, *affection.*
Afferre (attul-, allat-, ad+ferre), *to bring, bring to, adduce.*
Affic-ĕre (affĕc-, affect-, ad+facere), *to affect, move, influence.*
Afric-a, æ, *Africa.*
African-us, i, *Africanus.*
Ager, gri, 64, *field.*
Ag-ĕre (ĕg-, act-), *to do, act, drive; to treat* (as an ambassador).
Agmen, (agmin) is, 344, *a, army on march, or in marching order;* novissimum agmen. *the rear.*
Agn-us, i, *lamb.*
Agricol-a, æ, m., *husbandman.*
Agricultur-a, æ, *agriculture.*
Agripp-a, æ, *Agrippa.*
Aio, 609, *I say, say yes, affirm.*
Al-a, æ, *wing.*
Al-ĕre (alu-, alt-), *to nourish, support, maintain.*
Alexander, -dri, *Alexander.*
Alien-us, a, um, *foreign, belonging to another.*
Aliquando, *at some time, some day, at last.*
Aliquant-us, a, um, 184, *somewhat great;* aliquantum agri, *a pretty large piece of ground.*
Aliquis, quæ, quid (quod), 178, 5, *some one, something;* aliquid novi, *something new,* 180.
Aliter, *otherwise.*
Ali-us, a, ud, gen. alĭus, &c., 194, R. 1, *other, another.* [of Gaul.
Allobroges, um, *Allobroges,* people
Allu-ĕre (allu-), *to wash.*
Alpes, ium, *Alps,* mountains between Gaul and Italy.
Alter, a, um, gen. ĭus, 194, R. 1, *another, the second* (in a series).
Alt-us, a, um, *high, lofty, deep;* altum, i, *the deep, the sea.*
Amabilis, is, e, 104, *amiable.*
Am-āre (av-, at-), *to love.*
Ambo, æ, o, *both.*
Ambul-āre (av-, at-), *to walk.*
Amiciti-a, æ, *friendship.*
Amic-us, i, *friend.*
Amitt-ĕre (amis-, amiss-), *to lose.*
Amplĕ, adv., *largely.*
Amplius, comp. of amplĕ, *more, larger, greater than.*
Ancill-a, æ, *maid-servant.*
Angli-a, æ, *England.*
Angusti-æ, arum, *defiles,* 57, R.
Angust-us, a, um, *narrow.*
Animadvert-ĕre (vert-, vers-), animum+ad+vertere), *to turn the mind to, to observe; with* in, *to punish;* Cæsar in Dumnorigem animadvertit, *Cæsar punishes Dumnorix.*
Animal, (animal) is, 325, *animal.*
Animans, (animant) is, *living;* as noun, *a living being.*
Anim-us, i, *soul, mind.*
Ann-us, i, *year.*
Anser, (anser) is, 319, *goose.*
Ante, prep. with accus., *before.*
Antehac, adv., *before, before this.*
Antepon-ĕre (posu-, posit-), *to place before, to prefer.*
Antonin-us, i, *Antonine.*
Antoni-us, i, *Antony.*
Aper-īre (aperu-, apert-, 427, II.), *to open.*
Apert-us, a, um, *open.*
Apis, (Ap-) is, *Apis,* Egyptian deity.
Appell-āre (av-, at-), *to call, name.*
Aprilis, is (sc. mensis), m., 25, *a, April.* [*proach.*
Appropinqu-āre (av-, at-), *to ap-*
Apud, prep. with accus., *among;* apud te, *with you* (at your house); apud Ciceronem, *in Cicero* (*i. e.,* his writings).

Aqu-a, æ, *water.*
Aquil-a, æ, *eagle.*
Aquitan-us, i, *Aquitanian* (people of Gaul).
Arăr, (Arăr) is, *the Saone* (river of Gaul).
Ar-āre (av-, at-), *to plough.*
Arbitr-āri (at-), dep., *to judge, think.*
Arbor, (arbŏr) is, f., *tree.*
Arcess-ĕre (arcessīv-, arcessīt-), *to send for.*
Arethus-a, æ, *Arethusa.*
Argent-um, i, *silver.*
Arid-um, i, *the sand* (neuter of aridus, a, um, *dry*).
Ariovist-us, i, *Ariovistus*, a German chieftain.
Aristides, (Aristīd-) is, *Aristides.*
Arma, orum, *arms.*
Arm-āre (av-, at-), *to arm.*
Arrip-ĕre (arripu-, arrept-, ad+rapere), *to snatch up, to seize.*
Arroganti-a, æ, *haughtiness, obstinacy, arrogance.*
Ars, (art) is, 293, *art.*
Asper, a, um, *rough.*
At, conj., *but.*
Athenæ, arum, *Athens.*
Atheniensis, is, *an Athenian.*
Atque, conj., *and.*
Atrox, (atrōc) is, 107, *fierce.*
Attent-e, adv., *attentively.*
Attent-us, a, um, *attentive.*
Attic-a, æ, *Attica.*
Atting-ĕre (attĭg-, attact-), *to touch on, border upon.*
Auctoritas, (auctorităt) is, 293, *authority, influence.*
Audacius, comp. of audacter, 376, *more boldly.*
Audacter, adv., *boldly.*
Aud-ēre (ausus sum), *to dare.*
Aud-īre (audiv-, audit-), *to hear.*
Aug-ēre (aux-, auct-), *to increase.*
August-us, i, *Augustus.*
Aur-um, i, *gold.*
Aut, conj., *or.*
Autem, conj., 315, *but, moreover, also.*
Auxili-um, i, *assistance*; auxilia, pl., *auxiliary troops.*
Avar-us, i, *avaricious.*
Avert-ĕre (avert-, avers-), *to turn away.*
Avien-us, i, *Avienus.*
Avis, (av) is, 300, *bird.*

B.

Barbar-us, a, um, *barbarian, foreign*; used as a noun, *a barbarian.*
Beat-us, a, um, *happy.*
Beat-ē, 215, 1, *happily.*
Belg-a, æ, *a Belgian*, people of Gaul.
Bell-āre (av-, at-), *to wage war.*
Bellicos-us, a, um, *warlike.*
Bell-um, i, *war.*
Benĕ, adv., *well*, 215, 1, R.
Benefici-um, i, *good deed, act of kindness.*
Benign-us, a, um, *kind*, with dat.
Besti-a, æ, *beast, brute.*
Bib-ĕre (bib-, bibit-), *to drink.*
Bienni-um, i, *space of two years.*
Bini, æ, a, dist., 189, *two apiece, two at a time.*
Bis, 189, *twice.*
Bonitas, (bonităt) is, 293, *goodness.*
Bon-us, a, um, *good*; bona, neut. pl., *blessings, advantages.*
Bos, bovis, 351, 2, *ox* or *cow.*
Brevis, is, e, 104, *short.*
Britanni-a, æ, *Britain.*
Britann-us, i, *a Briton.*
Brut-us, i, *Brutus.*

C.

Cad-ĕre (cecĭd-, cas-, 411, *b*), *to fall.*
Cadm-us, i, *Cadmus.*
Caduc-us, a, um, *frail.*
Cæd-ĕre (cecīd-, cæs-, 411, *b*), *to fell, kill, cut down.*
Cæsar, (Cæsăr) is, *Cæsar.*

Caius, i, *Caius.*
Calamitas, (calamitāt) is, *calamity.*
Calcar, (calcār) is, 325, *spur.*
Camp-us, i, *field, plain.*
Can-is, (can) is, *c, dog.*
Cant-āre (av-, at-), *to sing.*
Cant-us, ūs, *singing.*
Cap-ĕre (cēp-, capt-), *to take.*
Captiv-us, i, *captive, prisoner.*
Car-ēre (caru-, 398), *to want,* with abl.
Carmen, (carmin) is, 344, *a, song.*
Caro, (carn) is, 340, R., *flesh.*
Carthaginiensis, is, *a Carthaginian.*
Carthago, (Carthagin) is, *Carthage.*
Carr-us, i, *wagon.*
Car-us, a, um, *dear.*
Cassi-us, i, *Cassius.*
Castell-um, i, *fortress, tower.*
Castic-us, i, *Casticus.*
Castra, orum, *camp.*
Cas-us, ūs, *accident, chance.*
Catamentales, edis, *Catamentales,* proper name.
Catilin-a, æ, *Catiline,* proper name.
Cato, (Catōn) is, *Cato.*
Caus-a, æ, *cause, reason;* abl., causā, *for the sake of,* 135, II., *b;* salutis causā, *for the sake of safety.*
Caut-us, a, um, *cautious.*
Celebr-āre (av-, at-), *to celebrate.*
Celer, (celer) is, 107, *swift.*
Celeriter, adv., 215, 2, *b, swiftly.*
Celta, æ, *a Celt,* people of Gaul.
Centum, indecl., *a hundred.*
Cens-ēre (censu-, cens-), *to think, judge, believe.*
Centurio, (centurion) is, *centurion.*
Cern-ēre (crev-, cret-), *to separate, decide, judge.*
Cert-us, a, um, *certain;* certiorem facere, *to make more certain,* i. e., *to inform.*
Cerv-us, i, *stag.*
Ceteri, orum, *the rest.*
Christ-us, i, *Christ.*
Cicero, (Cicerōn) is, *Cicero.*
Cing-ĕre (cinx-, cinct-), *to gird, surround.*
Circa, prep. with acc., *about, around.*
Circiter, prep. with acc., *about, near;* circiter viginti, *about twenty.*
Circum, prep. with accus., *about, around.*
Circumst-āre (*or* circumsistĕre), circumstĕt-, 391, 1, *to surround, to stand about.*
Citō, adv., *quickly.*
Cit-us, a, um, *quick, swift.*
Civis, (civ) is, *c, citizen.*
Civitas, (civitāt) is, 293, *state.*
Clamor, (clamōr) is, 319, *noise, clamour.*
Clar-us, a, um, *illustrious.*
Classis, (class-) is, 300, *fleet.*
Claūd-ĕre (claus-, claus-), *to shut.*
Cliens, (client) is, m., *a dependant.*
Cœl-um, i, *firmament, heaven.*
Coem-ĕre (coēm-, coempt-), *to buy up* (con-+emere).
Cœn-āre (av-, at-), *to sup.*
Cœpi, used only in perf. tenses, *I begin,* 611.
Cog-ĕre (coēg-, coact-), *to bring together, collect, compel.*
Cogit-āre (av-, at-), *to think.*
Cognosc-ĕre (cognov-, cognit-), *to learn, find out, know.*
Cohors, (cohort) is, 293, *cohort,* the tenth part of a legion.
Cohort-āri (at-), dep., *to encourage.*
Col-ĕre (colu-, cult-), *to cultivate, serve, honour.*
Collig-ĕre (collēg-, collect-, con-+legere), *to collect.*
Collis, (coll) is, m., 302, R., *hill.*
Colloc-āre (av-, at-), *to place.*
Colloqui-um, i, *conference.*
Color, (colōr) is, 319, *colour.*
Columb-a, æ, *dove.*
Combur-ĕre (combuss-, combust-), *to burn up.*

Comes, (comit) is, *c, companion.*
Commĭc-āre (av-, at-), *to go to, to go and return.*
Commemor-āre (av-, at-), *to mention, to call to mind.*
Committ-ĕre (commis-, commiss-), *to intrust to,* with dative; prœlium committere, *to join battle.*
Commov-ēre (commōv-, commōt-), *to move greatly, to excite.*
Commun-īre (īv-, īt-), *to fortify.*
Communis, is, e, 104, *common.*
Commut-āre (av-, at-), *to change.*
Commutatio, (commutatiōn) is, *change.*
Compar-āre (av-, at-), *to get together, procure.*
Compell-ĕre (compul-, compuls-, con+pellere), *to compel, drive on.*
Comper-īre (comper-, compert-, 427, V.), *to find out, discover.*
Complect-i (complex-), dep., *to embrace.*
Compl-ēre (complēv-, complēt-, 395, II.), *to fill up.*
Complures, ium, 327, *very many.*
Con-āri (at-), *to attempt, try.*
Conat-um, i, *attempt.*
Conced-ĕre (concess-, concess-), *to yield to, to grant, give way.*
Concess-us, ūs, *grant.*
Concili-āre (av-, at-), *to gain* (for another).
Concili-um, i, *assembly, council.*
Concit-āre (av-, at-), *to stir up, to excite.*
Concupisc-ere (concupiv-), *to desire.*
Concurr-ĕre (concurr-, concurs-), *to run together.*
Condemn-āre (av-, at-), *to condemn,* 348.
Conditio, (conditiōn) is, 333, R., *condition.*
Conditor, (conditōr) is, *builder, founder.*
Conduc-ĕre (condux-, conduct-), *to [lead or bring together.*
Conferre (contul-, collat-), *to bring together, contribute.*
Confic-ĕre (confec-, confect-), *to finish.*
Confid-ĕre (confisus sum), *to trust to, to confide in.*
Confirm-āre (av-, at-), *to confirm, establish, affirm, fix.*
Conflu-ĕre (conflux-, conflux-), *to flow together.*
Congreg-āre (av-, at-), *to gather into flocks.*
Congress-us, ūs, *meeting.*
Conjic-ere (conjec-, conject-, con+jacere, 416), *to hurl.*
Conjung-ere (conjunx-, conjunct-), *to join together, unite.*
Conjur-āre (av-, at-), *to conspire, plot.*
Conjuratio, (conjuratiōn) is, 333, It., *conspiracy.*
Conjux, (conjug) is, *c, husband* or *wife.*
Conscend-ĕre (conscend-, conscens-, con+scandere, 309), *to climb up.*
Conscisc-ĕre (conscīv-, conscīt-), *to decree, determine;* mortem sibi consciscere, *to commit suicide,* 555.
Consci-us, a, um, *conscious, privy to.*
Conscrib-ĕre (conscrips-, conscript-), *to enrol, levy.*
Consent-īre (consens-, consens-), *to agree.*
Consid-ĕre (consed-, consess-), *to sit down, to encamp.*
Consili-um, i, *plan, judgment, counsel, deliberation.*
Consist-ĕre (constit-, constit-), *to stand, halt.*
Conspect-us, ūs, *sight, beholding.*
Conspic-ĕre (conspex-, conspect-), *to see, get sight of.*
Const-āre (stĭt-, stit- *or* stat-), *to stand together, to halt.*
Constitu-ĕre (constitu-, constitūt-

con-+statuere), *to place, fix, appoint.*
Consuesc-ĕre (consuev-, consuet-), *to be accustomed.*
Consuetudo, (consuetudin) is, 339, *custom, usage.*
Consul, (consŭl) is, *consul*, chief magistrate of Rome.
Consul-ĕre (consulu-, consult-), *to consult.*
Consult-um, i, *decree.*
Consum-ĕre (consumps-, consumpt-, con-+sumere), *to consume.*
Contemn-ĕre (contemps-, contempt-), *to despise.*
Contempl-ări (at-), dep., *to contemplate.*
Contend-ĕre (contend-, content-), *to contend, strive after, hasten.*
Content-us, a, um, *content*, with abl.
Contin-ēre (continu-, content-, con-+tenere), *to contain, restrain, hold together.*
Continens, (continent) is, 107, *successive, continued.*
Continenter, 215, 2, *b*, *continually.*
Contingit, impers., 580, *it happens.*
Continuatio, (continuatiōn) is, 333, R., *continuance.*
Contra, prep. with accus., *against*; adv., *in opposition to.*
Contrah-ĕre (contrax-, contract-, con-+trahere), *to draw together, collect.*
Convĕn-īre (convēn-, convent-, con-+venire), *to come together, meet, agree.*
Convent-us, ūs, *meeting, assembly.*
Convert-ĕre (convert-, convers-), *to turn completely round.*
Convoc-āre (av-, at-, con-+vocare), *to call together.*
Coor-īri (coort-), dep., *to rise*, as a storm.
Copi-a, æ, *abundance*; pl., copiæ, arum, *troops, forces.*
Cor, (cord) is, n., *heart.*
Corinth-us, i, f., *Corinth.*
Corniger, a, um, *horned.*
Corn-u, 111, *horn, wing of an army.*
Coron-a, æ, *crown.*
Corpus, (corpŏr) is, 344, *b*, *body.*
Corrig-ĕre (correx-, correct-, con-+regere), *to correct, make straight.*
Corv-us, i, *crow.*
Cras, adv., *to-morrow.*
Crass-us, i, *Crassus.*
Cre-āre (av-, at-), *to create.*
Creber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
Cred-ĕre (credid-, credit-), *to believe, intrust*, with dat.
Crep-āre (crepu-, crepit-, 387, II.), *to chide, creak* (as a door).
Cresc-ĕre (crēv-, crēt-), *to grow.*
Crimen, (crimin) is, 344, *a*, *crime.*
Crus, (crur) is, n., *leg.*
Cubicul-um, i, *bed-chamber.*
Cubile, (cubil) is, 314, *bed, place to lie down.*
Culmen, (culmin) is, 344, *a*, *top, summit.*
Culp-a, æ, *fault.*
Cultus, ūs (from colere), *cultivation, civilization, refinement.*
Cum, prep. with abl., *with*; cum, conj., *same as* quum, *when.*
Cunct-āri (at-), dep., *to delay.*
Cunct-us, a, um, *all, the whole.*
Cup-ĕre (io, 199, cupīv-, cupīt-), *to desire.*
Cupidē, adv., *with desire*, 215, 1 (ex pidus).
Cupiditas, (cupiditāt) is, 293, *desire.*
Cupid-us, a, um (with gen.), *desirous, eager.*
Cūr, adv., *why.*
Cur-a, æ, *care.*
Cur-āre (av-, at-), *to take care, to see that.*
Curi-a, æ, *senate-house.*
Curr-ĕre (cucurr-, curs-, 411, *a*), *to run.*

Curs-us, ūs, *course, running.*
Custos, (custod) is, 25, *a, guard, guardian.*
Cyrus, i, *Cyrus.*

D.

Danubi-us, i, *Danube* (river).
D-āre (ded-, dat-), *to give.*
Dari-us, i, *Darius,* Persian king.
De, prep. with abl., *of, from, concerning.* De tertia vigilia, *in* (*about,* or *after*) *the third watch.*
Deb-ēre (debu-, debit-), *to owe—ought.*
Deced-ĕre (decess-, decess-, de+cedere), *to go away, depart, retire.*
Decem, indecl., *ten.*
Decern-ĕre (decrēv-, decrēt-, 407), *decree, determine.*
Decert-āre (av-, at-), *to contend, fight.*
Decet, impers., 583, decuit, *it is becoming.*
Decim-us, a, um, *tenth.*
Ded-ĕre (dedĭd-, dedĭt-), *to surrender.*
Deditio, (deditiōn) is, 333, R., *surrender.*
Deduc-ĕre (dedux-, deduct-), *to lead away.*
De-esse (defu-, de+esse), *to be wanting* (with dat.), *to be away.*
Defend-ĕre (defend-, defens-), *to defend.*
Defess-us, a, um (part. of defetisci, obsol.), *wearied, worn out.*
Defic-ĕre (defēc-, defect-, de+facere), *to fail, to be wanting,* with dat.
Delect-āre (av-, at-), *to delight.*
Del-ēre (delēv-, delēt-), *to destroy.*
Deliber-āre (av-, at-), *to deliberate.*
Delig-ĕre (delēg-, delect-, de+legere), *to choose.*
Demetri-us, i, *Demetrius* (proper name).
Denum, adv., *finally, at last.*
Denique, adv., *at last, in short.*
Dens, (dent) is, m., 295, R. 1, *tooth.*
Dens-us, a, um, *thick, dense.*
Depon-ĕre (deposu-, deposit-, de+ponere), *to lay aside, put down.*
Deser-ĕre (deseru-, desert-), *to leave, desert.*
Desert-um, i, *a desert.*
Desil-īre (desilu-, desult-, de+salire, 428), *to leap down.*
Design-āre (av-, at-), *to point out, allude to.*
Desper-āre (av-, at-, de+sperare), *to despair.*
Desperatio, (desperatiōn) is, *despair.*
Deterr-ēre (deterru-, deterrit-), *to deter, frighten from.*
Deus, i, *God,* 62, R.
Dic-ĕre (dix-, dict-), *to say, tell.*
Dictio, (dictiōn) is, 333, R., *speaking, pleading.*
Dies, ei, *day.*
Differre (distul-, dilat-, dis+ferre), *to differ, to put off.*
Difficilis, is, e (dis+facilis), *difficult.*
Dignitas, (dignitāt) is, 293, *dignity, rank.*
Dign-us, a, um, *worthy,* with abl.
Diligens, (diligent) is, *careful, diligent.*
Diligenter, 215, 2, *b, carefully, diligently.*
Dilig-ĕre (dilex-, dilect-, di+legere), *to love* (with esteem).
Dimitt-ĕre (dimis-, dimiss-, di+mittere), *to send away, dismiss.*
Dirip-ĕre (diripu-, dirept-, di+rapere), *to plunder.*
Disced-ĕre (discess-, discess-, dis+cedere, 401, 3, *b*), *to go away, depart.*
Disc-ĕre (didic-, 411, *a*), *to learn.*
Discess-us, ūs, *departure.*
Disciplin-a, æ, *instruction, discipline.*
Discipul-us, i, *scholar, pupil.*

Disert-us, a, um, *fluent, eloquent.*
Displic-ēre (displicu-, displicit-, dis+placere), *to displease,* with dat.
Dispon-ĕre (disposu-, disposit-, dis+ponere), *to place in different directions, arrange, dispose.*
Disput-āre (av-, at-), *to dispute, discuss.*
Dissent-īre (dissens-, dissens-, dis+sentire, 427, III.), *to differ in opinion, dissent.*
Disser-ĕre (disseru-, dissert-, 407), *to treat of, discuss.*
dissolv-ĕre (dissolv-, dissolut-, dis+solvere), *to dissolve.*
Dist-āre, *to be distant,* or *apart* (di+stare).
Distribu-ere (distribu-, distribūt-), *to divide* or *distribute among,* 422.
Ditissimus, superl. of dives.
Diu, adv., *long;* compar., diutius, *longer.*
Divers-us, a, um, *different.*
Dives, (divit) is, 371, R. 1, *rich.*
Divico, (Divicōn) is, *Divico,* proper name.
Divid-ĕre (divis-, divis-), *to divide.*
Divin-us, a, um, *divine.*
Divitiac-us, i, *Divitiacus,* proper name.
Divitiæ, arum, 57, R., *riches, wealth.*
Doc-ēre (docu-, doct-), *to teach.*
Docilis, is, e, 104, *docile, teachable.*
Dol-ēre (dolu-, dolit-), *to grieve.*
Dolor, (dolōr) is, 319, *grief, pain.*
Dol-us, i, *fraud, deceit.*
Dom-āre (domu-, domit-, 387, II.), *to subdue.*
Domicili-um, i, *dwelling.*
Domin-us, i, *master,* of house or slaves.
Dom-us, i and us, 113, 3, *house, home;* domi, *at home;* domum, *to one's house.*
Dorm-īre (dormiv-, dormīt-), *to sleep.*
Draco, (dracōn) is, 331, *dragon.*
Druides, um, *Druids,* priests of ancient Britain.
Dubit-āre (av-, at-), *to doubt, hesitate.*
Dubitatio, (dubitatiōn) is, 333, R., *doubt.*
Dubi-us, a, um, *doubtful.*
Duc-ĕre (dux-, duct-), *to lead.*
Dulcis, is, e, 104, *sweet.*
Dum, conj., *while, so long as, until.*
Dumnorix, (Dumnorig) is, *Dumnorix,* proper name.
Duo, *two,* 194.
Duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
Duplic-āre (av-, at-), *to double.*
Dur-āre (-av-, at-), intrans., *to endure, last;* trans., *to harden.*
Dur-us, a, um, *hard.*
Dux, (duc) is, *leader, guide, commander.*

E.

E *or* ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from.*
Ecquis, interrog. pron., 178, 7, *any one?*
Ed-ĕre, *or* esse (ed-, es-, 601), *to eat.*
Educ-āre (av-, at-), *to train, educate.*
Educ-ĕre (edux-, educt-), *to lead out.*
Effect-us, ūs, *effect.*
Effemin-āre (av-, at-, ex+femina), *to effeminate, make womanish.*
Ego, *I,* 120.
Egregi-us, a, um, *excellent, remarkable.*
Elegans, (elegant) is, 107, *elegant.*
Eloquens, (eloquent) is, 107, *eloquent.*
Em-ĕre (ēm-, empt-), *to buy.*
Emic-āre (emicu-), 367, II., *to shine* or *flash forth.*
Enim, conj., *for,* 442, *e.*
Enunti-āre (av-, at-), *to divulge.*
Eo, adv., *there, to that place, on that account, by so much.*
Eodem, adv., *to the same place.*

Epistol-a, æ, *letter.*
Eques, (equit) is, *horse soldier.*
Equester, tris, tre, 428, *a, belonging to cavalry.* Equestri prælio, *in a battle of cavalry.*
Equit-āre (av-, at-), *to ride on horseback.*
Equitat-us, ūs, *cavalry.*
Equ-us, i, *horse.*
Erip-ĕre (eripu-, erept, e+rapere), *to take away from, snatch away.*
Err-āre (av-, at-,) *to err, wander.*
Erump-ĕre (erūp-, erupt-), *to burst forth, sally out.*
Esse, *to be,* 650; esse, *to eat,* see edere.
Et, conj., *and.* Et—et, both—and.
Etenim, conj., *for.*
Etiam, conj., *also, even.*
Etsi. conj., *although.*
Europ-a, æ, *Europe.*
Evoc-āre (av-, at-, e+vocare), *to call out.*
Ex, prep. with abl. See E.
Exced-ĕre (excess-, excess-, ex+cedere), *to go away, depart out of.*
Exclam-āre (av-, at-), *to cry out.*
Excip-ĕre (excēp-, except-, ex+capere), *to receive.*
Excit-āre (av-, at-), *to raise, kindle, excite.*
Excusatio, (excusation) is, 333, R., *excuse.*
Exe-dere (exēd-, exes-, ex+edere), *to eat up, consume, corrode.*
Exempl-um, i, *example.*
Exerc-ēre (exercu-, exercit-), *to exercise, practice.*
Exercit-us, ūs, *army.*
Exigu-us, a, um, *small.*
Ex-īre (exīv- and exi-, exĭt-), *to go out, depart.*
Existim-āre (av-, at-), *to think, judge.*
Existimatio, (existimatiōn) is, 333, R., *opinion.*
Expect-āre (av-, at-), *to wait for.*
Expedit, impers., 583, *it is expedient.*
Expeditio, (expeditiōn) is, 333, R., *military expedition.*
Expell-ere (expul-, expuls-, ex+pellere), *to expel, drive out.*
Expers, (expert) is, 107, *devoid of,* with gen. or abl., 336.
Expet-ĕre (expetiv-, expetīt-), *to covet, desire earnestly.*
Explorator, (explorātor) is, 319, *scout.*
Expon-ĕre (expoṣu-, exposit-, ex+ponere), *to place out, set forth, explain.*
Expugn-āre (av-, at-, ex+pugnare), *to take by storm.*
Extra, prep. with accus., *outside of, without.*
Extrem-us, a, um, superl. of exterus, 370, *the last, outermost.*
Exur-ĕre (exuss-, exust-, ex+urere), *to burn up.*

F.

Faber, bri, *artificer, workman.*
Fabul-a, æ, *fable, story.*
Fac-ere (io, fēc-, fact-), *to make, do.*
Facilĕ, adv., *easily.*
Facilis, is, e, 104, *easy.*
Facultas, (facultāt) is, 293, *power of doing;* hence *means, resources.*
Facund-us, a, um, *eloquent.*
Fall-ere (fefell-, fals-), *to deceive.*
Fam-a, æ, *rumour, fame.*
Fames, (fam) is, 300, *hunger.*
Famili-a, æ, *family, gang of slaves.*
Familiaris, e, *belonging to the* familia. Res familiaris, *property.*
Fat-ēri (fass-), dep., *to confess.*
Fat-um, i, *fate.*
Fav-ēre (fāv-, faut-, 395, v.), *to favour.*
Felix, (felīc) is, 104, *happy.*
Femin-a, æ, *woman.*
Fer-a, æ, *wild beast.*
Fere, adv., *almost.*
Ferre (tul-, lat-, 596), *to bear.*

Ferocul-us, a, um, *surly.*
Ferox, (ferōc) is, 107, *fierce.*
Ferr-um, i, *iron.*
Festin-are (av-, at-), *to hasten.*
Fid-es, ei, *faith.*
Fieri (fact-), 600, used as pass. of facere; *to be made, to become.*
Figur-a, æ, *figure.*
Fili-a, æ, *daughter,* dat. and abl. pl. filiabus.
Fili-us, i, *son,* 62, R., 2.
Fin-is, (fin) is, m., *end, boundary;* fines, *boundaries, territories.*
Finitim-us, a, um, *neighbouring.*
Firm-us, a, um, *strong, firm.*
Fit, *it happens,* pres. indic. of fio, fieri.
Flagiti-um, i, *disgraceful crime, infamy.*
Flamm-a, æ, *flame.*
Fl-ēre (flēv-, flēt-, 395. II.), *to weep.*
Flet-us, ūs, *weeping.*
Flos, (flōr) is, 331, *b, flower.*
Fluct-us, ūs, *wave.*
Flumen, (flumin) is, 344, *a, river.*
Fluvi-us, i, *river.*
Fœdus, (fœdĕr) is, 344, *b, treaty, league.*
Foli-um, i, *leaf.*
Fons, (font) is, m., 293, R., *fountain.*
Foris, (for) is, 300, *door;* used mostly in plur., fores.
Form-a, æ, *form.*
Formid-āre (av-, at-), *to fear, be afraid of.*
Formos-us, a, um, *handsome.*
Forsitan, adv., *perhaps.*
Forte, adv., *by chance.*
Fort-is, is, e, 107, *brave.*
Fortiter, 215, 2, *b, bravely.*
Fortitudo, (fortitudin) is, 339, *fortitude, courage.*
Fortun-a, æ, *fortune.*
Fortunat-us, a, um, *fortunate.*
For-um, i, *forum.*
Foss-a, æ, *ditch.*
Fræn-um, i, *bridle,* 296; pl., frœni and frœna.
Frater, (fratr) is, *brother.*
Fraterna-us, a, um, *fraternal.*
Fraus, (fraud) is, 293, *fraud.*
Frigus, (frigŏr) is, 344, *b, cold.*
Fruct-us, ūs, *fruit.*
Frument-āri (frumentat-), dep., *to collect corn.*
Frument-um, i, *corn.*
Frustra, adv., *in vain.*
Fug-a, æ, *flight.*
Fug-āre (av-, at-), *to rout, put to flight.*
Fug-ax, (fugāc) is, 107, *fugitive, fleeting.*
Fug-ĕre (io, fūg-, fugit), *to flee.*
Fulgur, (fulgŭr) is, 325, *lightning.*
Fund-ere (fūd-, fūs-), *to pour out, to overthrow, discomfit.*
Funditor, (funditōr) is, 319, *slinger.*
Futur-us, a, um, *future.*

G.

Galb-a, æ, *Galba.*
Galli-a, æ, *Gaul.*
Gallin-a, æ, *hen.*
Gall-us, i, *a Gaul.*
Garumn-a, æ, *Garonne* (river).
Gaud-ēre (gavisus sum), *to rejoice.*
Gaudi-um, i, *joy.*
Gener, i, *son-in-law.*
Genev-a, æ, *Geneva.*
Gens, (gent) is, 293, *nation.*
Genus, (gener) is, 344, *b, race, class.*
Ger-ĕre (gess-, gest-), *to carry on;* gerere bellum, *to carry on war.*
German-us, i, *a German.*
Gladi-us, i, *sword.*
Glori-a, æ, *glory.*
Græc-us, a, um, *Greek.*
Grando, (grandin) is, 339, *hail.*
Grati-a, æ, *influence, favour, popularity.*
Gratul-āri (gratulat-), dep., *to congratulate.*

Grat-us, a, um, *agreeable.*
Gravis, is, e, *heavy, severe.*
Graviter, adv., *heavily, disagreeable;* graviter fert, *he is indignant at.*
Gregatim, adv., *in flocks.*
Gubern-āre (av-, at-), *to steer, direct, govern.*
Gubernator, (gubernatōr) is, 319, *pilot, governor.*

H.

Hab-ēre (habu-, habit-), *to have, hold, esteem.*
Hannibal, (Hannibāl) is, *Hannibal.*
Haud, adv., *not.*
Helveti-us, i, *a Helvetian.*
Herb-a, æ, *herb.*
Hercyni-us, a, um, *Hercynian;* Hercynia sylva, *the Hercynian forest.*
Heri, adv., *yesterday.*
Hibern-a, orum, *winter-quarters.*
Hiberni-a, æ, *Ireland.*
Hic, hæc, hoc, *this,* 156.
Hiem-āre (av-, at-), *to winter.*
Hiems, (hiem) is, 293, *winter.*
Hirundo, (hirundin) is, 339, *swallow.*
Hispani-a, æ, *Spain.*
Hispan-us, i, *a Spaniard.*
Histori-a, æ, *history.*
Hodie, adv., *to-day.*
Homer-us, i, *Homer.*
Homo, (homin) is, m., *man.*
Honest-e, adv., *honourably.*
Honest-us, a, um, *honourable.*
Honor, (honōr) is, 319, *honour.*
Hor-a, æ, *hour.*
Horati-us, i, *Horace.*
Hort-āri (hortāt-), *to exhort,* dep.
Hort-us, i, *garden.*
Hospes, (hospit) is, *c, guest, host.*
Hostis, (host) is, *c, enemy.*
Human-us, a, um, *human.*
Humanitas, (humanitāt) is, 293, *cultivation, refinement, humanity.*
Humilis, is, e, 107, *low.*

I.

Ibi, adv., *there.*
Idem, eadem, idem, *the same,* 150.
Idone-us, a, um, *fit, suitable.*
Idus, iduum (4th declen.), *the Ides.* 112, 2.
Ignavi-a, æ, *indolence, cowardice.*
Ignav-us, a, um, *indolent, cowardly.*
Ignis, (ign) is, m., 302, R., *fire.*
Ignomini-a, æ, *disgrace, ignominy.*
Ignor-āre (av-, at-), *to be ignorant.*
Ignoratio, (ignoratiōn) is, 333, R., *ignorance.*
Ille, illa, illud, *this, that,* 158.
Imago, (imagin) is, 339, *image.*
Imber, (imbr) is, 320, *shower of rain.*
Immemor, (immemor) is, 107, *unmindful,* with gen.
Immens-us, a, um, *immense.*
Immortalis, is, e, 104, *immortal.*
Impediment-um, i, *hinderance;* impedimenta, pl., *the baggage of an army.*
Imped-ire (iv-, it-), *to hinder, impede.*
Impend-ēre, *to hang over.*
Imper-āre (av-, at-), *to command,* with dat.
Imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319, *commander, general.*
Imperi-um, i, *command.*
Impetr-āre (av-, at-), *to accomplish, effect, obtain.*
Impet-us, ūs, *onset, attack;* impetum facere, *to make an attack.*
Impiē, adv., 215, 1, *impiously.*
Impi-us, a, um, *impious.*
Impl-ēre (implēv-, implēt-), *to fill up.*
Implor-āre (av-, at-), *to implore.*
Impon-ĕre (imposu-, imposit-, in + ponere, 407), *to place in* or *upon.*
Import-āre (av-, at-), *to bring in, import.*
Improb-us, a, um, *wicked, dishonest.*
In, prep. with acc., *into, against,* with abl., *in, among.*

Incend-ĕre (incend-, incens-), *to set fire to, to burn.*
Incert-us, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
Incip-ĕre (io, incēp-, incept-), *to begin.*
Incol a, æ, *inhabitant.*
Incol-ere (incolu-, incult-), *dwell in, inhabit.*
Incommod-um, i, *inconvenience.*
Incredibilis, is, e, 104, *incredible.*
Increp-āre (increpu-, increpit-, 390), *to chide.*
Incus-āre (av-, at-), *to blame.*
Inde, adv., *thence.*
Indici-um, i, *private information.*
Indign-us, a, um, *unworthy.*
Induc-ĕre (indux-, induct-), *to lead to, induce.*
Indulg-ēre (indulg-, indult-), with dat., *to indulge.*
Ineptiæ, arum, 57, R., *folly.*
Inerti-a, æ, *idleness.*
Infans, (infant) is, *c, infant;* (in+fari, *that cannot speak*).
Inferior, (inferiōr) is, comp. of inferus, 370, *inferior, lower.*
Inferre (intul-, illat-, in+ferre), *to bring upon;* bellum alicui inferre, *to wage war upon any one.*
Ingeni-um, i, *talent.*
Ingens, (ingent) is, 107, *great, enormous.*
Inimiciti-a, æ, *enmity.*
Inimic-us, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly,* with dat.
Initi-um, i, *beginning.*
Injuri-a, æ, *injury, outrage.*
Injust-us, a, um, *unjust.*
Innocens, (innocent) is, 107, *innocent.*
Innocenti-a, æ, *innocence.*
Innumerabilis, is, e, 104, *innumerable.*
Inops, (inop) is, 107, *poor.*
Inquam, *I say;* inquit, *says he,* 610.
Insciens, (inscient) is, 107, *not knowing.*
Insect-um, i, *insect.*
Insequ-ī (insecūt-), dep., *to pursue.*
Insidi-æ, arum, 57, R., *snares, ambush.*
Instig-āre (av-, at-), *to instigate.*
Institut-um, i, *purpose, plan.*
Instru-ĕre (instrux-, instruct-, in+struere), *to draw up in battle array.*
Insul-a, æ, *island.*
Intellig-ĕre (intellex-, intellect-), *to perceive, understand.*
Intent-us, a, um, *intent, bent upon.*
Inter, prep. with accus., *between, among.*
Interced-ĕre (intercess-, intercess-) *to intervene.*
Interdiu, adv., *by day.*
Interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
Inter-esse (interfu-), *to be among, to differ;* nihil interest, *it makes no difference.*
Interfector, (interfectōr) is, 319. *slayer.*
Interfic-ĕre (interfēc-, interfect-, inter+facere), *to slay, kill.*
Interim, adv., *in the mean while.*
Interitus, ūs, *perishing, destruction, death.*
Interregn-um, i, *interreign.*
Interrog-āre (av-, at-), *to ask, interrogate.*
Intu-ēri (intuit-), dep., *to look upon.*
Inven-īre (invēn-, invent-), *to find, discover.*
Invoc-āre (av-, at-), *to call upon, invoke.*
Ipse, a, um, 159, *self.*
Ir-a, æ, *anger.*
Iracundi-a, æ, *wrathfulness, wrath.*
Ire (īv-, ĭt-), 605, *to go.*
Irrump-ĕre (irrūp-, irrupt-, in+rumpere), *to break into.*
Is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it,* 153.

Iste, a, ud, *that*, 157.
Ita, adv., *so, thus.*
Itali-a, æ, *Italy.*
Iter, (itiner) is, n., *journey, way, march.*

J.

Jac-ĕre (jĕc-, jact-), *to cast, hurl.*
Jact-āre (av-, at-), *to discuss.*
Jacul-um, i, *dart.*
Jam, adv., *now, already.*
Jan-us, i, *Janus.*
Jub-ēre (juss-, juss-), *to order.*
Jucund-us, a, um, *pleasant.*
Judex, (judic) is, 306, *judge.*
Judic-āre (av-, at-), *to judge.*
Judici-um, i, *trial, judgment.*
Jugurth-a, æ, *Jugurtha.*
Jug-um, i, *yoke.*
Jument-um, i, *beast of burden.*
Jung-ĕre (junx-, junct-), *to join.*
Juno, (Junōn) is, f., *Juno* (goddess).
Jupiter, Jovis, 351, *Jupiter.*
Jur-a, æ, *Jura* (mountain east of Gaul).
Jur-āre (av-, at-), *to swear.*
Jus, (jūr) is, 344, *law, right.*
Juss-us, ūs, *command.*
Justiti-a, æ, *justice.*
Just-us, a, um, *just.*
Juv-āre (jūv-, jūt-), *to help.*
Juvenis, is, *a youth.*
Juventus, (juventūt) is, 293, *youth.*
Juxta, prep. with acc., *near.*

K.

Kalend-æ, arum, *Kalends.*

L.

Labienus, i, *Labienus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenant-generals.
Labor, (labōr) is, 319, *labour, toil.*
Labor-āre (av-, at-), *to labour.*
Lac, (lact) is, 346, 2, *milk.*
Lacess-ēre (īv-, it-, 406, III., *b*), *to provoke, harass.*
Lacrym-a, æ, *tear.*
Lac-us, ūs, *lake.*
Lapis, (lapid) is, 295, 3, *stone.*
Larg-īri (īt-), dep., *to give largess, to bribe*, 515.
Larg-iter, adv., 215, 2, *b*, *largely*; largiter potest, *he can largely*, i. e., *he is quite powerful.*
Lat-ē, adv., 215, 1, *widely* (lat-us, *wide*).
Latin-us, a, um, *Latin.*
Latitudo, (latitudin) is, 340, *breadth* (from latus, *broad*).
Latius, adv., *more widely* (compar of latē, 376).
Latro, (latron) is, 331, *a, robber.*
Lat-us, a, um, *broad, wide.*
Laud-āre (av-, at-), *to praise.*
Laus, (laud) is, 293, *praise.*
Legatio, (lægation) is, 333, R., *embassy.*
Legat-us, i, *lieutenant, ambassador.*
Lĕg-ĕre (lĕg-, lect-, 416, *a*), *to read.*
Legio, (legion) is, 333, R., *legion.*
Lemann-us, i, Lake *Leman*, or *Geneva.*
Leo, (leon) is, 333, *lion.*
Lepus, (lepŏr) is, m., 345, 4, *hare.*
Lev-āre (av-, at-), *to lighten, alleviate.*
Lex, (leg-) is, 293, *law.*
Libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*
Liber, libri, 64, *book.*
Liberalitas, (liberalitat) is, 293, *liberality.*
Liber-ē, 215, 1, *freely* (from liber, *free*).
Liber-i, orum, 65, R., *children.*
Liber-tas, (libertat) is, 293, *freedom, liberty.*
Libet, 583, libebat, libuit, or libitum est, impers., *it is agreeable, it pleases, it suits.*
Lic-ēri (licit), dep., *to bid money, to offer a price.*
Licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is allowed, it is lawful, one must*, 583.

Lili-um, i, *lily.*
Lingu-a, æ, *language.*
Litter-a, æ, *a letter* (as of the alphabet); litter-æ, arum (pl.), *a letter*, i. e., *an epistle.*
Littus, (littor) is, 344, *b*, *shore.*
Livi-us, i, *Livy*, a Roman historian.
Loc-us, i, pl., i and a, 309, *place.*
Long-ē, adv., 215, 1, *far, long:* (longus.)
Longitudo, (longitudin) is, 339, *length:* (longus.)
Long-us, a, um, *long.*
Loqu-i (locūt-), dep., *to speak.*
Lubet. *See* libet.
Luct-us, ūs, *grief.*
Lud-ĕre (lūs-, lūs-, 401, 3, *b*), *to play.*
Lud-us, i, *sport, game, play.*
Lun-a, æ, *moon.*
Lup-us, i, *wolf.*
Lux, (luc) is, 293, *light.*

M.

Macul-āre (av-, at-), *to stain.*
Magis, adv., *more.*
Magister, tri (64), *master, teacher.*
Magistrat-us, ūs, *a magistrate.*
Magnanimus, a, um (magn-us+animus), *high-spirited, magnanimous.*
Magnitudo, (magnitudin) is (340), *extent, greatness.*
Magnus, a, um, *great;* comp., major, *greater.*
Malĕ, adv. (215, 1, R.), *badly.*
Maleficium, i (800, 2), *evil deed, crime.*
Malle (592), *to be more willing, to prefer; perf.*, malui.
Mălum, i, *evil, misfortune.*
Man-ēre (mans-, mans-), 665, III., *to remain.*
Manus, ūs (f., 112, 2), *hand, band of soldiers.*
Mare, (mar) is (314), *sea.*
Massilia, æ, *Marseilles.*
Mater, (matr) is (f., 25, 2), *mother.*
Matrimonium, i, *matrimony.*
Matrona, æ, *the Marne*, a river of Gaul.
Matur-āre (av-, at-), *to hasten.*
Maxim-ē (adv., 376), *most, most greatly, in the highest degree.*
Maxim-us, a, um (sup. of magnus, 370), *greatest.*
Me (*acc. and abl. of* ego, *I*), *me;* mecum, *with me* (125, II., *b*).
Medicin-a, æ, *medicine.*
Mediterrane-us, a, um, *Mediterranean* (medi-us+terr-a).
Medi-us, a, um, *middle.*
Meli-us, adv. (376), *better.*
Memini (defect., 611), *I remember;* meminisse, *to remember.*
Memori-a, æ, *memory;* memoriā tenēre, *to hold in memory, to remember.*
Mens, (ment) is, f., *mind.*
Mercatŏr, (mercatōr) is (319), *merchant.*
Meridi-es, ei (m., 115), *mid-day, noon.*
Merit-um, i, *merit, desert.*
Metall-um, i, *metal.*
Met-ĕre (messu-, mess-, 666, II., *b*), *to reap.*
Met-iri (mens-), dep., *to measure.*
Metu-ĕre (metu-, 666, VI., *a*), *to fear.*
Me-us, a, um (122), *my, mine.*
Mic-āre (micu-, 664, II.), *to glitter, shine.*
Migr-āre (av-, at-), *to migrate.*
Miles, (milit) is, *soldier.*
Mille (sing. indecl., pl. millia, ium), *thousand.*
Minerv-a, æ, *Minerva.*
Minim-us, a, um, *least* (*superl. of* parvus, 370).
Minor (minus), 358, *less* (*compar. of* parvus, 370).
Minu-ĕre (minu-, minūt-), *to diminish.*

Mirabil-is, is, e, *wonderful.*
Mirific-us, a, um, *causing wonder, astonishing* (mir-us+facere).
Miser, a, um (77, *b*), *miserable, wretched.*
Miseret (impers., 579, *a*), *one pities;* me miseret, *I pity.*
Mitig-āre (av-, at-), *to mitigate.*
Mitt-ĕre (mis-, miss-, 401, 3, *b*), *to send.*
Mod-us, i, *measure, manner.*
Mœnia, ium (used only in pl.), *walls.*
Mœror, (mœrōr) is (319), *sadness.*
Mon-ēre (monu-, monit-), *to advise, warn, remind.*
Monstr-āre (av-, at-), *to show.*
Mord-ēre (momord-, mors-, 395, IV.), *to bite, champ.*
Mor-i, and mor-īri (mort-), dep., *to die.*
Mortal-is, is, e, *mortal.*
Mors, (mort) is, 293, *death.*
Mos, (mōr) is, 331, 1, *b, custom, manner.*
Mot-us, ūs, *motion, moving.*
Mov-ēre (mōv-, mōt-, 395, V.), *to move.*
Mŭlier, (mŭlier) is, (f.), *woman.*
Multitudo, (multitudin) is, 340, *multitude.*
Mult-us, a, um, *much, many.*
Mund-us, i, *world.*
Mun-īre (īv-, īt-), *to fortify.*
Munitio, (munition) is, 333, R., *fortification.*
Munus, (munĕr) is, 344, 3, *b, office, gift.*
Murus, i, *wall.*
Mut-are (āv-, āt-), *to change.*

N.

Nam, conj., *for.*
Nasc-i (nāt-), dep., *to be born, spring from.*
Nat-āre (āv-, āt-), *to swim.*
Naut-a, æ (m.), *sailor.*
Natio, (nation) is, 333, R., *nation.*
Natur-a, æ, *nature.*
Naval-e, (naval) is, 314, *a dock-yard.*
Navigatio, (navigation) is, 333, R., *navigation, voyage.*
Nav-is, (nav) is, 300, *ship.*
Nĕ, interrogative particle, 135, II., *a.*
Nē, adv., *not,* used imperatively, 534, *a;* conj., *that not,* 548, *b.*
Nec, conj., *nor.*
Neg-āre (āv-, āt-), *to deny, refuse.*
Neglig-ĕre (neglex-, neglect-, 666, V., *a*), *to neglect.*
Negligens, (negligent) is, 107, *negligent.*
Negoti-um, i, *matter, business.*
Nemo, (nemin) is, *c, no one.*
Neque, conj., *neither, nor,* 515.
Nequidem, adv., *not even,* 217; always separated by the words which have the emphasis; *e. g.,* ne Socrates quidem, *not even Socrates.*
Nervi-us, i, *a Nervian* (people of Gaul).
Nerv-us, i, *a sinew.*
Nesc-īre (īv-, īt-), *to be ignorant, not to know* (ne+scire).
Neuter, tra, trum, 194, 1, *neither of the two.*
Nidific-āre (āv-, āt-), *to build a nest* (nidus+facere).
Niger, nigra, nigrum, 77, *a, black.*
Nihil, n., indecl., *nothing.*
Nimi-us, a, um, *too much.*
Nit-i (nis- and nix-), dep., *to strive.*
Nisi, conj., *unless, if not.*
Nobilis, is, e, *noble, illustrious.*
Nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293, *nobility.*
Noc-ēre (nocŭ-, nocĭt-), *to hurt,* with dat.
Noctū, adv., *by night.*
Nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling,* 592.
Nomen, (nomin) is, 344, *a, name.*
Nōn, adv., *not.*

Nonne, interrogative particle (expects answer *yes*).
Nonnullus, a, um, *some*; nonnulli, *some* (*persons*).
Nonnunquam, adv., *sometimes*.
Non-us, a, um, *ninth*.
Nos, *we*, 120.
Nosc-ĕre (nōv-, nōt-), *to learn, know*.
Noster, tra, trum, 122, *our*.
Nŏv-i (gen. of novus), *news*, 174 (vocab.).
Nōv-i, defective, *I know*, 611; novisse, *to know*.
Novissimus, a, um (superl. of novus), *newest, latest*; novissimum agmen, *the rear-rank*.
Novitas, (novitāt) is, 293, *novelty* (novus).
Nov-us, a, um, *new*.
Nox, (nŏct) is, 293, *night*.
Nub-es, (nub) is, 300, *cloud*.
Nud-us, a, um, *naked*.
Nullus, a, um, gen. nullīus, dat. nulli, 194, 1, *no one, none*.
Num (interrog. particle), *whether* (expects the answer *no*, 174).
Numa, æ (m.), *Numa*.
Numer-us, i, *number*.
Nunti-āre (āv-, āt-), *to announce*.
Nunti-us, i, *a messenger*.
Nunquam, adv., *never*.
Nuptiæ, ārum, 57, R., *a marriage*.
Nutrix, (nutric) is, 293, *nurse*.

O.

Ob (prep. with acc.), *on account of*.
Obæratus, a, um, *a debtor*.
Obscur-āre (āv-, āt-), *to obscure*.
Obsecr-āre (āv-, āt-), *to beseech*.
Obses, (obsid) is (*c*), *hostage*.
Obstring-ĕre (obstrinx-, obstrict-), *to bind*; ob+stringere.
Obtin-ēre (obtinu-, obtent-), *to hold, maintain*: ob+tenēre.
Occas-us, ūs, *setting, e. g.*, of the sun; occasū solis, *sunset*, 118, II., *c*.
Occidens, (occident) is, m. (sol understood), *west*.
Occīd-ĕre (occīd-, occās-, ob + cadere), *to fall, set, die*.
Occīd-ĕre (occid-, occīs-, ob + cædere), *to slay, kill*.
Occup-āre (āv-, āt-), *to seize, take possession of*.
Oceanus, i, *ocean*.
Octavus, a, um, *eighth*.
Octoginta (indecl.), *eighty*.
Octoni, æ, a, *eight each, eight at a time*, 197.
Ocul-us, i, *eye*.
Odi (defect., 611), *I hate*; odisse, *to hate*.
Odi-um, i, *hatred*.
Offend-ĕre (offend-, offens-, ob+fendere), *to offend*.
Olim, adv., *once upon a time, formerly*.
Omnino, adv., *altogether, in all*.
Omnis, is, e, *all, every, the whole*; omnis res, *the whole affair*.
Onus, (oner) is, 344, *b*, *burden, load*.
Oper-a, æ, *toil, labour*.
Oportet (impers., 583), oportebat, oportuit, *it behooves, one ought*.
Oppidan-us, a, um, *of or belonging to a town, a townsman*.
Oppid-um, i, *a town*.
Opprim-ĕre (oppress-, oppress-, ob +premere), *to repress, crush*.
Oppugn-āre (āv-, āt-), *to attack, besiege* (ob+pugnare).
Ops, opis, 293, *power*; opes, *resources, means*.
Optim-us, a, um, *best* (*superl. of* bonus).
Opulens, (opulent) is, 107, *rich, opulent*.
Opus, (oper) is, 344, *b*, *work*.
Oracul-um, i, *oracle*.
Or-āre (āv-, āt-), *to pray, beg, beseech*.
Oratio, (orātiōn) is, 333, R., *oration, speech*.

Orator, (oratōr) is, 319, *orator.*
Orb-is, (orb) is (m., 302, R.), *orb, circle;* orbis terrarum, *the world.*
Ordo, (ordin) is (m., 340, exc.), *order.*
Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is, *Orgetorix,* a Helvetian chieftain.
Origo, (origin) is, 339, *origin.*
Or-īri (ort-), dep., *to rise.*
Orn-āre (āv-, āt-), *to adorn.*
Ornatus, a, um, *adorned,* part. of ornare.
Ostend-ĕre (ostend-, ostens-, ob+tendere), *to show.*
Ostent-āre (āv-, āt-), *to vaunt.*

P.

Pabulatio, (pabulation) is, 333, R., *foddering, foraging.*
Pæne, adv., *almost.*
Pag-us, i, *village, canton.*
Palūs, (palūd) is, 293, *marsh.*
Par-āre (āv-, āt-), *to prepare.*
Parat-us, a, um, *prepared, ready* (part. pass. of parare).
Parc-ĕre (peperc-, pars- and parcīt-, 666, IV., *b*), *to spare,* with *dat.*
Par-ēre (paru-), with dat., *to obey.*
Pars, (part) is, 293, *part.*
Parsimoni-a, æ, *parsimony, frugality.*
Parv-us, a, um, *small, little.*
Pastor, (pastōr) is, 319, *shepherd.*
Pater, (patr) is, *father;* patres, um, *patricians* of Rome.
Pat-ēre (patū-), *to be open, extend.*
Pat-ī, (pass-), dep., *to suffer.*
Patienter, adv., 215, 2, *b, patiently.*
Patienti-a, æ, *patience, endurance.*
Paucitas, (paucitat) is, 293, *fewness.*
Pauci, æ, a, *few.*
Paullisper, adv., *for a little while.*
Paullo, adv., *a little;* paullo longius, *a little too far.*
Pauper, (pauper) is, 107, *poor.*
Paupertas, (paupertat) is, 293, *poverty.*
Pax, (pac) is, 293, *peace.*
Pecc-āre (āv-, āt-), *to sin.*
Peccat-um, i, *sin.*
Pecuni-a, æ, *money.*
Pedes, (pedit) is, 306, *foot-soldier.*
Pell-ĕre (pepŭl-, puls-, 411, *b*), *to drive, rout, expel, defeat.*
Pellis, (pell) is, 300, *hide, skin.*
Pend-ĕre (pepend-, pens-, 666, IV., *a*), *to weigh, pay.*
Pene, adv., *almost.*
Peninsul-a, æ, *peninsula* (pene+insula).
Per (*prep.* with accus.), *through, during.*
Perdives, (perdivit-) is, 107, *very rich.*
Perduc-ĕre (perdux-, perduct-, per+ducere), *to lead through, bring along.*
Perfacilis, is, e, *very easy.*
Perferre (pertŭl-, perlāt-, per+ferre), *to convey, bear through.*
Perfic-ĕre (perfec-, perfect-, per+facere), *to accomplish, finish, bring to pass.*
Perfring-ĕre (perfreg-, perfract-, per+frangere), *to break through.*
Perfug-a, æ, *deserter.*
Perg-ĕre (perrex-, perrect-), *to go on, go straight.*
Pericul-um, i, *danger.*
Per-īre (peri-, perīt-, per+īre), *to perish.*
Peritus, a, um, *skilful, skilled in* (with *gen.*).
Permōv-ēre (permōv-, permōt-), *to move thoroughly, to induce*
Pernici-es, ei, *destruction*
Perpauci, æ, a, *very few.*
Perpetu-us, a, um, *perpetual.*
Perrump-ĕre (perrūp-, perrupt-, per+rumpere), *to break through.*
Pers-a, æ, *a Persian.*
Persequ-ī (persecūt-, per+sequi), dep., *to follow after, pursue.*

Persever-āre (āv-, āt-), *to persevere.*
Persolv-ĕre (persolv-, persolūt-, per +solvere), *to pay up, pay in full;* pœnas persolvere, *to suffer full punishment.*
Perspic-ĕre (perspex-, perspect-), *to observe, get sight of, see plainly.*
Persuad-ēre (persuas-, persuas-), *to persuade, convince.*
Perterr-ĕre (perterru-, perterrĭt-), *to frighten thoroughly.*
Pertin-ēre (pertinu-, per+tenere), *to reach, belong to, extend to.*
Perturb-āre (āv-, āt-), *to disturb, confound.*
Pervĕn-īre (vēn-, vent-), *to arrive at, come to.*
Pes, (ped) is (m., 295, 3), *foot;* pedem referre, *to draw back the foot, to retreat.*
Pet-ĕre (petīv-, petīt-), *to seek, aim at, strive after.*
Petr-a, æ, *rock.*
Phalanx, (phalang) is, 293, *phalanx.*
Pharsalus, i, *Pharsalus,* a town in Thessaly.
Philosoph-āri (āt-), dep., *to philosophize.*
Piget (impers., 579, *a*), piguit, *it grieves, pains, disgusts; I am* [*grieved at.*
Pil-um, i, *javelin.*
Pisc-is, (pisc) is (m., 302, R.), *fish.*
Pius, a, um, *pious.*
Plac-ēre (placŭ-, placĭt-), *to please* (with dat.).
Placet (impers., 584, *a*), placuit, *it pleases;* Cæsari placuit, *Cæsar determined.*
Placid-us, a, um, *calm, placid.*
Plant-a, æ, *plant.*
Plan-us, a, um, *level, plain.*
Plato, (Platōn) is, *Plato.*
Plebs, (plēb) is, 293, *common people.*
Plen-us, a, um, *full.*
Plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *most, the greater part.*
Plerumque, adv., *for the most part.*
Plum-a, æ, *feather.*
Plurim-us, a, um (superl. of multus), *most, very many.*
Plurimum, adv., *very much, in the highest degree.*
Pocul-um, i, *cup.*
Pœn-a, æ, *punishment;* pœnas persolvere, *pay the full penalty.*
Pœnitet (impers., 579), pœnituit, *it repents;* me pœnitet, *I repent.*
Poet-a, æ (m.), *poet.*
Pompeius, i, *Pompey.*
Pon-ĕre (posŭ-, posĭt-), *to place;* castra ponere, *to pitch the camp.*
Pons, (pont) is (m., 295, 1), *bridge.*
Popul-āri (āt-), dep., *to plunder, lay waste.*
Popul-us, i, *people.*
Port-a, æ, *gate.*
Port-āre (āv-, āt-), *to carry.*
Port-ūs, ūs, *harbour.*
Portori-um, i, *tax, customs duty.*
Posc-ĕre (poposc-, 411, *a*), *to demand* (admits two accusatives).
Posse, potui, *to be able, can,* 587.
Possessio, (possessiōn) is, 333, R., *possession.*
Possid-ēre (possēd-, possess-), *to possess.*
Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*
Postea, adv., *afterward.*
Poster-us, a, um, *after;* postero die, *on the day after, on the next day.*
Postquam, adv., *after that.*
Postul-āre (āv-, āt-), *to demand.*
Potens, (potent) is, 107, *powerful.*
Potestas, (potestāt) is, 293, *power.*
Pot-īri (it-), dep., with gen. or abl., *to acquire, get possession of.*
Præ (prep. with abl.), *before.*
Præb-ēre (præbu-, præbĭt-), *to afford.*
Præced-ere (cess-, cess-), *to go before, excel.*
Præceps, (præcipit) is, 107, *headlong.*

Præceptor, (præceptōr) is, *a teacher, preceptor.*
Præcept-um, i, *precept.*
Præcip-ĕre (cĕp-, cept-, præ + capere), *to command, enjoin.*
Præclar-us, a, um, *illustrious.*
Præco, (præcōn) is, *herald.*
Præd-a, æ, *booty, prey.*
Præd-āri (at-), dep., *to plunder, get booty.*
Prædic-āre (āv-, at-), *to declare.*
Prædo, (prædōn) is, *pirate.*
Præesse, præfui, *to be over, command* (præ + esse), with dat.
Præferre (tŭl-, lāt-), *to prefer.*
Præfic-ĕre (fĭc-, fect-, præ + facere), *to place over.*
Præmitt-ĕre (mīs-, miss-), *to send before.*
Præmi-um, i, *reward.*
Prænunti-a, *or* prænuncia, æ, *harbinger.*
Præsertim, adv., *especially.*
Præsidi-um, i, *garrison, defence.*
Præstans, (præstant) is, 107, *excellent.*
Præst-āre (stĭt-, stīt-), *to stand before, excel.*
Præter, prep. with acc., *besides, except.*
Præter-īre (īv- and ĭ-, ĭt-, præter + ire, 605, 2), *to pass by.*
Prætor, (prætōr) is, *a prætor* (Roman magistrate).
Preti-um, i, *price, reward.*
Prex, (prec) is, 293, *prayer.*
Primus, a, um, *first.*
Princeps, (princip) is, 107, *chief* (used only as a noun).
Principat-ūs, ūs, *chieftainship, chief authority.*
Principi-um, i, *beginning, principle.*
Pristĭn-us, a, um, *ancient, former.*
Privatim, adv., *privately.*
Privat-us, a, um, *private.*
Priusquam, adv., *before that.*
Pro (prep. with abl.), *before, for, in view of.*
Prob-āre (āv-, at-), *to prove.*
Prob-itas, (probitāt) is, 293, *honesty.*
Prob-us, a, um, *honest.*
Proced-ĕre (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, *b*), *to advance, go forward.*
Procell-a, æ, *tempest.*
Procurr-ĕre (curr-, curs-, pro + currere), *to run forward.*
Prod-esse (pro + esse), *to profit,* with dat.
Prœlium, i, *battle, fight.*
Profectio, (profectiōn) is, 233, R., *setting out, departure.*
Proficisc-i (profect-), dep., *to set out, depart.*
Prohib-ēre (prohibu-, prohibit-, pro + habēre), *to restrain, keep off.*
Projic-ĕre (jēc-, ject-, pro + jacere), *to throw forward, throw.*
Prope (prep. with acc.), *near, nigh to;* propius, *nearer;* proxime, *nearest.*
Propell-ĕre (pul-, puls-, pro + pellere), *drive on, drive away.*
Proper-āre (āv-, at-), *hasten.*
Propinquus, a, um, *near to, related to;* propinquus (used as noun), *a relation.*
Propius. *See* prope.
Propon-ĕre (posu-, posit-, pro + pōnere), *to set before, propose.*
Propter (prep. with accus.), *on account of.*
Propterea, adv., *therefore;* propterea quod, *because, for the reason that.*
Propuls-āre (āv-, at-), *to ward off, avert, repel.*
Prorsus, adv., *straight on, truly, precisely.*
Prosequ-i (prosecūt-), dep., *to pursue.*
Proverbi-um, i, *proverb.*
Providenti-a, æ, *Providence* (pro + vidēre).

Provinci-a, æ, *province.*
Proxim-us, a, um (superl., 371), *next, nearest.*
Ptolemæus, i, *Ptolemy.*
Pudet (impers., 579, *a*), puduit, *it shames, one is ashamed.*
Puell-a, æ, *girl.*
Puer, i, *boy.*
Pugn-āre (āv-, āt-), *to fight.*
Pulvis, (pulver) is, 331, *b*, *dust.*
Pun-īre (īv-, īt-), *to punish.*
Put-āre (āv-, āt-), *to suppose, think, reckon.*
Pyrenæi (montes), *the Pyrenees*, mountains between Gaul and Spain.

Q.

Quadringenti, æ, a, *four hundred.*
Quær-ĕre (quæsīv-, quæsīt-), *to seek, ask, inquire into.*
Qualis, is, e, *of what kind*; talis—qualis, *such—as*, 184.
Quam, conj., *than.*
Quamdiu, adv., *how long.*
Quamvis, conj., *although.*
Quando, adv., *when.*
Quantus, a, um, *how great*, 184.
Quantuscunque, -acunque, -umcunque, *however great*, 184.
Quasi, adv., *as if.*
Quatern-i, æ, a, *four apiece, four at a time*, 189.
Quattuor, indecl., *four.*
Que, conj., *and*, 517, *a.*
Queo, *I am able*, 606.
Quer-i (quæst-), *to complain.*
Qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, what*, 164.
Quia, conj., *because.*
Quid, neut. of quis, used interrog., *what?* as adv., *why?*
Quicunque, *whosoever*, 164, R.
Quidam, quædam, quoddam, *or* quiddam, *a certain one*; plur., *some*, 178, 1.
Quidem, adv., *indeed.*
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, *any one, any you please*, 178, 2.
Quin, conj., *but that, that not*, 558, *b.*
Quindecim, indecl., *fifteen.*
Quingent-i, æ, a, *five hundred.*
Quinque, indecl., *five.*
Quint-us, a, um, *fifth.*
Quire, *to be able*, 606.
Quis, quæ, quid, interrog., *who, which, what?* 170.
Quisnam, quænam, quidnam? *pray who? what?* 171.
Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, quid piam, *somebody, some*, 178, 4.
Quisquam, quicquam, *or* quodquam, *any, any one*, 178, 3.
Quisque, quæque, quodque, quidque, *each, every one*, 178, 6.
Quisquis, *whoever, whatever*, 637, 3.
Quivis, *any one you please*, 178, 2.
Quŏ, adv., *whither, in which direction?*
Quŏ, conj., *to the end that, that, so that*, 558, *a.*
Quod, conj., *because.*
Quod, *rel. pron. neut. of* qui.
Quominus, *that the less, that not*, after verbs of *hindering*, &c., 558, *c.*
Quondam, adv., *formerly, at one time.*
Quoniam, conj., *since, because.*
Quoque, conj., *also.*
Quot, *so many, how many?* 184.
Quotannis, adv., *yearly.*
Quotidian-us, a, um, *daily.*
Quot-us, a, um, *what one?* quota hora, *what o'clock?*
Quum, conj., *when, since*, 561

R.

Rapin-a, æ, *rapine, plunder.*
Ratio, (ration) is, 333, R., *reason, manner, plan.*
Rauracus, i, *a Rauracian*, people of Gaul.

Rebellio, (rebelliōn) is, 333, R., *rebellion.*

Reced-ĕre (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, *b*), *to give way, retreat.*

Recip-ĕre (cēp-, cept-, re+capere, io, 416, *c*, 199), *to receive back, take back*; se recipere, *to take one's self back, to go back.*

Rect-ē, adv., 215, 1, *rightly.*

Redd-ĕre (reddid-, reddit-, re+dare), 666, IV., *c*), *give back, return, restore.*

Redintegr-āre (av-, at-), *to renew.*

Redim-ĕre (redēm-, redempt-, re+emere), *to buy back, redeem, farm* (as revenues).

Reditio, (reditiōn) is, 333, R., *return* (redire).

Reduc-ĕre (dux-, duct-, re+ducere), *to bring, bring back.*

Referre (retŭl-, relat-, re+ferre), *to bring back, to draw back*; pedem referre, *to retreat.*

Rĕfert, *it matters, it concerns, it interests*, 584, *d.*

Refic-ĕre (fēc-, fect-, re+facere), *to renew, rebuild.*

Reg-ĕre (rex-, rĕct-) *to rule.*

Regin-a, æ, *queen.*

Regn-āre (av-, at-), *to reign.*

Regn-um, i, *kingdom, royal power.*

Relinqu-ĕre (reliqu-, relict-), *to leave.*

Reliqui-æ, arum, 57, R., *remains, remnant.*

Reliqu-us, a, um, *remaining.*

Reminisc-ī (dep.), *to remember* (with *gen.*).

Remŏv-ēre (remōv-, remōt-), *to remove.*

Renunti-āre (av-, at-), *to bring back word, report.*

Repell-ĕre (repŭl-, repuls-, re+pellere), *to repel, drive back.*

Repente, adv., *suddenly.*

Repentin-us, a, um, *sudden*; repentīna res, *the sudden occurrence.*

Reper-īre (reper-, repert-, 427, V.), *to find out, to discover.*

Repet-ĕre (repetiv- and repeti-, repetit-), *to demand back, to ask again.*

Repugn-āre (av-, at-, re+pugnare), *to oppose, resist.*

Res, rei, *thing*; res novæ (pl.), *revolution*; res familiaris, *private property.*

Rescind-ĕre (rescīd-, rescisс-), *to cut down, to cut in pieces.*

Resist-ĕre (restĭt-, restĭt-), 390, intrans., *to halt, stop*; with dat., *to resist.*

Respond-ēre (respond-, respons-, 665, IV.), *to answer.*

Respublic-a, reipublicæ, 351, 3, *republic, state.*

Ret-e, (ret) is, 312, *net.*

Retin-ēre (retinu-, retent-, re+tenere), *to restrain, hold back, retain.*

Revert-ĕre (revert-, revers-, 422), *to turn back, return.*

Revert-ī (revers-), dep., *to return.*

Revoc-āre (av-, at-), *to call back, recall.*

Rex, (reg) is (m.), *king*

Rhen-us, i, *Rhine* (river)

Rhetoric-a, æ, *rhetoric.*

Rhodan-us, i, *Rhone* (river).

Rid-ēre (ris-, rīs-), *to laugh.*

Rip-a, æ, *bank of a river.*

Rīs-us, ūs, *laughter.*

Robur, (robor) is, 344, *a, strength.*

Rog-āre (av-, at-), *to ask.*

Roman-us, a, um, *Roman*; Romanus (used as noun), *a Roman.*

Romul-us, i, *Romulus.*

Ros-a, æ, *a rose.*

Rot-a, æ, *wheel.*

Ruber, bra, brum, 77, *a, red.*

Rumor, (rumōr) is, 319, *rumour, report.*

Rursus, adv., *backward, again.*

S.

Sacer, cra, crum, 77, *a, sacred.* Mons Sacer, *the Sacred Mount;* sacra, orum, *sacred rites.*
Sæpe, adv., *often.*
Sæviti-a, æ, *cruelty.*
Sagittari-us, i, *archer.*
Sagunt-um, i, *Saguntum,* a town in Spain.
Salt-āre (av-, at-), *to dance.*
Salus, (salūt) is, 293, *safety.*
Salv-us, a. um, *safe.*
San-āre (av-, at-), *to heal, cure.*
Sanct-us, a, um, *sacred.*
Sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.), *blood.*
Sapiens, (sapient) is, 107, *wise, a wise man.*
Sapienter, 215, 2, *b, wisely.*
Sapienti-a, æ, *wisdom.*
Satis, adv., *enough.*
Satius, comp. of satis; satius est, *it is better.*
Schol-a, æ, *school.*
Scienti-a, æ, *science, knowledge.*
Scind-ĕre (scĭd-, sciss-), *to cut, cut down.*
Scipio, (Scipiōn) is, *Scipio.*
Sc-īre (scīv-, scīt-), *to know.*
Scrib-ĕre (scrips-, script-), *to write.*
Scriptor, (scriptōr) is, 319, *writer.*
Se, acc. of sui, 142.
Seced-ĕre (secess-, secess-), *to secede.*
Secretō, adv., *secretly, privately.*
Secund-us, a, um, *second, following.*
Sed, *but.*
Sed-ēre (sĕd-, sess-, 394, V.), *to sit, sit down.*
Seditios-us, a, um, *seditious.*
Semel, adv., *once;* semel atque iterum, *once and again.*
Sementis, (sement) is, *a sowing* (of corn).
Semper, adv., *always.*
Sempitern-us, a, um, *eternal.*
Senat-us, ūs, *senate.*
Senex, (sen) is, 107, *old, old man.*
Senectus, (senectūt) is, 293, *old age*
Sen-i, æ, a, *six each, six at a time,* distrīb., 189.
Sententi-a, æ, *opinion.*
Sent-ire (sens-, sens-), *to feel, think, perceive.*
Separ-āre (av-, at-), *to separate.*
Septem, indecl., *seven.*
September, bris (m.), *September.*
Septentrion-es, um, *the north, the seven stars composing* Ursa Major.
Septim-us, a, um, *seventh.*
Septuaginta, indecl., *seventy.*
Sequan-a, æ, *Seine* (river).
Sequan-us, i, *Sequanian* (people of Gaul).
Sequ-i (secūt-), dep., *to follow.*
Ser-ĕre (sēv-, sāt-), *to sow, plant.*
Sermo, (sermōn) is, 331, *speech.*
Serv-āre (av-, at-), *to keep, preserve.*
Serv-us, i, *slave.*
Severitas, (severitāt) is. 293, *severity.*
Sex, indecl., *six.*
Sext-us, a, um, *sixth.*
Si, conj., *if.*
Sic, adv., *so, thus.*
Sicut, conj., *so as, just as.*
Sidus, (sider) is, 344, *b, star, constellation.*
Sign-um, i, *standard, signal.*
Simil-is, is, e, 104, *like* (with gen. or dat.).
Simul, adv., *together, at the same time;* simulac, simulatque, *as soon as.*
Sin, conj., *but if.*
Sine, prep. with abl., *without.*
Sitis, (sit) is, 300, *thirst.*
Socer, i, 65, R., *father-in-law.*
Societas, (societāt) is, 293, *society, fellowship.*
Soci-us, i, *companion, ally.*
Socrates, (Socrat) is, *Socrates.*
Sōl, (Sōl) is. *the Sun.*

Sōlum, adv., *only*; non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also.*

Sōl-us, a, um, gen. solius, 194, R. 1, *alone.*

Somn-us, i, *sleep.*

Sordid-us, a, um, *sordid, mean.*

Soror, (sorōr) is, *sister.*

Sors, (sort) is, 293, *lot.*

Spati-um, i, *space, opportunity*; spatium arma capiendi. *time for taking up arms*, 492, *a.*

Speci-es, ei, *appearance.*

Spect-āre (av-, at-), *to look, look at.*

Spes, ei, *hope.*

Splendid-us, a, um, *brilliant, splendid.*

Splendor, (splendōr) is, 319, *splendour, glare.*

St-āre (stēt-, stāt-, 387, III.), *to stand.*

Statim, adv., *immediately.*

Statio, (statiōn) is, 333, R., *station, post.*

Statu-ĕre (statŭ-, statūt-), *to appoint, fix, decide.*

Stell-a, æ, *star.*

Stipendi-um, i. *tribute, tax.*

Stipendiari-us, a, um, *tributary.*

Stoicus, i, *a Stoic.*

String-ĕre (striux-, strict-), *to draw* (as a sword).

Studiosē, 215, 1, *zealously, studiously.*

Studi-um, i, *zeal, study, desire.*

Stultiti-a, æ, *folly.*

Stult-us, a, um, *foolish*; stultus, *a fool.*

Suad-ēre (suas-, suas-), *to advise, to persuade.*

Suav-is, is, e, 104, *sweet.*

Sub, prep. with acc., *up to, under*; with abl., *under.*

Subesse (sub+esse), *to be under, to be near.*

Subig-ĕre (subēg-, subact-, sub + agere), *to subdue.*

Sub-īre (īv-, it-), *to go under, to undergo*; ad pericula subeunda, *for undergoing perils.*

Subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

Subjic-ĕre (subjēc-, subject-, sub + jacere), *to throw under, to throw up.*

Sublatus, a, um, part. of tollere, *elated, puffed up, taken away.*

Subsist-ĕre (substīt-), *to stand still, to halt.*

Subsidi-um, i, *assistance, a reserve of troops.*

Suev-us, i, *a Suevian* (people of Germany).

Sufferre (sustŭl-, sublāt-, sub+ferre) *to bear, sustain.*

Sui, reflex. pron., 142, *himself, herself*, &c.

Sum, *I am.* (*See* esse.)

Sum-ĕre (sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, *b*), *to take.*

Summ-us, a, um (superl. of superus, 370), *highest, top of a thing*; in summo monte, *on the top of the mountain.*

Sumpt-us, ūs, *expense*; sumptū suō, *at his own expense.*

Super-āre (av-, at-), *to overcome.*

Superior, oris (compar. of superus, 370), *higher.*

Suppet-ĕre (suppetiv- and suppetī-, suppetīt-), *to be at hand, to be in store.*

Supplici-um, i, *punishment.*

Suscip-ĕre (suscēp-, suscept-, sub+ capere), *to undertake.*

Suspicio, (suspiciōn) is, 333, R., *suspicion.*

Sustin-ēre (sustinu-, sustent-, sub+ tenēre), *to sustain.*

Suus, a, um, *one's own*, 143.

T.

Tac-ēre (tacu-, tacit-), intrans., *to be silent*; trans., *to keep secret.*

Tædet, pertæsum est (impers., 576),

it wearies, it disgusts; me tædet, *I am disgusted.*
Talis, is, e, 184, *such.*
Tam, adv., *so.*
Tamen, conj., *nevertheless.*
Tang-ĕre (tetig-, tact-, 411), *to touch.*
Tanquam, adv., *as, like.*
Tantum, *so much* (neut. of tantus); tantum auri, *so much gold*, 186.
Tant-us, a, um, 184, *so great.*
Tard-ārе (av-, at-), *to delay.*
Taur-us, i, *bull.*
Tel-um, i, *weapon, dart.*
Temerĕ, adv., *rashly.*
Temeritas, (temeritāt) is, 293, *rashness.*
Temper-ārе (av-, at-), *to refrain from*; ab injuria temperare, *to refrain from outrage.*
Temperanti-a, æ, *temperance.*
Tempestas, (tempestāt) is, 293, *storm, tempest.*
Templ-um, i, *temple*; templum de marmore, *temple of marble, marble temple.*
Tempus, (tempŏr) is, 344, *b, time.*
Tenax, (tenāc) is, 107, *tenacious, firm.*
Tener, a, um, 77, *b, tender.*
Ten-ēre (tenu-, tent-), *to hold.*
Terg-um, i, *back.*
Terni, æ, a (distrib., 189), *three apiece, three at a time.*
Terr-a, æ, *earth*; terra marique, *by land and sea.*
Terr-ēre (terru-, territ-), *to terrify.*
Terti-us, a, um, *third.*
Tiberi-us, i, *Tiberius.*
Themistocles, (Themistocl) is, *Themistocles.*
Tigurinus pagus, *The canton of Zurich.*
Tim-ēre (timu-), *to fear.*
Timid-us, a, um, *timid.*
Timor, (timōr) is, 319, *fear.*
Tiro, (tirōn) is, 107, *inexperienced, raw.*
Toler-ārе (av-, at-), *to endure.*
Toll-ĕre (sustŭl-, sublāt-), *to lift up, take away.*
Tot, *so many*, 184.
Tot-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *whole, all.*
Trabs, (trab) is, *beam*, 293.
Trad-ĕre (tradid-, tradit-), *to surrender.*
Tragul-a, æ, *a dart* (used by the Gauls).
Trah-ĕre (trax-, tract-, 401, 2), *to draw.*
Trajic-ĕre (trajēc-, traject-), transit., *to throw* or *convey over*; intrans., *to cross over.*
Tranquill-iter, adv., *calmly, tranquilly* (215, 2, tranquillus, *tranquil*).
Transduc-ĕre (transdux-, transduct-) *to lead across.*
Trans-īre (iv-, it-), *to cross* or *pass over.*
Transn-ārе (āv-, āt-), *to swim across.*
Tredecim, indecl., *thirteen.*
Tres, tria, 194, *three.*
Tribun-us, i, *tribune.*
Triginta, *thirty.*
Triplex, (triplic) is, 107, *triple, threefold.*
Tripartītō, adv., *in three divisions.*
Tristiti-a, æ, *sadness.*
Tu, *thou*, 130.
Tullus Hostilius, *Tullus Hostilius.*
Tum, adv., *then.*
Turbo, (turbĭn) is (m., 340), *whirl wind.*
Turp-is, is, e, 104, *base.*
Turpiter, adv., 215, 2, *a, basely.*
Turris, (turr) is, 302, *tower.*
Tut-us, a, um, *safe.*
Tu-us, a, um, *thy, thine*, 134.

U.

Ubi, adv., *where, when.*
Ubinam? *where in the world?* 227, *d.*
Ull-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, 1, *any.*
Ulterior, ius (compar. of ultra, 371), *farther.*
Ultrō, adv., *of one's own accord.*
Ulysses, (Ulyss) is, *Ulysses.*
Umbr-a, æ, *shade, shadow.*
Unā, adv., *together.*
Unde, adv., *whence.*
Undecim, indecl., *eleven.*
Undique, adv., *from all sides.*
Univers-us, a, um, *universal, the whole.*
Unquam, adv., *ever.*
Un-us, a, um, gen. unīus, 194, *one.*
Unusquisque, 178, 6, *each one.*
Urbs, (urb) is, 293, *city.*
Usque, adv., *as far as*; usque ad, *even up to.*
Ut, *or* uti, conj., *that,* 546.
Uter, utra, utrum, 194, *which of the two.*
Ut-ī (ūs-), *dep.* (with abl., 316, R.), *to use, employ.*
Util-is, is, e, 104, *useful.*
Utinam, conj., *would that, O that,* 528.
Utrum, conj., *whether*; utrum—an, *whether—or.*
Uxor, (uxōr) is (f.), *wife.*

V.

Vac-āre (av-, at-), *to be empty, to remain unoccupied.*
Vag-āri (vagāt-), dep., *to wander.*
Val-ēre (valĭ-), *to avail*; plurimum valet, *is most powerful.*
Valid-us, a, um, *strong.*
Valdē, adv., *greatly, very much.*
Valetudo, (valetudin) is, 339, *health.*
Vall-um, i, *rampart.*
Vast-āre (av-, at-), *to lay waste.*
Vast-us, a, um, *vast.* [*ute.*
Vectigal, (vectigāl) is, 325, *tax, tribVeh-ēre (vex-, vect-), *to carry, drive.*
Vehementer, adv., *vehemently,* 215, 2, *b.*
Vel, conj., *or,* 519, 2.
Velle, volui, 592, *to wish, to be able.*
Velox, (velōc) is, 107, *swift.*
Venator, (venatōr) is, *hunter.*
Vener-āri (at-), dep., *to revere, to venerate.*
Venetus, a, um, *Venetian.*
Veni-a, æ, *pardon.*
Vĕn-īre (vēn-, vent-, 426, IV.), *to come.*
Vent-us, i, *wind.*
Ver, (ver) is, n., 325, *spring.*
Verber-āre (āv-, āt-), *to flog.*
Verb-um, i, *word.*
Ver-ērī (verīt-), dep., *to fear.*
Verg-ēre (vers-), *to incline, tend.*
Vero, conj., *but, truly, certainly,* 173.
Verres, (Verr) is, *Verres.*
Vert-ĕre (vert-, vers-, 421, *b*), *to turn.*
Ver-us, a, um, *true.*
Versus, prep. with acc., *towards.*
Vester, tra, trum, *your,* 134.
Veteran-us, a, um, *veteran.*
Vetus, (veter) is, 108, R. 2, *old.*
Vexill-um, i, *standard.*
Vi-a, æ, *way*; Via Sacra, *the Sacred Way,* a street in Rome.
Victori-a, æ, *victory.*
Vic-us, i, *village.*
Vid-ēre (vīd-, vīs-, 394, V.), *to see*; vidērī, pass., *to seem, appear.*
Vigilanti-a, æ, *vigilance.*
Vigil-āre (av-, at-), *to watch.*
Vigili-a, æ, *watch*; de tertia vigilia, *about* or *after the third watch.*
Viginti, indecl., *twenty.*
Vil-is, is, e, 104, *cheap, vile.*
Vinc-ĕre (vic-, vict-), *to conquer.*
Vincul-um, i, *bond.*
Vindex, (vindic) is, *avenger.*
Vin-um, i, *wine.*
Viol-āre (av-, at-), *to violate, lay waste.*
Vir, i, *man.*

Virgili-us, i, *Virgil.*
Virgo, (virgin) is, 339, *virgin.*
Viriliter, adv., *manly, courageously.*
Virtūs, (virtūt) is, 293, *valour, virtue.*
Vis, vim, vi, 301, 2, *strength, force;* pl., vires, ium.
Vīt-a, æ, *life.*
Vit-āre (av-, at-), *to shun, avoid.*
Viti-um, i, *vice.*
Viv-ĕre (vix-, vict-), *to live.*
Vix, adv., *scarcely.*
Voc-āre (av-, at-), *to call.*
Vol-āre (av-, at-), *to fly.*
Volo, *I wish.* (*See* velle.)
Voluntas, (voluntāt) is, 293, *will, wish.*
Voluptas, (voluptāt) is, 293, *pleasure.*
Volv-ĕre (volv-, volūt-), *to roll*
Vos, *you,* 130.
Vox, (voc) is, 293, *voice.*
Vulg-us, i, n., 62, R. 1, *the common people.*
Vulner-āre (av-, at-), *to wound.*
Vulnus, (vulner) is, 344, *a wound.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

Ability, facultas, (facultat) is, 293.
Able (to be), posse, quire (queo).
Abode, domicilium, i.
Abound, abundāre.
About, circiter (concerning); de, *abl.*
Abrogate, abrogāre.
Absent (to be), abesse.
Abstain from, abstinēre (abstinu-, abstent-).
Accuse, incusāre.
Accustomed (to be), consuescĕre (suev-, suet-).
Acquit, absolvĕre, 421, *a.*
Act, agere.
Act of kindness, beneficium, i.
Add, addĕre, 411, *c.*
Admire, mirāri, admirāri (dep.).
Admonish, monēre.
Adore, adorāre.
Adorn, ornāre.
Advice, consilium, i.
Advise, monēre, admonēre.
Æduan, Æduus, i.
Affair, res, 117.
Affection, affectio, 333, R.
Affirm, confirmāre.
Afford, præbēre, 527.
After, post (with accus.); de (with abl.).
After that, postquam.
Again, rursus; iterum, *adv.*
Against, contra; adversus (with accus.); *against Cicero*, in Ciceronem.
Age (time of life), ætas, (ætāt) is, 293.
Agree, consentire, 427, III.
Agreeable, gratus, a, um (with dat.); *it is agreeable*, libet, *or* lubet, 583.
Aid, auxilium, i; *to aid*, adjuvāre, 390.
Alarm, perturbāre.
All, omnis, e; cunctus, a, um; *in all*, adv., omnino.
Allowed (it is), licet, 583.
Ally, socius, i.
Almost, fere; pene, adv.
Alone, solus, 194, R. 1; unus.
Already, jam, adv.
Also, etiam, adv.
Altogether, omnino, adv.
Although, quamvis, conj.
Always, semper.
Ambassador, legatus, i.
Ambush, insidiæ, 57, R.
Amiable, amabilis, e, 104.
Among, inter (with acc.).
Ancients (the), veteres; pl. of vetus, *old.*
And, et, que, ac, atque; *and not*, neque.
Anger, ira, æ.
Animal, animal, 325.
Announce, nuntiāre.
Answer, respondēre.
Antony, Antonius, i.
Any, ullus, a, um, 194, R. 1; *any one, any you please*, &c. See 178.
Apart (to be), distāre.
Apiece, use the distrib. numerals, 189.
Apply, adhibēre (u-, it-).
Appoint, constituĕre, 421, *a.*
Approach, adventus, ūs; *to approach*, appropinquāre: accedĕre.
Archer, sagittarius, i.
Arise (as a storm), coorīri (coort-), dep.
Arm, armāre.

Arms, arma, orum.
Army, exercitus, ūs.
Arrange, disponĕre, 406, *b*.
Arrival, adventus, ūs.
Arrive at, pervenire, 427, IV.
Art, ars, (art) is, 293.
Artificer, faber, fabri, 77, *a*.
As, conj., ut; *as, of what kind*, qualis, 184; *as far as to*, usque; *as soon as*, simulatque.
Ashamed (one is), pudet, 579.
Ask, rogāre, postulāre.
Assemble, convenire, 427, IV.
Assist, adjuvāre, 390.
Assistance, auxilium, i.
Association, societas, (societāt) is,
Assure, confirmāre. [293.
At, ad, apud; *at home*, domi; *at length*, demum.
Athenian, Atheniensis, is.
Athens, Athenæ, arum.
Attack (noun), impetus, ūs; (verb), oppugnāre.
Austerity, severitas, (severitāt) is, 293.
Auxiliaries, auxilia, orum.
Avail, valēre.
Avaricious, avarus, i.
Avoid, vitāre.
Await, expectāre.

B.

Back, tergum, i.
Badly, malĕ, adv., 215, R.
Band (of men), manus, ūs.
Barbarian, barbarus, i.
Base, turpis, e, 104; *basely*, turpiter, 215, 2, *a*.
Battle, prœlium, i.
Be, esse; *be among*, interesse, 174; *be over*, præesse; *be wanting*, deesse, with dat.
Beam, trabs, (trab) is, 293.
Bear (verb), ferre, 596.
Beast, bestia, æ; *beast of burden*, jumentum, i.
Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum, 77, *a*.
Because, conj., quod, quia, propterea quod.
Becoming (it is), decet, 583.
Bed, cubile, (cubil) is, 312, *bed-chamber*, cubiculum, i.
Before, prep., ante (acc.); adv., antea; *before that*, antequam.
Beg, rogāre, orāre.
Begin, incipĕre, 416, *c*; *I begin*, cœpi, 611.
Beginning, initium, i.
Behold, spectāre.
Behooves (it), oportet, 583.
Belgian, Belga, æ.
Believe, credĕre, 411, *c*.
Belong, pertinēre, 394, I.
Benevolent, benevolus, a, um.
Benevolence, benevolentia, æ.
Beseech, obsecrāre.
Besiege, oppugnāre.
Best, optimus, a, um, 370.
Betake one's self, se recipere, 418, *a*.
Better, melior, 370.
Between, inter.
Bind, obstringere.
Bird, avis (avis), 300.
Bit, frænum, i; pl., i and a, 396.
Bite, mordēre, 395, IV.
Black, niger, gra, grum, 77, *a*.
Blame, incusāre, vituperāre.
Blood, sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.).
Blooming, florens, (florent) is, 107.
Boast, prædicāre.
Body, corpus, (corpor) is, 344.
Bond, vinculum, i.
Book, liber, bri.
Booty, præda, æ.
Born (to be), nasci (nat), dep.
Boundary, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Boy, puer, i.
Brave, fortis, e; *bravely*, fortiter 215, 2.
Bravery, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Break through, perfringĕre (page 275); perrumpĕre, 666, V., *a*.

Bridge, pons, (pont) is, 295, R. 1.
Bring, ducĕre, agĕre; *bring back*, reducĕre; *bring back word*, renuntiāre; *bring to pass*, perficĕre; *bring together*, cogĕre, 416, *b*.
Britain, Britannia, æ; *Briton*, Britannus, i.
Broad, latus, a, um.
Brother, frater, (fratr) is.
Build, ædificāre; *build a nest*, nidificāre.
Bull, taurus, i.
Burn, incendĕre; *burn up*, exurĕre, 545.
Burden, onus, (oner) is, 344.
Burst into, irrumpĕre, 666, V., *a*.
Business, negotium, i.
But, sed, autem.
Buy, emĕre; *buy up*, coemĕre.
By, prep. with abl., a *or* ab, 93, 2.
By night, noctu, adv.

C.

Cæsar, Cæsar, (Cæsar) is.
Call, vocāre; *to name*, appellāre; *to be called*, nominări, appellări.
Call together, convocāre.
Call-upon, invocāre.
Camp, castra, orum.
Can (to be able), posse, 587; *I cannot*, non possum, nequeo.
Captive, captivus, i.
Care (noun), cura, æ; (verb), curāre.
Carefully, diligenter, studiose.
Carry, portāre, vehĕre; *carry on*, gerĕre, 401, 4, *a*.
Carthage, Carthago, (Carthagin) is.
Cassius, Cassius, i.
Casticus, Casticus, i.
Catiline, Catilina, æ.
Cause, causa, æ.
Cautious, cautus, a, um.
Cavalry, equitatus, ūs; *belonging to cavalry*, equestris, e, 104.
Celebrate, celebrāre.
Celt, Celta, æ.
Censure, incusāre.
Centurion, centurio, (centuriōn) is.
Certain, certus, a, um; *a certain one*, quidam, 178.
Certainly, adv., certē: profecto, vero.
Chain, vinculum, i.
Change (noun), commutatio, (commutation) is; (verb), mutāre, commutāre.
Champ, mordĕre, 395, IV.
Chide, increpāre, 390.
Chief, princeps, (princip) is, 107.
Child, infans, (infant) is, 107; *children*, liberi, orum.
Choose, deligĕre, 666, V., *a*.
Christ, Christus, i.
Cicero, Cicero, (Cicerōn) is.
Citadel, arx, (arc) is, 293.
Citizen, civis, (civ) is, *c*, 25, *a*.
City, urbs, (urb) is, 293.
Cloud, nubes, (nub) is, 300; *cloud of dust*, vis pulveris.
Cohort, cohors, (cohort) is, 293.
Cold, frigidus, a, um; (noun), frigus, (frigor) is, 344.
Collect, colligere (leg-, lect-); cogere (coeg-, coact-); *collect corn*, frumentări, dep.; *collect into a flock*, congregāre.
Colour, color, (colōr) is, 319.
Come, venīre, 427, IV.; *come near*, appropinquāre; *come to*, pervenīre; *come together*, convenīre.
Coming, adventus, ūs.
Command, imperāre, with dat.
Commander, imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319.
Commit, committĕre; *commit suicide*, mortem sibi consciscĕre.
Common, communis, e, 104.
Common-people, plebs, (pleb) is, 293.
Companion, socius, i; comes, (comit) is.
Compel, cogĕre, 416, *b*.
Complain, queri (quest), dep.
Complete, conficĕre.

Concerning (prep. with abl.), de.
Concerns (it), interest, refert, 584, *d.*
Condemn, damnāre, condemnāre, 348.
Conference, colloquium, i.
Confess, fatēri, dep.
Confines, fines, *pl. of* finis.
Conflict, congressus, ūs.
Confirm, confirmāre.
Confound, perturbāre.
Congratulate, gratulāri, dep.
Conquer, vincĕre (vic-, vict-); superāre.
Conqueror, victor, (victōr) is, 319.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, (conjuratiōn) is, 333, R.
Consul, consul, (consŭl) is.
Consult, consulĕre (consuls-, consult-).
Contemplate, contemplāri, dep.
Contend, contendĕre.
Content, contentus, a, um (with abl.).
Continuous, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Continuance, continuatio, (continuatiōn) is.
Corn, frumentum, i.
Council, concilium, i.
Counsel, consilium, i.
Course, cursus, ūs.
Covetous, cupidus, a, um.
Cow, vacca, æ.
Cowardice, ignavia, æ.
Creak, crepāre, 390.
Create, creāre.
Crime, crimen, (crimin) is, 344, *a.*
Cross over, transīre, trajicĕre.
Crow, corvus, i.
Crown, corona, æ.
Cry out, exclamāre.
Cultivation, cultus, ūs; humanitas.
Cup, poculum, i.
Cure, sanāre.
Custom, mos, (mor) is, 331, *b.*
Cut down, rescindĕre (rescid-, resciss-).
Cut to pieces, cædĕre, 411, *b.*
Cyrus, Cyrus, i.

D.

Daily, adj., quotidianus, a, um; *adv.*, quotidie.
Dance, saltāre.
Danger, periculum, i.
Danube, Danubius, i.
Dare, audĕre (ausus sum).
Dart, telum, i; pilum, i.
Daughter, filia, æ.
Day, dies, ei, 116, R., *by day*; interdiu, adv.; *to-day*, hodie, adv
Dragon, draco, (dracōn) is.
Dead, mortuus, a, um.
Dear, carus, a, um.
Death, mors, (mort) is, 293.
Deceive, fallĕre (fefell-, fals-).
Decide on, statuĕre.
Decree (verb), decernĕre (decrēv-, decrēt-); (noun), decretum, i; *decree of the senate*, senatus consultum.
Deep, altus, a, um.
Defeat, pellĕre, 411, *b.*
Defend, defendĕre, 421, *c*
Defence, munitio, 333.
Defender, vindex, (vindic) is, 306.
Defiles, angustiæ, arum, 57, R.
Delay, cunctāri (dep.); *active*, tardāre (to retard).
Deliberate, deliberāre.
Delight, delectāre.
Delight (with), libenter, adv.
Demand, poscĕre, 411, *a*; postulāre, imperāre, 390; *demand back*, repetĕre.
Deny, negāre.
Depart, discedĕre, 401, 3, *b.*
Depart out of, excedĕre.
Departure, discessus, ūs.
Dependant, cliens, (client) is, *c.*
Descend, descendĕre.
Desert, deserĕre, 406, *a*; *a desert*, desertum, i.

Deserter, perfuga, æ.
Desire, cupiditas, (cupiditāt) is; (verb), cupĕre (io): studium, i.
Desirous, cupidus, a, um.
Despair (verb), desperāre; (noun), desperatio, 333, R.
Despise, spernĕre, 406, III., *a*: contemnĕre.
Destroy, delĕre, 394, II.
Destruction, interitus, ūs.
Determine, constituĕre, statuĕre.
Devoid, expers, 336.
Die, morīri, *or* morī (mortu-), dep.
Difference (it makes no), nihil interest, nihil refert.
Different, diversus, a, um; alius, 194, R. 1.
Difficult, difficilis, e, 104.
Dignity, dignitas, (dignitāt) is, 293.
Diligence, diligentia, æ.
Diligent, diligens, (diligent) is, 107; *diligently*, adv., diligenter.
Diminish, minuĕre, diminuĕre.
Direct (of a ship), gubernāre.
Disagree, dissentire, 427, III.
Discipline, disciplina, æ.
Discomfit, fugāre.
Discover, invenīre, 427, IV.
Discourse, disserĕre (disseru-, dissert-).
Discretion, consilium, i.
Dismiss, dimittĕre (mis-, miss-).
Displease, displicēre (displicu-, displicit-), with dat., 161, R.
Dispute, disputāre.
Dissolve, dissolvĕre, 421, *a*.
Distant (to be), distāre.
Distribute, distribuĕre, 406, *a*; *arrange*, disponĕre.
District, pagus, i.
Divide, dividĕre, 401, 3, *a*; *divide among*, distribuere, 423, *c*.
Divulge, enuntiāre.
Do, agĕre, facĕre.
Dock-yard, navale, (naval) is, 312.
Dog, canis, (can) is.
Door, foris, (for) is, 300.
Double, duplicāre.
Doubt, dubitāre.
Doubtful, incertus, a, um; dubius, a, um.
Dove, columba, æ.
Draw, trahĕre (trax-, tract-); ducĕre (dux-, duct-); *draw up*, instruĕre, 401, 2; *draw as a sword*, stringere, 401; *draw out*, educĕre.
Dread, formīdare.
Drive, agĕre; *drive back*, repellĕre; *drive on*, or *together*, compellĕre.
Druids, Druides, um, pl.
Duty, munus, (muner) is, 344.

E.

Each, quisque, 178; omnis, e; *each of the two*, uterque.
Eagle, aquila, æ.
Earth, terra, æ.
Easily, facile (adv.).
East, Oriens.
Easy, facilis, e; *very easy*, perfacilis.
Educate, educāre.
Egypt, Egyptus, i (f.).
Eighty, octoginta.
Eloquent, facundus, a, um; disertus, a, um; eloquens, 107.
Embark (upon), conscendĕre, 309.
Embrace, amplecti (amplex-), dep.
Emperor, imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319.
Employ, utī (us-), dep., with abl.: adhibēre.
End, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Endeavour, conāri (conāt-), dep.
Endure, durāre; *to bear*, tolerāre.
Enemy, hostis, (host) is, *c*.
Enjoin upon, præcipĕre.
Enmity, inimicitia, æ.
Enough, satis, adv.
Enrol, conscribĕre.
Entreat, rogāre.
Equanimity (with), æquo animo.
Erect, communīre.

Err, errāre.
Especially, adv., præsertim.
Establish, confirmāre.
Eternity, æternitas, (æternitāt) is, 293.
Even up to, usque ad.
Ever, unquam.
Everlasting, sempiternus, a, um.
Every, omnis, e, 104.
Evil, malum, i.
Evil-deed, maleficium, i.
Example, exemplum, i.
Excel, præstāre (præstit-), with dat.
Excellent, præclarus, a, um; præstans, 107.
Excite, excitāre.
Excuse, excusatio, 333, R.
Exercise, exercēre.
Exhort, hortāri, dep.
Expedient (it is), expedit, 583.
Expel, expellēre.
Expense, sumptus, ūs; *at his own expense*, sumptu suo.
Eye, oculus, i.

F.

Fable, fabula, æ.
Faith, fides, ei.
Fail, deficēre.
Fall, cadēre, 411, *b*.
Fame, fama, æ.
Family of slaves, familia, æ.
Far, longe, adv.
Farm (as revenues), redimēre.
Farmer, agricola.
Father, pater, (patr) is.
Father-in-law, socer, i.
Fault, culpa, æ; peccatum, i; *find fault with*, culpāre, incusāre.
Favour, venia, æ; (verb), favēre, 395, V.
Fear, timor, (timōr) is, 319; (verb), timēre, metuēre.
Feather, pluma, æ.
Fell (cut down), cædere, 413, ☞.
Few, pauci, æ, a; *very few*, perpauci.
Fidelity, fides, ei.
Field, ager, gri.
Fierce, ferox, (feroc) is, 107; atrox, 107.
Fifth, quintus, a, um.
Fight, pugnāre.
Figure, figura, æ.
Fill, implēre; *fill up*, complēre, 395, II.
Finally, denique, adv.
Find, invenire, 427, IV.; *find out*, reperire, 427, V.
Find fault with, incusāre.
Finish, conficēre.
Fire, ignis, (ign) is (m.).
Firmament, cœlum, i.
First, primus, a, um.
Fish, piscis, (pisc) is (m.).
Fit for, idoneus, a, um, with dat.
Five, quinque; *five at a time*, quini, 189.
Flag, vexillum, i.
Flame, flamma, æ.
Flee, fugĕre (io), 416, *c*.
Fleet, classis, (class) is, 300.
Flesh, caro, (carn) is (f.).
Flight, fuga, æ.
Flock, grex, (greg) is (m.); *in flocks*, gregatim, adv.
Flog, verberāre.
Flow, fluĕre; *flow together*, confluĕre, 401, 2, 422.
Flower, flos, (flōr) is, 331, *b*.
Fly, volāre.
Follow sequi (secūt-), dep.
Folly, stultitia, æ; ineptiæ, arum, 57, R.
Fool, stultus, i; *foolish*, stultus, a, um.
Foot, pes, (ped) is (m.).
Foot-soldier, pedes, (pedit) is.
For, conj., enim, etenim; *for my sake*, meā causā.
Force, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; *forces* (troops), copiæ, arum, 57, *a*.
Foreign, alienus, a, um.

Forest, sylva, æ.
Forever, in æternum.
Forget, oblivisci, with gen.
Form, forma, æ.
Fortification, munītio, (munītiōn) is.
Fortify, munire.
Fortunate, fortunatus, a, um.
Fortune, fortuna, æ.
Forum, forum, i.
Four, quattuor; *four apiece*, 189.
Founder, conditor, 319.
Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Frail, fragilis, e, 104.
Free from (to be), carēre, 348.
Friend, amicus, i.
Friendship, amicitia, æ.
Frighten, terrēre; *frighten completely*, perterrēre.
From, a, de; *from every side*, undique, adv.; *from my boyhood*, a puero.
Frugality, parsimonia, æ.
Fruit, fructus, ūs.
Full, plenus, a, um, 348, *b*.
Future, futūrus, a, um.

G.

Galba, Galba, æ.
Gain, potīri, 209; *gain for another*, conciliare.
Game, ludus, i.
Garden, hortus, i.
Garrison, præsidium, i.
Gate, porta, æ.
Gather, colligĕre, 416, *b*.
Gaul, Gallia, æ; *the Gauls*, Galli, orum.
General, imperator, 319.
German, Germanus, a, um.
Get sight of, conspicĕre (conspex-, conspect-).
Gift, donum, i.
Girl, puella, æ.
Give, dăre, 387, III.
Give largess, largiri (lĭt-), dep.
Glare, splendor, 319.
Glory, gloria, æ.
Go, ire, 605; *go straight*, pergĕre; *go away*, discedĕre, 401, 3, *b*; *go forward*, procedĕre; *go forth*, or *out*, exire.
Goad, concitāre.
God, Deus, i, 62, R. 3.
Gold, aurum, i.
Good, bonus, a, um; *good deed*, beneficium; *good-will*, voluntas, 293.
Govern, gubernāre.
Grant (verb), concedĕre, 401, 3, *b*, dăre: (noun), concessus, ūs.
Great, magnus, a, um; *comp.*, major; *superl.*, maximus.
Greatly, valde.
Greatness, magnitudo, 339.
Greek, Græcus, a, um.
Grief, mœror, 319; luctus, ūs, 113, N.
Grieve, dolēre, *it grieves one*, piget, 579.
Guardian, custos, (custod) is, *c*, 25, *a*.
Guest, hospes, (hospit) is, *c*, 25, *a*.
Guide, dux, (duc) is.

H.

Hail, grando, (grandin) is, 339
Halt,
Hand, manus, ūs (f.).
Hannibal, Hannibal, (Hannibal) is.
Happen, accidĕre; *it happens*, accidit, 580.
Happily, beatē.
Happy, beatus, a, um; felix, 107
Harass, lacessĕre, 406, III., *b*.
Harbinger, prænuntia, æ.
Harbour, portus, ūs.
Hard, durus, a, um.
Hasten, festināre, contendĕre.
Hate (to), odisse, 611.
Hatred, odium, i.
Have, habēre (habu-, habit-). *I have a book*, est mihi liber, 125.
He, is, hic, ille.
Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is 107.

Heal, sanāre.
Health, valetudo, 339.
Hear, audire.
Heart, cor, (cord) is (n.).
Heaven, cœlum, i.
Heavy, gravis, e, 104.
Help, auxilium, i.
Helvetian, Helvetius, a, um.
Herald, præco, (præcon) is.
Herb, herba, æ.
Hesitate, dubitāre.
High, altus, a, um; *higher*, superior, *comp. of* superus, 370.
Hill, collis, is (m.).
Hillock, tumulus, i.
Hinder, impedīre, prohibēre.
His, suus, a, um: ejus.
History, historia, æ.
Hold, tenēre, obtinēre: *hold back*, retinēre.
Home (at), domi, gen. of domus.
Honest, probus, a, um.
Honour, honor, 319; (verb), colēre (colu-, cult-).
Honourable, honestus, a, um.
Hope, spes, ei.
Horn, cornu, 112.
Horned, corniger, a, um, 77, *b*.
Horse, equus, i.
Horse-soldier, eques, (equit) is.
Hostage, obses, (obsid) is, *c*, 25, *a*.
Hour, hora, æ.
House, domus, i and us (f.), 112, 3.
Household, familia, æ.
How great, how many? quantus, 186, obs.; *however great*, quantuscunque, 184; *how long*, quamdiu, adv.
Humanity, humanitas, (humanitat) is, 293.
Hunger, fames, (fam) is, 300.
Hurl, conjicere, 416, *c* (conjēc-, conject-).
Hurt, nocēre.

I.

I, ego, 120.
Ides, Idus, iduum (f.).
If, si.
Ignorance, ignoratio, 339.
Ignorant, ignarus, a, um; *to be ignorant of*, ignorāre, nescīre.
Illustrious, clarus, a, um; præclarus, a, um.
Image, imago, 339.
Immediately, statim.
Immense, immensus, a, um.
Immortal, immortalis, e, 104.
Impious, impius, a, um.
Implore, implorāre.
In, prep., in, with abl.
Incessant, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Increase, augēre (aux-, auct-).
Incredible, incredibilis, e, 104.
Indeed, quidem.
Indolence, inertia, æ; ignavia, æ.
Indolent, ignavus, a, um.
Induce, inducēre, adducēre.
Indulge, indulgēre, dat.
Infant, infans, (infant) is, *c*.
Influence, auctoritas.
Inform any one, aliquem certiorem facere.
Inhabitant, incola, æ.
Injure, violāre.
Injury, injuria, æ; incommodum, i
Innocence, innocentia, æ.
Insect, insectum, i.
Instead of, pro (prep. with abl.).
Instigate, instigāre.
In the mean time, interea.
It interests, interest.
Intrust, committēre (with dat.).
Invoke, invocāre.
Ireland, Hibernia, æ.
Iron, ferrum, i.
Island, insula, æ.
Italy, Italia, æ.
Itself, 159.

J.

Javelin, telum, i; tragula, æ.
Join, jungĕre (junx-, junct-); *join together*, conjungĕre.
Journey, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Junior, junior, 370.
Jupiter, 351.
Just, justus, a, um; *just so many*, totidem.
Justice, justitia, æ.

K.

Keep, tenēre, servāre.
Kind, benignus, a, um, with dat.: suavis, e, 335.
Kindle, excitāre.
King, rex, (reg) is.
Kingdom, regnum, i.
Kill, occidĕre, interficĕre, 390.
Know, scīre, noscĕre, 525; cognoscĕre: *not to know*, nescīre.
Knowledge, scientia, æ.

L.

Labour (noun), labor, 319; (verb), laborāre.
Lamb, agnus, i.
Land, terra; *by land and sea*, terra marique.
Language, lingua, æ: sermo, 331.
Large, magnus, a, um.
Last (to), durāre.
Latin, Latīnus, a, um.
Laugh, ridēre; *laughter*, risus, ūs.
Law, jus, (jur) is (n.).
Lawful (it is), licet.
Lay aside, deponĕre. 406, *b*.
Lay waste, populāri (āt-), dep.
Lead, ducĕre (dux-, duct-); *lead back*, reducĕre; *lead out*, educĕre; *lead together*, conducĕre; *lead over* or *across*, transducĕre, 113, II.
Leader, dux, (duc) is.
Leaf, folium, i.
League, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.
Leap down, desilīre, 428.
Learn, discĕre, 411, *a*: cognoscĕre.
Leave, relinquĕre.
Legion, legio, (legion) is, 333, R.
Letter, epistola, æ; litteræ, arum, 58, N.
Level, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um.
Levy, conscribĕre.
Lieutenant, legatus, i.
Lightning, fulgur, (fulgur) is, 325.
Life, vita, æ.
Like, similis, e, 104 (with dat.).
Line of battle, acies, ei.
Lion, leo, (leon) is.
Literature, litteræ, arum, 57, R.
Little, parvus, a, um.
Live, vivĕre.
Living-being, animans, (animant) is.
Lofty, altus, a, um.
Long, longus, a, um; adv., longe; *a long time*, diu.
Look at, intuēri, dep.
Lose, amittĕre, perdĕre.
Lot, sors, (sort) is, 293.
Love (verb), amāre, diligĕre; (noun), amor, 319.
Low, humilis, e, 104.
Lycurgus, Lycurgus.

M.

Magnanimous, magnanimus, a, um.
Maid-servant, ancilla, æ.
Maintain, alĕre.
Make, facĕre, 199; *make war*, bellāre; *make war upon*, bellum inferre, with dat.; *make an attack*, impetum facere.
Maker, faber, bri.
Maltreat, violāre.
Man, homo, vir.
Many, multus, a, um.
Marble, marmor, 325.
Master (of school), magister, tri; (of slaves), herus, dominus.
Matters (it), interest, refert, 583.

Measure, metīri, 206.
Medicine, medicina, æ.
Mediterranean, Mediterraneus, a, um.
Meet, convenīre.
Memory, memoria, æ.
Merchant, mercator, 319.
Messenger, nuntius, i.
Metal, metallum, i.
Mid-day, meridies, ei.
Middle, medius, a, um.
Migrate, migrāre.
Mile, millia (passuum), 191, *b*.
Military command, imperium, i.
Milk, lac, (lact) is (n.).
Mind, mens, (ment) is (f.); animus, i.
Mine, meus, a, um.
Minerva, Minerva, æ.
Miserable, miser, a, um, 77, *b*.
Mitigate, mitigāre.
Moderation, modus, i.
Money, pecunia, æ.
Moon, luna, æ.
More, plus, pluris; adv., magis.
Mortal, mortalis, e, 104.
Most, plurimus, a, um; *most men*, plerique, 195.
Mountain, mons, (mont) is (m.).
Move, movēre.
Much, multus, a, um; *much money*, magna pecunia.
Multitude, multitudo, 339.
My, meus, a, um.

N.

Naked, nudus, a, um.
Name, nomen, (nomin) is, 344, *a*; *to name*, nominārе.
Narrow, angustus, a, um.
Nation, natio, 333, R.; gens, 293.
Nature, natura, æ.
Navigation, navigatio, 333, R.
Near, prope, juxta; *nearest to*, proximus, a, um.
Neglect, neglīgēre.
Neighbouring, finitimus, a, um: proximus, a, um.
Neither, conj. — *nor*, nec — neque; *neither* (of two), neuter, tra, trum, 194, R. 1.
Net, rete, (ret) is.
Never, nunquam (adv.).
Nevertheless, tamen, conj.
New, novus, a, um.
Next, posterus, a, um, 118; proximus, 371.
Night, nox, (noct) is, 293.
Nine, novem.
Ninth, nonus, a, um.
Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitāt) is 293.
Noble, nobilis, e, 104.
Nobody, nemo, (nemin) is, *c*.
Noise, clamor, 319.
No one, nullus, a, um, 194, R. 1
Not, nōn; *with imper.*, nē.
Nothing, nihil.
Notice, (see) conspicēre.
Nourish, alĕre.
Novelty, novitas, (novitāt) is, 293.
November, November, bris.
Nurse, nutrix, (nutric) is, 293

O.

Oath, jusjurandum, 351, 4.
Obey, parēre (with dat.).
Obscure, obscurāre.
Obtain booty, prædāri (dep.)
Obviously, prorsus.
Ocean, oceanus, i.
Of, de.
Of one's own accord, ultro.
Old, vetus, (veter) is, 107.
Old man, senex.
Old age, senectus, 293.
On the other side of, trans (acc.); *on account of*, ob, with acc.
One, unus, a, um, 194, 1.
Open, apertus, a, um; *to open*, aperīre.
Opinion, opinio, 333, R.; sententia, æ.

Opportunity of (with gerund in gen.), spatium, i.
Oracle, oraculum, i.
Oration, oratio, 333, R.
Orator, orator, 319.
Order, ordo, (ordin) is (m.); *to order*, jubēre.
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is.
Origin, origo, 339.
Other, alius, a, ud, 194, R. 1.
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought (one), oportet, 583
Our, noster, tra, trum.
Out of, e, *or* ex (abl.).
Overcome, superāre.
Ox, bos, 351, 2.

P.

Pain, dolor, 319.
Paltry, vilis, e, 104.
Pardon, venia, æ.
Parents, parentes, ium.
Part, pars, (part) is.
Pass, iter facĕre, 210.
Passage, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Patience, patientia, æ.
Patiently, patienter, adv.
Pay, pendĕre.
Peace, pax, (pac) is, 293.
Peninsula, peninsula, æ.
People, populus, i.
Perceive, animadvertĕre.
Perchance, forsitan, forte, adv.
Persian, Persa, æ.
Persuade, suadēre, persuadēre.
Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is.
Philosopher, philosophus, i.
Philosophize, philosophāri, dep.
Pilot, gubernator, 319.
Pious, pius, a, um.
Pirate, prædo, 335.
Pity, miserēre; *I pity*, me miserēt, 579.
Place, locus, i; pl., i and a: *to place*, ponĕre.
Place into, imponĕre
Placid, placidus, a, um.
Plain, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um: *a plain*, æquor, 327.
Plan, consilium, i.
Plant, planta, æ; *to plant*, serĕre.
Plato, Plato, 334.
Pleading, dictio, 333, R.
Pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
Please, placēre (with dat.); *it pleases*, placet, 583.
Pleasure, voluptas, (tat) is, 293.
Plough, arāre.
Plunder, diripĕre: prædāri, dep., 491.
Poet, poeta, æ (m.).
Pompey, Pompeius, i.
Poor, ĕgens, inops, pauper, 107.
Port, portus, ūs.
Post, statio, 333, R.
Possess one's self of, potīri (with gen. or abl.).
Power, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; potestas, (tat) is, 293.
Powerful, potens, (potent) is, 107.
Praise, laus, (laud) is, 293; *to praise*, laudāre.
Prayers, preces, um, pl. of prex.
Precept, præceptum, i.
Preceptor, præceptor, 319.
Precious, carus, a, um.
Prefer, anteponĕre.
Prepare, parāre.
Present (to be), adesse; interesse, 267.
Preserve, servāre; *preserve moderation*, modum habēre.
Preside over, præesse.
Prevail upon, permovēre.
Prevent, prohibēre, obstāre.
Principle, principium, i.
Prisoner, captivus, i.
Private information, indicium, i.
Proceed, pergĕre, 447.
Proclaimer, præco, 331, *a*.
Procure, comparāre.
Promise, fides, ei; *to promise*, spondēre, 395, IV.

Property, res familiaris: familia, æ.
Providence, Providentia, æ.
Province, provincia, æ.
Prudence, prudentia, æ.
Prudent, prudens, (prudent) is, 107.
Ptolemy, Ptolemæus, i.
Punish, punire.
Punishment, poena, æ: supplicium, i.
Pursue, persequi (dep.).
Put-to-flight, fugare: dare in fugam.
Pyrenees, Pyrenæi (montes).
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, æ.

Q.

Queen, regina, æ.
Quickly, cito, adv.

R.

Race, genus, (gener) is, 344; gens, (gent) is.
Rain, imber, bris.
Raise, tollere: excitare.
Rank, ordo, (ordin) is (m.).
Rapidly, celeriter, adv.
Rashly, temere.
Rashness, temeritas, (temeritat) is, 293.
Reach, pervenire.
Read, legere.
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, 333, R.
Rebellion, rebellio, 333, R.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere; *receive back*, recipere.
Reckon, ducere.
Recollection, memoria, æ.
Red, ruber, bra, brum, 77, *a*.
Refrain, temperare.
Refuse, recusare.
Reign, regnum, i; *to reign*, regnare.
Rejoice, gaudere.
Relate, narrare: commemorare.
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, 333, R.
Remain, manere.
Remains, reliquiæ, arum, 57, R.
Remove, removere.
Renew, renovare: redintegrare.
Repair, reficere.
Repel, propulsare (ward off).
Repent, pœnitere; *I repent*, me pœnitet, 579.
Repress, opprimere.
Reprove, increpare.
Republic, respublica, 351, 3.
Resist, resistere, with dat.
Restrain, retinere.
Retreat, recedere.
Return (restore), reddere; (go back), revertere, *or* reverti.
Revenue, vectigal, (vectigal) is.
Revere, venerare.
Revoke, revocare, abrogare.
Reward, præmium, i.
Rhine, Rhenus, i.
Rhetoric, rhetorica, æ.
Rich, dives, (divit) is, 107.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, 57, R.
Ride (on horseback), equitare.
Right, jus, (jur) is; *rightly*, jure (abl. of jus): recte, adv.
Rise, oriri, dep.
River, fluvius, i; flumen, (flumin) is.
Robber, latro, 331, *a*.
Rock, petra, æ.
Roll, volvere.
Roman, Romanus, a, um.
Rome, Roma, æ.
Rose, rosa, æ.
Rouse up, excitare.
Rout, fugare, pellere: fundere, 416, *a*.
Royal-power, regnum, i.
Rule, regere: imperare, with dat.
Run, currere.

S.

Sacred, sanctus, a, um: sacer, cra, crum; *sacred rites*, sacra, orum; *Sacred Way*, Via Sacra; *Sacred Mount*, Mons Sacer.

Sadness, tristitia, æ: mœror, 319.
Safe, salvus, a, um; tutus, a, um.
Safety, salus, (salut) is, 293.
Sailor, nauta, æ.
Sake—for the sake of, causâ, abl., 135, II., *b*.
Same, is, ea, id; *the very same*, idem, 150.
Sand, aridum, i.
Say, dicĕre; *I say*, aio, inquam.
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, spargĕre.
Scholar, discipulus, i.
School, schola, æ.
Scout, explorator, 319.
Sea, mare, 312; æquor, 325.
Secede, secedĕre.
Second, secundus, a, um.
Sedition, seditio, 333, R.
See, vidĕre; (notice), conspicĕre.
Seek, quærĕre.
Seize, occupāre; *seize up*, arripĕre.
Self, ipse.
Senate, senatus, ūs.
Senate-house, curia, æ.
Senator, senator, 319.
Send, mittĕre; *send away*, dimittĕre; *send for*, arcessĕre.
Senior, senior, (senior) is, 107 (comp. of senex), 370.
Separate, separāre: dividĕre.
Sepulchre, sepulchrum, i.
Sequanian, Sequanus, i.
Serve (worship), colĕre.
Set (as heavenly bodies), occidĕre.
Set out, proficiscī; *set forth*, exponĕre; *set up*, proponĕre.
Setting (of heavenly bodies), occasus, ūs.
Seven, septem; *seventh*, septimus, a, um.
Seventy, septuaginta.
Severe, gravis, e, 104.
Severity, severitas, (severitāt) is, 293.
Shadow, umbra, æ.
Sharp, acutus, a, um.
Sharply, acriter, adv.
Shine, micāre, 389, ☞; *shine forth*, emicāre.
Ship, navis, 300.
Shore, littus, (littor) is, 344.
Short, brevis, e, 104.
Show, monstrāre, ostendĕre; (noun), species, ei.
Shower, imber, bris.
Shun, vitāre.
Shut, claudĕre.
Sick, æger, gra, grum.
Sign, signum, i.
Sight, conspectus, ūs; *in sight of*, conspectū.
Silent (to be), tacĕre.
Silver, argentum, i.
Similar to, similis (dat.).
Sin, peccatum, i; *to sin*, peccāre.
Since, quum, quoniam.
Sing, cantāre.
Singing, cantus, ūs.
Sister, soror, (sorōr) is (f.).
Sit, sedĕre, 394, V.
Six, sex; *sixth*, sextus, a, um.
Slave, servus, i.
Slay, occidĕre, interficĕre.
Slayer, interfector, 319.
Sleep, somnus, i; *to sleep*, dormire.
Slinger, funditor, 319.
Small, parvus, a, um.
Snatch up, arripĕre.
So, ita, tam; *so great*, tantus; *so long*, tamdiu; *so many*, tot.
Socrates, Socrates, is.
Soldier, miles, (milit) is.
Some (persons), nonnulli.
Somebody, some, 178; *some one*, aliquis.
Sometimes, interdum, nonnunquam
Somewhat great, aliquantus, 184
Son, filius, i.
Son-in-law, gener, i.
Song, carmen, 344, *a*.
Soul, animus, i.

Spain, Hispania, æ.
Spaniard, Hispanus, i.
Spare, parcĕre (dat.).
Sparta, Sparta, æ.
Speak, dicĕre, loquī.
Speech, sermo, 331.
Spend, consumĕre.
Spiritedly, acriter.
Splendid, splendĭdus, a, um.
Spoil, præda, æ.
Spur, calcar, 325.
Stag, cervus, i.
Stain, maculāre.
Stand, stare; *stand in the way*, obstāre.
Standard, signum, i.
Star, sidus, (sider) is, 344; stella, æ.
State, civitas, (civitāt) is; respublica, 351, 3.
Station, statio, 333, R.; *to station*, constituĕre, collocāre.
Stimulate, inducĕre.
Stir up, instigāre.
Stoic, Stoicus, i.
Stone, lapis, (lapid) is (m.).
Stormy, turbidus, a, um.
Strange, novus, a, um.
Strength, vis, 301; robur, 344.
Strengthen, confirmāre.
Strive after, persequī, 206.
Strong, validus, a, um.
Strong desire, cupiditas, 293.
Study, studium, i.
Subdue, subigĕre.
Succour, subsidium, i.
Such, talis, e, 184.
Sudden, repentinus, a, um.
Suddenly, subito, adv.
Sufficiently, satis.
Sum of money, pecunia, æ.
Summer, æstas, (æstāt) is, 293.
Sun, sol, (sōl) is (m.).
Sup, cænāre.
Superior, superior, oris.
Support, alĕre.
Surrender, deditio, 333, R.
Surround, circumvenīre; circumstāre, 391; cingĕre, 401, 2.
Sure, certus, a, um.
Suspicion, suspicio, 333, R.
Sustain, sustinēre.
Swallow, hirundo, 339.
Sweet, dulcis, e, 104.
Swift, celer, velox, 107.
Swiftly, celeriter, 217.
Swim, natāre; *swim across*, transnāre.
Sword, gladius, i.
Syracuse, Syracusæ, arum.

T.

Take, sumĕre; *take away*, eripĕre; *take back*, recipĕre; *take captive*, capĕre; *take care of*, curāre; *take by storm*, expugnāre; *take possession of*, occupāre.
Talent, ingenium, i.
Tame, domāre.
Teach, docēre.
Teacher, magister, tri.
Tear, lacryma, æ.
Tell, dicĕre, nuntiāre.
Tempest, procella, æ: tempestas.
Temple, templum, i.
Tenacious, tenax, (tenāc) is, 107
Tender, tener, a, um.
Tent, pellis, 322.
Tenth, decimus, a, um.
Terrify, terrēre.
Territory, finis (m.).
Than, quam.
That (pron.), ille, is, iste.
That, conj., *in order that*, ut; *that not*, ne.
Themselves, sui, 142.
Then, tum, adv.
There, ibi.
Thick, densus, a, um.
Thine, tuus, a, um.
Thing, res, rei; *this thing*, hoc; *these things*, hæc.

Think, putāre, cogitāre, existimāre, sentīre, censēre.
Third, tertius, a, um.
Thirst, sitis, 300.
Thirteen, tredecim.
Thirty, triginta.
This, hic, hæc, hoc.
Thither, eo.
Three, tres, ia.
Through, per (prep. with acc.).
Throw, jacĕre; *throw before*, projicĕre.
Thunder (verb), tonāre.
Thus, ita.
Thy, tuus, a, um.
Tiber, Tiberis, is.
Time, tempus, (tempŏr) is, 344.
Timid, timidus, a, um.
To, ad (prep. with acc.).
To-day, hodie.
Together, una (adv.).
Toil, labor, 319: opera, æ.
To-morrow, cras (adv.).
Tongue, lingua, æ.
Too much, nimius, a, um.
Tooth, dens, (dent) is (m.).
Top of, summus, 297, *a*.
Touch, tangĕre; *touch upon*, attingĕre.
Tower, turris, 300: castellum, i.
Town, oppidum, i.
Townsman, oppidanus, i.
Treaty, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.
Tree, arbor, (arbor) is (f.).
Trial, judicium, i.
Tribune, tribunus, i.
Tributary, stipendiarius, a, um.
Tribute, stipendium, i.
True, verus, a, um.
Truce, indutiæ, arum, 57, R.
Trust to, credĕre (with dat.).
Turbid, turbidus, a, um.
Turn, vertĕre.
Twenty, viginti.
Two-a-piece, bini, 189.

U.

Ulysses, Ulysses, is.
Uncertain, incertus, a, um.
Under, sub, *prep.*, 323.
Understand, intelligere.
Undertake, suscipĕre.
Unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
Unjust, injustus, a, um.
Unless, nisi (conj.).
Unmindful of, immemor (with gen.).
Until, donec, dum (conj.).
Use, usus, ūs; *to use*, uti, dep. abl., 316, *b*.
Useful, utilis, e, 104.

V.

Vacant (to be), vacāre.
Vain—in vain, frustra (adv.).
Valour, virtus, (virtūt) is, 293.
Value, pretium, i; *to value*, æstimāre.
Vast, vastus, a, um.
Vaunt, ostentāre.
Vehemently, vehementer (adv.).
Venetian, Venetus, i.
Very, valde, admodum; *very easy*, perfacilis, e; *very few*, perpauci; *very near*, proximus.
Vice, vitium, i.
Victory, victoria, æ.
Vile, vilis, e, 104.
Village, vicus, i.
Violate, violāre.
Virgin, virgo, 339.
Virtue, virtus, (virtūt) is, 293.
Virtuous, probus, a, um.
Voice, vox, (vŏc) is, 293.
Vow, spondēre, 393, IV.

W.

Wage (e. g., *war*), gerĕre: bellum inferre.
Wagon, carrus, i.
Wait for, expectāre.

Walk, ambulāre.
Wall, murus, i; *walls*, mœnia, um.
Wander, vagāri, errāre.
Want, carēre, 348.
Wanting (to be), deesse, 267, *b*.
War, bellum, i.
Warlike, bellicosus, a, um.
Warn, monēre.
Wash, alluĕre.
Watch, *watching*, vigilia, æ; *to watch*, vigilāre.
Water, aqua, æ.
Wave, fluctus, ūs.
Way, via, æ; *to make* (their) *way*, iter facere.
Wearied, defessus, a, um.
Weary of, tædet, 579.
Weep, flēre.
Well (to be), valēre.
West, Occidens.
What (in number)? quotus? *what is the difference?* quid interest?
When, quum (conj.).
Whence, unde (adv.).
Whether, num, 174: utrum.
Where, ubi (adv.).
Which of the two, uter, 194, R. 1.
Whirlwind, turbo, (turbin) is (m.).
Who, qui, quæ, quod; *who?* quis, quæ, quid?
Whole, omnis, e; universus, a, um; totus, a, um; cunctus, 441.
Why? cūr?
Wicked, improbus, a, um.
Wide, latus, a, um; *widely*, latē; *more widely*, latius.
Wild beast, fera, æ.
Wind, ventus, i.
Willingly, libenter.
Wine, vinum, i.
Wing, ala, æ.
Winter, hyems, (hyem) is, 293; *to winter*, hiemāre; *winter-quarters*, hiberna, orum (pl.).
Wisdom, sapientia, æ.
Wise, sapiens, (sapient) is, 107; *wisely*, sapienter.
Wish, velle, cupĕre.
With, cum (prep., abl.).
Without, sine (prep., abl.); *to be without*, carēre.
Withstand, resistĕre, 390.
Wolf, lupus, i.
Woman, femina, æ; mulier, is (f.).
Wonder at, admirāri, dep.
Wonderful, mirabilis, e, 104.
Wood (a), sylva, æ.
Word, verbum, i; *word is brought*, nuntiatum est.
Work, opus, (oper) is, 344.
World, mundus, i: orbis terrarum.
Worse, pejus, adv.; *worst*, pessimus, 370.
Worship, colĕre, adorāre.
Worthy, dignus, a, um (with abl.).
Would-that, utinam, 526.
Wound, vulnus, (vulner) is, 344; *to wound*, vulnerāre.
Wretched, miser, 77, *b*.
Write, scribĕre.
Writer, scriptor, 319.

X.

Xenophon, Xenophon, (Xenophont) is.

Y.

Year, annus, adv.
Yearly, quotannis, i.
Yes, immo.
Yesterday, heri.
Yet, tamen.
Yoke, jugum, i.
Young-man, juvenis, is (m.): adolescens.
You, vos (*sing.*, tu).
Your, vester, tra, trum, 134.
Youth, juventus, (juventūt) is, 293; *a youth*. See *young man*.

Z.

Zeal, studium, i.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

WHAT is a *monosyllable?* a *dissyllable?* a *polysyllable?* (8.)—What is *inflection?*—What is the inflection of *nouns* called? of *verbs?* (21, 2 R.)—Name the *vowels:* the *liquids:* the *c-sounds: p-sounds: t-sounds: double consonants: diphthongs,* (23.)—Repeat the *general rules of quantity,* (24.)—Repeat the *general rules of gender,* (25, *a.*)

Has the Latin any *article?* (27.)—What is the *stem* of a noun? (30.)—How many *cases* of nouns are there? (31.)—What is the use of the *nominative?* the *vocative?* the *genitive?* (33.)—How many *declensions?*—How distinguished? (34.)—Give *nom.*, *voc.*, and *gen.* endings of 1st decl. (nom. and voc., ă *short*; abl., a *long*).—What is the *gender* of 1st decl.? (36, *c.*)

Where do you put the *unemphatic* gen.? (*After* its noun, 38, *a.*)—The *emphatic?* (*Before* its noun, 38, *b.*)

What is the *subject* of a sentence? the *predicate?* (41.)—What is an *active* verb? *transitive? intransitive?* (42.)—What does the *infinitive* express? the *indicative?* (43.)—What does the *present* tense express? the *imperfect?* the *future?* (44.)—What is the *infinitive-ending* of 1st conj.?—How do you find the *stem* of a verb? (45.)—Give the 3d *person endings* of the indicative, (46.)—Are the *personal pronouns* necessarily used in Latin? (47, R.)—Where do you put the *subject nominative* in a sentence? (48, II.)

What is the case of the *direct object?* (51.)—Give the *accusative-endings* of 1st decl. (52.)—Rule of position for the *object accusative?* (53, II.)

What does the *dative* express? (54): the *ablative?* (55.)—Give the case-endings complete, 1st decl. (618): *quantity* of final syllables (618, R. 1): *gender* (618, R. 2): rule of position for *remote object* (58, II., *a*): for *preposition and its noun* (58, II., *b.*)

Case-endings, 2d decl., masc. (61.)—Name the *feminine* nouns of 2d decl. (alvus, cŏlus, hŭmus, vannus).—What nouns have *i* for vocative-ending? (62, R. 2.)—When *to* implies *motion,* how do you render it in Latin? (53, ☞.)

What nouns of 2d decl. reject the endings ŭs and ĕ? (64.)—Which of

these retain the ĕ in the oblique cases? (65, R.)—What case is used with words of *abounding* and *wanting*? (66, II., *a.*)

Case-endings, 2d decl., neut. (68.)—*Short* final syllables in 2d decl. (ŭs, ĕ, ŭm, ă).—*Long* final syllables (ī, ō, ĭs, ōs).—What is the infinitive-ending of verbs, 2d conj.? (70.)—Give the 3d person endings, indic. present: imperfect: future, (71.)

Give the endings of adjectives of Class I. (76.)—What adjectives reject the endings ŭs and ĕ? (77.)—Where do you put the unemphatic adjective in a sentence? (78, II., *a.*)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun which governs another in the genitive? (*Before* the genitive, 78, II., *b.*)

Give the 3d pers. endings of esse, indic. (79): rule of syntax for predicate noun (80, *a*): for predicate adjective, (81, *b.*)

Infinitive-ending, 3d conj. (83.)—Indic., 3d pers. endings, present: imperfect: future, (84.)—Infinitive-ending, 4th conj. (86.)—Indic., 3d pers., present: imperfect: future, (87.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition? (89, II.)

What syllable forms the 3d pers. *pass.* ending, indic.? (90.)—In putting an active sentence into the passive form, what changes occur? (93, II.)—When is the preposition omitted? (93, II., R.)

Case-endings, 3d decl. (98.)—What is the gender of most nouns which add s to form the nom.? (99.)—Decline sermo: urbs: lex.

What is the gender of nouns in al, ar, e? (102, R. 2.)—Endings of adjectives of 2d class? (104.)—Decline brĕvis. (105.)—What adjectives take ĕ instead of ī in abl.? (105, R. 2.)—What case is used with adjectives of *advantage* or *disadvantage*? of *likeness* or *unlikeness*? (106, II., *c.*)

What adjectives form Class III.? (107.)—Decline fēlix. (108.)—Which ending do *participles* in ns take in *abl. sing.*, ĕ or ī? (108, R. 1, *b.*)

What nouns belong to 4th decl.? (110.)—Give the case-endings, masc. (111): neut. (111): quantity of final syllables, 4th decl. (621, R. 1): fem. nouns of 4th decl. (621, R. 2.)—What nouns take ŭbŭs in abl. plur.? (621, R. 3.)—Decline dŏmŭs, (112, 3.)—What does dŏmī mean? (112, 4.)—Rule of syntax for verbs compounded with trans, (113, II., *a.*)—Is trans ever repeated?

What nouns belong to 5th decl.? (114.)—Case-endings, 5th decl.? (116.)—When is the e in ei *long*? when *short*? (116, R.)—What nouns of 5th

decl. have plur. complete? (117, R.)—Time *when* is put in what case? (118, II., *c.*)

Decline ego, (120.)—What is the *adj. personal* pron. of 1st pers. sing.? of 1st pers. *plur.*? (122.)—Give 1st pers. endings, 1st conj., act. indic. *present: imperfect: future.*—Also, pass. *present: imperfect: future.* (123.)—What case is used with esse to denote the possessor? (125, II., *a.*)—Is cŭm prefixed or suffixed to the personal pronouns? (125, II., *b.*)

What are the 1st person endings, act. and pass., for 2d conj, indic. present? imperfect? future? (126.)—The same for 3d conj. (127.)—Fourth, (128.)

Decline tu, (130.)—What are the 2d pers. endings, 1st conj., act. and pass., indic. present? imperfect? future? (131.)—The same for 2d conj. (133.)—What are the *possessive* pronouns of 2d pers.? (134.)—How is nĕ used? (135, II., *a.*)—Where is causā placed in a sentence? (135, II., *b.*)

What are the 2d pers. endings of verbs, 3d conj., act. and pass., indic. pres.? imperfect? future? (136.)—The same for 4th conj. (137.)

Decline the *reflexive* pronoun sui, (142.)—What is the *adjective-personal* pronoun of 3d pers.? (143.)—What case does imperāre govern? (147.)

Why are *demonstrative* pronouns so called? (149.)—Decline ĭs, eă, ĭd, (150.)—Inflect esse, pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (151.)—Distinguish suus and ejus, (153)—What is the demonstrative of the 1st person? (156): of 2d? (157): of 3d? (158.)

Decline qui, (164.)—Syntax of the relative, (167, *b.*)

Decline quis, (170.)—How is the answer *yes* given? (173.)—What answer does num expect? (175, *b.*)

Name the seven *indefinite* pronouns, (178.)—How are indef. pronouns used with a genitive? (180, *a.*)

Name the *correlative* pronouns, (184.)—Give the Latin for *much gold* (186, *a*): for *much money* (186, *a*).—Distinguish tantum and tantus, (186, obs.)

Repeat the first twelve numerals in all four classes, (189.)—Give the rule for accus. of *time* or *space*, (191.)

Decline unus, duo, and tres, (194.)—What words are declined like unus? (194, R. 1.)—Is the penult of unius *long* or *short*?

Inflect capĕre in pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (199.)

What are *deponent* verbs? (206.)—How are they conjugated? (Ans., like passives.)

How do you form *derivative adverbs* from adjectives of Class I.? (215, 1): of Class II.? (215, 2.)—What is the general *position* of the adverb in a sentence? (218, *a.*)—Where is ferē placed? (218, *b.*)—How is nequidem used? (218, *c.*)

What prepositions govern the accus. or ablat.? (223.)—Give the rule of *apposition*, (225, *a.*)

Give the person-endings, *pres.* indic. act.: tense-stem: connecting-vowel: 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (234.)

Imperfect tense, person-endings: tense-stem, four conj's.: connecting-vowel, (237.)—*Future* tense, 1st and 2d conj., person-endings: tense-stems: connecting-vowels (238): 3d and 4th conj., fut., person-ending: tense-stem: connecting-vowel, (240.)

Passive-endings, (243.)—Apparent irregularities, viz., 1st pers. pres. indic.: 3d conj., 2d pers. sing. pres.: 1st and 2d conj., fut., 2d pers. sing. (244.)

Rules of Quantity.—Monosyllables ending in a vowel (247, *a.*): exceptions.—Monosyllables ending in a consonant: exceptions, (247, *b.*)—Quantity of *a* final (248): *e* final (249): of *i* final (250): of o final (251): of *u* final, (252.)—Final syllables ending in a consonant, (253.)—Final as, es, os: exceptions, (254.)—Final is and us: exceptions, (255.)—Increase of nouns (257): of verbs, (258.)—Penults of perf. tense, (259.)—Adjectives in idus, icus: in inus: in ilis, bilis, (260.)

What are the tenses for action *completed?* (262): their endings? (263.)—Give the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. of esse, (264.)—Distinguish perf. pres. from perf. aorist, (265.)—What case do the compounds of esse with prepositions govern? (267, *b.*)

How is perf. stem formed in most verbs of 1st conj.? of 2d? of 4th? (270.)—Give perf. of amāre, monēre, audīre, (271.)

How is perf. stem formed of most verbs of 3d conj.? (276.)—Euphonic rules: (1) k-sound before s: (2) b before s: (3) t-sound before s, (277.)—What answer does nonne expect? (280.)—How is the pluperf. formed? the fut. perf.? (283.)

Name the six classes of nouns of 3d decl. (291.)—Euphonic rules, (292.) —How do you express "*on the top of the mountain*" in Latin? (297.)

Decline Jupiter: Bos: Respublica: Jusjurandum, (351.)

Repeat the rules of gender, 3d decl., from nominative formation. with the exceptions under each, (355.)

Comparison of Adjectives.—What is the *compar.* ending? (357.)—If the stem ends in a vowel, how is the *compar.* formed? (357, R.)—Syntax of compar., when quam is omitted, (360, *c.*)

Superl. ending, (363.)—Stems in er add what ending? (364.)—Stems in l, what ending? (365.)—What case is used with superlatives? (367, *b.*)

Compare bonus, malus, magnus, multus, parvus, senex, juvenis, exterus, inferus, superus, posterus, (370.)—Comp. dives, benevolus.

Are adverbs compared?—How? (376.)

What is the supine? (377.)—Form supine-stem, 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (378.)—How is supine in um used? (379.)—How is supine in u used? (380.)—Name the supines in u which are in common use, (381.)—What case answers the question *whither?* (383.)

What are the *four* ways of forming perf. stem, 1st conj.? (387.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (387.)—How do you form perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. of these verbs? (388.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem, 2d conj.? (394.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (395.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied here? (395, III., *a*, *b*, *c.*)

Name the *six* ways of forming the perf. stem, 3d conj. (400.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied in forming perf. stems of verbs of 1st class? (401, 1, &c.)

How do verbs of 2d class form perf. stem? (406): verbs of 3d class?—In what sense is ad often used by Cæsar? (408, *c.*)

How do verbs of 4th class form perf. stem? (411.)—What vowel changes must be observed here? (411, *a*, *b*, *c.*)—Give the rule for verbs of demanding (413, 1): for verbs of sparing (413, 4.)—What is the perf. of căděrĕ? of cædĕrĕ? (413, ☞.)

How do verbs of 5th class form perf. stem? (416.)—Form the perf. stems of the io verbs in (416, *c*).—What is said of the *prænomen*? (418, *c*.)

How do verbs of 6th class form perf. stem? (421.)—What cases are used after distrĭbŭĕre? (423, *c*.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem in 4th conj.? (426.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (427.)—How is the *manner* of an action expressed in Latin? (428, *a*.)

How are the passive tenses for completed action formed? (431.)—How is the perf. part. formed? (432, *b*.)—How is it inflected? (432, *a*.)—Inflect the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. pass. of ămārŏ, (433.)—How is the perf. pass. part. sometimes used with est? (435, *c*.)

How many participles are there in Latin, act. and pass.? (438.)—Give the endings of the present part. act. in the four conjugations, (439, *a*.)—How is it declined? (440.)—Has the Latin any *active* part. to express *complete* action? (None, excepting in *deponent* verbs, 440, *a*, *b*.)—What is the use of the part. in discourse? (442, *c*.)—Give the words in which cannot stand first in a clause or sentence, (442, *c*.)

How is the fut. part. act. formed? (445.)—Inflect the periphrastic pres., past, and fut. of ămārŏ, (446.)—Give the rule for the use of the fut. part. with verbs of motion, (448.)

How is the perf. pass. part. formed? (451, *a*.)—How is it inflected? (451, *b*.)—How do deponent verbs use the perf. part. form? (451, *c*.)—What is the case of the place *where*? (453, *a*): of the place *whence*? (453, *b*): of the place *whither*? (453, *c*.)

When is the part. used in the ablative with a noun? (456.)—How is the want of a perf. act. part. supplied in Latin? (457.)—Can a noun be used in the ablative absolute with another noun? (Yes: 458.)

How does the infin. express action? (465.)—Give the infin. forms, act. and pass., in all the conjugations, (466.)—Give the rule for the complementary infin. (468, *a*.)

Name the classes of verbs which take after them the accus. and infin. (471.)—Give the method of changing English sentences commencing with *that* into the Latin accus. and infin. (472, 1, 2, 3.)

Give the formation of the perf. infin. pass. (478.)—When the accus. is used with this infin., with what does its part. agree? (478.)

How is the infin. fut. act. formed? (482): the infin. fut. pass.? (483.)

Under what form does the gerund express the action of the verb? (487, *a.*)—How is the gerund-stem formed? (487, *b.*)—How the *cases* of the gerund? (487, *c.*)—What rules apply to the cases of the infin. and gerund? (489.)—Is the infin. or the accus. ger. used with a preposition? (489, R.)—What case does the ger. govern? (490.)

How does the gerundive express the action of a verb? (495, *a.*)—How are its cases formed? (495, *b.*)—How is it used? (496.)—When *must* the gerundive be used instead of the gerund?—When *may* it be so used? (496, R.)—After what verbs does the gerundive express a purpose or object? (498, ☞.)

What does the gerundive in the nom. neut. with esse express? (501, *a.*)—What does it express when used with esse as a *verbal adjective?* (502.)—What is the case of the person in both these constructions? (The dative.)

How does *imper.* mood express the action of the verb? (507.)—What is *not* with the imper.? (510, Rule.)

When is a sentence compound? (513, *a.*)—Give an example of a principal sentence: of a subordinate sentence, (513, *c.*)—Give some of the classes of subordinate sentences, (514, *a*, &c.)

Repeat the copulative conjunctions, (515.)—How are et and que used? (517, *a*): ac? (517, *b.*)—What does et followed by another et mean? (517, *c.*)—What is the Latin for *again and again?* for *not only—but also?* (517, *d.*)

Name the disjunctive conjunctions, (519.)—What does aut indicate? vel? (519, R. 1 and 2.)—How is ve used? (519, R. 3.)—What do these conj. mean when repeated? (519, R. 4.)—Give the adversatives, (520.)—What does sed express? (522, *a*): autem? (522, *b.*)

How does the subjunc. mood express affirmation? (524.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. of esse, (525.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. act. and pass. of ămārĕ, mŏnērĕ, rĕgĕrĕ, audīre, (526, *b.*)—How may a *wish* be expressed in Latin? (528, *a.*)—How may a *softened command* be expressed? (528, *b.*)—How do you express a direct question when *doubt* is implied? (528, *c.*)

Inflect subjunc. perf. of esse, (531.)—How do regular verbs form subjunc. perf. act.? (532, 1): subjunc. perf. pass.? (532, 2.)—Inflect the subjunc. perf. act. and pass. of ămārĕ, mŏnērĕ, rĕgĕrĕ, audīrĕ, (532, 3.)—How is the subjunc. perf. used imperatively? (534, *a.*)—How may a *supposed* case be expressed? (534, *b.*)—How may a *softened assertion* be expressed? (534, *c.*)—What interrogative sentences take the subjunc.? (534, *c.*)

How is the subjunc. imperf. formed? (537.)—Repeat the paradigm (538.)—How is the subjunc. pluperf. act. and pass. formed? (539, *a* and *b*.)—Give the paradigm, (539, *c*.)—Repeat the conditional conjunctions, (540, *a*.)—What is a conditional sentence? (540, *b*.)—In conditional sentences how do you express a *real* condition? a *possible* condition? an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in present time? an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time? (542, *b*, Rule.)—Can the perf. or pluperf. indic. ever be used with si? (No.)

Inflect posse in subjunc. pres.: imperf.: perf.: pluperf. (545.)—State the composition of posse.—Repeat the final conjunctions, (546.)—How is purpose or aim expressed in English? how in Latin? (548, *a*.)—How is an object to be provided against introduced in English? how in Latin? (548, *b*.)—Can a purpose or aim be expressed in Latin by an infin.? (No.)

Give the primary tenses of the Latin verb: the historical, (551, 2, *a*, *b*.)—What is the rule for the succession of tenses? (551, 3.)—How is a *result* expressed in English? how in Latin? (553, *a*.)—What is the rule for ut signifying *that*? (553, *b*.)

How is the want of a fut. subjunc. supplied in Latin? (556.)—Give the paradigm, periph. conj. subjunc. (556.)—When does quo express a purpose instead of ut? (558, *a*.)—In what sense is quin used? (1) after negative sentences? (2) after non dubito, &c.? (558, *b*.)—When is quominus used in preference to ne? (558, *c*.)

What are the two uses of quum? (561.)—What is the first use called? the second? (561.)—When is quum followed by the indic.? (563, *a*.)—When is quum *temporal* followed by the imperf. or pluperf. subjunc.? (563, *b*.)—What is the rule for quum causal? (563, *c*.)

When is the rel. pronoun followed by the subjunc.? (566.)—Give the rule for the use of subjunc. in a rel. sentence, (568, *d*.)—Is the rel. to express a purpose very common in Cæsar? (Yes.)

In what two ways may we relate the words of another? (571.)—What is each method called? (571.)—What kinds of sentences are introduced in oratio obliqua? (Either principal or subordinate.)—What mood is used in principal sentences in oratio obliqua? (574, *a*): in subordinate sentences? (574, *b*.)

What are impersonal verbs? (577.)—Give the classes of impersonals (578.)—What impersonals are followed by the accus. of the person and the gen. of the cause? (579, *a*.)

Give the rule for ŏportet and decet (584, *a*): for plăcet (584, *b*). for lĭcet and lĭbet (584, *c*): for interest and rĕfert (584, *d*).

State the composition of possum, and repeat the paradigm, (587.)

Give the composition of nōlo and mālo, and repeat the paradigms (592.)—Give the three rules for velle, nolle, and malle, in (594).

Repeat the paradigm of irregular forms of ferre, (596.)—How are the remaining tenses formed? (596, *b*.)—What is the meaning of fĕrunt? (598, *b*.)

Of what verb does fieri form the pass.? (600.)—How are the tenses formed? (600.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of i in fieri? (600, R.)—What forms of edere are similar to those of esse? (601.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of es, from esse? of es, from edere? (601, R.)

What conjugation does īre follow? (605.)—Give the paradigm.—What is said of the compounds? (605, 1, 2.)—How are queo and nequeo conjugated? (606.)

Inflect aio (609): inquam (610): nōvi (611).—How do you distinguish between the use of aio and of inquam? (613, *b*, ☞.)—What form of cœpi is used with a pass. infin.? (613, *c* ☞.)

M M

THE END

PROF. M'CLINTOCK AND CROOKS'S
Series of Elementary
GREEK AND LATIN BOOKS,

PUBLISHED AND IN COURSE OF PUBLICATION

By Harper and Brothers, New York.

DESIGNED FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

☞ *At the request of many teachers, the plan of the Series has been altered for the purpose of introducing a* Latin Reader *as the "Second Book in Latin." The First and Second Books in Latin and Greek will thus afford all that is necessary in preparatory training, before beginning the regular reading of the classic authors. The "Introduction to Writing Latin" will form the work heretofore announced as the "Second Book in Latin," which has been long in careful preparation.*

First Book in Latin.

Containing Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. With Summaries of Etymology and Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents. (*Fifth Edition.*)

Second Book in Latin.

Being a sufficient Latin Reader, in Extracts from Cæsar and Cicero, with Notes and full Vocabulary. 12mo. (*Soon.*)

First Book in Greek.

Containing a full View of the Forms of Words, with Vocabularies and copious Exercises, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents. (*Second Edition.*)

Second Book in Greek.

Containing a Syntax, with Reading Lessons in Prose; Prosody and Reading Lessons in Verse. Forming a sufficient Greek Reader, with Notes and copious Vocabulary. 12mo. (*Nearly ready.*)

Introduction to Writing Latin.

Containing a full Syntax, on the Basis of Kühner, with *Loci Memoriales* selected from Cicero, and copious Exercises for Imitation and Repetition. 12mo.

Intended for higher classes in schools and lower classes in colleges.

Practical Introduction to Latin Style.

Principally translated from Grysar's "Theorie des lateinischen Stiles."

This work will supply a want which has long been felt in our high schools and colleges.

Testimonials to the First Books in Latin and Greek.

The "First Book in Latin," by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks, I prefer, on many accounts, to any other of the elementary Latin grammars now used in our schools; and I have no doubt that its philosophical and eminently *practical* character will secure for it great popularity, both among teachers and pupils.—Rev. J. F. SCHROEDER, *Rector of St. Ann's Hall, New York.*

If the rest of the series are equal to the "First Book in Greek," they form the best introduction to the classical tongues with which we are acquainted.—Prof. HART, *Principal of the Central High School, Philadelphia.*

The authors have been very happy in the distribution and arrangement of the subjects, so as to introduce the beginner gradually to the difficulties, and yet carry him forward rapidly to an acquaintance with the essential forms and principles of Greek grammar. There is also a perspicuity, definiteness, and conciseness in the language with which I am exceedingly pleased.—Prof. W. S. TYLER, *Amherst College, Mass.*

A pretty careful examination convinces me of its great value as an introductory book, and its decided superiority to every other I have seen. It appears to me you have greatly improved upon Arnold, and been eminently successful in a gradual and not too rapid unfolding of grammatical principles.—Prof. STURGES, *Hanover College, Indiana.*

I had tried all sorts of books, from Adams's and Ross's down to Andrews and Stoddard's, Wells's, Krebs's, Cleveland's, and lastly Arnold's, and think the "First Book" is incomparably superior as a *practical* work to any other in use.—C. W. BLAKE, *Principal of Penn Street Classical Academy, Philadelphia.*

I have given the classical books of Professors M'Clintock and Crooks a thorough examination, and am highly pleased with them. I have introduced both the First Latin and First Greek into my school, and am convinced that they elicit and keep up a greater interest in the study of those languages than any I have yet used.—Rev. CHARLES REYNOLDS, A.M., *Rector of Williamsburgh Grammar School.*

I have examined with much attention the "First Book in Latin" of Professors M'Clintock and Crooks, and am happy to bear testimony to the practical tact and sound scholarship which they have shown in the preparation of the work. The arrangement is simple and lucid, and the gradual steps by which the youthful student is introduced to the grammatical laws of the language, both as it regards etymology and syntax, are such as, in my estimation, to render the book deserving of the patronage of every instructor. I most heartily wish it the extensive circulation it so eminently deserves.—JOHN J. OWEN, *Principal of the Cornelius Institute.*

I have examined and used in my school M'Clintock and Crooks's First Books in Latin and Greek, and fully approve of the design of the works. I think they are calculated to awaken greatly the interest of the scholar in lessons that have generally been considered tedious, at the same time that they convey a thorough knowledge of elementary principles.—AARON RAND, *Collegiate and Mercantile School, New York.*

I regard the "First Book in Latin" as the best yet published in our country.—Prof. LEWIS, *Woodward College, Ohio.*

The writers have added valuable improvements to the excellent works of Kühner and Arnold. The analysis of the Third Declension is more satisfactory and philosophical than any thing of the kind that I have met with. The rules of syntax are more clearly and briefly expressed than those of any grammar within my knowledge.—Prof. STAFFORD, *University of Alabama.*

I think the "First Book in Latin" better calculated than any work I know to induce students, from the beginning, to study Latin *critically*. We have made it one of the works required as preparatory to college.—Prof. H. B. LANE, *Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn.*

We have introduced the "First Book in Latin," and find it far superior to any other elementary work.—Prof. WHEELER, *Indiana Asbury University.*

The solid, well-arranged, and perspicuous "First Book in Latin," completely supplies the want I have long felt, as a teacher of Latin, of a book for beginners. The unusual progess my pupils make in accurate knowledge of the language—knowledge which they can apply without error or difficulty—is the best proof I possess of the practical value of the book.—Rev. J. H. DASHIELL, *Principal of the Light Street Institute, Baltimore.*

The most thorough, practical, and philosophical method of teaching Greek that we have ever seen.—*Savannah Republican.*

The best introduction to the classical tongues with which we are acquainted. The "First Book in Greek" is "Greek made easy," not *by leaving out all the hard parts*, but by presenting the difficulties one at a time, and in the order most consonant to nature and reason. It does equal credit to the scholarship and the practical good sense of its authors. We have seen no school book for many a long year that has given us more unmingled and entire satisfaction.—SARTAIN'S *Union Magazine.*

The "First Book in Latin" combines all the advantages of recently-improved methods, and contains many decided improvements. A more philosophical and practical, system of teaching Latin we have never seen.—Prof. SALKELD, *Naugatuck, Conn.*

The grammatical part of the work is very complete, although condensed into a wonderfully short compass.—*Philadelphia Inquirer.*

Among many other advantages, it contains precisely such remarks and explanations as a student wishes to have in the early part of his course, but which, in common grammars, are strangely omitted.—J. A. DEVINNEY, *High School, Carlisle, Penn.*

M'Clintock and Crooks's First Books in Latin and Greek are incomparable, and certainly the best books for beginners ever published, and I am convinced will meet with the heartiest commendation from teachers throughout the country.—W. C. S. RICHARDSON, *Professor of Languages, Tuscaloosa.*

The lessons in the "First Book in Greek" are so easy, natural, and interesting, that they must win every boy to the study of the language. I shall recommend it to every teacher.—Prof. MARTIN, *Hampden Sydney College.*

Valuable Text-books

FOR COLLEGES, ACADEMIES, AND SCHOOLS,

PUBLISHED BY

HARPER & BROTHERS, NEW YORK.

Liddell and Scott's Greek-English Lexicon.

Based on the German Work of Passow. With Additions, &c., by HENRY DRISLER, under the Supervision of Professor Anthon. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, $5 00.

Liddell and Scott's School Greek Lexicon;

Being an Abridgment of the Above, by the Authors, with the Addition of a Second Part, viz. English-Greek. (In press.)

Anthon's Classical Dictionary.

Containing an Account of the principal Proper Names mentioned in Ancient Authors, together with an Account of the Coins, Weights, and Measures of the Ancients, with Tabular Values of the same. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, $4 00.

Smith's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities.

First American Edition, corrected and enlarged, and containing also numerous Articles relative to the Botany, Mineralogy, and Zoology of the Ancients, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Illustrated by a large number of Engravings. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, $4 00.

Smith's School Dictionary of Antiquities.

Abridged from the larger Dictionary. With Corrections and Improvements, by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Illustrated with numerous Engravings. 12mo, half Sheep, 90 cents.

Anthon's Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, the Prolegomena of Kühner, Wiggers' Life of Socrates, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Anthon's Anabasis of Xenophon.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, a Map arranged according to the latest and best Authorities, and a Plan of the Battle of Cunaxa. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Anthon's Germania and Agricola of Tacitus.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, the Prolegomena of Bötticher, and a Geographical Index. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Cicero De Senectute, De Amicitia,

Paradoxa, and Somnium Scipionis, and the Life of Atticus by Cornelius Nepos. With English Notes, critical and explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Select Orations of Cicero.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. With a Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Anthon's Zumpt's Latin Grammar.

From the Ninth Edition of the Original, adapted to the Use of English Students, by L. SCHMITZ, PH.D. Corrected and enlarged by C. ANTHON, LL.D. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Zumpt's School Latin Grammar.

Translated and adapted to the High School of Edinburgh, by L. SCHMITZ, PH.D. Corrected and enlarged by C. ANTHON, LL.D. 12mo, Sheep extra, 50 cents.

Anthon's Sallust's History of the Jugurthine

War, and of the Conspiracy of Catiline. With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. New Edition, corrected and enlarged. With a Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Ancient Geography.

A System of Ancient and Mediæval Geography. 8vo

Findlay's Classical Atlas,

To illustrate Ancient Geography; comprised in 25 Maps, showing the various Divisions of the World as known to the Ancients. With an Index of the Ancient and Modern Names. The Maps are beautifully Colored, and the Index is remarkably full and complete. 8vo, half bound, $3 75.

Anthon's System of Greek Prosody and Meter,

Together with the Choral Scanning of the Prometheus Vinctus of Æschylus, and Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles; also, Remarks on the Indo-Germanic Analogies. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Greek Reader.

Principally from the German of Jacobs. With English Notes, critical and explanatory, a Metrical Index to Homer and Anacreon, and a copious Lexicon. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Anthon's Homer's Iliad.

The first Six Books of Homer's Iliad, to which are appended English Notes, critical and explanatory, a Metrical Index, and Homeric Glossary. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Anthon's Grammar of the Greek Language.

12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's New Greek Grammar.

From the German of Kühner, Matthiæ, Buttmann, Rost, and Thiersch; to which are appended, Remarks on the Pronunciation of the Greek Language, and Chronological Tables explanatory of the same. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's First Greek Lessons,

Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Greek Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the translating and writing of Greek. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Greek Prose Composition.

Greek Lessons, Part II. An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition, with a complete Course of Exercises illustrative of all the important Principles of Greek Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Works of Horace.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory. New Edition, with Corrections and Improvements. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Anthon's Æneid of Virgil.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory, a Metrical Clavis, and an Historical, Geographical, and Mythological Index. With a Portrait and numerous Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Anthon's Eclogues and Georgics of Virgil.

With English Notes, critical and explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Anthon's Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic

War, and the First Book of the Greek Paraphrase; with English Notes, critical and explanatory, Plans of Battles, Sieges, &c., and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes. With a Map, Portrait, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Anthon's Latin Versification.

In a Series of Progressive Exercises, including Specimens of Translation from English and German Poetry into Latin Verse. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Key to Latin Versification.

12mo, half Sheep, 50 cents.

Anthon's Latin Prosody and Meter.

From the best Authorities, Ancient and Modern. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Latin Lessons.

Latin Grammar, Part I. Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Latin Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the translating and writing of Latin. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.

Latin Grammar, Part II. A complete Course of Exercises, illustrative of all the important Principles of Latin Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Key to Latin Prose Composition.

12mo, half Sheep, 50 cents.

The Englishman's Greek Concordance of the New Testament:

being an Attempt at a verbal Connection between the Greek and the English Texts: including a Concordance to the Proper Names, with Indexes, Greek-English and English-Greek. 8vo, Muslin, $4 50; Sheep extra, $5 00.

Lewis's Platonic Theology.

Plato against the Atheists; or, the Tenth Book of the Dialogue on Laws, with critical Notes and extended Dissertations on some of the main Points of the Platonic Philosophy and Theology, especially as compared with the Holy Scriptures. 12mo, Muslin, $1 50.

Spencer's Greek New Testament.

With English Notes, critical, philological, and exegetical Indexes, &c. 12mo, Muslin, $1 25; Sheep extra, $1 40.

Butler's Analogy of Religion,

Natural and Revealed, to the Constitution and Course of Nature. To which are added two brief Dissertations: of Personal Identity—of the Nature of Virtue. With a Preface by Bishop Halifax. 18mo, half Bound, 37½ cents.

Hobart's Analysis of Butler's Analogy of Religion,

Natural and Revealed, to the Constitution and Course of Nature, with Notes. Also, Crauford's Questions for Examination, Revised and Adapted to the Use of Schools. By Charles E. West. 18mo, Muslin, 40 cents.

Gieseler's Compendium of Ecclesiastical History.

From the Fourth Edinburgh Edition, Revised and Amended. Translated from the German by Samuel Davidson, LL.D. 8vo.

Mosheim's Ecclesiastical History,

Ancient and Modern; in which the Rise, Progress, and Variation of Church Power are considered in their Connection with the State of Learning and Philosophy, and the Political History of Europe during that Period. Translated, with Notes, &c., by Archibald Maclaine, D.D. A new Edition, continued to 1826, by Charles Coote, LL.D. 2 vols. 8vo, Sheep extra, $3 50.

Sampson's Beauties of the Bible:

Selected from the Old and New Testaments, with various Remarks and Dissertations. 18mo, Muslin, 50 cents.

M'Clintock and Crooks's First Book in Latin.
Containing Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. With Summaries of Etymology and Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

M'Clintock and Crooks's Second Book in Latin.
Being a sufficient Latin Reader, in Extracts from Cæsar and Cicero, with Notes and full Vocabulary. 12mo, Sheep extra. (In press.)

M'Clintock and Crooks's First Book in Greek.
Containing a full View of the Forms of Words, with Vocabularies and copious Exercises, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

M'Clintock and Crooks's Second Book in Greek.
Containing a Syntax, with Reading Lessons in Prose; Prosody and Reading Lessons in Verse. Forming a sufficient Greek Reader, with Notes and copious Vocabulary. 12mo, Sheep extra. (In press.)

M'Clintock and Crooks's Introduction to Writing Latin.
Containing a full Syntax, on the Basis of Kühner, with Loci Memoriales selected from Cicero, and copious Exercises for Imitation and Repetition. 12mo.

M'Clintock and Crooks's Practical Introduction to Latin Style.
Principally translated from Grysar's "Theorie des lateinischen Stiles."

Hackley's Treatise on Algebra.
Containing the latest Improvements. 8vo, Sheep extra, $1 50.

Hackley's School Algebra.
Containing the latest Improvements. 8vo, Muslin 75 cents.

Hackley's Elementary Course of Geometry.
12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Loomis's Treatise on Algebra.
8vo, Sheep extra. $1 00.

Loomis's Elements of Geometry and Conic Sections.
8vo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Loomis's Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry,
with their Applications to Mensuration, Surveying, and Navigation. To which is added a full Series of Tables of Logarithms of Numbers, and of Sines and Tangents for every Ten Seconds of the Quadrant. With other useful Tables. 8vo, Sheep extra, $1 50.

Loomis's Tables of Logarithms of Numbers,
And of Sines and Tangents for every Ten Seconds of the Quadrant. With other useful Tables. 8vo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Clark's Elements of Algebra.

Embracing, also, the Theory and Application of Logarithms: together with an Appendix, containing Infinite Series, the general Theory of Equations, &c. 8vo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Parker's Aids to English Composition.

12mo, Muslin, 80 cents; Sheep extra, 90 cents.

Parker's Geographical Questions.

Adapted for the Use of Morse's or most other Maps. 12mo, Muslin, 25 cents.

Parker's Outlines of General History.

In the Form of Question and Answer. 12mo, Sheep extra, $1 00.

Renwick's First Principles of Chemistry.

With Questions. Engravings. 18mo, half Sheep, 75 cents.

Renwick's Science of Mechanics applied to

Practical Purposes. Engravings. 18mo, half Roan, 90 cents.

Renwick's First Principles of Natural Philosophy.

With Questions. Engravings. 18mo, half Roan, 75 cents.

Draper's Text-book of Chemistry.

With nearly 300 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Draper's Text-book of Natural Philosophy.

With nearly 400 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Draper's Chemical Organization of Plants.

With an Appendix, containing several Memoirs on Capillary Attraction, Electricity, and the Chemical Action of Light. With Engravings. 4to, Muslin, $2 50.

Smith's Elementary Treatise on Mechanics.

Embracing the Theory of Statics and Dynamics, and its Application to Solids and Fluids. With Illustrations. 8vo, Muslin, $1 50; Sheep extra, $1 75.

Boucharlat's Elementary Treatise on Mechanics.

Translated from the French, with Additions and Emendations, by Professor E. H. Courtenay. With Plates. 8vo, Sheep extra, $2 25.

Bigelow's Useful Arts,

Considered in connection with the Applications of Science. With numerous Engravings. 2 vols. 12mo, Muslin, $1 50.

Kane's Elements of Chemistry:

Including the most recent Discoveries, and Applications of the Science to Medicine and Pharmacy, and to the Arts. Edited by John W. Draper, M.D. With about 250 Wood-cuts. 8vo, Muslin, $3 00; Sheep extra, $3 25.

Boyd's Eclectic Moral Philosophy.
Prepared for Literary Institutions and general Use. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents; Sheep extra, 87½ cents.

Boyd's Elements of Rhetoric and Literary Criticism. With practical Exercises and Examples. Also, a succinct History of the English Language, and of British and American Literature, from the earliest to the present Times. 18mo, half Bound, 50 cents.

Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric.
Revised Edition. 12mo, Muslin, $1 25.

Upham's Elements of Mental Philosophy.
Embracing the two Departments of the Intellect and the Sensibilities. 2 vols. 12mo, Sheep extra, $2 50.

Upham's Mental Philosophy, Abridged.
12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Upham's Treatise on the Will.
12mo, Sheep extra, $1 25.

Upham's Imperfect and Disordered Mental Action. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Abercrombie's Treatise on the Intellectual Powers, and the Investigation of Truth. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents; half Bound, 50 cents.

Abercrombie's Philosophy of the Moral Feelings. With Questions. 18mo, Muslin, 40 cents; half Bound, 50 cents.

Markham's (Mrs.) History of France,
From the Conquest of Gaul by Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Louis Philippe. Prepared for the Use of Schools by the Addition of a Map, Notes, and Questions, and a Supplementary Chapter, bringing down the History to the present Time, by Jacob Abbott. With Engravings. 12mo, half Bound, $1 25.

Tytler's Universal History,
From the Creation of the World to the Decease of George III., 1820. 6 vols. 18mo, Muslin, $2 70.

Hale's History of the United States,
From their first Settlement as Colonies to the close of the Administration of Mr. Madison in 1817. 2 vols. 18mo, Muslin, 90 cents.

Robertson's History of the Discovery of America. With an Account of the Author's Life and Writings. With Questions for the Examination of Students, by J. Frost, A.M. With Engravings. 8vo, Sheep extra, $1 75.

Robertson's History of America, Abridged.
With an Account of the Author's Life and Writings, by DUGALD STEWART. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Robertson's History of the Emperor Charles V.
With a View of the Progress of Society in Europe, to the beginning of the Sixteenth Century. With Questions for the Examination of Students, by JOHN FROST, A.M. With Engravings. 8vo, Sheep extra, $1 75.

Robertson's History of Charles V., Abridged.
18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Schmitz's History of Rome,
From the earliest Times to the Death of Commodus, A.D. 192. With Questions. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Plautus's The Captives.
With English Notes, &c., by JOHN PROUDFIT, D.D. 18mo, Paper, 37½ cents.

Muller's History of the World,
From the earliest Period to 1783. Compared throughout with the Original, revised, corrected, and illustrated by a Notice of the Life and Writings of the Author, by ALEXANDER EVERETT. 4 vols. 12mo, Muslin, $3 00.

Hallam's Constitutional History of England,
From the Accession of Henry VII. to the Death of George II. 8vo, Sheep extra, $2 25.

Goldsmith's History of Greece, Abridged.
Edited by the Author of "American Popular Lessons. 18mo, half Sheep, 45 cents.

Goldsmith's History of Rome, Abridged.
Edited by HENRY W. HERBERT. 18mo, half Sheep, 45 cents.

Michelet's Elements of Modern History.
Translated from the French, with an Introduction, Notes, &c., by Rev. Dr. POTTER. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Robins's (Miss) Tales from American History.
With Engravings. 3 vols. 18mo, Muslin, $1 00.

Beck's Botany of the United States,
North of Virginia; comprising Descriptions of the Flowering and Fern-like Plants hitherto found in those States, arranged according to the Natural System. With a Synopsis of the Genera according to the Linnæan System, a Sketch of the Rudiments of Botany, &c. 12mo, Muslin, $1 25; Sheep, $1 50.

Mill's Logic, Ratiocinative and Inductive.
Being a connected View of the Principles of Evidence and Methods of Scientific Investigation. 8vo, Muslin, $2 00.







